

DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 271 558

CE 044 644

AUTHOR Hires, Bill; And Others
TITLE Small Engine Repair. Two-Stroke and Four-Stroke Cycle.
INSTITUTION Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, Stillwater, Okla.; Missouri Univ., Columbia. Instructional Materials Lab.
PUB DATE 85
NOTE 754p.; Revision of Comprehensive Small Engine Repair (ED 146 392). Some pages use colored paper.
AVAILABLE FROM Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, OK 74074 (Catalog No. 800501--\$28.00).
PUB TYPE Guides - Classroom Use - Guides (For Teachers) (052)
EDRS PRICE MF04 Plus Postage. PC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS *Auto Mechanics; Behavioral Objectives; Competency Based Education; *Electrical Systems; *Engines; Equipment Utilization; Hand Tools; Learning Activities; Lesson Plans; Measurement Techniques; Power Technology; Safety; Secondary Education; *Small Engine Mechanics; *Trade and Industrial Education

ABSTRACT

This curriculum guide is intended to assist persons teaching a course in repairing two- and four-stroke cycle small engines. Addressed in the individual units of instruction are the following topics: safety, tools, fasteners, and measurement techniques; basic small engine theory (engine identification and inspection, basic engine principles and design, and operation principles of two- and four-stroke engines); electrical systems (basic electricity and ignition, charging, and starting systems); and engine service (parts management; lubrication, cooling, fuel, governor, and exhaust systems; troubleshooting; and overhaul of four- and two-stroke cycle engines). Each unit contains some or all of the following: performance objectives, suggested activities for teachers and students, information sheets, transparency masters, assignment sheets, job sheets, tests, and answers to the tests. (MN)

 * Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
 * from the original document. *

SMALL ENGINE REPAIR

Two-Stroke and Four-Stroke Cycle

(Revised Edition of *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*)

Written by

Bill Hires
Mark Taylor
Mike Bundy

Revised by

Amon Herd

Edited by

Jane Huston

Developed by

The Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium

In cooperation with the
Instructional Materials Laboratory
University of Missouri-Columbia

Board of Directors

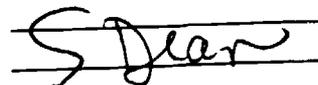
James Dasher, Arkansas, Chairman
Les Abel, Kansas, Vice Chairman
Wiley Lewis, Colorado, Parliamentarian
John Van Ast, Iowa
David Poston, Louisiana
Harley Schlichting, Missouri
Merle Rudebusch, Nebraska
Ron Mehrer, North Dakota
Bob Patton, Oklahoma
Larry Lyngstad, South Dakota
Pat Lindley, Texas
Greg Pierce, Executive Director

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION
CENTER (ERIC)

This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.
 Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

• Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL IN MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY



TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

ED 271 558

OE 044644

© 1985 by the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this book
may be reproduced in any form or by any
means without written permission from the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America by the
Oklahoma State Department of Vocational-Technical Education
Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074

Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, Inc.
1500 West Seventh
Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074

SMALL ENGINE REPAIR

Two-Stroke and Four-Stroke Cycle

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section A — Orientation

Unit I:	Safety	SE-1-A
Unit II:	Tools	SE-45-A
Unit III:	Fasteners	SE-87-A
Unit IV:	Measuring	SE-141-A

Section B — Basic Small Engine Theory

Unit I:	Engine Identification and Inspection	SE-1-B
Unit II:	Basic Engine Principles and Design	SE-25-B
Unit III:	Principles of Operation — Four-Stroke Cycle	SE-75-B
Unit IV:	Principles of Operation — Two-Stroke Cycle	SE-109-B

Section C — Electrical Systems

Unit I:	Basic Electricity	SE-1-C
Unit II:	Ignition Systems	SE-59-C
Unit III:	Charging Systems	SE-129-C
Unit IV:	Starting Systems	SE-161-C

Section D — Engine Service

Unit I:	Parts Management	SE-1-D
Unit II:	Lubrication Systems	SE-31-D
Unit III:	Cooling Systems	SE-73-D
Unit IV:	Fuel Systems	SE-91-D
Unit V:	Governor Systems	SE-181-D
Unit VI:	Exhaust Systems	SE-205-D
Unit VII:	Troubleshooting	SE-219-D
Unit VIII:	Overhaul Four-Stroke Cycle Engine	SE-247-D
Unit IX:	Overhaul Two-Stroke Cycle Engine	SE-323-D

FOREWORD

The Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium (MAVCC) was organized for the purpose of developing instructional materials for its eleven member states. Priorities for developing MAVCC materials are determined annually based on the needs as identified by all member states. One of the priorities identified was the revision of *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*.

The success of this publication is due, in large part, to the capabilities of the personnel who worked with its original development and revision. The technical writers have numerous years of industry as well as teaching experience. Assisting them in their efforts were representatives of each of the member states who brought with them technical expertise and the experience related to the classroom and to the trade. To assure that the materials would parallel the industry environment and be accepted as a transportable basic teaching tool, organizations and industry representatives were involved in the developmental phases of the manual. Appreciation is extended to them for their valuable contributions to the manual.

This publication is designed to assist teachers in improving instruction. As it is used, it is hoped that student performances will improve and that students will be better able to assume a role in their chosen occupation, small engine repair.

Instructional materials in this publication are written in terms of student performance using measurable objectives. This is an innovative approach to teaching that accents and augments the teaching/learning process. Criterion referenced evaluation instruments are provided for uniform measurement of student progress. In addition to evaluating recall information, teachers are encouraged to evaluate the other areas including process and product as indicated at the end of each instructional unit.

It is the sincere belief of the MAVCC personnel and all those members who served on the committees that this publication will allow students to become better prepared and more effective members of the work force.

James Dasher, Chairman
Board of Directors
Mid-America Vocational
Curriculum Consortium

PREFACE

If one stops to think about the many and varied uses of some type of small engine, it is easy to understand why educators have felt the need for instructional materials to improve the quality of their training programs. It is not so much that there is a shortage of materials available, but that there are so many that no single instructor has the time to compile them for use. To this task, the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium developed the original *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair* manual which was released in 1977.

Utilization of these units of instruction has far exceeded anything which we had anticipated. Therefore, it seemed only natural that we should look at it on a regular basis in order to provide the book with the technical update needed to keep the user current. The result of this work is the revised publication, *Small Engine Repair: Two-Stroke and Four-Stroke Cycle*.

Be assured that teachers, industry representatives, and various others have been involved to make this publication usable, readable, and by all means basic enough to be easily used. It is hoped that once you have used these materials which address the information needed to be able to repair most two and four cycle engines, you will consider the various supplements which MAVCC has also developed. They include:

Outdoor Power Equipment Repair

Chain Saw Repair

Motorcycle Repair

Outboard Repair

Snowmobile Repair

Because we wish to continue the process of updating and revising, we invite you to notify us of any suggestions and/or corrections which you feel would increase the quality of this publication. A postage paid postcard has been enclosed for this purpose.

Best wishes for the successful use of *Small Engine Repair*.

Greg Pierce
Executive Director
Mid-America Vocational
Curriculum Consortium, Inc.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Appreciation is extended to those individuals who contributed their time and talent to the development and revision of *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*.

The contents of this publication were reviewed by:

Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium Committee

Richard Carter, Small Engine Instructor
Gordon Cooper Area Vo-Tech School
Shawnee, Oklahoma

Joe Rush, Small Engine Instructor
Iowa State Boys Training School
Eldora, Iowa

Wayne Helbling, Owner
Small Engine Repair Shop
Mandan, North Dakota

James Sharpton, Curriculum Specialist
Curriculum Instructional Materials Center
State Dept. of Vo-Tech
Stillwater, Oklahoma

Amon Herd, Associate Director
Instructional Materials Laboratory
University of Missouri
Columbia, Missouri

The contents of this publication were originally planned by:

George Alexander
Kent Boyer
Thomas Cary
Barton Elmore
Arnold Garcia
Jack Hardway
Jim Hein
Wayne Helbling
Wilbur Hull
Bob Jackson
Larry Judd
Jerome Kohl
Thomas Owen
James Schnaible
Curtis Weston
Alan Mikkilson

Lincoln, Nebraska
Albuquerque, New Mexico
Fargo, North Dakota
Hot Springs, Arkansas
Ponderosa, New Mexico
Shawnee, Oklahoma
Greeley, Colorado
Mandan, North Dakota
Austin, Texas
Commerce, Texas
Mesa, Arizona
Lincoln, Nebraska
Topeka, Kansas
Rapid City, South Dakota
Columbia, Missouri
Minot, North Dakota

Thanks are extended to Robert Robinson, State Director of Industrial Education, Jefferson City, Missouri and Glen Shinn, Teacher Educator from the University of Missouri at Columbia for their assistance and input into the development of this publication.

Special thanks are extended to Amon Herd, Associate Director, Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri-Columbia and his staff for their contributions toward the development of this book. Special appreciation goes to Briggs and Stratton Corporation and to Dan Stapleton, graphic designer, and Paul Hughes, illustrator, with the Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri-Columbia, for the illustrations and drawings used in this publication.

Gratitude is also expressed to the businesses and industries who provided us with reference materials; to Jane Huston for her assistance in editing; to Tom Harriman and John Hanson for their assistance in checking technical content; to Kim Hale for his assistance in revising artwork; to Leslie Mathis for typing; and to the printing staff of the Oklahoma State Department of Vocational and Technical Education for printing this publication.

USE OF THIS PUBLICATION

Instructional Units

Small Engine Repair: Two-Stroke and Four-Stroke Cycle contains twenty-one units which have been divided into four main areas of interest. Each instructional unit includes some or all of the basic components of a unit of instruction; performance objectives, suggested activities for teachers and students, information sheets, assignment sheets, job sheets, visual aids, tests, and answers to the test. Units are planned for more than one lesson or class period of instruction.

Careful study of each instructional unit by the teacher will help to determine:

- A. The amount of material that can be covered in each class period
- B. The skills which must be demonstrated
 - 1. Supplies needed
 - 2. Equipment needed
 - 3. Amount of practice needed
 - 4. Amount of class time needed for demonstrations
- C. Supplementary materials such as pamphlets or filmstrips that must be ordered
- D. Resource people who must be contacted

Objectives

Each unit of instruction is based on performance objectives. These objectives state the goals of the course, thus providing a sense of direction and accomplishment for the student.

Performance objectives are stated in two forms: unit objectives, stating the subject matter to be covered in a unit of instruction; and specific objectives, stating the student performance necessary to reach the unit objective.

Since the objectives of the unit provide direction for the teaching-learning process, it is important for the teacher and students to have a common understanding of the intent of the objectives. A limited number of performance terms have been used in the objectives for this curriculum to assist in promoting the effectiveness of the communication among all individuals using the materials.

Reading of the objectives by the student should be followed by a class discussion to answer any questions concerning performance requirements for each instructional unit.

Teachers should feel free to add objectives which will fit the material to the needs of the students and community. When teachers add objectives, they should remember to supply the needed information, assignment and/or job sheets, and criterion tests.

Suggested Activities for the Instructor

Each unit of instruction has a suggested activities sheet outlining steps to follow in accomplishing specific objectives. Duties of instructors will vary according to the particular unit; however, for best use of the material they should include the following: provide students with objective sheet, information sheet, assignment sheets, and job sheets; preview filmstrips, make transparencies, and arrange for resource materials and people; discuss unit and specific objectives and information sheet; give test. Teachers are encouraged to use any additional instructional activities and teaching methods to aid students in accomplishing the objectives.

Information Sheets

Information sheets provide content essential for meeting the cognitive (knowledge) objectives in the unit. The teacher will find that the information sheets serve as an excellent guide for presenting the background knowledge necessary to develop the skill specified in the unit objective.

Students should read the information sheets before the information is discussed in class. Students may take additional notes on the information sheets.

Transparency Masters

Transparency masters provide information in a special way. The students may see as well as hear the material being presented, thus reinforcing the learning process. Transparencies may present new information or they may reinforce information presented in the information sheets. They are particularly effective when identification is necessary.

Transparencies should be made and placed in the notebook where they will be immediately available for use. Transparencies direct the class's attention to the topic of discussion. They should be left on the screen only when topics shown are under discussion.

Assignment Sheets

Assignment sheets give direction to study and furnish practice for paper and pencil activities to develop the knowledge which is a necessary prerequisite to skill development. These may be given to the student for completion in class or used for homework assignments. Answer sheets are provided which may be used by the student and/or teacher for checking student progress.

Job Sheets

Job sheets are an important segment of each unit. The instructor should be able to demonstrate the skills outlined in the job sheets. Procedures outlined in the job sheets give direction to the skill being taught and allow both student and teacher to check student progress toward the accomplishment of the skill. Job sheets provide a ready outline for students to follow if they have missed a demonstration. Job sheets also furnish potential employers with a picture of the skills being taught and the performances which might reasonably be expected from a person who has had this training.

Test and Evaluation

Paper-pencil and performance tests have been constructed to measure student achievement of each objective listed in the unit of instruction. Individual test items may be pulled out and used as a short test to determine student achievement of a particular objective. This kind of testing may be used as a daily quiz and will help the teacher spot difficulties being encountered by students in their efforts to accomplish the unit objective. Test items for objectives added by the teacher should be constructed and added to the test.

Test Answers

Test answers are provided for each unit. These may be used by the teacher and/or student for checking student achievement of the objectives.

SMALL ENGINE REPAIR

Two-Stroke and Four-Stroke Cycle

INSTRUCTIONAL/TASK ANALYSIS

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)

SECTION A — ORIENTATION

UNIT I: SAFETY

1. Terms and definitions
 2. Colors of the safety color code
 3. Steps for maintaining a safe and orderly shop
 4. Classes of fires
 5. Components of the fire triangle
 6. Types of fire extinguishers
 7. Safe and unsafe shop practices
 8. Consumer Product Safety Commission standards
 9. General shop safety rules
-
10. Complete a student safety pledge form
 11. Complete a student shop safety inspection checklist

UNIT II: TOOLS

1. Basic hand tools
2. Standard overhaul tools
3. Types of torque wrenches
4. Maintenance procedures for tools

**JOB TRAINING: What the
Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)**

**RELATED INFORMATION: What
the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)**

UNIT III: FASTENERS

1. Terms and definitions
 2. Qualities of satisfactory fasteners
 3. Typical fasteners
 4. Typical bolt head styles
 5. Measuring bolts and threads
 6. SAE grade and metric bolts
 7. Typical nuts
 8. Special purpose nuts
 9. Methods used to remove a seized nut
 10. Types of washers
 11. Tools used to restore bolt threads
 12. Tools to restore internal threads
 13. Devices for locking nuts or bolts
 14. Types of machine screw head designs
 15. Types of snap rings
-
16. Repair damaged threads using a thread repair kit

UNIT IV: MEASURING

1. Terms and definitions
2. Measuring instruments

INSTRUCTIONAL/TASK ANALYSIS

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

3. Steps for reading measuring instruments
4. Basic units of measurement found on rules
5. Major parts of vernier caliper
6. Major parts of an outside micrometer
7. Proper methods for checking accuracy of outside micrometers
8. Major parts of a dial indicator
9. Set up and use of a dial indicator

10. Read the plain micrometer settings
11. Read the vernier micrometer settings
12. Use a vernier caliper
13. Use a plain micrometer
14. Use a dial indicator
15. Use a telescoping gauge

SECTION B — BASIC SMALL ENGINE THEORY

UNIT I: ENGINE IDENTIFICATION AND INSPECTION

1. Terms and definitions
2. Characteristics of four-cycle and two-cycle engines
3. Meaning of the model, type and code numbers found on the engine
4. Engine information
5. Operating positions of the crankshaft

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

6. Complete an engine information form
7. Complete an information form on accessories and major units found on an engine

UNIT II: BASIC ENGINE PRINCIPLES AND DESIGN

1. Terms and definitions
2. Characteristics of energy
3. Types of energy
4. Forms of available energy
5. Types of motion
6. Parts of basic internal combustion engine
7. Process by which an internal combustion engine converts chemical energy into rotary motion
8. Types of engine design
9. Types of engine cooling systems
10. Calculate problems using the formula for work
11. Calculate problems using the formula for horsepower
12. Calculate problems using the formula for torque
13. Calculate problems using the formula for engine cubic inch displacement
14. Calculate problems using the formula for compression ratio

INSTRUCTIONAL/TASK ANALYSIS

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

UNIT III: PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — FOUR-STROKE CYCLE

1. Terms and definitions
2. Components of a four-stroke cycle engine
3. Operation of a four-stroke cycle engine
4. Factors that determine firing order of a multi-cylinder engine
5. Camshaft lobe
6. Valve timing and overlap
7. Types of valve arrangements

UNIT IV: PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — TWO-STROKE CYCLE

1. Terms and definitions
2. Components of a basic two-stroke cycle engine
3. Operation of a two-stroke cycle engine
4. Valves used in two-stroke cycle engines
5. Factors which determine timing on two-stroke cycle engines
6. Design variations
7. Features which make a two-stroke cycle engine preferable for many applications
8. Correct exhaust system design

**JOB TRAINING: What the
Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)**

**RELATED INFORMATION: What
the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)**

SECTION C — ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

UNIT I: BASIC ELECTRICITY

1. Terms and definitions
 2. Sources of electricity
 3. Parts of a basic circuit
 4. Good conductors and insulators of electricity
 5. Direct and alternating current
 6. Basic electrical schematic symbols
 7. Letter designations used in Ohm's law
 8. Ohm's law in triangle expression
 9. Ohm's law in letter formula
 10. Types of electrical circuits
 11. Rules for series circuits
 12. Rules for parallel circuits
 13. Factors affecting resistance in a conductor
 14. Relationship between electricity and magnetism
 15. Factors that determine the magnitude of induced voltage
 16. Instruments used in checking electrical circuits
-
17. Solve problems using Ohm's law formula

INSTRUCTIONAL/TASK ANALYSIS

JOB TRAINING: What the
Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What
the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)

18. Identify basic electrical schematic symbols
19. Measure resistance using an ohmmeter
20. Check continuity
21. Use an ohmmeter to test for defective diodes
22. Measure amperage in a circuit
23. Check voltage
24. Use a digital voltohmmeter

UNIT II: IGNITION SYSTEMS

1. Purpose of the ignition system
2. Types of ignition systems
3. Components of a primary and secondary battery ignition circuit
4. Components of a magneto ignition system
5. Components of a solid state ignition system
6. Components of a breakerless ignition system
7. Components of the ignition system
8. Operational steps of the ignition systems

**JOB TRAINING: What the
Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)**

9. Remove, service, and replace spark plugs
10. Remove and replace contact points and condenser
11. Test the coil, condenser, armature, and flywheel magnets
12. Test and adjust a solid state ignition system
13. Perform a coil power test
14. Check ignition timing using a dial indicator
15. Test condenser for leakage or short

**RELATED INFORMATION: What
the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)**

UNIT III: CHARGING SYSTEMS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Kinds of charging systems
3. Charging system components and functions
4. Operating stages of charging system
5. How a generator converts AC to DC
6. Parts of the alternator system
7. Advantages of an alternator over a generator
8. Reverse polarity
9. Remove and replace an alternator
10. Disassemble, check, and reassemble an alternator

INSTRUCTIONAL/TASK ANALYSIS

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

UNIT IV: STARTING SYSTEMS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Types of small gas engine starters
3. Components of the mechanical starting system
4. Components of the DC starting system
5. Remove, disassemble, test, service, and reassemble a starter
6. Replace starter rewind spring
7. Service the vertical pull starter

SECTION D — ENGINE SERVICE

UNIT I: PARTS MANAGEMENT

1. Terms and definitions
2. Types of information found in the parts catalog
3. Common parts and their abbreviations
4. Steps in using a parts catalog
5. How to price parts correctly
6. The microfiche system and how to use it
7. Advantages of using computers in inventory control and stocking
8. Advantages of good inventory control
9. Guidelines for taking a physical inventory
10. Complete a service order
11. Take a physical inventory of small engine parts

**JOB TRAINING: What the
Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)**

**RELATED INFORMATION: What
the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)**

UNIT II: LUBRICATION SYSTEMS

1. Terms and definitions
 2. Two types of lubrication systems
 3. Purpose of the crankcase breather
 4. Components of the crankcase breather
 5. Functions of engine
 6. Characteristics of a good engine oil
 7. SAE viscosity number
 8. API classification system
 9. Oil contaminants
 10. Oil additives
 11. Factual statements about oil
 12. Selection and use of oils for best engine performance
 13. Two cycle oil selection and use
-
14. Change engine oil and filter
 15. Service crankcase breather

UNIT III: COOLING SYSTEMS

1. Terms and definitions
 2. Functions of the cooling system
 3. Components of the cooling system
 4. Causes of overheating
-
5. Remove, clean, and replace air cooling parts

INSTRUCTIONAL/TASK ANALYSIS

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

UNIT IV: FUEL SYSTEMS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Purpose of the fuel system
3. Basic types of small engine fuel supply systems
4. Components of the fuel system
5. Types of carburetors
6. Types of fuel filters
7. Types of fuel pump action
8. Types of air cleaners
9. Parts of the float-type carburetor
10. Parts of the diaphragm-type carburetor
11. Carburetor systems
12. Service an air cleaner
13. Remove and replace a float type carburetor
14. Service a float-type carburetor
15. Remove, service, and replace a diaphragm-type carburetor
16. Remove and replace a fuel pump
17. Test and service a fuel pump
18. Service sediment bowl fuel strainer

**JOB TRAINING: What the
Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)**

**RELATED INFORMATION: What
the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)**

UNIT V: GOVERNOR SYSTEMS

1. Terms and definitions
 2. Purposes of the governor system
 3. Types of governor systems
 4. Components of the governor systems and their purposes
-
5. Inspect, adjust and repair an air vane governor
 6. Inspect and adjust external components of a mechanical governor with internal flyweights
 7. Repair internal components of a mechanical governor with internal flyweights

UNIT VI: EXHAUST SYSTEMS

1. Terms and definitions
 2. Results of running a worn or damaged exhaust system
 3. Types of exhaust systems
 4. Danger of operating an engine in a closed shop
-
5. Remove, service, and replace two-cycle exhaust system components

UNIT VII: TROUBLESHOOTING

1. Definition of troubleshooting
2. Requirements for an engine to run
3. Basic troubleshooting procedures
4. Importance of understanding troubleshooting procedures

INSTRUCTIONAL/TASK ANALYSIS

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

5. Solve problems using the small engine troubleshooting chart
6. Troubleshoot the fuel system
7. Troubleshoot the ignition system
8. Troubleshoot engine compression

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

UNIT VIII: OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE

1. Terms and definitions
2. Causes of engine problems
3. Parts of the piston and connecting rod assembly
4. Parts of the crankshaft assembly
5. Parts of a multi-piece crankshaft
6. Parts of the valve train
7. Disassemble a four-stroke cycle engine
8. Inspect and service a cylinder
9. Inspect and service the piston, rings, and connecting rod
10. Inspect and service a crankshaft and crankcase assembly
11. Inspect and service a valve assembly
12. Reassemble a four-stroke cycle engine

**JOB TRAINING: What the
Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)**

**RELATED INFORMATION: What
the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)**

UNIT IX: OVERHAUL TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE

1. Terms and definitions
 2. Causes of two-stroke cycle engine problems
 3. Parts of the two-stroke cycle piston and connecting rod assembly
 4. Parts of a two-stroke cycle crankshaft assembly
-
5. Disassemble, inspect, and service a two-stroke cycle engine
 6. Reassemble a two-stroke cycle engine

SMALL ENGINE REPAIR

Two-Stroke and Four-Stroke Cycle

TOOLS, EQUIPMENT, AND MATERIALS LIST

(NOTE: These are the recommended tools, materials, and equipment necessary for a small engine repair training program.)

Ammeter	Flywheel wrench
Armature grounder	Gasket (new)
Assortment of	Gasket for glass bowl
fractional drill bits	Gasket sealer
letter size drill bits	Gasket set for engines
machined parts	Grease
Awl	Hand sprayer (small)
Battery	Hardwood scraper
Bearing installation tools	Hone
Bearing pullers	Ignition wrench set
Carbon solvent	Lathe or vise
Carburetor cleaning fluid	Light oil, 5-10 weight
Carburetor repair kit	Magneto base
Carburetor screw drivers	Mallet
Circuits	Ohmmeter with test leads
containing less than 1 volt	Oilcan spout
containing variable resistance	Oil drain pan
Cleaning solvent	Oil seals
Clipboard	Operator's manuals (as appropriate)
Combination square	Outside micrometer
Compressed air	Parts cleaning basket
Compression gauge	Parts cleaning brush or rag
Cylinder vise support	Parts container
Deglazing tool	Parts scraper
Dial indicator	Piston stop
Dial indicator holder	Plain micrometer
Diaphragm	Plastigauge
Digital voltmeter	Portable drill
Diodes	Recoil spring (new)
Drain pan	Reject gauges
Drill motor	Ring expander
Engine oil (clean)	Ring groove cleaner
Engine stand	Safety glasses
Feeler gauges	
Flywheel holder	
Flywheel puller	

Safety gloves
Screwdriver
Seal installation tools
Seal removal tools
Service manuals (as appropriate)
Shop towels
Soft headed hammer
Square or scale
Square piece of square stock, 3/4"
Starter rope
Surface plate

Tachometer
Telescoping gauge
Test light
Test plug
Thread repair kit
Torque wrench
Tubing wrenches

Valve face grinding equipment
Valve guide reamers
Valve guide removal tools
Valve seat driver
Valve seat grinding equipment
Valve seat removal tools
Valve spring compressor
Valve spring tension tester
V-blocks (2)
Vernier caliper
Voltmeter

Water hose
Wire brush
Wire, various lengths
Wooden scraper
Wrench set

SMALL ENGINE REPAIR

Two-Stroke and Four-Stroke Cycle

REFERENCES

(NOTE: The following is an alphabetical list of references used in completing this text.)

A Look at Service Safety. Tecumseh, Michigan: Tecumseh Products Co.

American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials. *Small Engines Volume 1 and 2.* Athens, Georgia: AAVIM, 1974.

An Accident Prevention Program for School Shops and Laboratories. Washington, D.C.: Office of Education/U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

A Power Primer. Detroit, Michigan: General Motors.

Armstrong, Ivan. *Auto Mechanics, Volume One.* Stillwater, Oklahoma: Oklahoma State Department of Vocational and Technical Education, 1976.

Bear, W. Forrest and Thomas A. Hoerner. *Torque and Torque Wrenches.* St. Paul, Minnesota: Hobar Publications, 1971.

Bohn, Ralph C., and MacDonald, Angus J. *Power: Mechanics of Energy Control.* Bloomington, Illinois: McKnight and McKnight, 1970.

Chilton's Motorcycle Repair Manual. Radnor, Pennsylvania: Chilton's Motor Co., 1975.

Chilton's Yamaha Repair and Tune-Up Guide. Radnor, Pennsylvania: Chilton's Motor Co., 1973.

Chilton's Motorcycle Troubleshooting Guide. Radnor, Pennsylvania: Chilton Book Company, 1973.

Comprehensive Small Engine Repair. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

Crouse, William H. and Donald L. Anglin. *Small Engine Mechanics.* Second Edition. New York: Gregg Division, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1980.

Federal Register. Vol. 36, Number 105. Part II. Department of Education.

Foutes, William. *Diesel Mechanics: Fundamentals.* Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1982.

Fuels and Lubricants. Fifth Edition. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, 1983.

Fundamentals of Service: Fasteners. Moline, Illinois: Deere and Company, 1979.

Fundamentals of Service: Fuels, Lubricants, and Coolants. Moline, Illinois: Deere and Company, 1979.

Fuqua, Lou and Debbie. *Parts Specialist.* Stillwater, OK: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1982.

Harley-Davidson Service Manual: Sportster XL/XLH/XLCH, 1970 to 1973. Harley-Davidson Motor Co., Inc., 1972.

Hendrix, Laborn. *Cement Masonry.* Stillwater, Oklahoma: Curriculum and Instructional Materials Center/State Department of Vocational and Technical Education and Associated General Contractors, 1974.

Herd, Amon. *Small Engine Repair Series* (for Briggs and Stratton Engines). Columbia, Missouri: Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri-Columbia.

(NOTE: The following manuals from the above series were utilized in the development of this material.)

1. Carburetors: Service and Repair
2. Governors: Repair and Adjustment
3. Lubricating Small Engines
4. Maintenance Procedures: Height Adjustment, Blade Balancing and Sharpening, and Mufflers
5. Starters: Service and Repair
6. Troubleshooting Small Engines
7. Valves: Service and Repair

Hydraulics. Moline, Illinois: Deere and Company, 1979.

Parady, Harold W., and J. Howard Turner. *Electrical Energy.* Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, 1976.

Roth, Alfred C. and Ronald J. Baird. *Small Gas Engines.* South Holland, Illinois: The Goodheart-Wilcox Company, Inc., 1975.

Safety Practices and Procedures in School Shops. Division of Vocational Education/New Jersey Department of Education.

Safety Standards. Consumer Product Safety Commission.

Small Engines. Volume 1. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials.

Small Engines, Volume 2. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, 1971.

Small Engine Service Manual. Eleventh Edition. Kansas City, Missouri: Technical Publications Division, Intertec Publishing Corporation, 1976.

Small Engine Service Repair and Maintenance. St. Paul, Minnesota: Departments of Agricultural Education and Agricultural Engineering, University of Minnesota, 1968.

REFERENCES

Small Gasoline Engines. University Park, Pennsylvania: College of Agriculture, The Pennsylvania State University, 1969.

Stockei, Martin W. *Auto Mechanics Fundamentals.* South Holland, Illinois: Goodheart-Wilcox Co., 1982.

The ABC's of Fire Protection. Belleville, New Jersey: Kidde Portable Extinguishers/Walter Kidde and Co., Inc.

Twin Cylinder Repair Instructions. Milwaukee, Wisconsin: Briggs and Stratton Corporation, 1980.

SUGGESTED SUPPLEMENTAL MATERIALS

Publications

1. *Essentials of Fire Fighting.* Second Edition. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Fire Protection Publications, Oklahoma State University, 1983.
2. *Fire Service First Aid Practices.* Fifth Edition. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Fire Protection Publications, Oklahoma State University, 1977.
3. *Fire Fighter's Guide to Electrical Safety.* Columbia, Missouri: University of Missouri Fire Training Center.
4. Kigin, Dennis J. *Teacher Liability in School Shop Accidents.* Ann Arbor, Michigan: Prakken Publications, Inc., 1983.

Audiovisual aids

1. Film — "Housekeeping Means Safekeeping." Journal Films, Inc., 930 Pinter Avenue, Evanston, Illinois 60202.
2. Film — "Stop a Fire Before it Starts." Journal Films, 930 Pinter Avenue, Evanston, Illinois 60202.
3. Film — "The Last Round." Journal Films, 930 Pinter Avenue, Evanston, Illinois 60202.
4. Film — "We'll See Tomorrow." Journal Films, 930 Pinter Avenue, Evanston, Illinois 60202.
5. Film — "It's Up to You" Harvest Films, Inc., 309 Fifth Avenue, New York, New York 10016.
6. Film — "You Pack Your Own Chute." Ramic Productions, 4910 Birch, Newport Beach, California 92660.

TEST



g. _____ h. _____

5. Complete the following list of statements concerning how bolt sizes, lengths, and threads are measured by correctly filling in the blank.

- a. Size of bolt is determined by measuring the diameter of the thread end
- b. Length of bolt is determined by measuring the distance from bottom of the head to the end of the threads

c. _____

6. Select true statements concerning SAE grade and metric bolts by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ____ a. SAE grade and metric bolts are identified by markings on the heads of the bolt
- ____ b. Metric bolts use slashes for identification
- ____ c. SAE grade bolts use numbers for identification which correspond to bolt strength; increasing numbers represent increasing strength

7. Identify typical nuts.



a. _____ b. _____

TEST



c. _____



d. _____



e. _____



f. _____



g. _____



h. _____



i. _____



j. _____



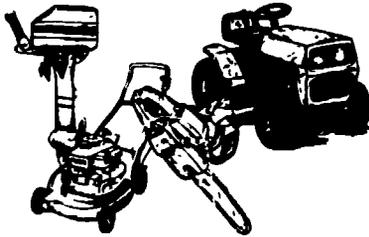
k. _____



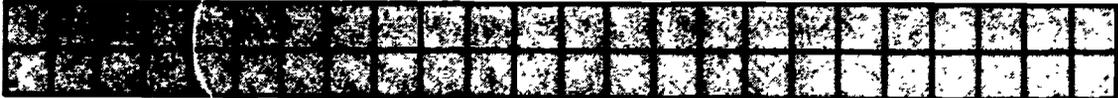
l. _____



m. _____



Safety Unit I-A



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to distinguish between safe and unsafe shop practices, select the fire extinguishers for the classes of fires, and match the colors of the safety color code with their applications. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 100 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to safety with their correct definitions.
2. Match the colors of the safety color code with their correct applications.
3. Complete a list of steps for maintaining a safe and orderly shop.
4. Match the classes of fires with their correct descriptions.
5. Identify the three components of the fire triangle.
6. Match types of fire extinguishers with their classes of fires.
7. Distinguish between safe and unsafe shop practices.
8. Complete a list of statements concerning Consumer Product Safety Commission standards.
9. List the four general shop safety rules.

OBJECTIVE SHEET

10. Complete a student safety pledge form (Assignment Sheet #1).
11. Complete a student shop safety inspection checklist (Assignment Sheet #2).

SAFETY UNIT I-A

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with assignment sheets.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Invite a small engine shop owner to talk with students about career opportunities and discuss the occupational outlook for small engine mechanics.

2. Have students make safety posters for use in shop area.

(NOTE: Have a poster contest to stimulate interest.)

3. Discuss procedures outlined in the assignment sheets.

4. Have fire chief demonstrate the proper use of fire extinguishers.

5. Show students how to check fire extinguishers.

6. Show safety films.

(NOTE: See suggested supplemental materials list for film titles.)

7. Discuss the fire evacuation plan for the classroom and shop and procedures for tornado alerts.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

8. Have a local Red Cross instructor demonstrate emergency first aid procedures, especially those related to treating cuts, electrical shock, and burns, and the use of cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (CPR).
 9. Demonstrate the procedure for lifting a heavy object.
 10. Discuss the Consumer Product Safety Commission standards and explain the liability of working with equipment.
 11. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.
- I. Give test.
 - J. Evaluate test.
 - K. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 1. TM 1 — The Fire Triangle
 2. TM 2 — Types of Fire Extinguishers
 3. TM 3 — Use Care with Gasoline
 4. TM 4 — Proper Use of Equipment
 5. TM 5 — Unplug Equipment Before Working
 6. TM 6 — Proper Handling of Batteries
- E. Assignment sheets
 1. Assignment Sheet #1 — Complete A Student Safety Pledge Form
 2. Assignment Sheet #2 — Complete A Student Shop Safety Inspection Checklist
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *The ABC's of Fire Protection*. Belleville, New Jersey: Kidde Portable Extinguishers/Walter Kidde and Co., Inc.
- B. *An Accident Prevention Program for School Shops and Laboratories*. Washington, D.C.: Office of Education/U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.
- C. *Federal Register*. Vol. 36, Number 105. Part II. Department of Education.
- D. *Safety Practices and Procedures in School Shops*. Division of Vocational Education/ New Jersey Department of Education.
- E. *A Look at Service Safety*. Tecumseh, Michigan: Tecumseh Products Co.
- F. *Safety Standards*. Consumer Product Safety Commission.

SUGGESTED SUPPLEMENTAL MATERIALS

A. Publications

- 1. *Essentials of Fire Fighting*. Second Edition. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Fire Protection Publications, Oklahoma State University, 1983.
- 2. *Fire Service First Aid Practices*. Fifth Edition. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Fire Protection Publications, Oklahoma State University, 1977.
- 3. *Fire Fighter's Guide to Electrical Safety*. Columbia, Missouri: University of Missouri Fire Training Center.

(NOTE: The above publications are available through Fire Protection Publications, Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74076, or call (405) 624-5723, or toll-free 1-800-654-4055 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- 4. Kigin, Dennis J. *Teacher Liability in School Shop Accidents*. Ann Arbor, Michigan: Prakken Publications, Inc., 1983.

B. Audiovisual aids

- 1. Film — "Housekeeping Means Safekeeping." Journal Films Inc., 930 Pinter Avenue, Evanston, Illinois 60202.
- 2. Film — "Stop a Fire Before It Starts." Journal Films, 930 Pinter Avenue, Evanston, Illinois 60202.
- 3. Film — "The Last Round." Journal Films, 930 Pinter Avenue, Evanston, Illinois 60202.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

4. Film — "We'll See Tomorrow." Journal Films, 930 Pinter Avenue, Evanston, Illinois 60202.
5. Film — "It's Up to You." Harvest Films, Inc., 309 Fifth Avenue, New York, New York 10016.
6. Film — "You Pack Your Own Chute." Ramic Productions, 4910 Birch, Newport Beach, California 92660.

(NOTE: Oklahoma teachers may order copies of the above films through the Resource Library, State Dept. of Vocational-Technical Education, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074.)

SAFETY UNIT I-A

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Safety — State or condition of being safe; freedom from danger, risk, or injury
- B. Accident — Any suddenly occurring, unintentional event which causes injury or property damage
- C. First aid — Immediate, temporary care given the victim of an accident or sudden illness until the services of a physician can be obtained
- D. Carbon monoxide — Colorless, odorless, very poisonous gas formed by incomplete combustion
- E. Battery — Number of complete electrical cells assembled in one housing or case; used in small engines to run and/or start the engine
- F. Service manual — Professional book giving exact details, tools, and procedures for servicing one or more types of engines
- G. Compressed oxygen — Oxygen processed for purity and compressed in bottles

Example: Oxygen bottle for oxyacetylene welding
- H. Carburetor and/or parts cleaner — Chemical solution for dissolving deposits such as grease, varnish, gum, and paint from parts without damage to the metal
- I. OSHA — Occupational Safety and Health Act
- J. CPSC — Consumer Product Safety Commission

II. Colors and applications of the safety color code

- A. Green — Designates location of safety and first aid equipment

(NOTE: This is applied to noncritical parts of equipment and machined surfaces, nameplates, and bearing surfaces.)
- B. Yellow — Designates caution

(NOTE: This is applied to operating levers, wheels, handles, and hazardous areas which may cause stumbling, falling or tripping.)

INFORMATION SHEET

- C. Orange — Designates dangerous parts of equipment which may cut, crush, shock, or otherwise injure

(NOTE: This is applied to electrical switches, interior surfaces of doors, on fuse and electrical power boxes, movable guards, and parts.)

- D. Red — Identifies the location of fire fighting equipment

(NOTE: Emergency fire exits shall be designated in red. Gasoline cans should be painted red with additional identification in the form of a yellow band around the can. Buttons or levers for electrical switches, used for stopping of machinery, should also be designated in red.)

- E. Blue — Designates caution against starting equipment while it is being worked on, or against the use of defective equipment

(NOTE: Blue tag should be lettered "Out of Order.")

- F. Ivory — Reflects light and "shows the way"

(NOTE: This is applied to label edges, vise jaws, and edges of tool rests.)

III. Steps for maintaining a safe and orderly shop

- A. Arrange machinery and equipment to permit safe, efficient work practices and ease in cleaning
- B. Stack or store materials and supplies safely in proper places
- C. Store tools and accessories safely in cabinets, racks, or other suitable devices
- D. Keep working areas and work benches clear and free of debris and other hazards
- E. Keep floors clean and free from obstructions and slippery substances
- F. Keep aisles, traffic areas, and exits free of material and other debris
- G. Properly dispose of combustible materials or store them in approved containers
- H. Store oily rags in self-closing or spring-lid metal containers
- I. Know the proper procedures to follow in keeping the work area clean and orderly
- J. Have sufficient brooms, brushes, or other housekeeping equipment readily available

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Class of fires

- A. Class A — Fires that occur in ordinary combustible materials
Example: Wood, rags, and rubbish
- B. Class B — Fires that occur with flammable liquids
Example: Gasoline, oil, grease, paints, and thinners
- C. Class C — Fires that occur in or near electrical equipment
Example: Motors, switch panels and electrical wiring
- D. Class D — Fires that occur with combustible metals
Example: Magnesium

V. Components of the fire triangle (Transparency 1)

- A. Fuel — Any combustible material
- B. Heat — Enough to raise the fuel to its ignition temperature
- C. Oxygen — Necessary to sustain combustion

(NOTE: To produce fire these three elements are necessary and must be present at the same time. If any one of these three is missing, a fire cannot be started. With the removal of any one of them, the fire will be extinguished.)

VI. Types of fire extinguishers and classes of fires (Transparency 2)

- A. Pressurized water — Used on Class A fires
(CAUTION: Never use this type of extinguisher on electrical fires.)
- B. Carbon dioxide (CO₂) — Used on Class B and C fires
- C. Dry chemical — Used on Class B, C, and D fires

(NOTE: On Class D fires, dry sand is as effective as any dry chemical other than Purple X. The cost of the Purple X chemical places it out of reach of most shops.)

- D. Foam — Used on Class A and B fires

(NOTE: This type operates by turning extinguisher upside down.)

INFORMATION SHEET

VII. Rules of safety

A. Fire prevention (Transparency 3)

1. Never strike sparks in a room or area where flammable liquids are used or stored
2. Use only approved safety cans for storage of flammable liquids and label them properly
3. Do not fill a hot or running engine with gasoline

(NOTE: It may spill and cause a fire.)
4. Use a commercial nonflammable cleaner for cleaning tools and parts

(NOTE: Do not use gasoline as a cleaner for tools or parts.)
5. Change any oil or gasoline soaked clothes immediately

(NOTE: A spark, a hot exhaust manifold, or an open flame can easily ignite such clothing.)
6. Learn the location and use of fire extinguishers for each class of fire
7. Dispose of oil or gasoline soaked rags and other debris in self-closing, air-tight metal containers provided for this purpose
8. Avoid placing live electrical wires near fuel lines, carburetors, gas tanks, or fuel storage containers

B. Oil and grease

1. Wipe up at once any spilled oil, grease, or other liquids

(NOTE: Use oil absorbent materials on the oil; this will prevent slipping.)
2. Do not direct oil spray toward other workers
3. Always have the proper container at hand to catch fuel, oil, or other fluids before attempting to drain them

(NOTE: When the fluid has been drained, move it to a safe place away from fire hazards.)

INFORMATION SHEET

4. Do not pour old oil on the ground, down a drain, or into a natural watershed

(NOTE: Consult your instructor regarding local ordinances for disposal of oil and grease.)

5. Do not oil an engine while it is running or attempt to oil or wipe moving parts

C. Eye protection — Always wear safety goggles while performing the following operations or as required by state and school laws or policy

1. Grinding, chipping, or drilling
2. Working under equipment
3. Operating abrasive discs
4. Charging batteries or using caustic cleaning compounds

(NOTE: Wear splash proof goggles when using acids or caustic liquids such as carburetor and parts cleaners.)

D. Electrical

1. Any and all dangerous conditions of equipment should be reported to the instructor
 2. Treat all electrical equipment as "live" until you have carefully checked
 3. Use third wire cords and plugs to ground all portable lights and tools
- (NOTE: This is not necessary on tools that are double insulated.)

4. Check the condition of cords, plugs, and sockets
5. Eliminate cords and wires as trip hazards
6. Coil and hang or store power tools and cords properly
7. Be prepared to turn off any electrical power switch and/or main switch in case of emergency

E. Air pressure

1. Never use compressed air equipment for dusting off clothing or work benches

(NOTE: Flying particles may be blown into the eyes or skin of yourself or others.)

INFORMATION SHEET

2. *Never* use compressed oxygen in place of compressed air
3. Use compressed air only for the purpose for which it is intended and in a manner approved by OSHA

F. Equipment (Transparencies 4 and 5)

1. Do not operate any machine without having been instructed in its use
2. *Never* start an engine before determining that everyone is in the clear
3. *Never* start an engine without knowing how to shut it off and being ready to do so if the need calls for it
4. Keep hands and clothing away from moving parts

(NOTE: A few of the moving parts that concern us are flywheels, blades, fans, gears, pulleys, belts, chains, generators, and power take off (PTO) shafts.)

5. *Never* run an engine in an inadequately ventilated place

(NOTE: Remember that carbon monoxide fumes from an engine can kill.)

6. Read and heed all notes and cautions

(NOTE: Throughout this material and in almost every service manual you will come across many passages with these headings.)

7. Read instructions thoroughly and follow them carefully

(NOTE: Do not attempt shortcuts.)

8. If you lack the proper tools or have doubts of your ability to do the job correctly, consult your instructor

9. Light your work area adequately

(NOTE: Have a portable safety light for working under equipment.)

10. Wear reasonably tight fitting, appropriate clothing while working in the shop

11. *Never* wear a necktie, necklace, or other loose apparel to work in the shop

(NOTE: Button sleeves and secure or cover long hair behind your head or up to prevent snagging in power equipment.)

INFORMATION SHEET

12. Always disconnect and ground the wire from the spark plug before inspecting or repairing any mower, tiller, saw, or other power equipment

(NOTE: The engine may accidentally start and cause serious injury.)

13. After reassembly be sure all parts, nuts, bolts, and screws are securely in place

(NOTE: Loose or missing parts can interfere with the operation of the equipment and damage or injury may result.)

14. Use ear protection as needed

G. Batteries (Transparency 6)

1. Handle batteries with care and use a battery strap or carrier
2. Always hold battery upright and set securely so there is no danger of spilling acid
3. Never smoke, use an open flame, or cause a spark on battery terminals especially on a charging battery or charging area

(NOTE: Hydrogen gas is given off in charging and it may explode and spatter acid.)

4. Wear protective clothing such as chemical goggles, rubber aprons, gloves and boots while working in battery charging operations
5. When mixing battery solutions, always pour acid into water

(NOTE: Reversing this mixing procedure to water into acid increases the possibility of splashing the acid on you.)

6. If acid splashes on you, flush immediately with plenty of cold water and notify instructor

(NOTE: This is especially important if acid gets in your eyes.)

7. Do not short circuit the battery to test it

(NOTE: A fire or explosion may result.)

8. Prevent accidental short circuits by disconnecting and insulating grounded battery cable before working on equipment
9. Use appropriate charging amperage when charging battery and remove all battery caps

10. Never charge a frozen battery

INFORMATION SHEET

VIII. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) standards

(NOTE: June 30, 1982, marked the last day a walk-behind power lawnmower could be built or imported for U.S. consumers without complying with the CPSC "Safety Standard for Walk-Behind Power Lawn Mowers.")

- A. The standard defines a "walk-behind lawnmower" as a grass cutting machine with a minimum cutting width of 12 inches

(NOTE: Commercial lawnmowers not customarily produced and sold to consumers are not subject to the standard.)

- B. The standard specifies performance requirements for most rotary lawnmowers manufactured or imported after June 30, 1982 and, in addition to the warning label, requires the following:

(NOTE: Prior to June 30, 1982, the first phase of the standard only required a warning label stating "Danger," "Keep hands and feet away")

1. Every affected rotary lawnmower must carry a certification label
2. The path of the blade on a rotary lawnmower be shielded in such a manner that the unit can successfully pass specified tests, including a "foot probe" test and an "obstruction" test
3. A blade control system is required that:
 - a. Prevents the blade from operating unless the operator actuates the control,
 - b. Requires continuous contact with the control to keep the blade in motion, and
 - c. Stops the blade completely within three seconds after release of the control

(NOTE: For electrically powered lawnmowers or electric start lawnmowers, the starting controls must be located within approximately 15" of the rear-most part of the lawnmower handle.)

4. All units must be equipped with a second control, either a separate safety lever or a device incorporated into the blade control, so that two distinct actions are required to restart the blade

INFORMATION SHEET

- C. The standard expressly applies to the manufacturer and initial sale to consumers; it is silent with respect to service and repair of so-called "compliance" units

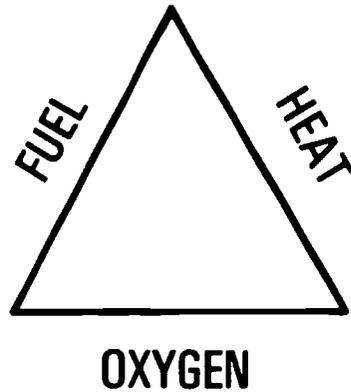
(NOTE: Any modification made by a dealer at the time of the sale to a consumer that renders the mower noncomplying would be a violation of the standard. However, if later the owner brings the lawnmower in for servicing and asks a dealer or repair person to disable a safety feature required by the standard, such an action would not be in violation of the standard since it does not involve a sale. Dealers are encouraged not to eliminate any safety feature since such action may create potential liability in the event someone is subsequently injured because a safety feature was missing.)

IX. General shop safety rules

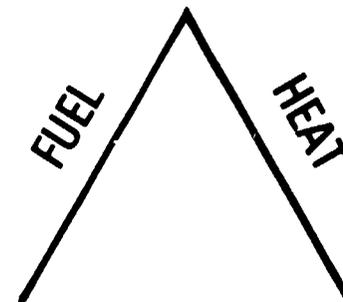
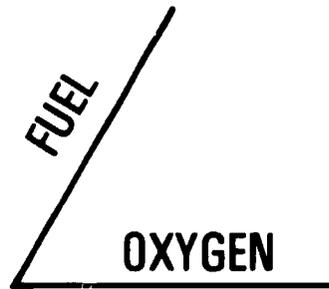
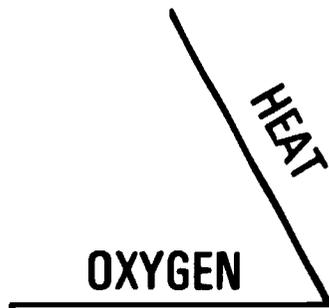
- A. All injuries should be treated at once
- B. Safety equipment and shoes should be used and worn as required
- C. Running and horseplay are not permitted in the shop at any time
- D. Any and all dangerous conditions or damaged equipment should be reported to the instructor

The Fire Triangle

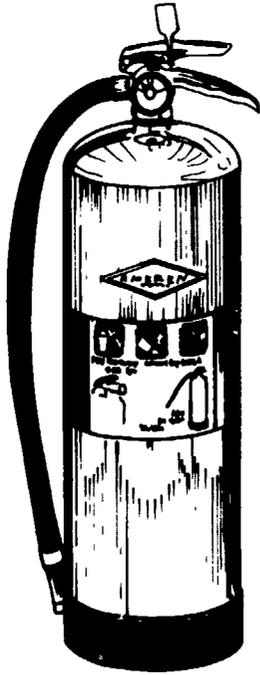
To produce fire, three things must be present at the same time.



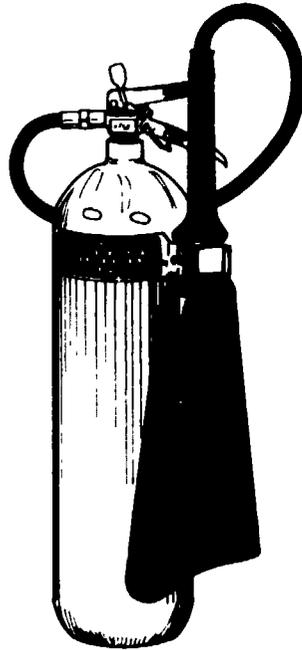
If any one of the three is missing, a fire cannot be started or, with the removal of any one, the fire will be extinguished.



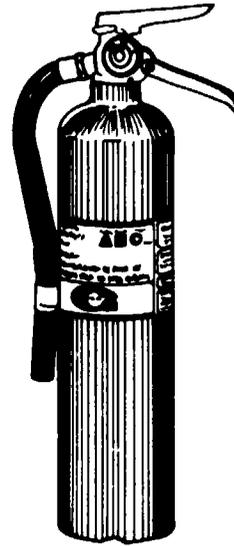
Types of Fire Extinguishers



Pressurized
Water



Carbon
Dioxide CO₂



Dry
Chemical



Foam

Use Care With Gasoline



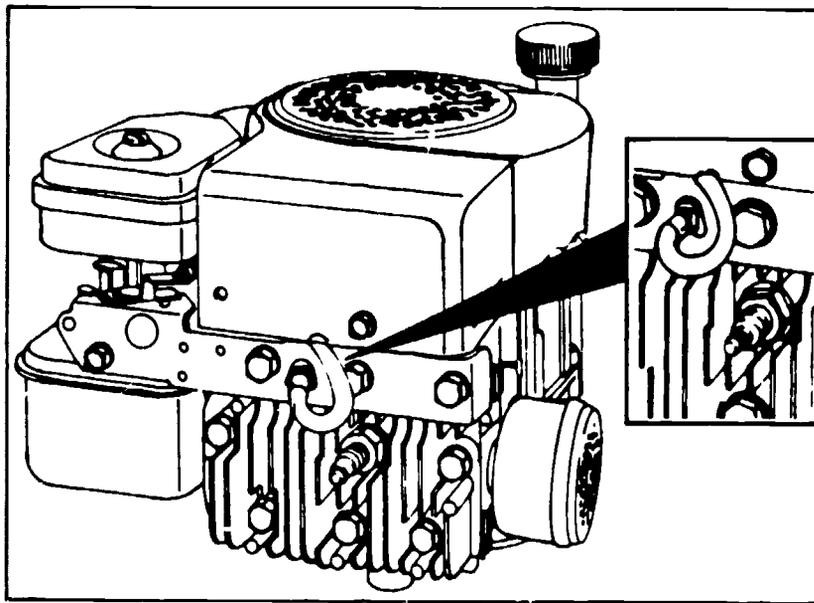
Proper Use of Equipment



**Read Your Operator's Manual Before
Operating Equipment**

**Do Not Wear Loose Fitting Clothing
Around Equipment, and Stay Clear of the Moving
Parts While the Engine Is Running**

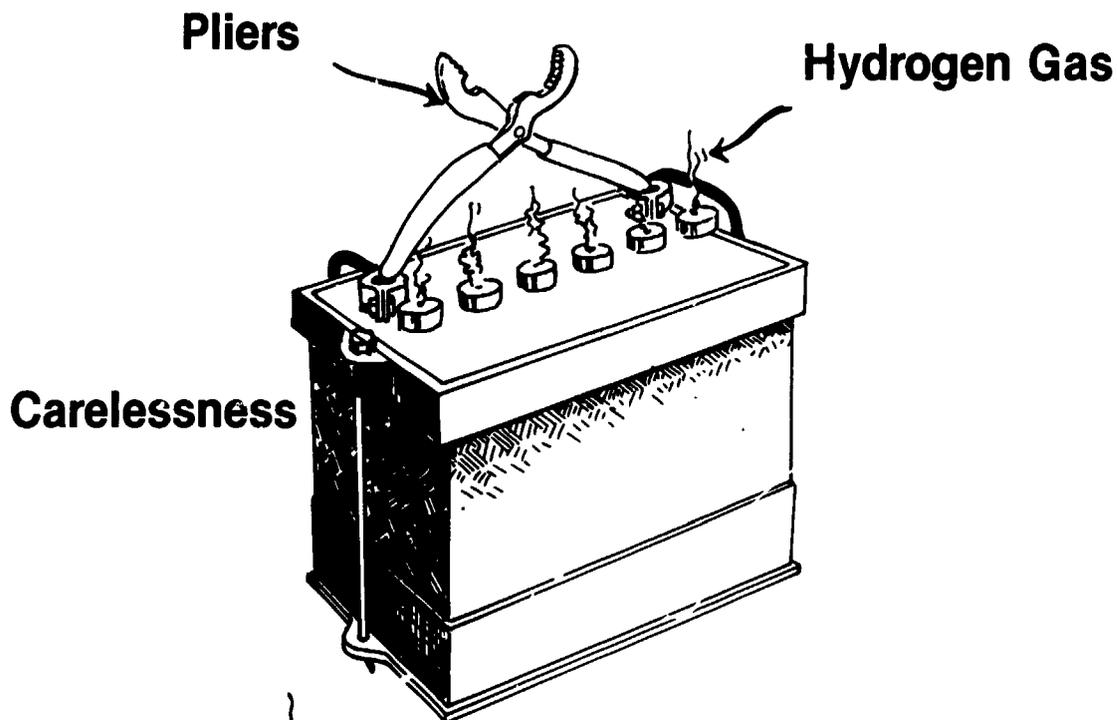
Unplug Equipment Before Working



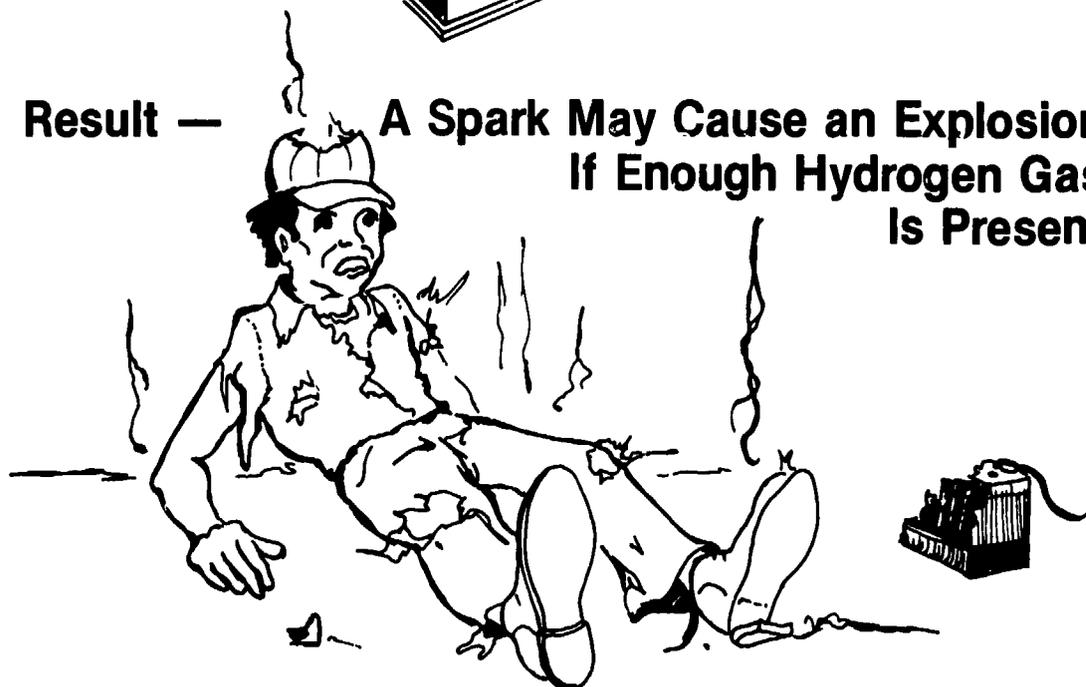
**Disconnect the Spark Plug Lead
to Keep the Engine From
Accidentally Starting**

Proper Handling of Batteries

Do Not Arc Terminals to Test — Or to Cause a Spark



Result — A Spark May Cause an Explosion If Enough Hydrogen Gas Is Present



SAFETY UNIT I-A

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1 — COMPLETE A STUDENT SAFETY PLEDGE FORM

Read and complete the following student safety pledge form by correctly filling in the blanks.

STUDENT SAFETY PLEDGE FORM

_____, who is enrolled in Vocational _____, will as a part of the shop experience, operate machines, providing that the parent or guardian gives written permission.

It is understood that each student will be given proper instruction, both in the use of the equipment and correct safety procedures concerning it, before being allowed to operate the machines. The student must assume responsibility for following safe practices; therefore, we ask that the student subscribe to the following safety pledge.

1. I PROMISE TO FOLLOW ALL SAFETY RULES FOR THE SHOP.
2. I PROMISE NEVER TO USE A MACHINE WITHOUT FIRST HAVING PERMISSION FROM THE INSTRUCTOR.
3. I WILL NOT ASK PERMISSION TO USE A PARTICULAR MACHINE UNLESS I HAVE BEEN INSTRUCTED IN ITS USE, AND HAVE MADE 100% ON THE SAFETY TEST FOR THAT MACHINE.
4. I WILL REPORT ANY ACCIDENT OR INJURY TO THE TEACHER IMMEDIATELY.

DATE _____ STUDENT'S SIGNATURE _____

I hereby give my consent to allow my son or daughter to operate all machines and equipment necessary in carrying out the requirements of the course in which he/she is enrolled.

DATE _____ PARENT'S SIGNATURE _____
(If required)

Parents are cordially invited to visit the shop to inspect the machines and to see them in operation.

SAFETY UNIT I-A

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2 — COMPLETE A STUDENT SHOP SAFETY INSPECTION CHECKLIST

Complete the following safety inspection checklist by physically conducting an inspection of the shop area.

CHECKING PROCEDURE

Draw a circle around the appropriate letter, using the following letter scheme:

- S — Satisfactory (needs no attention)
- A — Acceptable (needs some attention)
- U — Unsatisfactory (needs immediate attention)

Recommendations should be made in all cases where a "U" is circled. Space is provided at the end of the form for such comments.

A. GENERAL PHYSICAL CONDITION

- | | | |
|-----|--|-------|
| 1. | Machines, benches, and other equipment are arranged to conform to good safety practices | S A U |
| 2. | Condition of stairways and ramps | S A U |
| 3. | Condition of aisles | S A U |
| 4. | Condition of floors | S A U |
| 5. | Condition of walls, windows, and ceiling | S A U |
| 6. | Illumination is safe, sufficient, and well placed | S A U |
| 7. | Ventilation is adequate and proper for conditions | S A U |
| 8. | Temperature control | S A U |
| 9. | Fire extinguishers are of proper type, adequately supplied, properly located, and maintained | S A U |
| 10. | Teacher and students know location of and how to use proper type for various fires | S A U |
| 11. | Number and location of exits is adequate and properly identified | S A U |

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

- | | | |
|------------------------|--|-------|
| 12. | Walls are clear of objects that might fall | S A U |
| 13. | Utility lines are properly identified | S A U |
| 14. | Air in shop is free from excessive dust and smoke | S A U |
| 15. | Evaluation for the total rating of GENERAL PHYSICAL CONDITION | S A U |
|
 | | |
| B. HOUSEKEEPING | | |
| 1. | General appearance of orderliness | S A U |
| 2. | Adequate and proper storage space for tools and materials | S A U |
| 3. | Benches are kept orderly | S A U |
| 4. | Corners are clean and clear | S A U |
| 5. | Special tool racks, in orderly condition, and provided at benches and machines | S A U |
| 6. | Tool, supply, and/or material room is orderly | S A U |
| 7. | Sufficient scrap boxes are provided | S A U |
| 8. | Scrap stock is put in scrap boxes promptly | S A U |
| 9. | Materials are stored in an orderly and safe condition | S A U |
| 10. | A spring lid metal container is provided for waste and oily rags | S A U |
| 11. | Dangerous materials are stored in metal cabinets | S A U |
| 12. | Machines have been color conditioned | S A U |
| 13. | Safety cans are provided for flammable liquids | S A U |
| 14. | Floors are free of oil, water, and foreign material | S A U |
| 15. | Evaluation for the total rating for HOUSEKEEPING | S A U |

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

C. EQUIPMENT

- | | | |
|----|---|-------|
| 1. | Machines are arranged so that workers are protected from hazards of other machines and passing students | S A U |
| 2. | Danger zones are properly indicated and guarded | S A U |
| 3. | All gears and moving belts are protected by permanent enclosure guards | S A U |
| 4. | All equipment control switches are easily available to operator | S A U |
| 5. | Nonskid areas are provided around machines | S A U |
| 6. | Tools are kept sharp, clean, and in safe working order | S A U |
| 7. | Evaluation for the total rating for EQUIPMENT | S A U |

D. ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- | | | |
|----|---|-------|
| 1. | All switches are enclosed | S A U |
| 2. | There is a master control switch for all electrical installations | S A U |
| 3. | All electrical extension cords are in safe condition and are not carrying excessive loads | S A U |
| 4. | All machine switches are within easy reach of the operators | S A U |
| 5. | Individual cut-off switches are provided for each machine | S A U |
| 6. | No temporary wiring | S A U |
| 7. | Evaluation for the total rating for ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION | S A U |

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

E. PERSONAL PROTECTION (Read only)

1. Goggles or protective shields are provided and required for all work where eye hazards exist
2. If individual goggles are not provided, hoods and goggles are properly disinfected before use
3. Shields and goggles are provided for welding
4. Rings and other jewelry are removed by students when working in the shop
5. Proper kind of wearing apparel is worn for the job being done
6. Leggings and safety shoes are worn in special classes
7. Respirators are provided for dusty or toxic atmospheric conditions such as when spraying occurs in the finishing room
8. Provisions are made for cleaning and sterilizing respirators
9. Students are examined for safety knowledge
10. Sleeves are rolled above elbows when operating machines
11. Clothing of students is free from loose sleeves, floppy ties, and loose coats

RECOMMENDATIONS

SAFETY UNIT I-A

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|------------------------------------|
| _____a. | State or condition of being safe; freedom from danger, risk, or injury | 1. OSHA |
| _____b. | Any suddenly occurring, unintentional event which causes injury or property damage | 2. Battery |
| _____c. | Occupational Safety and Health Act | 3. CPSC |
| _____d. | Immediate, temporary care given the victim of an accident or sudden illness until the services of a physician can be obtained | 4. Accident |
| _____e. | Chemical solution for dissolving deposits such as grease, varnish, gum and paint from parts without damage to the metal | 5. First aid |
| _____f. | Professional book giving exact details, tools, and procedures for servicing one or more types of engines | 6. Carbon monoxide |
| _____g. | Oxygen processed for purity and compressed in bottles | 7. Service manual |
| _____h. | Number of complete electrical cells assembled in one housing or case; used in small engines to run and/or start the engine | 8. Compressed oxygen |
| _____i. | Colorless, odorless, very poisonous gas formed by incomplete combustion | 9. Carburetor and/or parts cleaner |
| _____j. | Consumer Product Safety Commission | 10. Safety |

TEST

2. Match the colors of the safety color code on the right with their correct applications.

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| _____a. Designates caution | 1. Green |
| _____b. Identifies the location of fire fighting equipment | 2. Ivory |
| _____c. Designates location of safety and first aid equipment | 3. Orange |
| _____d. Designates dangerous parts of equipment which may cut, crush, shock, or otherwise injure | 4. Yellow |
| _____e. Designates caution against starting equipment while it is being worked on, or against the use of defective equipment | 5. Blue |
| _____f. Reflects light and "shows the way" | 6. Red |

3. Complete the following list of steps for maintaining a safe and orderly shop by correctly filling in the blanks.

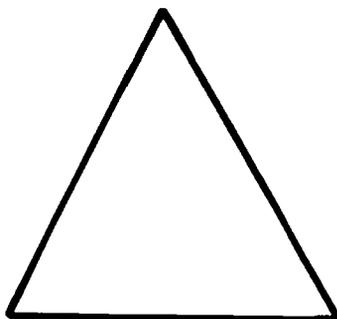
- a. Arrange machinery and equipment to permit safe, efficient work practices and _____
- b. _____ or store materials and supplies safely in proper places
- c. Store tools and accessories safely in _____, racks, or other suitable devices
- d. Keep working areas and work benches clear and free of debris and other _____
- e. Keep floors clean and free from obstructions and _____ substances
- f. Keep aisles, traffic areas, and _____ free of material and other debris
- g. Properly dispose of _____ materials or store them in approved containers
- h. Store oily rags in self-closing or spring-lid _____ containers
- i. Know the proper procedures to follow in keeping the work area clean and _____
- j. Have sufficient brooms, brushes, or other _____ equipment readily available

TEST

4. Match the classes of fire on the right with their correct descriptions.

- | | | |
|---------|--|------------|
| _____a. | Fires that occur with flammable liquids | 1. Class A |
| _____b. | Fires that occur in ordinary combustible materials | 2. Class B |
| _____c. | Fires that occur in or near electrical equipment | 3. Class C |
| _____d. | Fires that occur with combustible metals | 4. Class D |

5. Identify the three components of the fire triangle.



6. Match types of fire extinguishers on the right with their classes of fires.

- | | | |
|---------|---------|--------------------------------------|
| _____a. | Class B | 1. Pressurized water |
| _____b. | Class C | 2. Carbon dioxide (CO ₂) |
| _____c. | Class A | 3. Dry chemical |
| _____d. | Class D | 4. Foam |

TEST

7. Distinguish between safe and unsafe shop practices by placing an "S" in the appropriate blanks if the practice is safe and a "U" if it is unsafe.
- a. Fire prevention
- ____1) Never strike sparks in a room or area where flammable liquids are used or stored
 - ____2) Use only approved safety cans for storage of flammable liquids and label them properly
 - ____3) Gasoline may be poured into an engine at any time
 - ____4) Wash engine parts in a pan of gasoline
 - ____5) Change any oil or gasoline soaked clothes immediately
 - ____6) Learn the location and use of fire extinguishers for each class of fire
 - ____7) Dispose of oily rags by throwing them in a corner or under a table out of the way
 - ____8) Avoid placing live electrical wires near fuel lines, carburetors, gas tanks, or fuel storage containers
- b. Oil and grease
- ____1) When a job is messy and more oil will be spilled on the floor, wait until the job is completed to use oil absorbent materials to clean the floor
 - ____2) Do not direct oil spray toward other workers
 - ____3) Always have the proper container at hand to catch fuel, oil, or other fluids before attempting to drain them
 - ____4) Pour old oil down the drain
 - ____5) The best time to do a good oil job is when the machine or engine is running
- c. Eye protection — Always use safety goggles while performing the following operations or as required by state and school laws or policy:
- ____1) Grinding, chipping, or drilling
 - ____2) Working under equipment
 - ____3) Operating abrasive discs
 - ____4) Charging batteries or using caustic cleaning compounds

TEST**d. Electrical**

- _____1) *Any and all* dangerous conditions of equipment should be reported to the instructor
- _____2) Treat all electrical equipment as "live" until you have carefully checked
- _____3) Use two wire cords and plugs to ground for all portable lights and tools
- _____4) Check the condition of cords, plugs, and sockets
- _____5) Eliminate cords and wires as trip hazards
- _____6) Leave out tools and pieces of equipment where you finish work today so you can quickly resume work tomorrow
- _____7) Be prepared to turn off any electrical power switch and/or main switch in case of emergency

e. Air pressure

- _____1) Use compressed air equipment for dusting off clothing and work benches
- _____2) *Never* use compressed oxygen in place of compressed air
- _____3) Use compressed air only for the purpose for which it is intended and in a manner approved by OSHA

f. Equipment

- _____1) Do not operate any machine without having been instructed in its use
- _____2) Start an engine when *you* are ready and hope that everyone is in the clear
- _____3) *Never* start an engine without knowing how to shut it off and being ready to do so if the need calls for it
- _____4) Keep hands and clothing away from moving parts
- _____5) *Never* run an engine in an inadequately ventilated place
- _____6) Read and heed all notes and cautions
- _____7) Read instructions thoroughly and follow them carefully
- _____8) If you lack the proper tools or have doubts of your ability to do the job correctly, consult your instructor
- _____9) Light your work area adequately
- _____10) Wear reasonably tight fitting shorts or cutoffs while working in the shop

TEST

- ____11) Wear a necktie and loose fitting apparel to work in the shop
- ____12) Always disconnect and ground the wire from the spark plug before inspecting or repairing any mower, tiller, saw, or other equipment
- ____13) After reassembly be sure all parts, nuts, bolts, and screws are securely in place

g. Batteries

- ____1) Handle batteries with care and use a battery stran or carrier
- ____2) Always hold battery upright and set securely so there is no danger of spilling acid
- ____3) Disconnect the battery charger from the terminals before shutting off the machine, even though it may spark
- ____4) Wear protective clothing such as chemical goggles, rubber aprons, gloves, and boots while working in battery charging operations
- ____5) If acid splashes on you, flush immediately with plenty of water and notify instructor
- ____6) When mixing battery solutions, always pour water into acid
- ____7) Test a battery with a pair of pliers, between the terminals, if it is believed to be dead
- ____8) Prevent accidental short circuits by disconnecting and insulating grounded battery cable before working on equipment
- ____9) Use appropriate charging amperage when charging battery and remove all battery caps
- ____10) Charge a frozen battery

8. Complete the following list of statements concerning Consumer Product Safety Commission standards by correctly filling in the blanks.
- a. The standard defines a "walk-behind lawnmower" as a grass cutting machine with a minimum cutting width of _____ inches
 - b. The standard specifies performance requirements for most rotary lawnmowers manufactured or imported after _____
 - c. Every affected rotary lawnmower must carry a _____ label
 - d. A blade control system is required that stops the blade completely within _____ seconds after release of control

TEST

- e. The standard expressly applies to the _____ and initial sale to consumers; it is silent with respect to service and repair of so-called "compliance" units
9. List the four general shop safety rules.
- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____

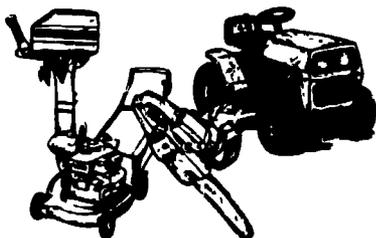
(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

10. Complete a student safety pledge form (Assignment Sheet #1).
11. Complete a student shop safety inspection checklist (Assignment Sheet #2).

SAFETY UNIT I-A

ANSWERS TO TEST

- | | | | | |
|----|----|------------------|------|---|
| 1. | a. | 10 | f. | 7 |
| | b. | 4 | g. | 8 |
| | c. | 1 | h. | 2 |
| | d. | 5 | i. | 6 |
| | e. | 9 | j. | 3 |
| 2. | a. | 4 | d. | 3 |
| | b. | 6 | e. | 5 |
| | c. | 1 | f. | 2 |
| 3. | a. | Ease in cleaning | | |
| | b. | Stack | | |
| | c. | Cabinets | | |
| | d. | Hazards | | |
| | e. | Slippery | | |
| | f. | Exits | | |
| | g. | Combustible | | |
| | h. | Metal | | |
| | i. | Orderly | | |
| | j. | Housekeeping | | |
| 4. | a. | 2 | | |
| | b. | 1 | | |
| | c. | 3 | | |
| | d. | 4 | | |
| 5. | a. | Fuel | | |
| | b. | Heat | | |
| | c. | Oxygen | | |
| 6. | a. | 2, 3, and 4 | | |
| | b. | 2 and 3 | | |
| | c. | 1 and 4 | | |
| | d. | 3 | | |
| 7. | a. | 1) S | 5) S | |
| | | 2) S | 6) S | |
| | | 3) U | 7) U | |
| | | 4) U | 8) S | |
| | b. | 1) U | 4) U | |
| | | 2) S | 5) U | |
| | | 3) S | | |



Tools Unit II-A



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify tools used for small engine repair. Competency will be demonstrated by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Identify the basic hand tools needed for maintenance and repair of small engines.
2. Identify the tools used for overhaul of small engines.
3. Identify the types of torque wrenches.
4. Complete a list of statements concerning maintenance procedures for tools.

TOOLS UNIT II-A

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.
D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.
E. Provide students with information sheet.
F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:
1. Show students actual tools then test them on their ability to identify them.
 2. Furnish tool catalogs with prices so that students can estimate the cost of furnishing a small engine repair shop.
 3. Demonstrate the use and maintenance of tools.
 4. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement of the unit.
- H. Give test.
I. Evaluate test.
J. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
B. Suggested activities

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Basic Hand Tools
 - 2. TM 2 — Basic Hand Tools (Continued)
 - 3. TM 3 — Basic Hand Tools (Continued)
 - 4. TM 4 — Basic Hand Tools (Continued)
 - 5. TM 5 — Basic Hand Tools (Continued)
 - 6. TM 6 — Overhaul Tools
 - 7. TM 7 — Overhaul Tools (Continued)
 - 8. TM 8 — Overhaul Tools (Continued)
 - 9. TM 9 — Overhaul Tools (Continued)
 - 10. TM 10 — Torque Wrenches
- E. Test
- F. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials. *Small Engines Volume 1 and 2*. Athens, Georgia: AAVIM, 1974.
- B. Bear, W. Forrest and Thomas A. Hoerner. *Torque and Torque Wrenches*. St. Paul, Minnesota: Hobar Publications, 1971.
- C. Crouse, William H. and Donald L. Anglin. *Small Engine Mechanics*. Second Edition. New York: Gregg Division, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1980.
- D. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

TOOLS UNIT II-A

INFORMATION SHEET

- I. **Basic hand tools needed for maintenance and repair (Transparencies 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5)**
 - A. **Basic hand tool assortment**
 1. **Hammers**
 - a. **Ball peen - one pound**
 - b. **Soft face**
 2. **Screwdrivers**
 - a. **Standard slot type**
 - 1) **4 inch**
 - 2) **1 1/2 inch**
 - 3) **6 inch**
 - 4) **8 inch**
 - b. **Phillips**
 - 1) **1 1/2 inch**
 - 2) **6 inch**
 - 3) **8 inch**
 - c. **Offset**
 - d. **Clutch head**
 3. **Pliers**
 - a. **Slip joint**
 - b. **Diagonal cutting**
 - c. **Lock ring**
 - d. **Needle nose**

INFORMATION SHEET

- e. Snap ring
- f. Vise grip
- 4. Wrenches
 - a. Adjustable
 - b. Hex set including $\frac{5}{16}$ " to $\frac{1}{4}$ "
(NOTE: This is also called an allen wrench.)
 - c. Open-end set including $\frac{3}{8}$ ", $\frac{7}{16}$ ", $\frac{1}{2}$ ", $\frac{5}{8}$ ", and $\frac{9}{16}$ "
 - d. Torque — Inch pound $\frac{3}{8}$ " drive
 - e. Combination set $\frac{7}{16}$ " to $\frac{7}{8}$ "
 - f. Open-end set — Metric
- 5. Center punch
- 6. Cold chisel
- 7. Universal joint
- 8. Reversible ratchets
 - a. $\frac{3}{8}$ " drive
 - b. $\frac{1}{4}$ " drive
- 9. Socket sets
 - a. $\frac{3}{8}$ " drive standard
 - b. $\frac{1}{4}$ " drive standard
 - c. $\frac{3}{8}$ " drive metric
 - d. Spark plug deep — $\frac{13}{16}$ " by $\frac{3}{8}$ " drive and $\frac{3}{4}$ " by $\frac{3}{8}$ "
- 10. Feeler gauges
 - a. Flnt
 - b. Wire
- 11. File

INFORMATION SHEET

12. Parts scraper
13. Clutch wrench — Clutch wrench

B. Other tools

1. Battery clamp puller
2. Battery hydrometer
3. Battery post cleaner
4. Battery syringe
5. Parts cleaning brush
6. Wire brush
7. Parts washing container
8. Funnel
9. Flywheel holder
10. Ignition wrench set
11. Thread repair insert

II. Standard overhaul tools (Transparencies 6, 7, 8, and 9)

- A. Boring bar
- B. Piston ring expander
- C. Piston ring groove cleaner
- D. Keeper retainer
- E. Punch and chisel set
- F. Ridge reamer
- G. Ring compressor
- H. Ring groove gauge
- I. Twist drill bit
- J. Valve grinder

INFORMATION SHEET

- K. Valve lapping tools
 - 1. Wood handle
 - 2. Crank handle
- L. Valve seat cutters
 - 1. Manual
 - 2. Power
- M. Valve spring compressor
 - 1. Small engine
 - 2. Lever type
- N. Telescoping gauge
- O. Valve guide reamer
- P. Pullers
 - 1. Bearing
 - 2. Flywheel
- Q. Precision hone
- R. Deglazer

III. Types of torque wrenches (Transparency 10)

- A. Signaling

(NOTE: This is a click type wrench which signals to the operator when the correct torque is reached.)
- B. Direct reading

(NOTE: The torque is read directly from a dial indicator or on a scale from a pointer.)
- C. Dial indicator

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Maintenance procedures for tools

A. Screwdrivers

1. Regrind worn or damaged flat blade screwdrivers
2. Discard phillips screwdrivers with damaged heads

B. Pliers

1. Keep pliers clean and rust free
2. Keep cutting edges sharp and smooth
3. Keep pliers working freely
4. Repair or replace damaged handle insulation

C. Adjustable wrench — Keep worm gears clean and lubricated

D. All tools — Identify tools by labeling them with an electric pencil or scratch awl

(NOTE: An identification mark can help you distinguish between your tools and someone elses.)

Basic Hand Tools

Hammers

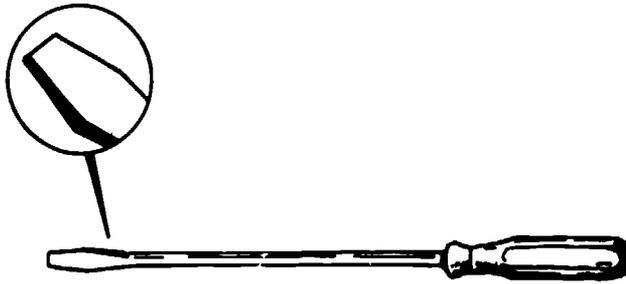


Ball Peen

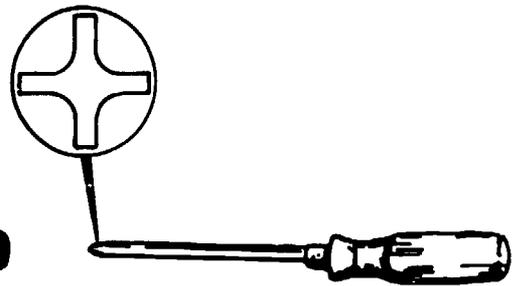


**Soft Face
(Rubber Mallet)**

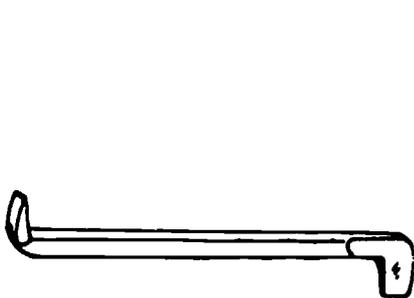
Screwdrivers



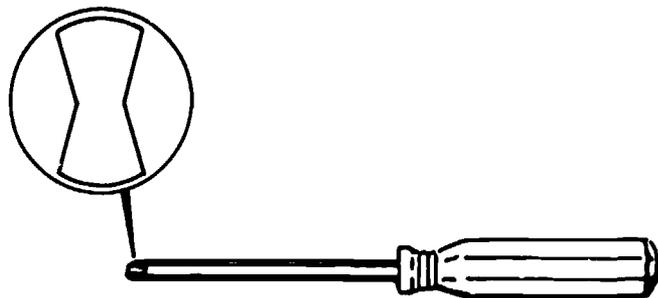
Standard Slot Type



Phillips



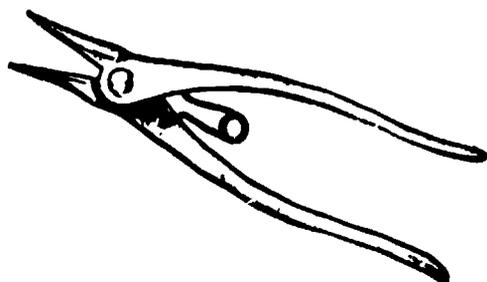
Offset



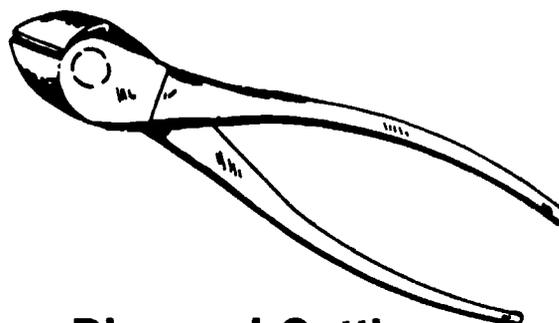
Clutch Head

Basic Hand Tools (Continued)

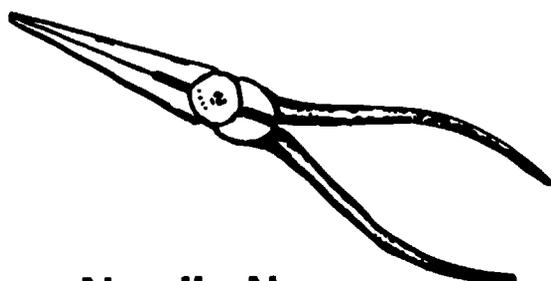
Pliers



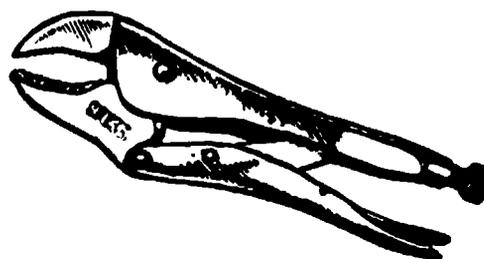
Lock Ring



Diagonal Cutting



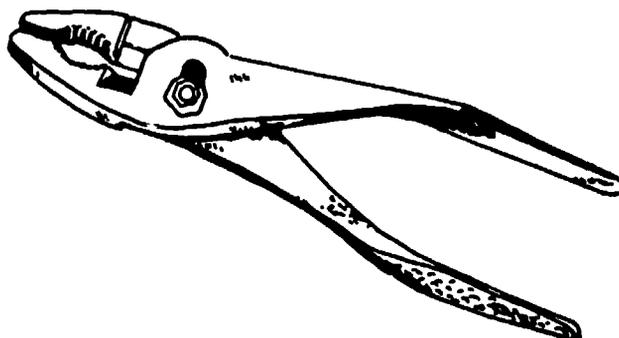
Needle Nose



Vise Grip



Snap Ring



Slip Joint

Basic Hand Tools (Continued)

Wrenches



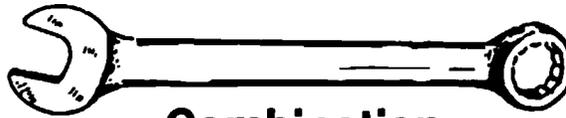
Adjustable



Hex



Open-End



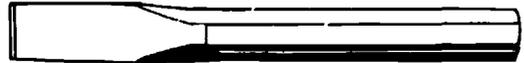
Combination



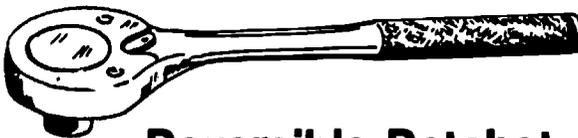
Torque



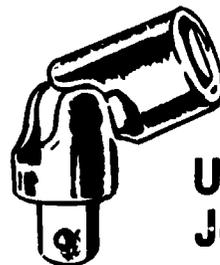
Center Punch



Cold Chisel

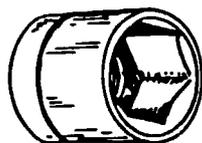


Reversible Ratchet

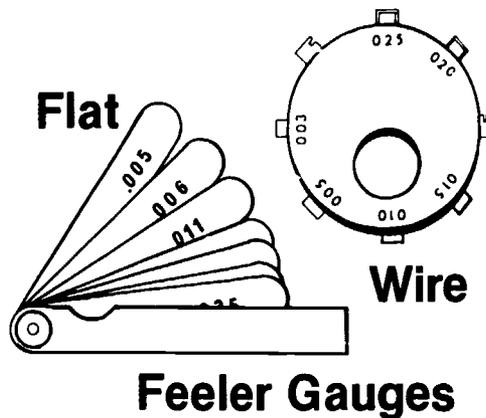


**Universal
Joint**

Basic Hand Tools (Continued)



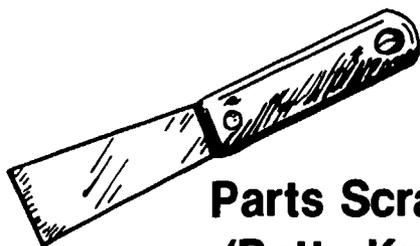
Socket



Flat

Wire

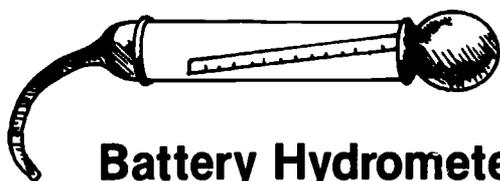
Feeler Gauges



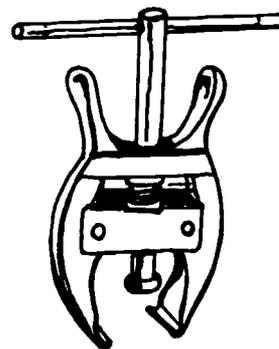
**Parts Scraper
(Putty Knife)**



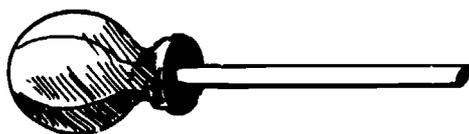
File



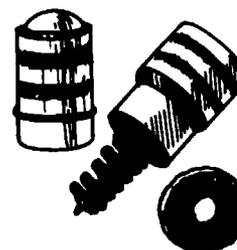
Battery Hydrometer



Battery Clamp Puller

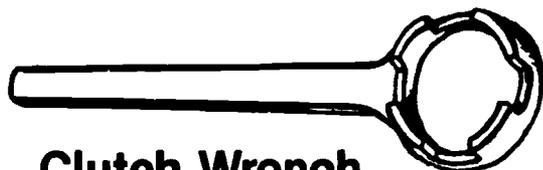


Battery Syringe



Battery Post Cleaner

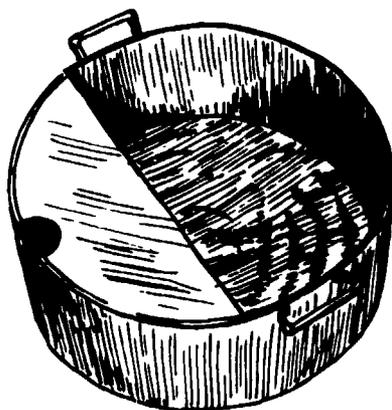
Basic Hand Tools (Continued)



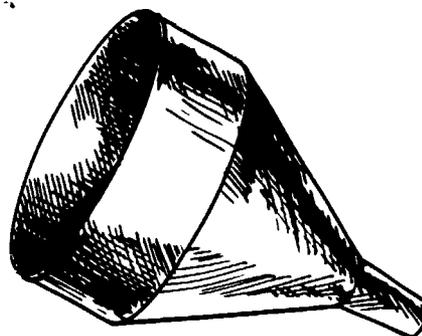
Clutch Wrench



Wire Brush



Parts Washing Container



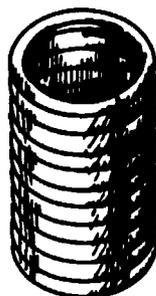
Funnel



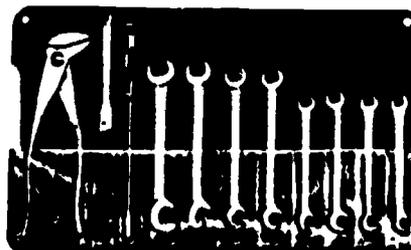
Flywheel Holder



Parts Cleaning Brush

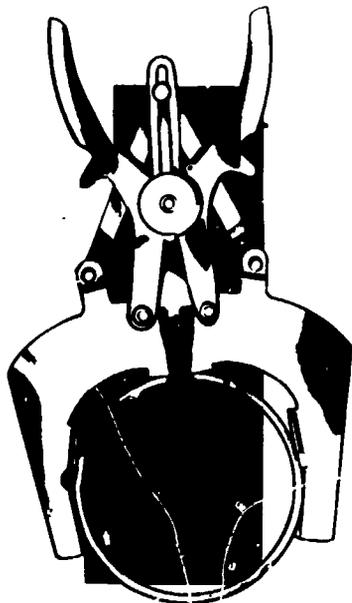


**Thread Repair
Insert**

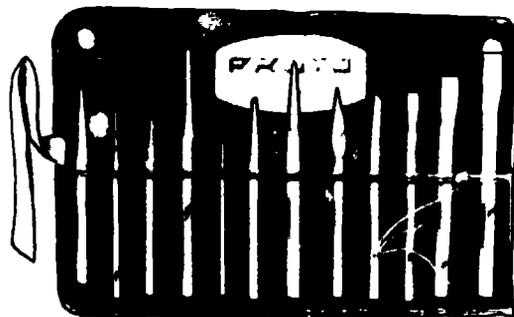


Ignition Wrench Set

Overhaul Tools



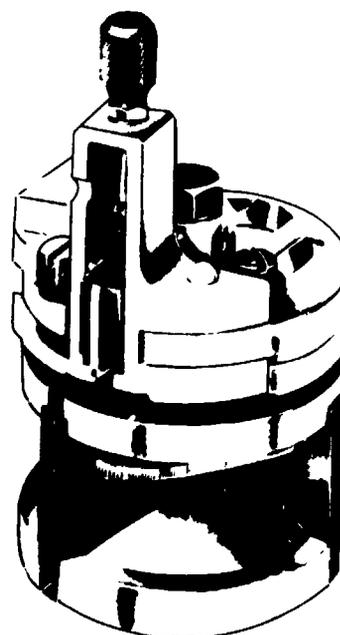
Piston Ring Expander



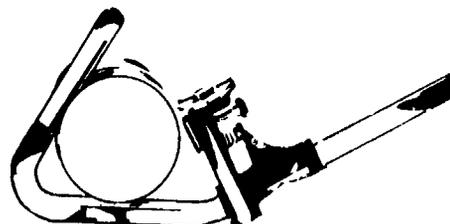
Punch and Chisel Set



Boring Bar

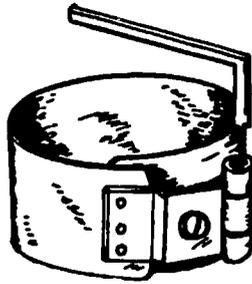


Ridge Reamer

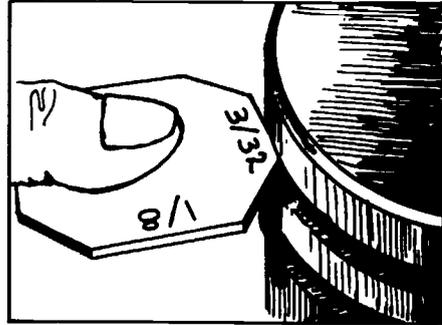


Piston Ring Groove Cleaner

Overhaul Tools (Continued)



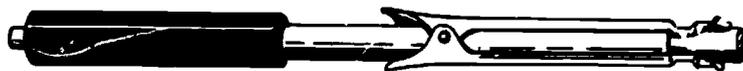
Ring Compressor



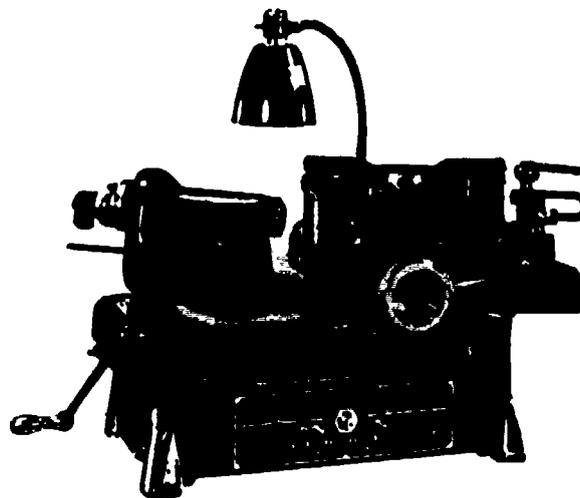
Ring Groove Gauge



Twist Drill Bit



Keeper Retainer



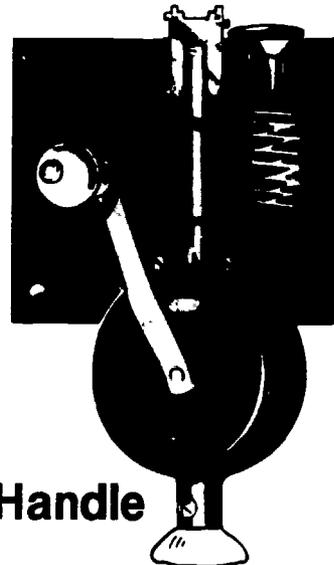
Valve Grinder

Overhaul Tools (Continued)

Valve Lapping Tool

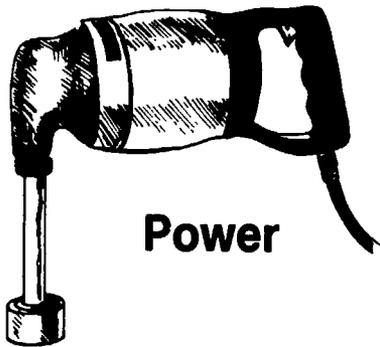


Wood Handle

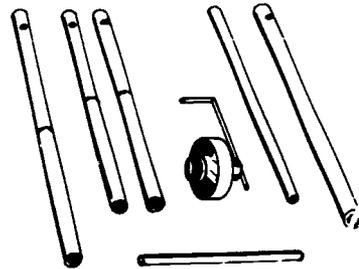


Crank Handle

Valve Seat Cutter

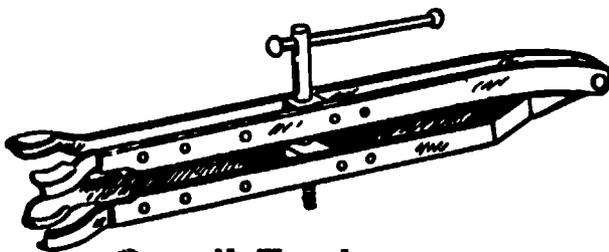


Power

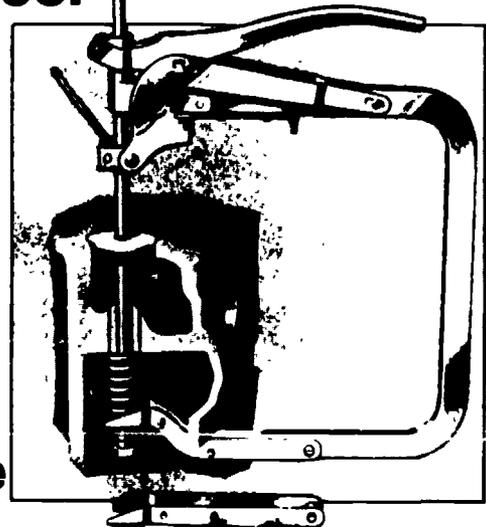


Manual

Valve Spring Compressor

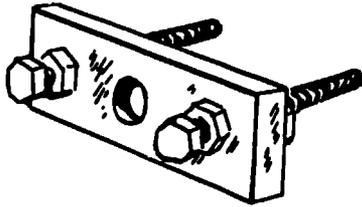


Small Engine

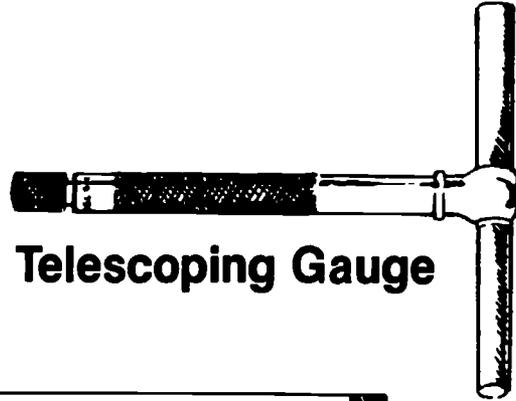


Lever Type

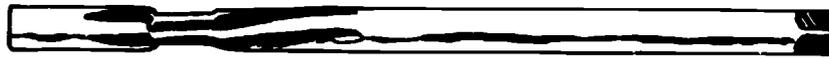
Overhaul Tools (Continued)



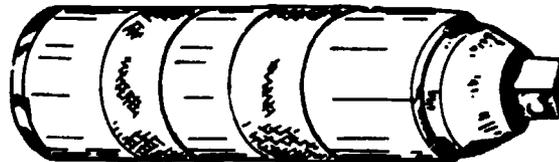
Flywheel Puller



Telescoping Gauge



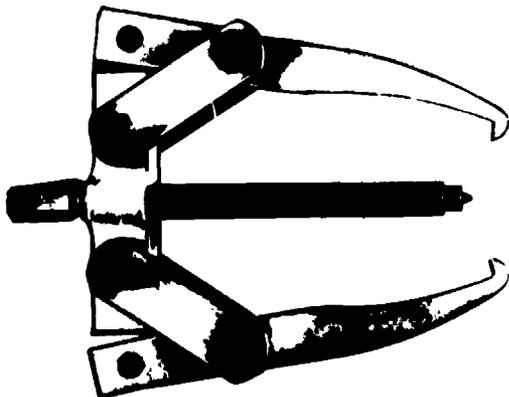
Valve Guide Reamer



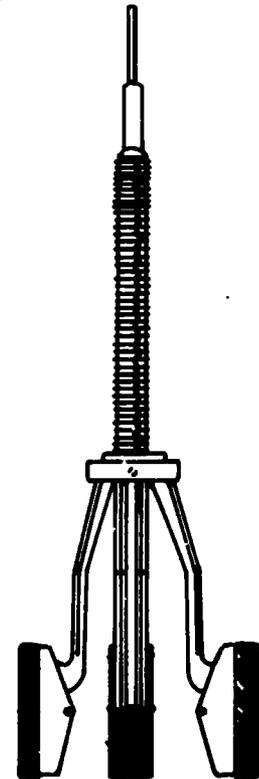
Impact Driver



Deglazer

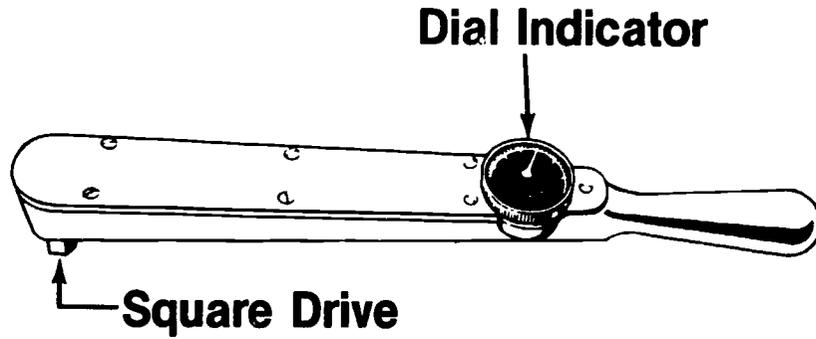


Bearing Puller

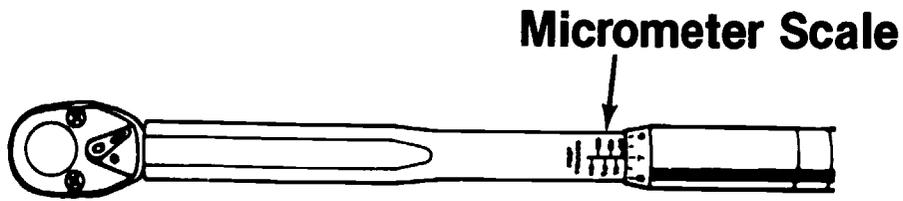


Precision Hone

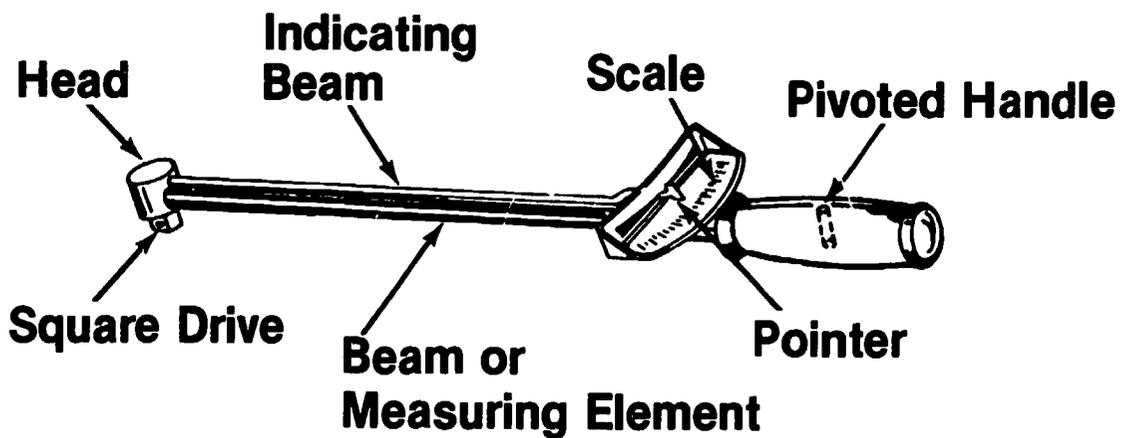
Torque Wrenches



Dial Indicator



Signaling



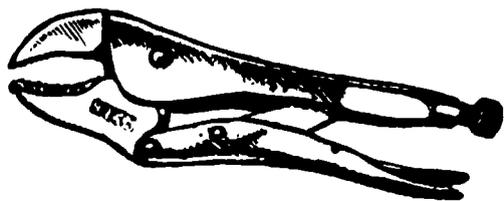
Direct Reading

TOOLS UNIT II-A

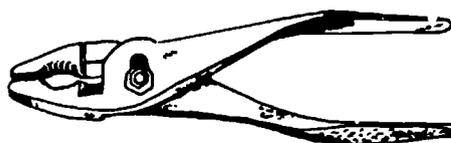
NAME _____

TEST

1. Identify the basic hand tools needed for maintenance and repair of small engines.



a. _____



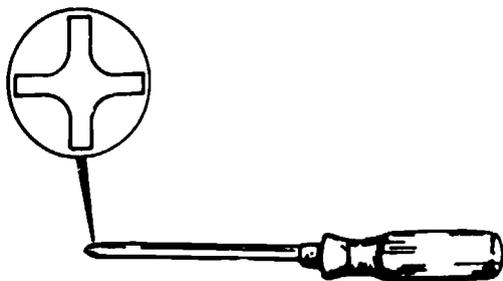
b. _____



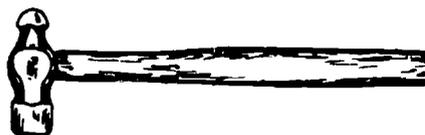
c. _____



d. _____



e. _____

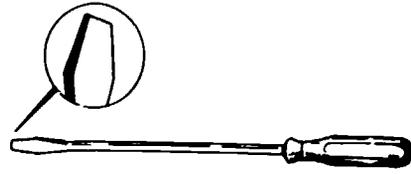


f. _____

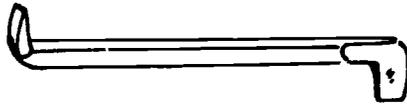
TEST



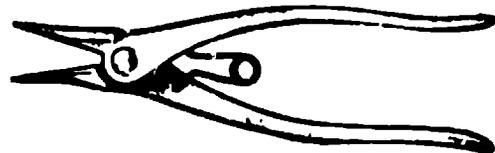
g. _____



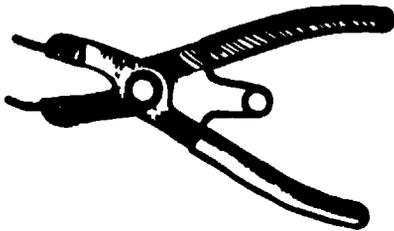
h. _____



i. _____



j. _____



k. _____



l. _____

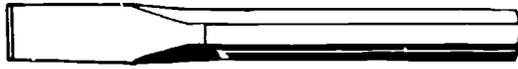


m. _____



n. _____

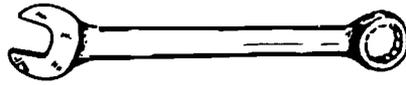
TEST



o. _____



p. _____



q. _____



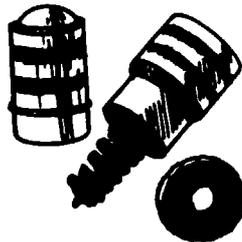
r. _____



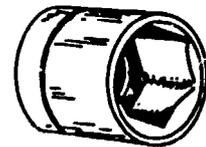
s. _____



t. _____

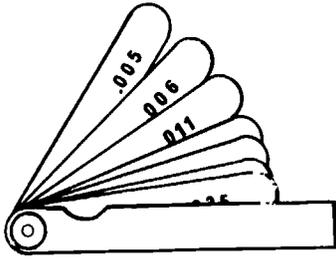


u. _____



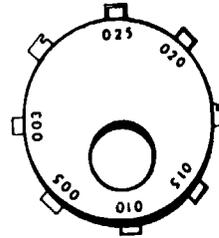
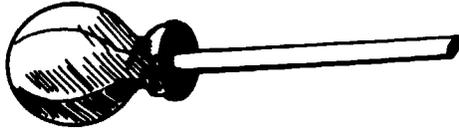
v. _____

TEST



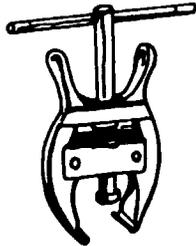
w. _____

x. _____



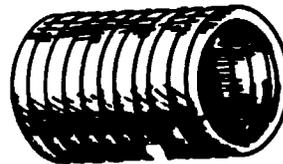
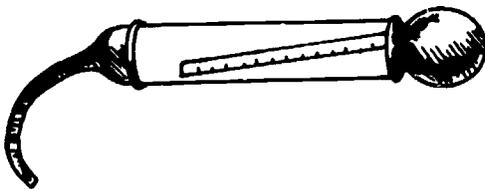
y. _____

z. _____



aa. _____

bb. _____



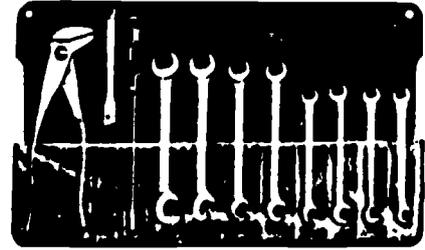
cc. _____

dd. _____

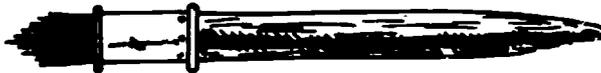
TEST



ee. _____



ff. _____



gg. _____



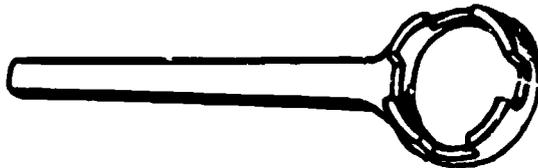
hh. _____



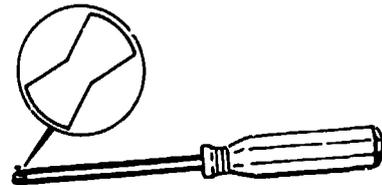
ii. _____



jj. _____



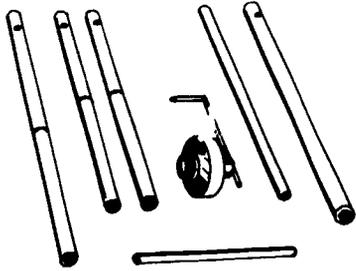
kk. _____



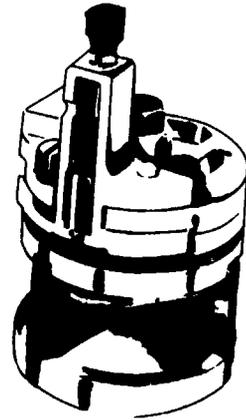
ll. _____

TEST

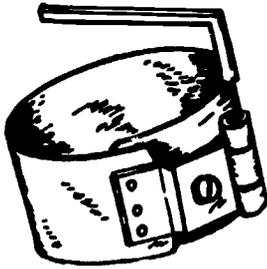
2. Identify the tools used for overhaul of small engines.



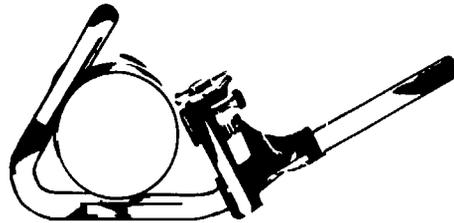
a. _____



b. _____



c. _____



d. _____

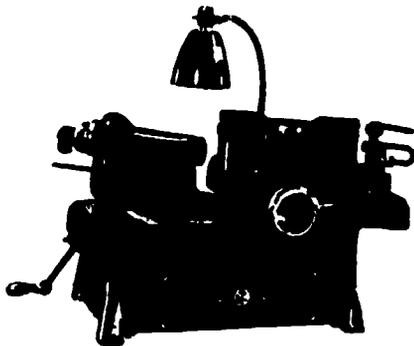


e. _____

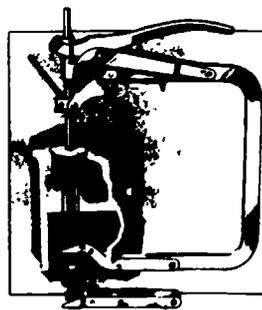


f. _____

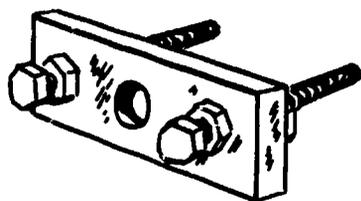
TEST



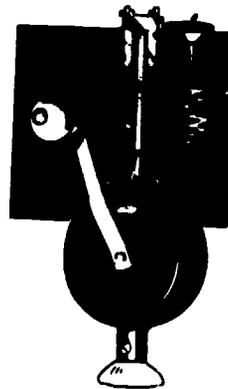
g. _____



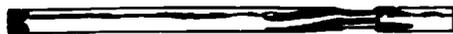
h. _____



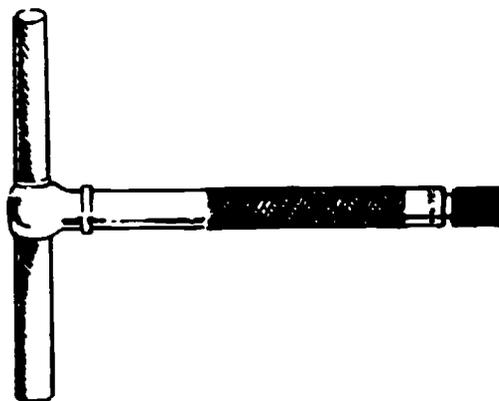
i. _____



j. _____



k. _____



l. _____

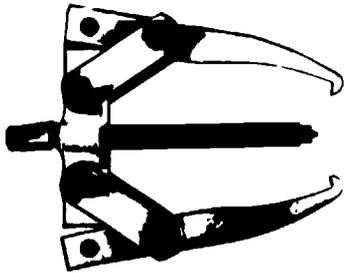
TEST



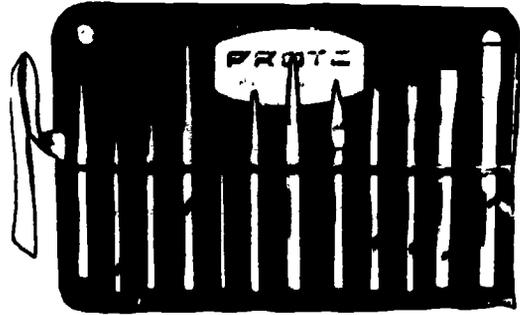
m. _____



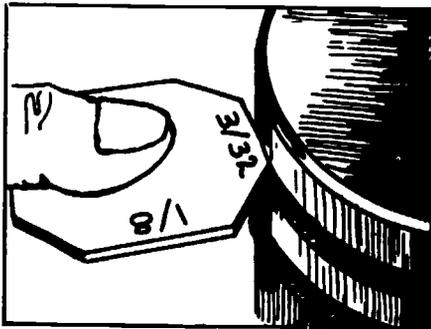
n. _____



o. _____



p. _____

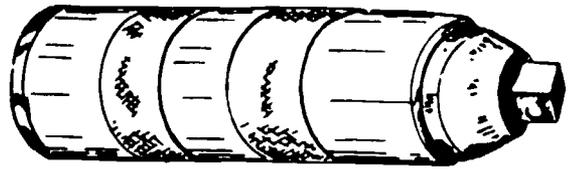
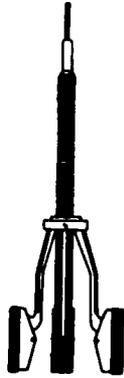


q. _____



r. _____

TEST



s. _____

t. _____

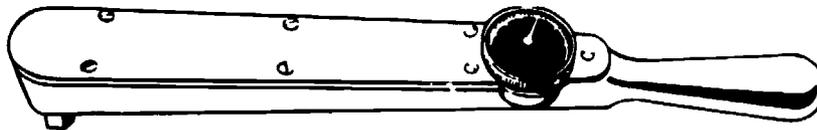
3. Identify the types of torque wrenches.



a. _____



b. _____



c. _____

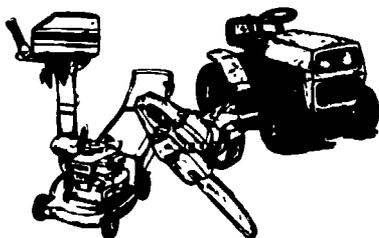
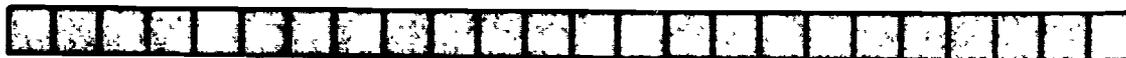
TEST

4. Complete the following list of statements concerning maintenance procedures for tools by correctly filling in the blanks.
- a. _____ worn or damaged flat blade screwdrivers
 - b. Discard phillips screwdrivers with damaged _____
 - c. Keep pliers clean and _____
 - d. Repair or replace damaged handle _____
 - e. On adjustable wrenches, keep worm gears clean and _____
 - f. Identify all tools by labeling them with an electric pencil or _____

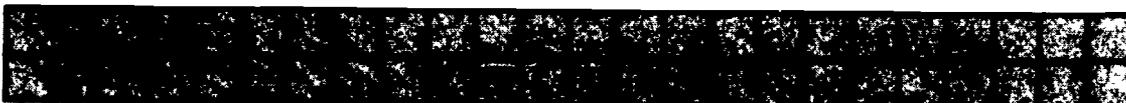
TOOLS UNIT II-A

ANSWERS TO TEST

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | a. Vise grip pliers
b. Slip joint pliers
c. Diagonal cutting pliers
d. Soft face hammer
e. Phillips screwdriver
f. Ball peen hammer
g. Needle nose pliers
h. Standard slot type screwdriver
i. Offset screwdriver
j. Lock ring pliers
k. Snap ring pliers
l. Reversible ratchet
m. Open-end wrench
n. Center punch
o. Cold chisel
p. Torque wrench
q. Combination wrench
r. Hex wrench
s. Adjustable wrench | t. Universal joint
u. Battery post cleaner
v. Socket
w. Feeler gauge — flat
x. Parts scraper
y. Battery syringe
z. Feeler gauge — wire
aa. Battery clamp puller
bb. File
cc. Battery hydrometer
dd. Thread repair insert
ee. Flywheel holder
ff. Ignition wrench set
gg. Parts cleaning brush
hh. Funnel
ii. Wire brush
jj. Parts washing container
kk. Clutch wrench
ll. Clutch head screwdriver |
| 2. | a. Manual valve seat cutter
b. Ridge reamer
c. Ring compressor
d. Piston ring groove cleaner
e. Keeper retainer
f. Piston ring expander
g. Valve grinder
h. Lever type valve spring compressor
i. Flywheel puller
j. Valve lapping tool | k. Valve guide reamer
l. Telescoping gauge
m. Twist drill bit
n. Deglazer
o. Bearing puller
p. Punch and chisel set
q. Ring groove gauge
r. Boring bar
s. Precision hone
t. Impact driver |
| 3. | a. Direct reading
b. Signaling
c. Dial Indicator | |
| 4. | a. Regrind
b. Heads
c. Rust free
d. Insulation
e. Lubricated
f. Scratch awl | |



Fasteners Unit III-A



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify typical fasteners and select qualities of satisfactory fasteners. The student should also be able to select methods used to remove seized nuts and repair damaged threads using a thread repair kit. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedure outlined in the job sheet and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to fasteners with their correct definitions.
2. Select qualities of satisfactory fasteners.
3. Identify typical fasteners.
4. Identify typical bolt head styles.
5. Complete a list of statements concerning how bolt sizes, lengths, and threads are measured.
6. Select true statements concerning SAE grade and metric bolts.
7. Identify typical nuts.
8. Identify special purpose nuts with locking or self-locking features.
9. Select methods used to remove a seized nut.

OBJECTIVE SHEET

10. Identify five types of washers.
11. Select tools used to restore bolt threads.
12. Select tools used to restore internal threads.
13. List four devices for locking nuts or bolts.
14. Identify types of machine screw head designs.
15. Identify four types of snap rings.
16. Demonstrate the ability to repair damaged threads using a thread repair kit (Job Sheet #1).

FASTENERS UNIT III-A

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.
- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.
- E. Provide students with information sheet.
- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheet prior to the demonstration of the procedure.
- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:
1. Show students examples of the various types of fasteners and discuss their uses.
 2. Have students sort various nuts and bolts.
 3. Have students size different threads.
 4. Show students various breaking points of different grade bolts.
 5. Demonstrate and discuss the procedure outlined in the job sheet.
 6. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.
- J. Evaluate test.
- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Typical Fasteners
 - 2. TM 2 — Bolt Head Styles
 - 3. TM 3 — How to Measure Bolts and Threads
 - 4. TM 4 — SAE Grade Marking for Steel Bolts and Screws
 - 5. TM 5 — Metric Bolt and Nut Identification
 - 6. TM 6 — Typical Nuts
 - 7. TM 7 — Special Purpose Nuts
 - 8. TM 8 — Methods Used to Remove a Seized Nut
 - 9. TM 9 — Types of Washers
 - 10. TM 10 — Tools Used to Restore Bolt Threads and Internal Threads
 - 11. TM 11 — Devices for Locking Nuts or Bolts
 - 12. TM 12 — Machine Screw Head Designs
 - 13. TM 13 — Types of Snap Rings
- E. Job Sheet #1 — Repair Damaged Threads Using a Thread Repair Kit
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Fundamentals of Service: Fasteners*. Moline, Illinois: Deere and Company, 1979.
- B. Foutes, William. *Diesel Mechanics: Fundamentals*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1982.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

FASTENERS UNIT III-A

INFORMATION SHEET

.. Terms and definitions

- A. Bolt — Metal rod or pin for fastening objects together that has a head at one end, a screw thread at the other end, and is secured by a nut
- B. Screw — Pointed and headed cylindrical fastener that is threaded and designed for insertion into material by rotating
- C. Fastener — Device used to secure or hold together separate items
- D. Tap — Tool for forming an internal screw thread
- E. Die — Internally threaded screw cutting tool used for forming external screw threads
- F. Stud — Steel rod with threads on both ends, to be screwed permanently into a fixed part at one end and receive a nut on the exposed end
- G. SAE — Society of Automotive Engineers

II. Qualities of satisfactory fasteners

- A. Strong
- B. Reusable
- C. Easy to remove
- D. Withstand vibration
- E. Long lasting
- F. Corrosion resistant
- G. Temperature resistant

III. Typical fasteners (Transparency 1)

- A. Hex head bolt
- B. Wing nut
- C. Stud
- D. Woodruff key

INFORMATION SHEET

- E. Cap screw
- F. Socket head bolt
- G. Tapping screw
- H. Tooth lock washer
- I. Rivet
- J. Bolt and nut
- K. Cotter pin
- L. Square key
- M. Flat washer
- N. Plow bolt
- O. Carriage bolt
- P. Castle nut
- Q. Lock washer
- R. Adhesive
- S. Lock pin
- T. Snap ring
- U. Machine screw
- V. Set screw
- W. Spring lock pin
- X. Locking nut
- Y. Clevis pin

IV. Typical bolt head styles (Transparency 2)

- A. Hex head bolt
- B. Hex socket head bolt
- C. Plow bolt

INFORMATION SHEET

- D. Square head cap screw
- E. 12-point head bolt
- F. Askew head bolt
- G. Carriage bolt
- H. Hex flange screw

V. Measuring bolts and threads (Transparency 3)

- A. Size of bolt is determined by measuring the diameter of the thread end
- B. Length of bolt is determined by measuring the distance from bottom of the head to the end of the threads

(NOTE: Some carriage bolts with round, flat, tapered heads are measured from the top of the head to the end of the threads.)

- C. Number of threads per inch is determined by measuring with a rule or a thread gauge

(NOTE: American National Standards established the unified screw thread standard. Course threads are U.S. standard and fine threads are S.A.E. threads.)

VI. SAE grade and metric bolts (Transparencies 4 and 5)

- A. SAE grade and metric bolts are identified by markings on the heads of the bolt
- B. SAE grade bolts use slashes for identification

Example: Grade 1 and 2 — No slashes
 Grade 5 — Three slashes
 Grade 7 — Five slashes
 Grade 8 — Six slashes

- C. Metric bolts use numbers for identification which correspond to bolt strength; increasing numbers represent increasing strength

VII. Typical nuts (Transparency 6)

- A. Acorn
- B. Castle
- C. Spring

INFORMATION SHEET

- D. Wing
- E. Hex
- F. Flanged
- G. Lock
- H. Slotted
- I. Weld
- J. Panel
- K. Serrated
- L. Single thread
- M. Specialty

VIII. Special purpose nuts with locking or self-locking features (Transparency 7)

- A. Prevailing torque lock nut
- B. Plastic insert lock nut
- C. Jam nut
- D. Castle nut
- E. Slotted nut
- F. Wing nut
- G. Speed nut
- H. Anchor nut
- I. Chamfered nut
- J. Cap nut
- K. Flange-lock nut
- L. Pal nut

INFORMATION SHEET

- IX. Methods used to remove a seized nut (Transparency 8)**
- A. Penetrating oil
 - B. Hacksaw
 - C. Nut splitter
 - D. Chisel
 - E. Gas torch
- X. Types of washers (Transparency 9)**
- A. Flat washer
 - B. Lock washer
 - C. External toothed lock washer
 - D. Internal toothed lock washer
 - E. Countersunk external toothed washer
- XI. Tools used to restore bolt threads (Transparency 10)**
- A. Rethreading tool
 - B. Thread restorer
 - C. Rethreading die
- XII. Tools to restore internal threads (Transparency 10)**
- A. Internal thread chaser
 - B. Hand tap
- XIII. Devices for locking nuts or bolts (Transparency 11)**
- A. Cotter pins
 - B. Lockwire
 - C. Flat metal locks
 - D. Lock ears

INFORMATION SHEET**XIV. Types of machine screw head designs (Transparency 12)**

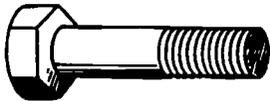
- A. Round
- B. Fillister
- C. Truss
- D. Pan
- E. Oval
- F. Cross recessed or phillips
- G. Flat
- H. Clutch
- I. Hex slotted

XV. Types of snap rings (Transparency 13)

- A. Internal prong
- B. Internal hole
- C. External hole
- D. External "E"

Typical Fasteners

Hex Head Bolt



Bolt and Nut



Plow Bolt



Socket Head Bolt



Stud



Cap Screw



Carriage Bolt



Tapping Screw



Machine Screw



Set Screw



Woodruff Key



Square Key



Rivet



Clevis Pin



Flat Washer



Lock Washer



Toothed Lock Washer



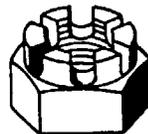
Locking Nut



Wing Nut



Castle Nut



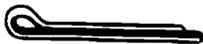
Snap Ring



Spring Lock Pin



Cotter Pin



Lock Pin

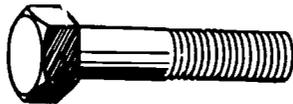


Adhesive

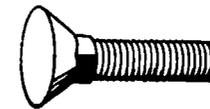


Bolt Head Styles

Hex Head Bolt



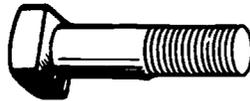
Plow Bolt



Hex Socket Head Bolt



Square Head
Cap Screw



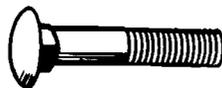
Askew Head Bolt



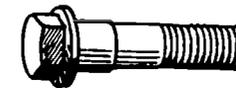
12-Point Head Bolt



Carriage Bolt



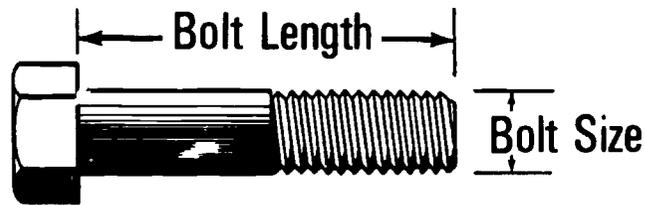
Hex Flange Screw



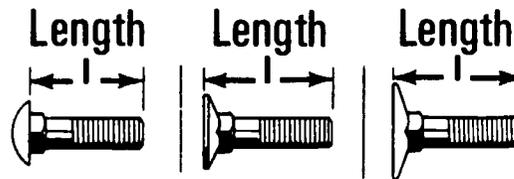
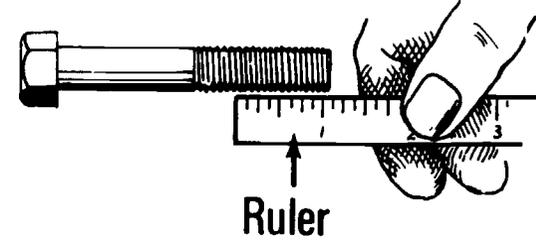
111

112

How to Measure Bolts and Threads



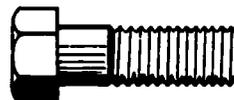
Measuring Threads Per Inch



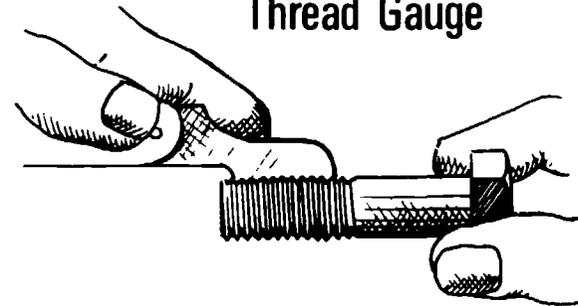
Fine Thread



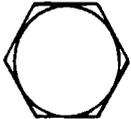
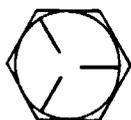
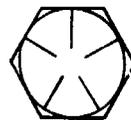
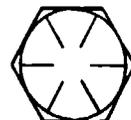
Coarse Thread



Thread Gauge

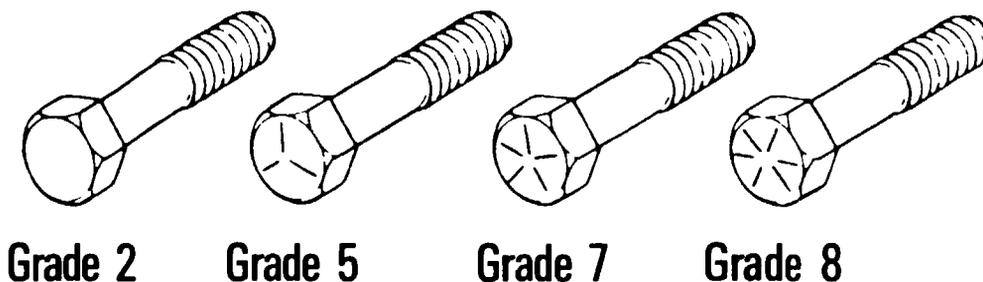


SAE Grade Markings For Steel Bolts and Screws

Grade Marking	Specification	Material	Tensile Strength min., psi.
	SAE-Grade 0	Steel	
	SAE-Grade 1	Low Carbon Steel	55,000
	SAE-Grade 2	Low Carbon Steel	69,000
	SAE-Grade 5	Medium Carbon Steel, Quenched and Tempered	120,000
	SAE-Grade 7	Medium Carbon Steel, Quenched and Tempered	133,000
	SAE-Grade 8	Med. Carbon Alloy Steel, Quenched and Tempered	150,000

Metric Bolt and Nut Identification

SAE Grade Bolts



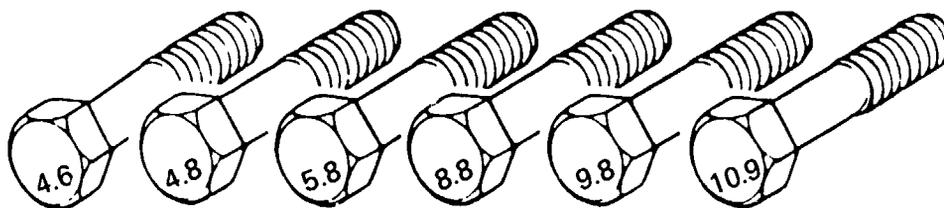
Grade 2

Grade 5

Grade 7

Grade 8

Metric Bolts



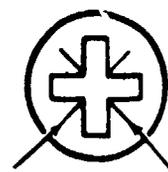
Manufacturer's
Identification



Nut Strength
Identification



Posidriv
Screw Head



Identification Marks (4)

Typical Nuts

Acorn



Castle



Spring



Wing



Hex



Flanged



Lock



Slotted



Weld



Panel



Specialty



Serrated

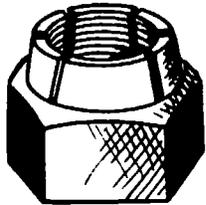


Single Thread



Special Purpose Nuts

Prevailing Torque
Lock Nut

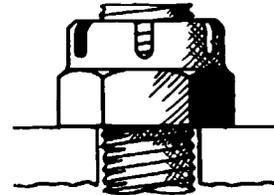


Plastic Insert
Lock Nut

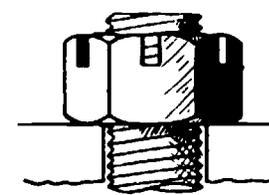


Nylon
Insert

Castle Nut



Slotted Nut



Jam Nut



Wing Nut



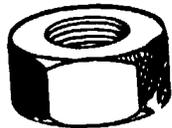
Speed Nut



Anchor Nut



Chamfered Nut
(Both Sides)



Cap Nut



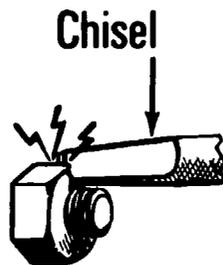
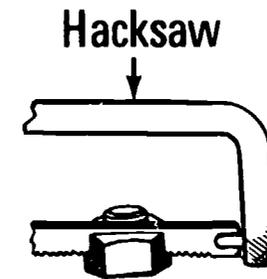
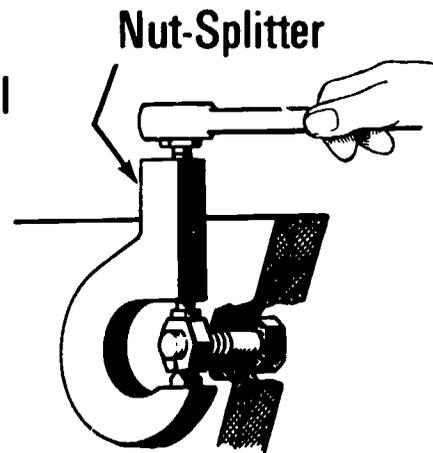
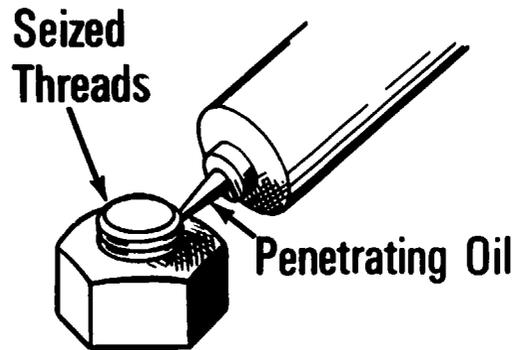
Flange-Lock Nut



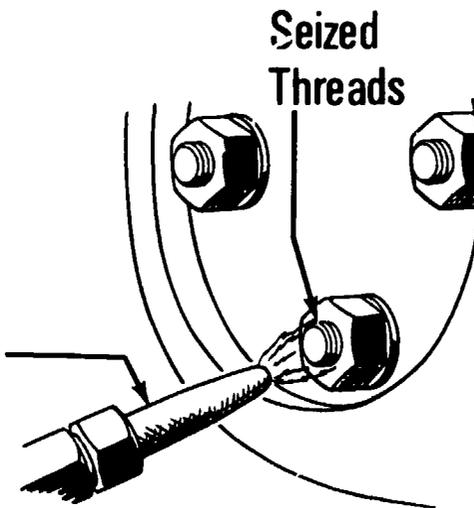
Pal Nut



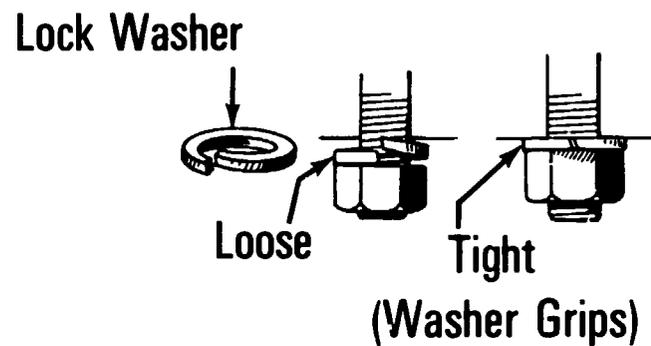
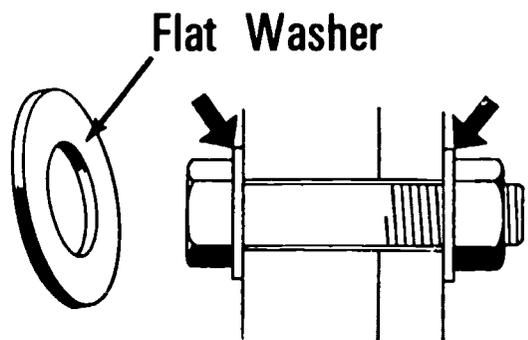
Methods Used to Remove a Seized Nut



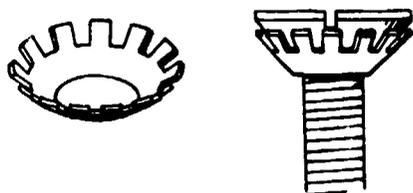
Gas Torch for Heat
Use Carefully!



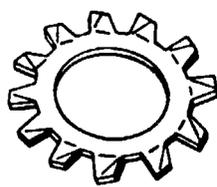
Types of Washers



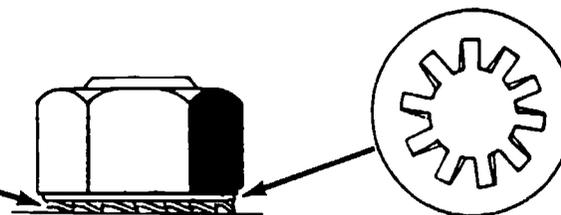
Countersunk
External Toothed Washer



External Toothed
Lock Washer



Internal Toothed
Lock Washer



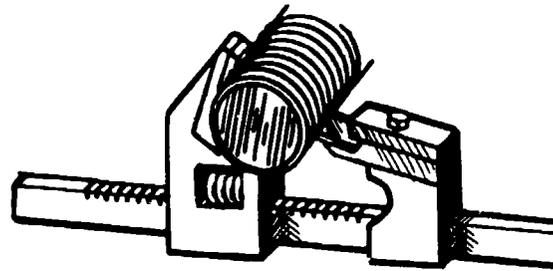
Tools Used to Restore Bolt Threads and Internal Threads

Bolt Threads

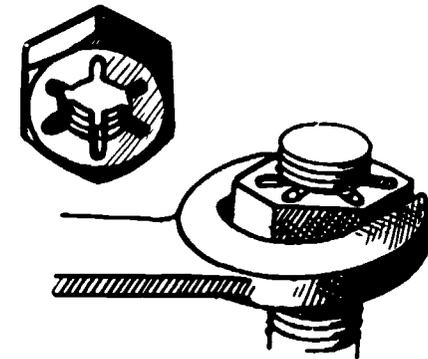
Thread Restorer
(File-Like)



Rethreading Tool



Rethreading
Die



Internal Threads

Internal Thread Chasers



Hand Tap



Devices for Locking Nuts or Bolts

Castle Nut

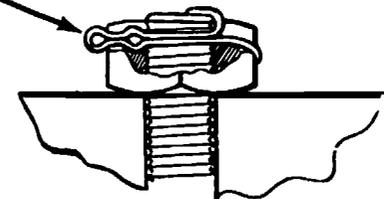


Slotted Nut

Correct:
Bend Prongs

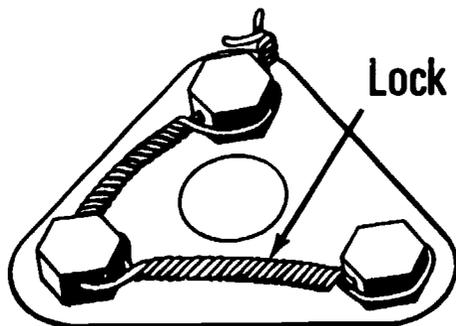


Cotter Pin

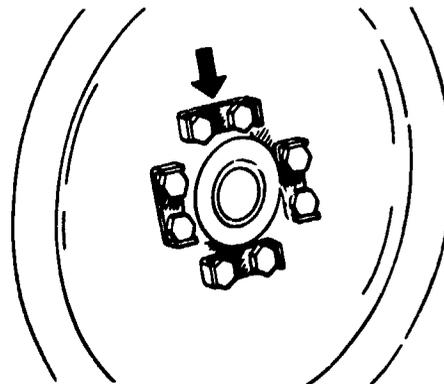


Cotter Pin Prongs Properly Bent Around
Castle Nut and a Slotted Nut

Double-Head Cotter Pin in Use

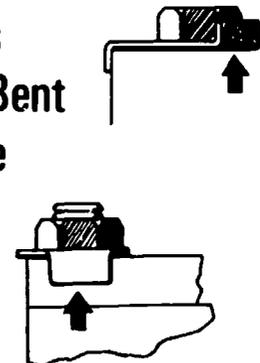


Lock Wire



Flat Metal Locks Hold Flywheel
Bolts in Place

Lock Ears
Properly Bent
Into Place

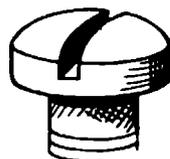


Machine Screw Head Designs

Round



Fillister



Cross Recessed
or Phillips



Flat



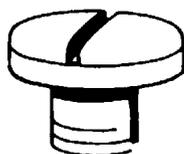
Oval



Truss



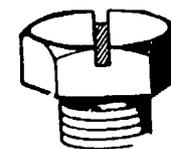
Pan



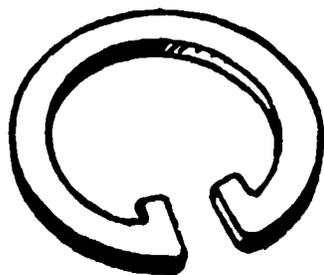
Clutch



Hex Slotted



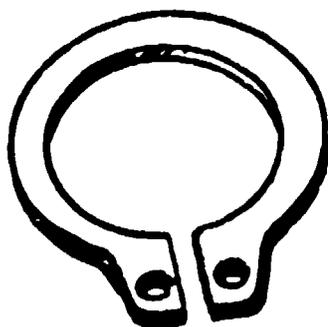
Types of Snap Rings



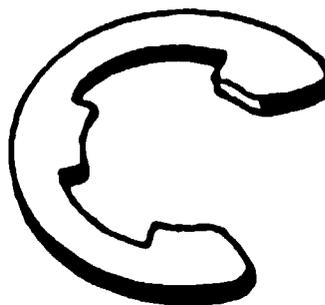
Internal Prong



Internal Hole



External Hole



External "E"

FASTENERS UNIT III-A

JOB SHEET #1 — REPAIR DAMAGED THREADS USING A THREAD REPAIR KIT

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Safety glasses
2. Thread repair kit
3. Drill motor

B. Procedure

1. Drill out old threads using exact size drill (Figure 1)

(NOTE: Refer to instructions provided in thread repair kit.)

2. Drill all the way through an open hole or all the way to bottom of blind hole

(NOTE: Make sure hole is straight and that centerline of hole is not moved in drilling process.)

FIGURE 1

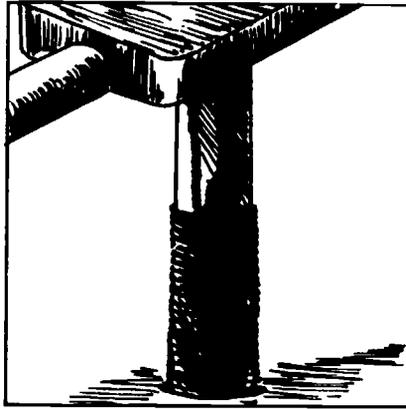


JOB SHEET #1

3. Tap out drilled holes (Figure 2)

(NOTE: Special drill taps are provided in thread repair kit for threading drilled hole to correct size for outside of thread insert. A standard tap cannot be used.)

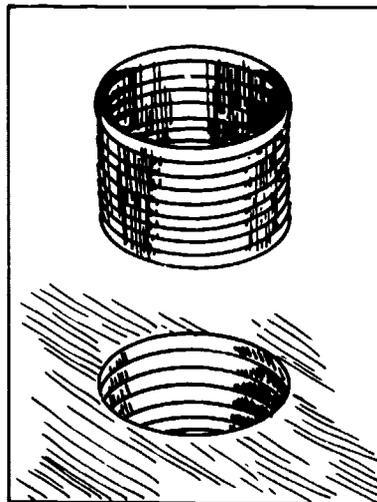
FIGURE 2



4. Install thread repair insert using appropriate tool (Figure 3)

(NOTE: Special tools are provided in thread repair kit for installation of thread insert.)

FIGURE 3



5. Have instructor inspect work
6. Clean up work area and return tools to proper location

FASTENERS UNIT III-A

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

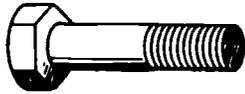
- | | | |
|---------|--|-------------|
| _____a. | Metal rod or pin for fastening objects together that has a head at one end, and is secured by a nut | 1. Tap |
| _____b. | Pointed and headed cylindrical fastener that is threaded and designed for insertion into material by rotating | 2. Stud |
| _____c. | Device used to secure or hold together separate items | 3. Screw |
| _____d. | Internally threaded screw cutting tool used for forming external screw threads | 4. Die |
| _____e. | Tool for forming an internal screw thread | 5. Fastener |
| _____f. | Steel rod with threads on both ends, to be screwed permanently into a fixed part at one end and receive a nut on the exposed end | 6. Bolt |
| _____g. | Society of Automotive Engineers | 7. SAE |

2. Select qualities of satisfactory fasteners by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- | | |
|---------|-------------------------------|
| _____a. | Easy to remove |
| _____b. | Must be used with two washers |
| _____c. | Strong |
| _____d. | Temperature resistant |
| _____e. | Be threaded on both ends |
| _____f. | Reusable |

TEST

3. Identify typical fasteners.



a. _____



b. _____



c. _____



d. _____



e. _____



f. _____



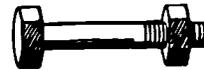
g. _____



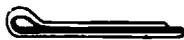
h. _____



i. _____



j. _____



k. _____



l. _____

TEST



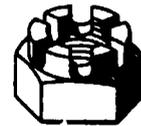
m. _____



n. _____



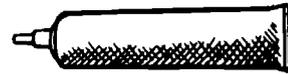
o. _____



p. _____



q. _____



r. _____



s. _____



t. _____



u. _____



v. _____

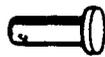
TEST



w. _____

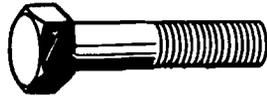


x. _____



y. _____

4. Identify typical bolt head styles.



a. _____



b. _____



c. _____



d. _____



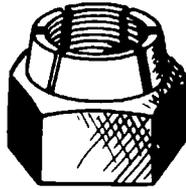
e. _____



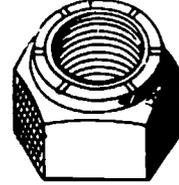
f. _____

TEST

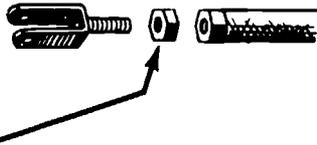
8. Identify special purpose nuts with locking or self-locking features.



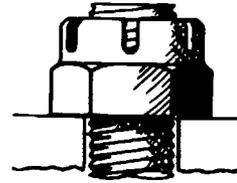
a. _____



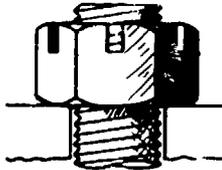
b. _____



c. _____



d. _____



e. _____



f. _____

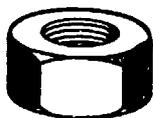
TEST



g. _____



h. _____



i. _____



j. _____



k. _____



l. _____

9. Select methods used to remove a seized nut by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- a. Hacksaw
 b. Chisel
 c. Gas torch
 d. Hot water
 e. Screwdriver
 f. Penetrating oil

TEST

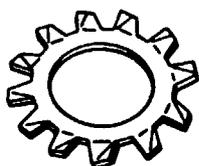
10. Identify five types of washer.



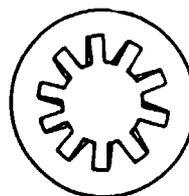
a. _____



b. _____



c. _____



d. _____



e. _____

11. Select tools used to restore bolt threads by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ____ a. Rethreading tap
 ____ b. Rethreading die
 ____ c. Rethreading tool
 ____ d. Die stock

TEST

12. Select tools used to restore internal threads by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ____ a. Threading die
- ____ b. Chisel
- ____ c. Hand tap
- ____ d. Internal thread chaser

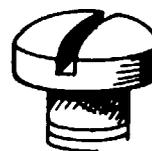
13. List four devices for locking nuts or bolts.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____

14. Identify types of machine screw head designs.



a. _____



b. _____



c. _____



d. _____



e. _____



f. _____

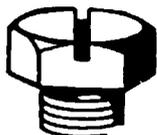
TEST



g. _____



h. _____



i. _____

15. Identify four types of snap rings.



a. _____



b. _____



c. _____



d. _____

(NOTE: If the following activity has not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when it should be completed.)

16. Demonstrate the ability to repair damaged threads using a thread repair kit (Job Sheet #1).

FASTENERS UNIT III-A

ANSWERS TO TEST

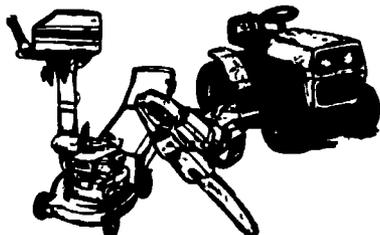
1. a. 6 e. 1
 b. 3 f. 2
 c. 5 g. 7
 d. 4
2. a,c,d,f
3. a. Hex head bolt
 b. Wing nut
 c. Stud
 d. Woodruff key
 e. Cap screw
 f. Socket head bolt
 g. Tapping screw
 h. Tooth lock washer
 i. Rivet
 j. Bolt and nut
 k. Cotter pin
 l. Square key
 m. Flat washer
 n. Plow bolt
 o. Carriage bolt
 p. Castle nut
 q. Lock washer
 r. Adhesive
 s. Lock pin
 t. Snap ring
 u. Machine screw
 v. Set screw
 w. Spring lock pin
 x. Locking nut
 y. Clevis pin
4. a. Hex head bolt
 b. Hex socket head bolt
 c. Plow bolt
 d. Square head cap screw
 e. 12-point head bolt
 f. Askew head bolt
 g. Carriage bolt
 h. Hex flange screw
5. c. Number of threads per inch is determined by measuring with a rule or a thread gauge
6. a

ANSWERS TO TEST

7. a. Castle
b. Spring
c. Wing
d. Hex
e. Flanged
f. Lock
g. Acorn
h. Slotted
i. Weld
j. Panel
k. Serrated
l. Single thread
m. Specialty
8. a. Prevailing torque lock nut
b. Plastic insert lock nut
c. Jam nut
d. Castle nut
e. Slotted nut
f. Wing nut
g. Speed nut
h. Anchor nut
i. Chamfered nut
j. Cap nut
k. Flange-lock nut
l. Pal nut
9. a,b,c,f
10. a. Flat washer
b. Lock washer
c. External toothed lock washer
d. Internal toothed lock washer
e. Countersunk external toothed washer
11. b,c
12. c,d
13. a. Cotter pins
b. Lock wire
c. Flat metal locks
d. Lock ears
14. a. Round
b. Fillister
c. Truss
d. Pan
e. Oval

ANSWERS TO TEST

- f. Flat
 - g. Cross recessed or phillips
 - h. Clutch
 - i. Hex slotted
15. a. Internal hole
- b. External "E"
- c. Internal prong
- d. External hole
16. Performance skill evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor



Measuring Unit IV-A

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to read and use a plain micrometer, a vernier caliper, and a dial indicator. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment and job sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to measuring with their correct definitions.
2. Identify measuring instruments used in small engine repair.
3. Complete a list of steps for reading measuring instruments.
4. Select basic units of measurement found on rules.
5. Identify the major parts of a vernier caliper.
6. Identify the major parts of an outside micrometer.
7. Complete a list of statements concerning proper methods for checking the accuracy of outside micrometers.
8. Identify the major parts of a dial indicator.
9. Arrange in order the steps for set up and use of a dial indicator.
10. Read the plain micrometer settings (Assignment Sheet #1).

OBJECTIVE SHEET

11. Read the vernier micrometer settings (Assignment Sheet #2).
12. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Use a vernier caliper (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Use a plain micrometer (Job Sheet #2).
 - c. Use a dial indicator (Job Sheet #3).
 - d. Use a telescoping gauge (Job Sheet #4).

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with assignment and job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Show examples of measuring tools and discuss their uses.
2. Have students compare prices of measuring tools in various tool catalogs.
3. Obtain software on micrometer reading for use on microcomputer.
4. Discuss procedures outlined in the assignment sheets.
5. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
6. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES**CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT**

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Measuring Instruments
 - 2. TM 2 — Measuring Instruments (Continued)
 - 3. TM 3 — Units of Measurement
 - 4. TM 4 — Vernier Caliper Parts
 - 5. TM 5 — Micrometer Parts
 - 6. TM 6 — Checking the Micrometer for Accuracy
 - 7. TM 7 — Dial Indicator Parts
 - 8. TM 8 — Reading a Micrometer
 - 9. TM 9 — Sleeve Readings
 - 10. TM 10 — Overlay A — Thimble Sleeve Readings
 - 11. TM 11 — Vernier Micrometer Readings
 - 12. TM 12 — Overlay B — Vernier Sleeve Readings
- E. Assignment sheets
 - 1. Assignment Sheet #1 — Read the Plain Micrometer Settings
 - 2. Assignment Sheet #2 — Read the Vernier Micrometer Settings
- F. Answers to assignment sheets
- G. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Use a Vernier Caliper
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Use a Plain Micrometer
 - 3. Job Sheet #3 — Use a Dial Indicator

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- 4. Job Sheet #4 — Use a Telescoping Gauge
- H. Test
- I. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.
- B. Armstrong, Ivan. *Auto Mechanics, Book 1*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: State Department of Vocational-Technical Education, 1976.

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Steel rule — Low precision measuring instrument graduated in fractional or decimal parts of an inch
- B. Graduation — Marking found on rules and scales to denote unit of length
- C. Error — Mistake in the reading or total measurement
- D. Reliable measure — Accurate or true measurement
- E. Reference point — Starting point of measurement for both workpiece and rule
- F. Vernier caliper — Makes accurate inside and outside measurements to within one-thousandth of an inch, or one-hundredth of a millimeter

II. Measuring instruments used in small engine repair (Transparencies 1 and 2)

- A. Rule
- B. Vernier caliper
- C. Micrometers
 - 1. Inside
 - 2. Outside
 - 3. Depth

(NOTE: These can be plain or vernier; plain measures to thousandths of an inch, vernier to ten-thousandths of an inch.)

- D. Dial indicator
- E. Telescoping gauge
- F. Hole gauge

III. Steps for reading measuring instruments

- A. Select scale of the required units
- B. Total the number of graduations
- C. Count whole units
- D. Reduce graduations to lowest terms

INFORMATION SHEET**IV. Basic units of measurement found on rules (Transparency 3)****A. Fractional**Example: $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{16}$, $\frac{1}{32}$ **B. Decimal**

Example: 0.1, 0.01, 0.001

C. Metric

Example: 1 meter = 1m, 1 millimeter = 1mm

V. Major parts of vernier caliper (Transparency 4)**A. Fixed jaw****B. Movable jaw****C. Beam****D. Clamp****E. Clamp screws****F. Main scale****G. Vernier scale****H. Adjusting nut****VI. Major parts of an outside micrometer (Transparency 5)****A. Frame****B. Anvil****C. Spindle****D. Lock****E. Sleeve****F. Thimble****G. Ratchet stop**

INFORMATION SHEET**VII. Proper methods for checking accuracy of outside micrometers (Transparency 6)**

- A. 0" - 1.000"
 - 1. Close spindle and anvil together
 - 2. Observe zero references on the sleeve and thimble
- B. More than one inch
 - 1. Use a standard bar or disc to check the minimum capacity
 - 2. Observe zero references on the sleeve and thimble

VIII. Major parts of a dial indicator (Transparency 7)

- A. Housing
- B. Dial
- C. Pointer
- D. Plunger
- E. Bezel
- F. Bezel clamp

IX. Set up and use of a dial indicator

- A. Secure dial indicator to suitable mounting fixture
- B. Position plunger in contact with surface to be measured
- C. Pre-load dial indicator

(NOTE: Pre-loading is accomplished by positioning dial indicator so that plunger is depressed equal to two revolutions of the pointer.)

- D. Zero dial

(NOTE: To zero dial rotate bezel until zero mark is in line with end of pointer.)

- E. Measure work

INFORMATION SHEET**X. Reading the plain micrometer (Transparencies 8, 9, and 10 [Overlay A])**

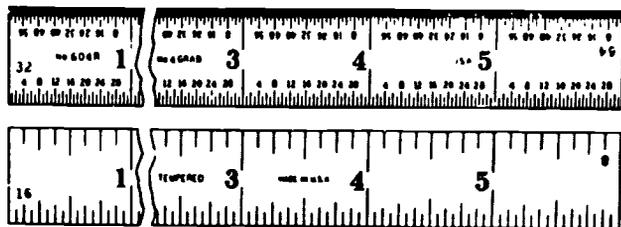
- A. Each numbered graduation on the sleeve represents one-hundred thousandths of an inch (0.100")
- B. Each small graduation on the sleeve between the numbered graduations represents twenty-five thousandths of an inch (0.025")
- C. Each graduation found on the thimble represents one thousandth of an inch (0.001")
- D. Total reading is found by adding the three values

Examples:	0.100	Number on the sleeve
	0.075	Small graduations on the sleeve
	0.015	Graduations on the thimble
	0.190	Plain micrometer reading

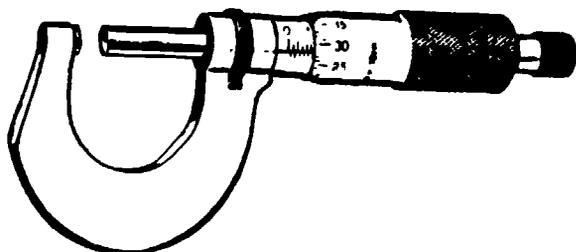
XI. Reading the vernier micrometer (Transparencies 10 [Overlay A], 11, and 12 [Overlay B])

- A. Each numbered graduation on the sleeve represents one-hundred thousandths of an inch (0.100")
- B. Each small graduation on the sleeve between the numbered graduations represents twenty-five thousandths of an inch (0.025")

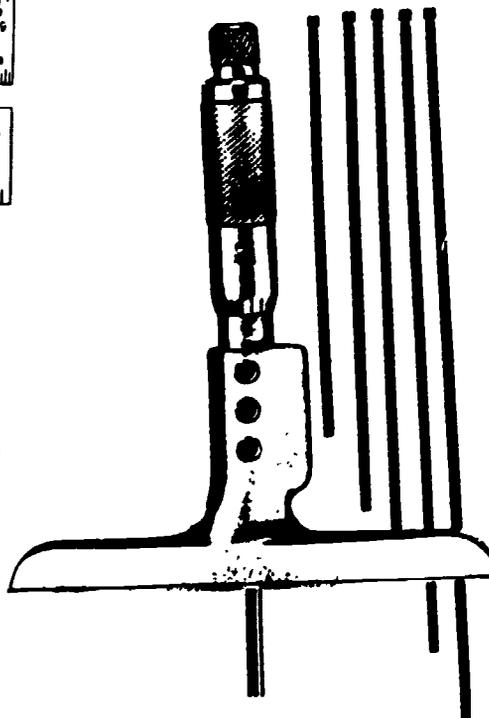
Measuring Instruments



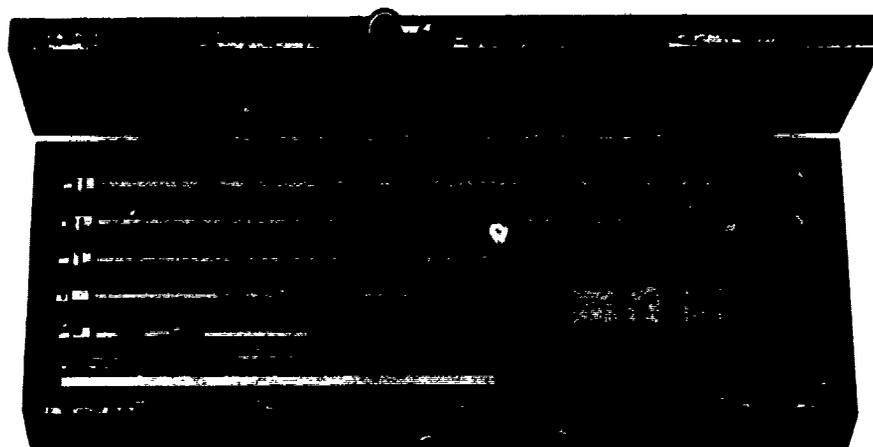
Rules



Outside Micrometer



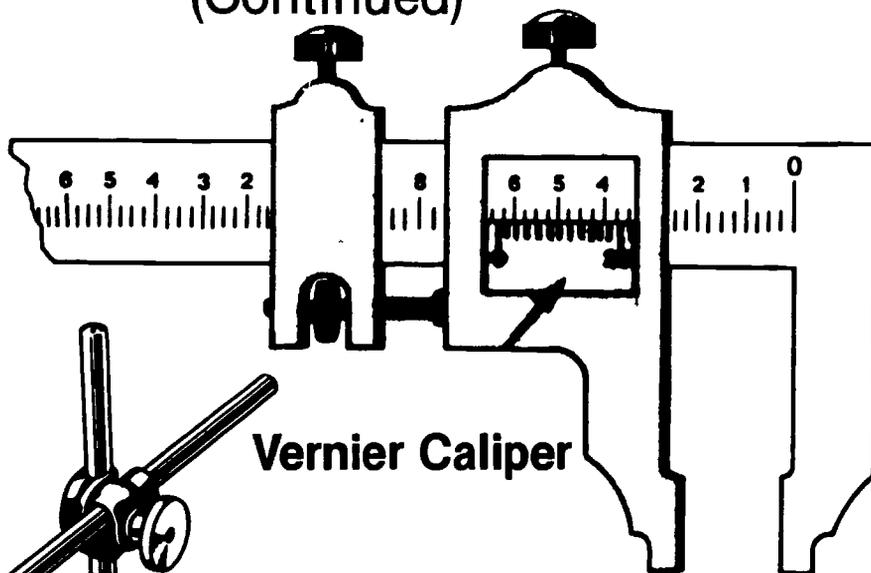
Depth Micrometer



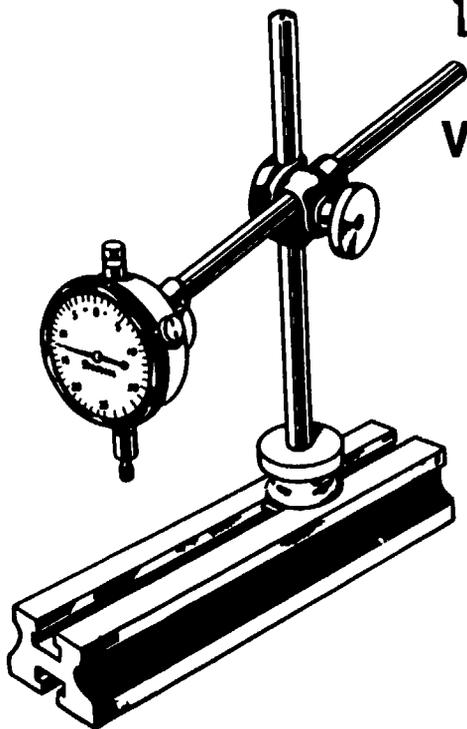
Inside Micrometer

Measuring Instruments

(Continued)



Vernier Caliper



Dial Indicator

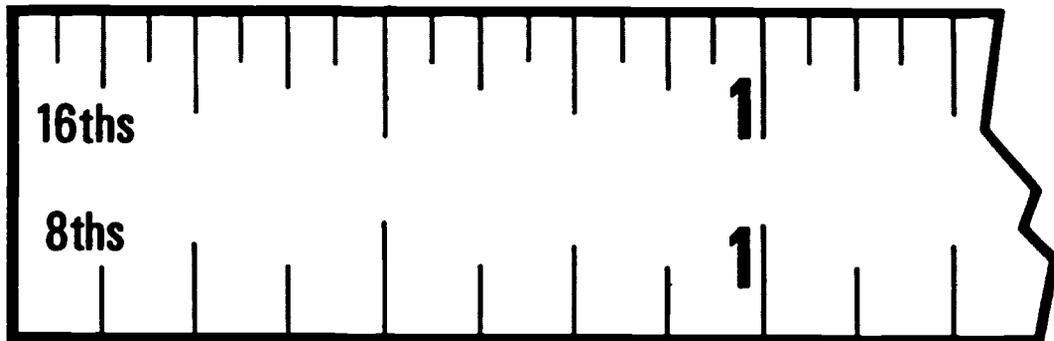


Telescoping Gauge

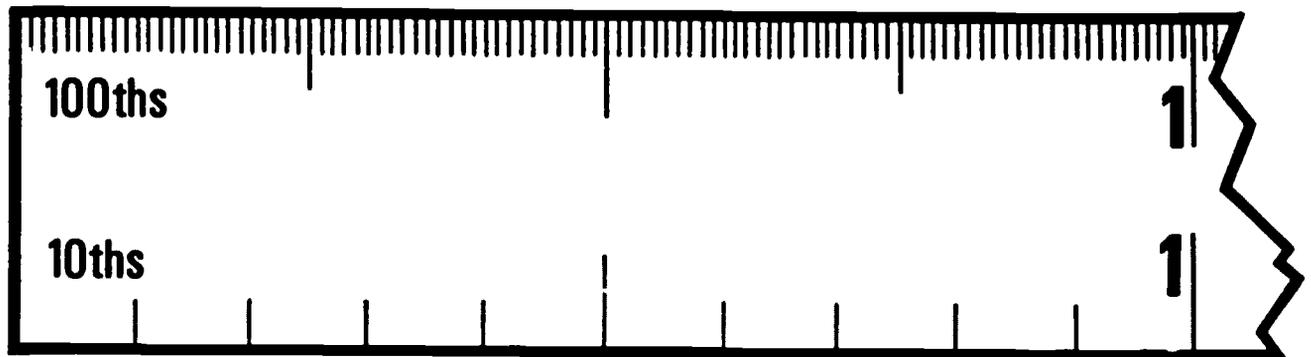


Hole Gauge

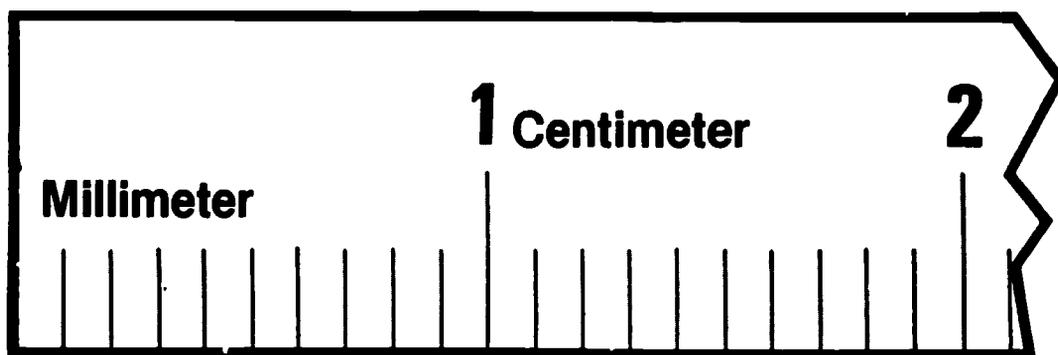
Units of Measurement



Fractional Rule

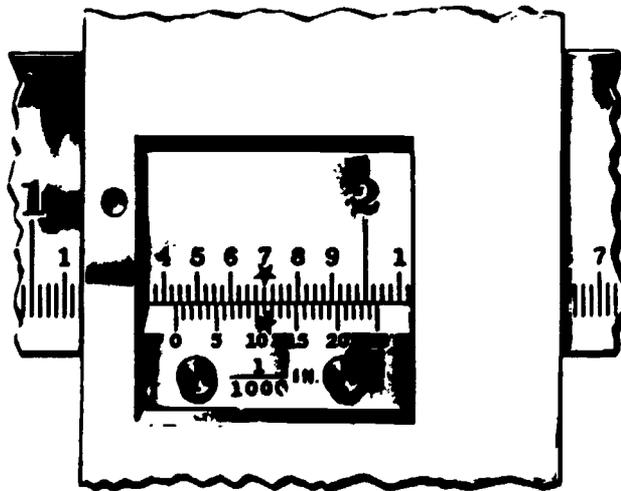
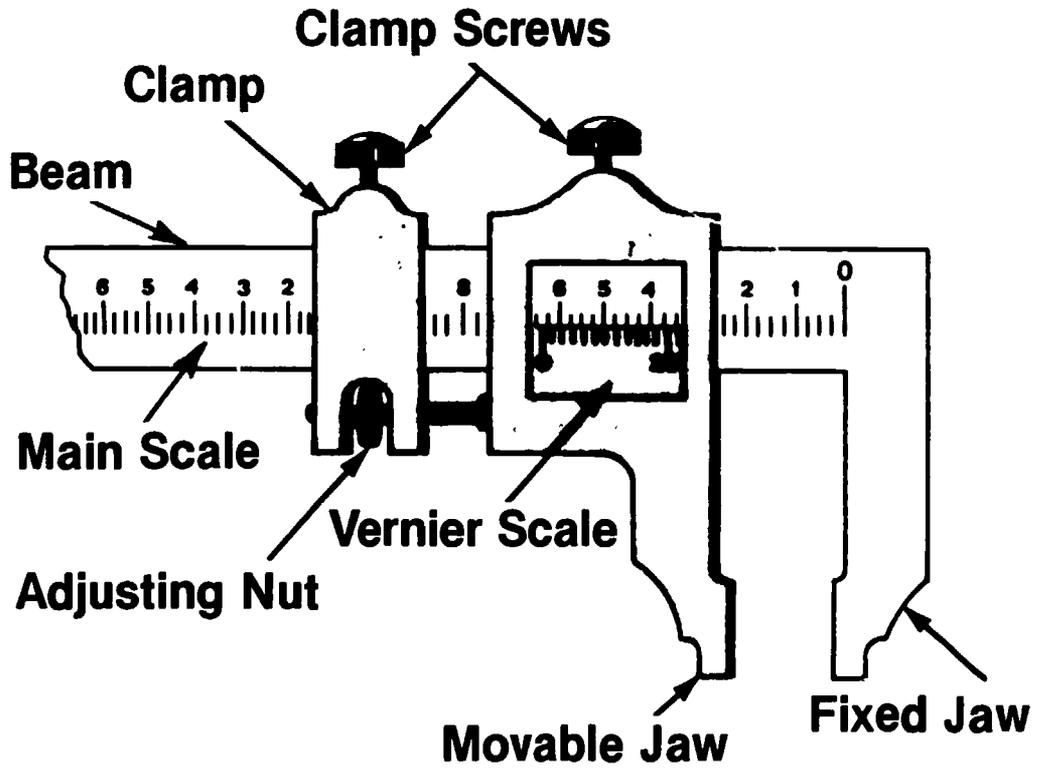


Decimal Rule

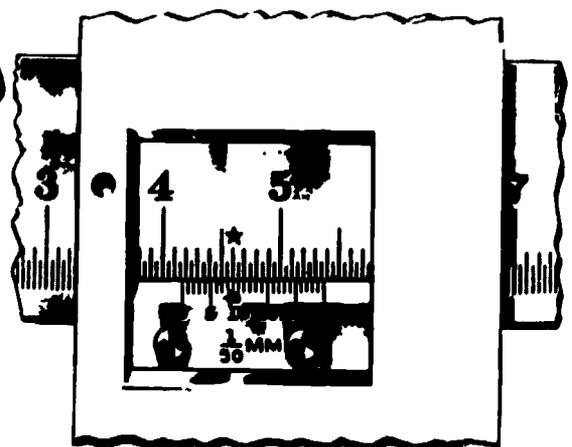


Metric Rule

Vernier Caliper Parts

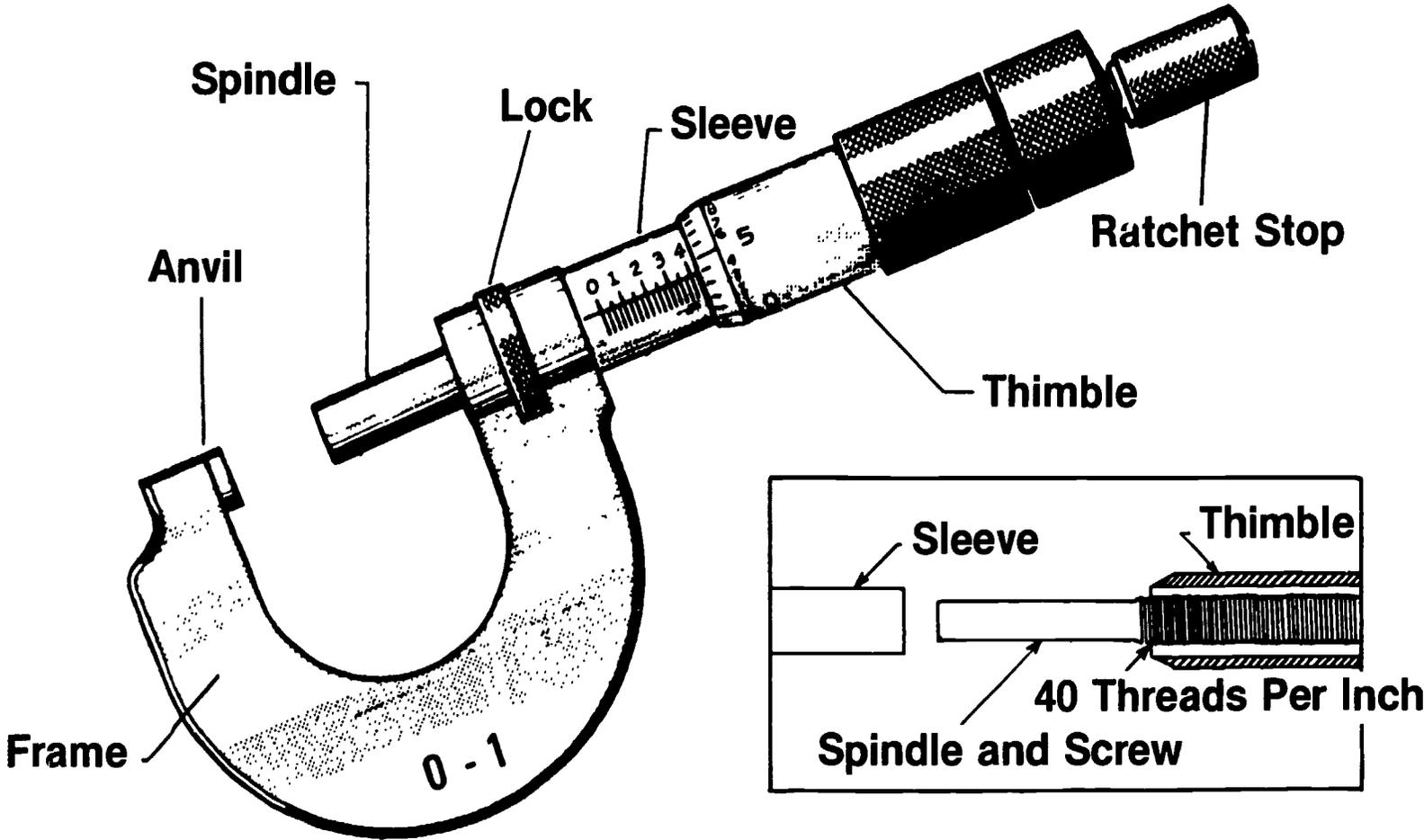


Standard Scale

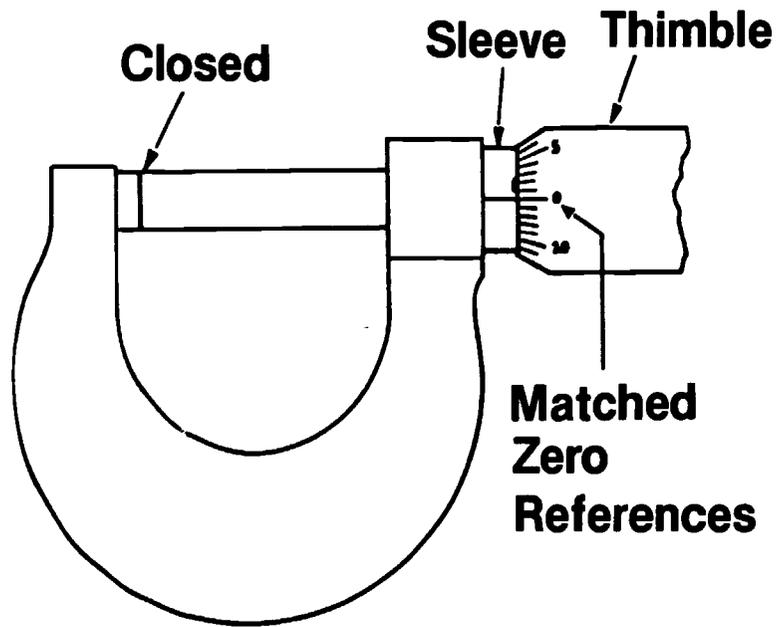


Metric Scale

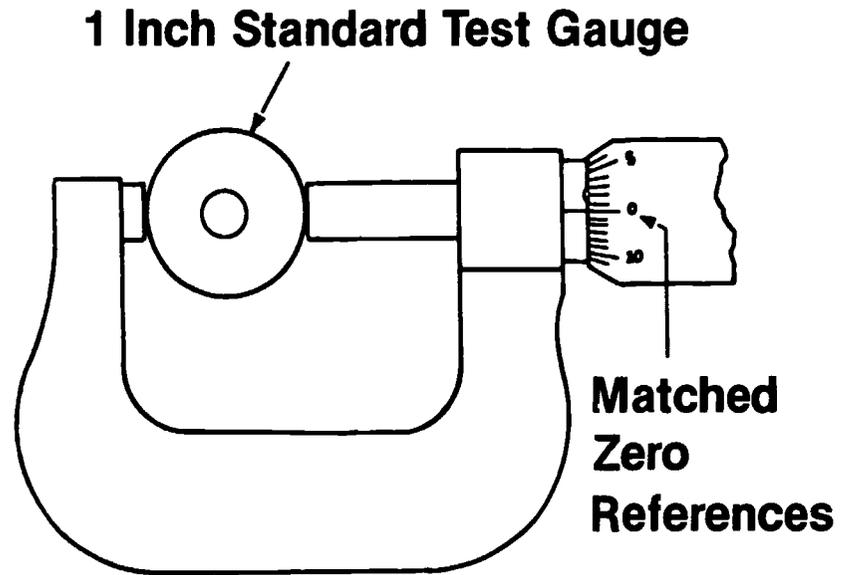
Micrometer Parts



Checking the Micrometer for Accuracy

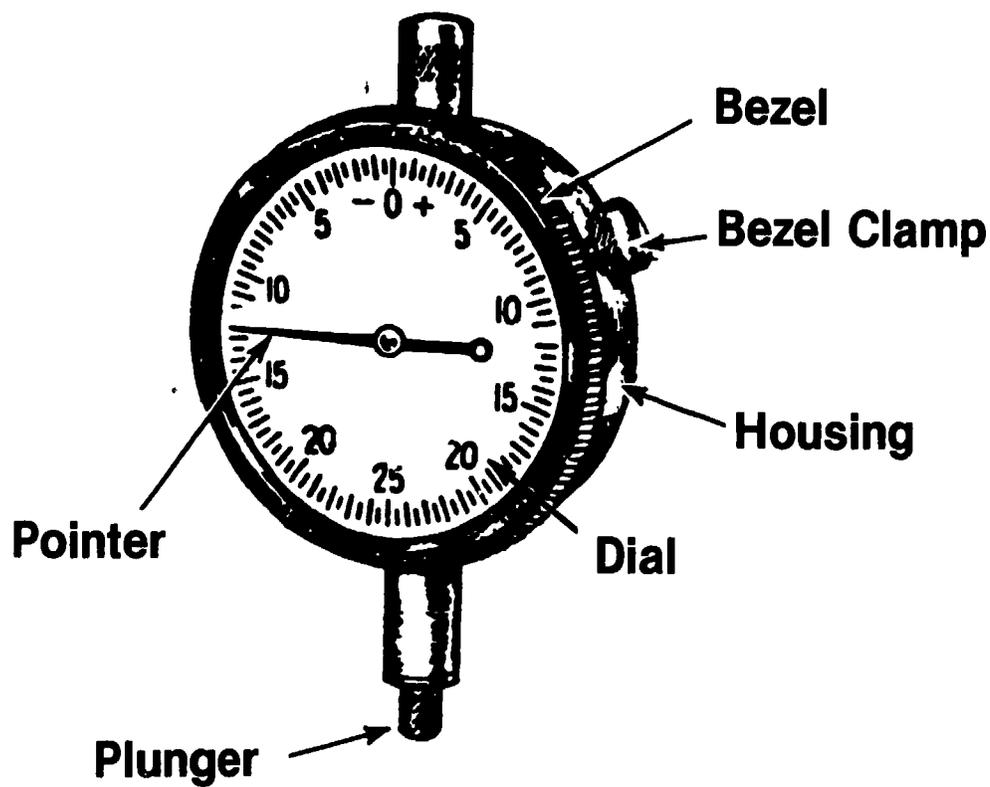


1 Inch Micrometer

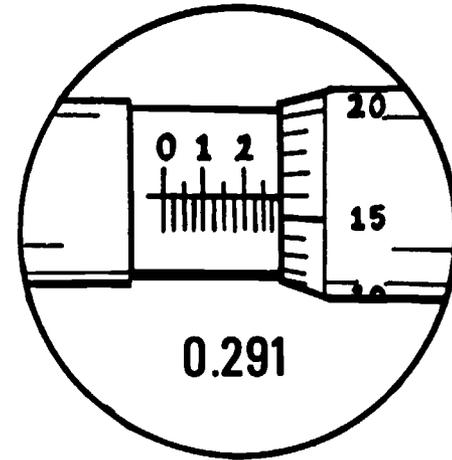
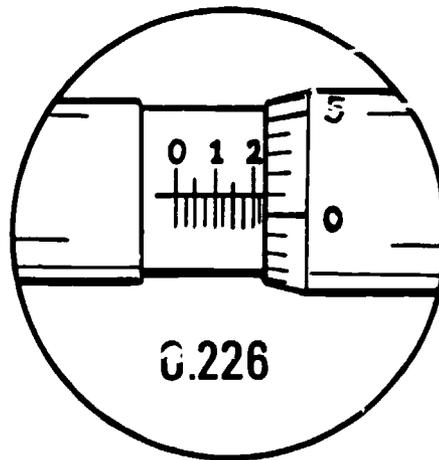
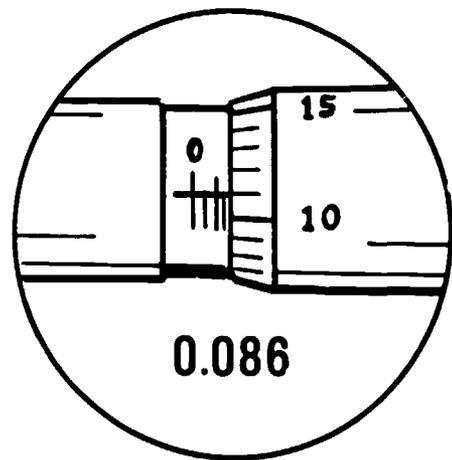
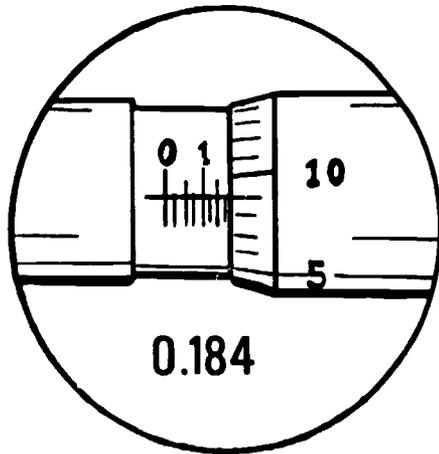


2 Inch Micrometer

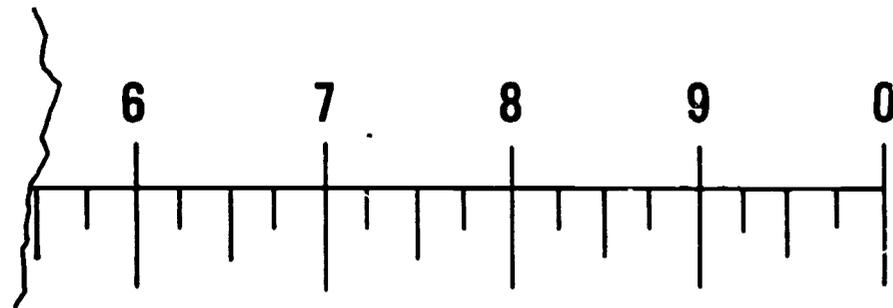
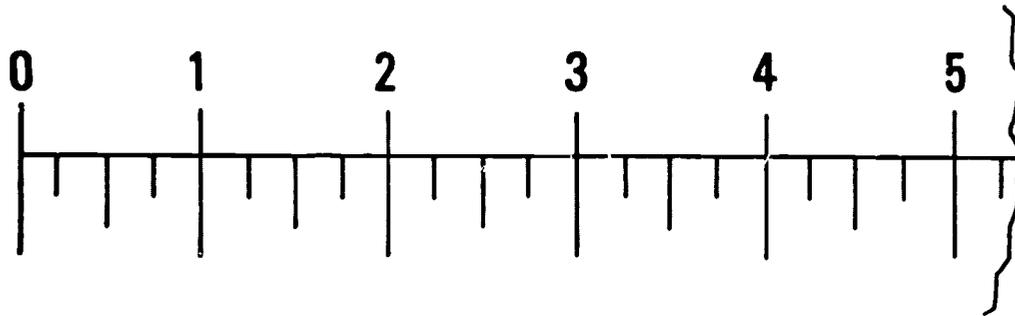
Dial Indicator Parts



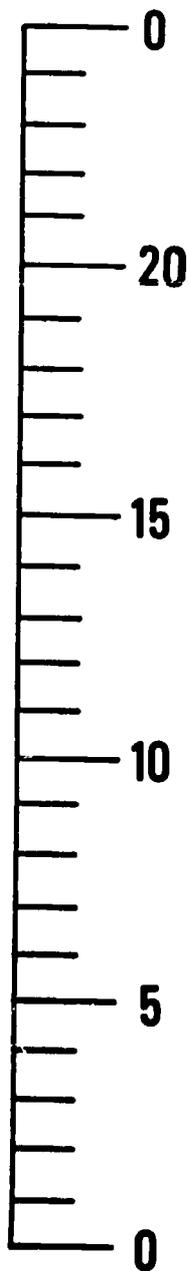
Reading a Micrometer



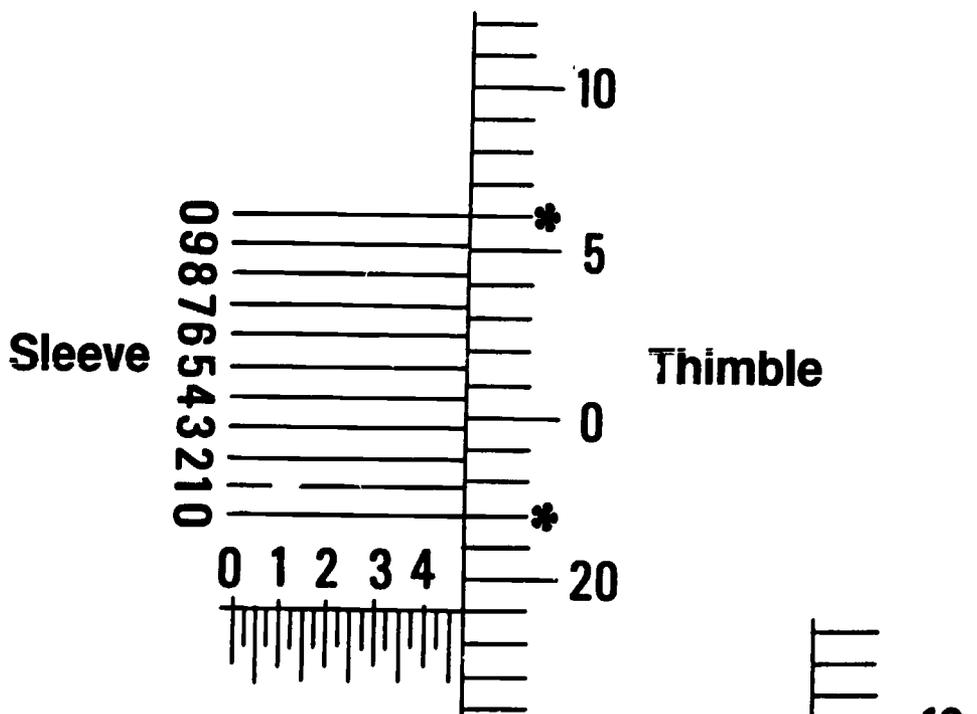
Sleeve Readings



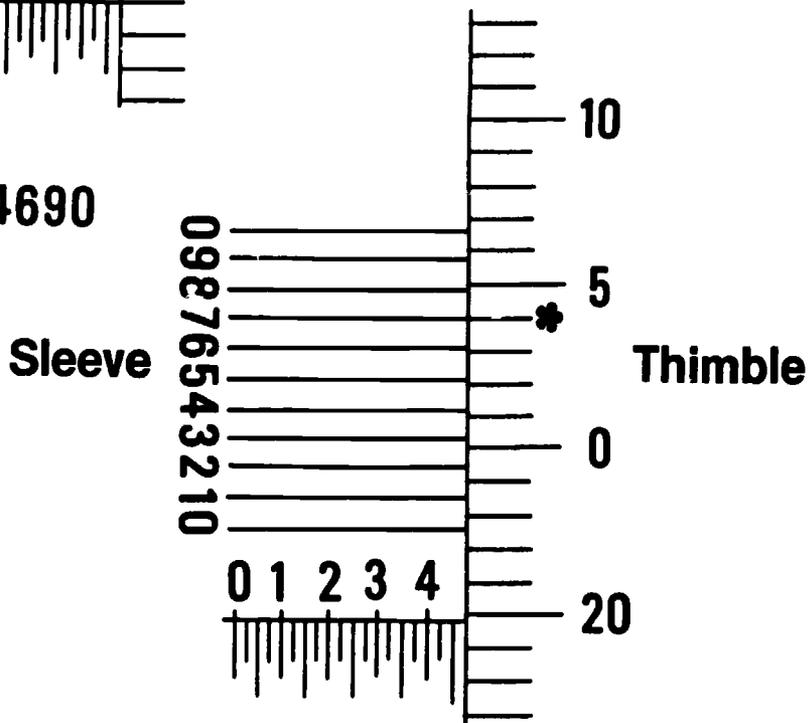
Thimble Sleeve Readings



Vernier Micrometer Readings



0.4690



0.4697

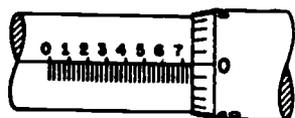
Vernier Sleeve Readings

0	_____
9	_____
8	_____
7	_____
6	_____
5	_____
4	_____
3	_____
2	_____
1	_____
0	_____

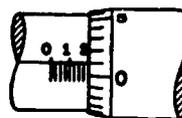
MEASURING UNIT IV-A

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1 — READ THE PLAIN MICROMETER SETTINGS

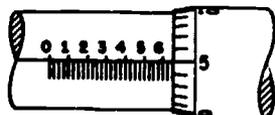
Read the plain micrometer settings below and write the correct answers in the blanks provided.



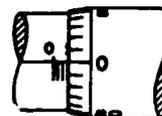
1. _____



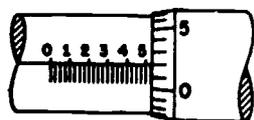
2. _____



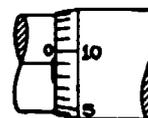
3. _____



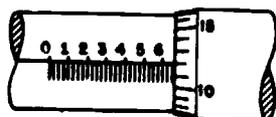
4. _____



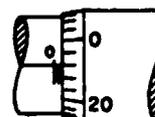
5. _____



6. _____

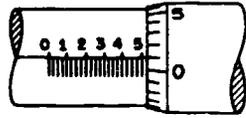


7. _____

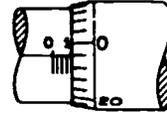


8. _____

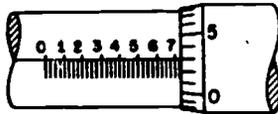
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1



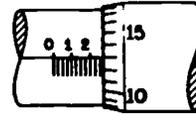
9. _____



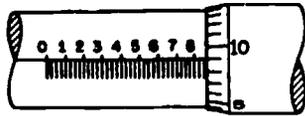
10. _____



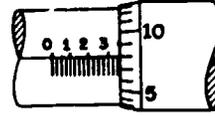
11. _____



12. _____



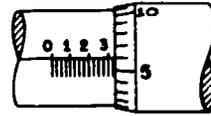
13. _____



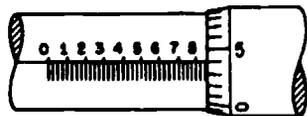
14. _____



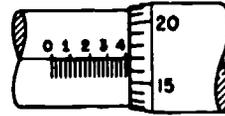
15. _____



16. _____



17. _____



18. _____

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

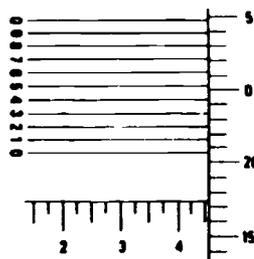
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2 — READ THE VERNIER MICROMETER SETTINGS

Read the vernier micrometer settings below and write the correct answers in the blanks provided.

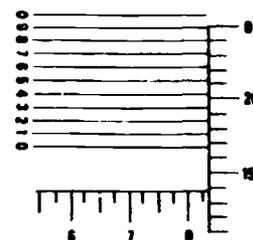
Answers

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

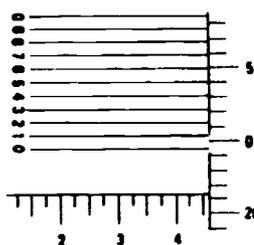
1.



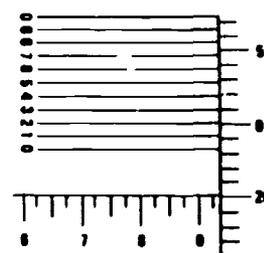
2.



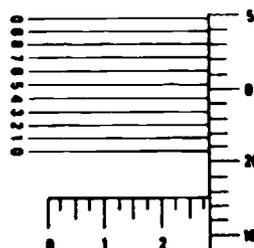
3.



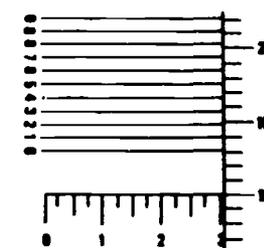
4.



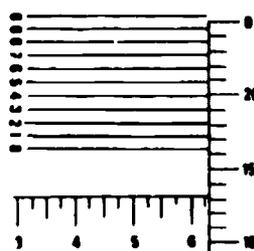
5.



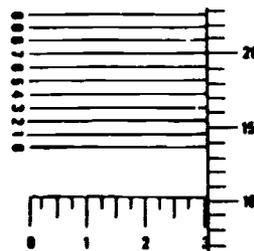
6.



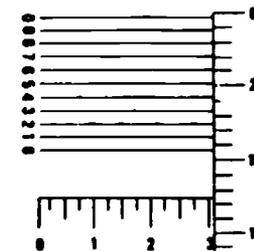
7.



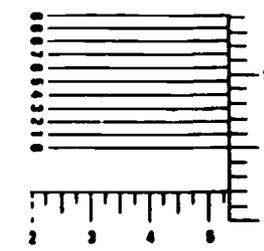
8.



9.



10.



**MEASURING
UNIT IV-A****ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS****Assignment Sheet #1**

1. 0.750
2. 0.201
3. 0.655
4. 0.075
5. 0.527
6. 0.009
7. 0.662
8. 0.048
9. 0.526
10. 0.099
11. 0.728
12. 0.263
13. 0.859
14. 0.358
15. 0.979
16. 0.331
17. 0.854
18. 0.417

Assignment Sheet #2

1. 0.4678
2. 0.8388
3. 0.4715
4. 0.9453
5. 0.2928
6. 0.3101
7. 0.6383
8. 0.3107
9. 0.3128
10. 0.5270

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

JOB SHEET #1 — USE A VERNIER CALIPER

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Vernier caliper
2. Workpieces
 - a. Assortment of fractional drill bits
 - b. Assortment of letter size drill bits
 - c. Assortment of machined parts

(NOTE: All workpieces should be numbered or lettered for reference.)

B. Procedure

1. Select workpieces that are smooth and free of burrs, nicks, or dents
2. Clean inside faces of caliper jaws
3. Check vernier caliper at zero reference
4. Open caliper greater than thickness of part to be measured
5. Hook end jaw over part to be measured
6. Slide movable jaw into contact with part
7. Tighten clamp screw on fine adjustment nut
8. Make fine adjustment with fine adjusting screw if necessary
9. Tighten clamping screw above vernier plate
10. Remove caliper from work carefully
11. Read caliper
12. List reading according to letter or number on workpiece
13. Return vernier caliper to correct storage place
14. Hand in the listed readings to instructor for evaluation

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

JOB SHEET #2 — USE A PLAIN MICROMETER

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Micrometers, plain
 - a. 0" - 1.000" size
 - b. 1.000" - 2.000" size
2. Lathe or vise
3. Workpieces
 - a. New fractional drill bits, assortment of 5
 - b. New letter size drill bits, assortment of 5
 - c. Pieces of metal such as cold rolled stock, machined parts, hardened dowels; assortment of 5

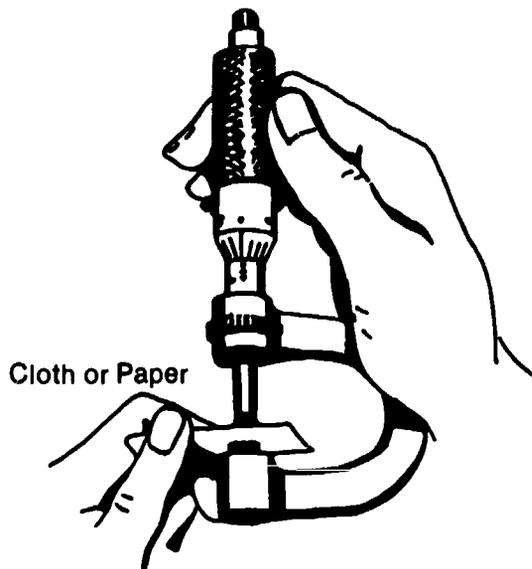
(NOTE: All workpieces should be numbered or lettered for reference.)

B. Procedure

1. Select workpieces that are clean and free of burrs, nicks, or dents
2. Select the proper size micrometer for the workpiece
3. Clean the spindle and anvil of the micrometer (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1

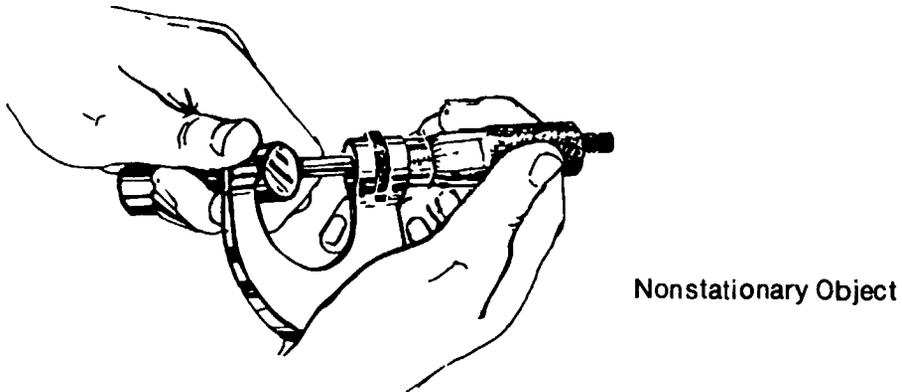
Clean Spindle and Anvil



JOB SHEET #2

4. Check the micrometer at zero reference
5. Hold the micrometer according to the type of workpiece
 - a. Hold the micrometer in the right hand and the workpiece in the left hand to measure a nonstationary object (Figure 2)

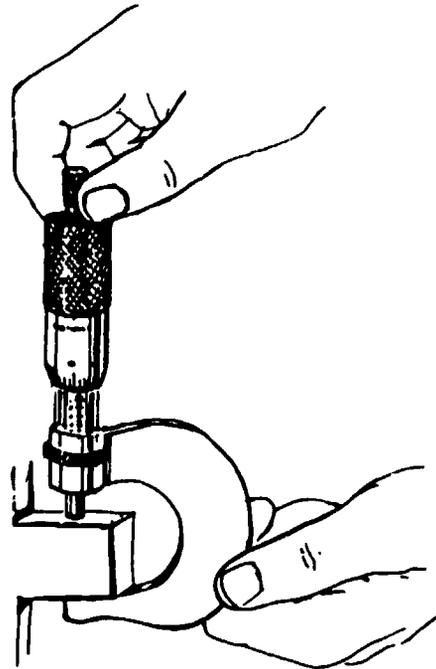
FIGURE 2



- b. Hold the micrometer in both hands to measure a stationary object (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3

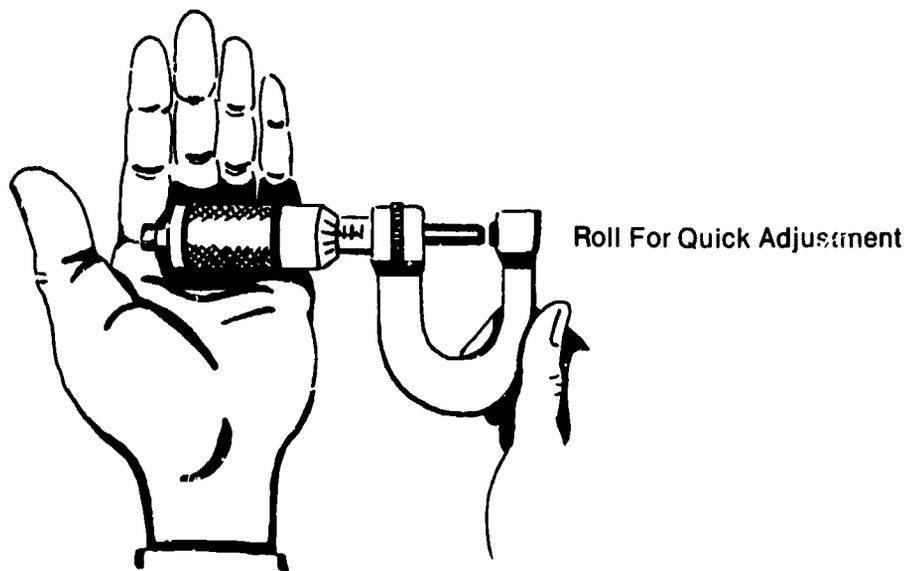
Stationary Object



JOB SHEET #2

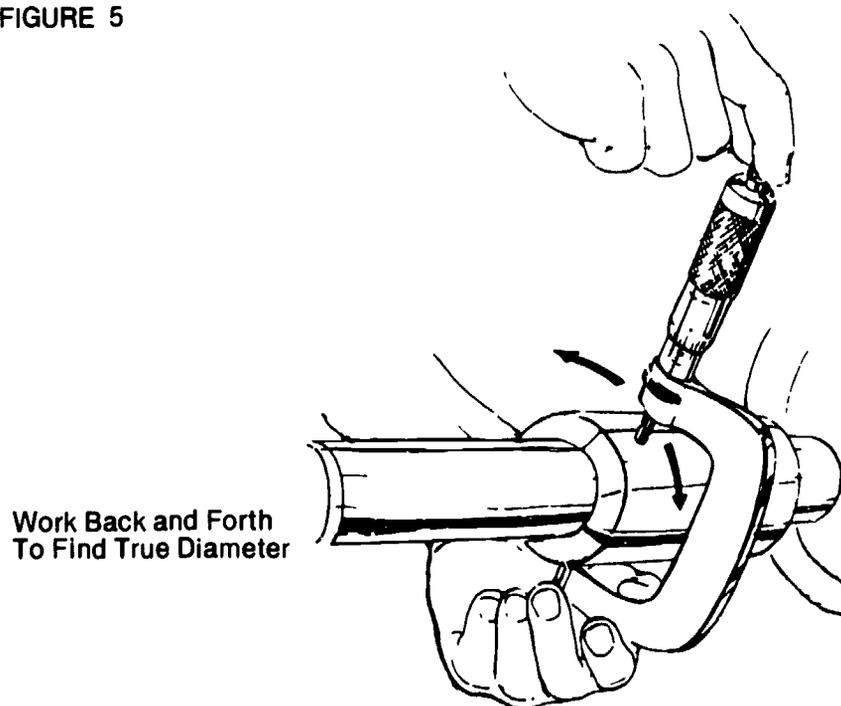
(NOTE: Roll micrometer along palm of hand or forearm for quick adjustment. See Figure 4.)

FIGURE 4



6. Place the micrometer directly over the center of the workpiece to be measured (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5



JOB SHEET #2

7. Turn the thimble of the micrometer until the anvil and spindle contact the workpiece
8. Hold the anvil steady and move the spindle lightly over the workpiece to locate the true centerline

(NOTE: See Figure 5 on the preceding page.)

9. Use ratchet stop or light sense of feel to determine exact measurement
10. Observe micrometer readings

(NOTE: Spindle lock can be turned to hold measurement if micrometer must be removed from workpiece. Spindle must be unlocked before resetting to a new measurement.)

11. List the readings according to the letter or number on the workpiece
12. Return the micrometer to its correct storage

(NOTE: The spindle and anvil of the micrometer should be left open when stored.)

13. Hand in the listed readings to the instructor for evaluation

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

JOB SHEET #3 — USE A DIAL INDICATOR

A. Tools and materials needed

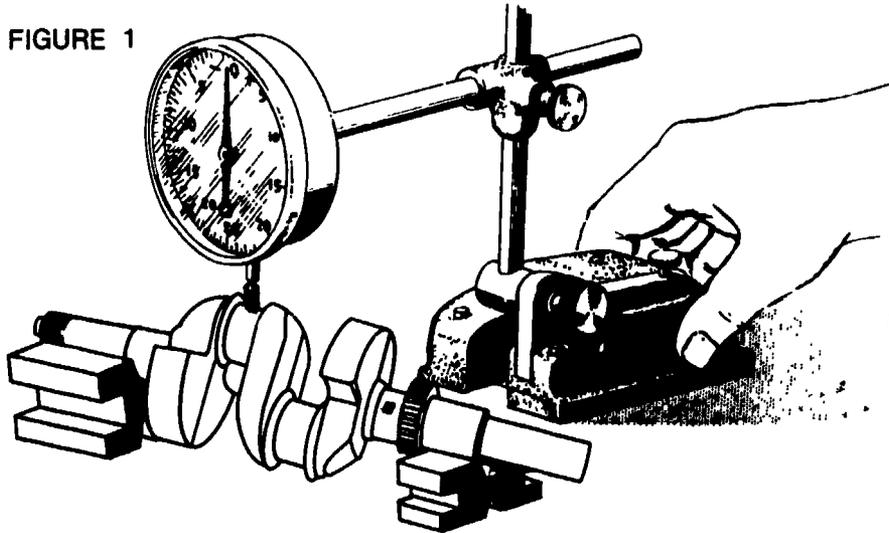
1. Dial indicator
2. Dial indicator holder
3. Magnetic base
4. V blocks - 2
5. Appropriate assortment of machined parts

(NOTE: All workpieces should be numbered or lettered for reference.)

B. Procedure

1. Select workpieces that are clean and free of burrs, nicks, or dents
2. Attach dial indicator to holder
3. Secure holder to work surface
4. Mount crankshaft according to type of measurement to be made (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



5. Position holder so that dial indicator plunger contacts workpiece

JOB SHEET #3

6. Adjust holder so that plunger is depressed two revolutions of pointer and tighten holder
7. Rotate bezel until the zero marking is in line with pointer
8. Measure workpiece for taper, concentricity, and run-out
9. List readings according to the letter or number on the workpiece
10. Disassemble dial indicator and holder and return to the correct storage
11. Hand in the listed readings to the instructor for evaluation

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

JOB SHEET #4 — USE A TELESCOPING GAUGE

A. Tools and materials needed

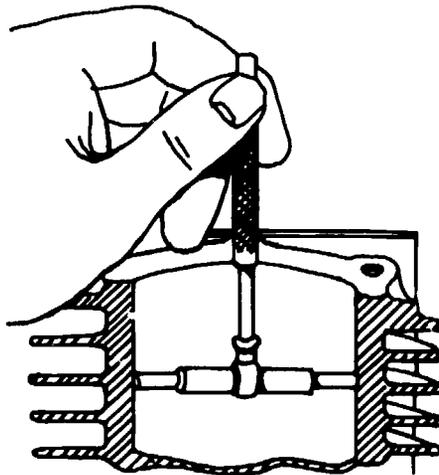
1. Micrometer
2. Telescoping gauge
3. Shop towels
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Secure cylinder from instructor to be measured
2. Compress the arms of the telescoping gauge with your hand into a size slightly smaller than the cylinder to be measured and tighten the nut to lock the arms in position
3. Insert the gauge into the cylinder; loosen the nut (Figure 1)

(NOTE: A light spring inside the arm will push the adjustable end out to fit the cylinder.)

FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #4

4. Make sure the telescoping end is at right angles to the cylinder wall
5. Tighten the nut and withdraw the gauge
6. Measure the telescoping gauge setting with a micrometer
7. Have your instructor check your work
8. Return tools and materials to their proper places

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

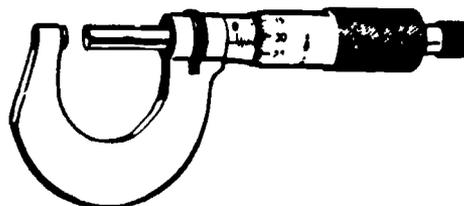
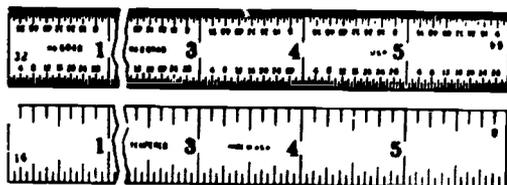
NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| <p>_____a. Low precision measuring instrument graduated in fractional or decimal parts of an inch</p> | <p>1. Graduation</p> |
| <p>_____b. Marking found on rules and scales to denote unit of length</p> | <p>2. Reliable measure</p> |
| <p>_____c. Mistake in the reading or total measurement</p> | <p>3. Vernier caliper</p> |
| <p>_____d. Accurate or true measurement</p> | <p>4. Steel rule</p> |
| <p>_____e. Starting point of measurement for both workpiece and rule</p> | <p>5. Reference point</p> |
| <p>_____f. Makes accurate inside and outside measurements to within one-thousandth of an inch, or one-hundredth of a millimeter</p> | <p>6. Error</p> |

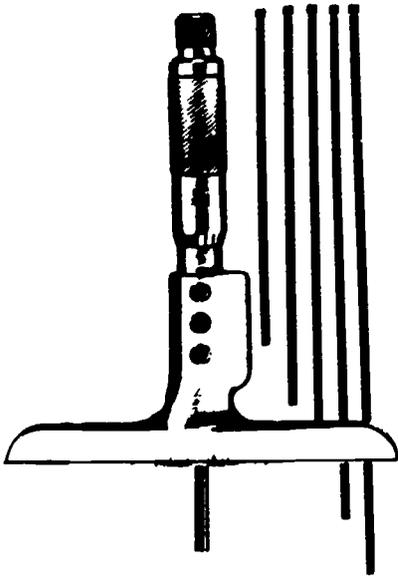
2. Identify measuring instruments used in small engine repair.



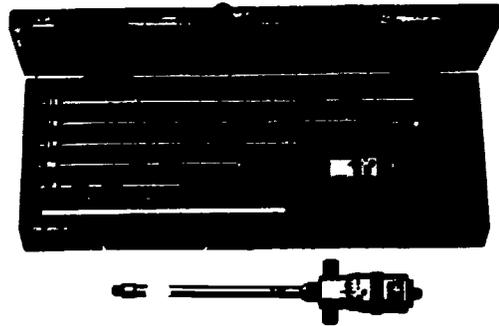
a. _____

b. _____

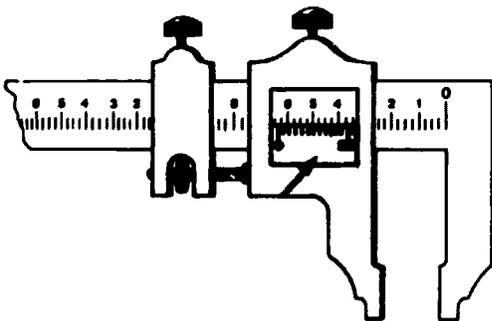
TEST



c. _____



d. _____

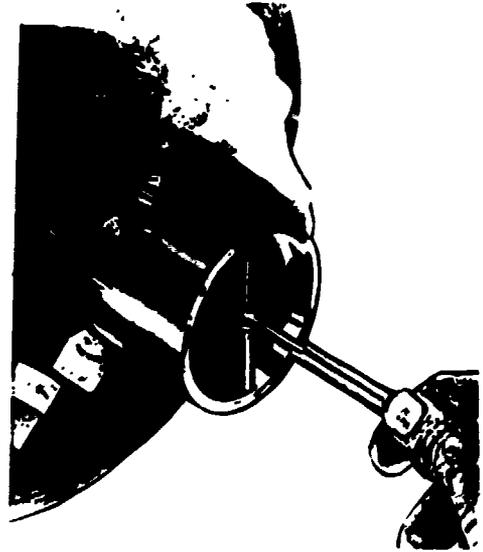
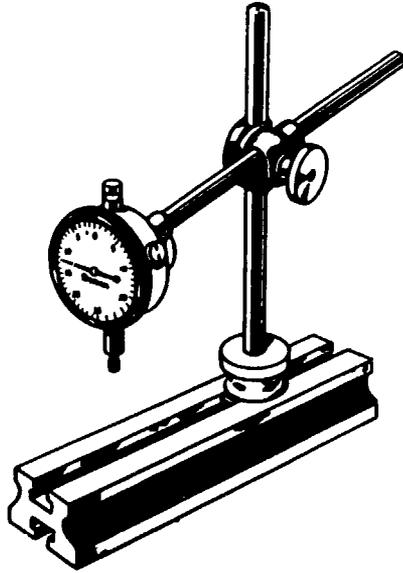


e. _____



f. _____

TEST



g. _____

h. _____

3. Complete the following list of steps for reading measuring instruments by correctly filling in the blanks.

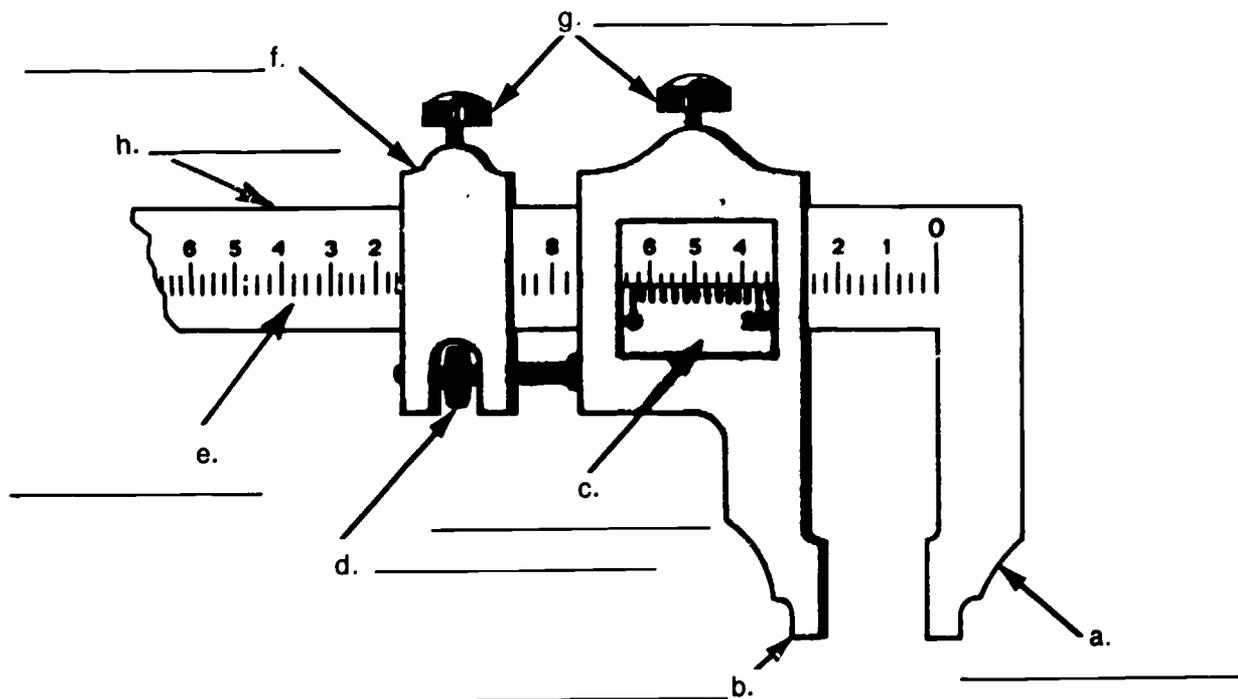
- a. Select _____ of the required units
- b. Total the number of _____
- c. Count _____ units
- d. _____ graduations to lowest terms

4. Select basic units of measurement found on rules by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ____ a. Fractional
 ____ b. Decimal
 ____ c. Integral
 ____ d. Metric

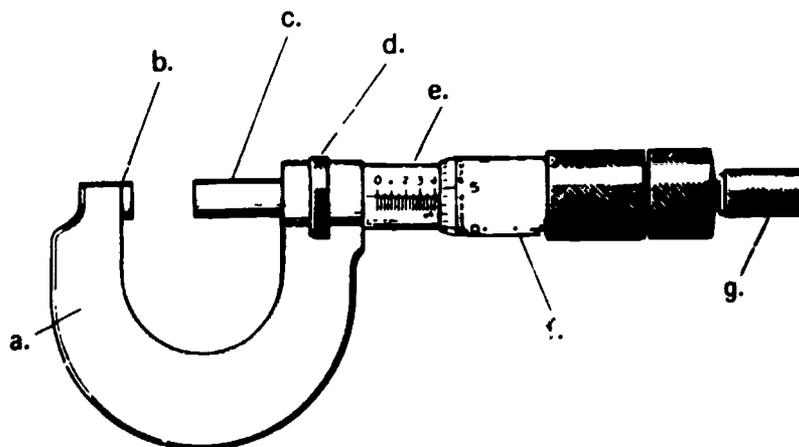
TEST

5. Identify the major parts of a vernier caliper.



6. Identify the major parts of an outside micrometer.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____
- e. _____
- f. _____
- g. _____



7. Complete the following list of statements concerning methods for checking the accuracy of outside micrometers by correctly filling in the blanks.

a. 0" - 1.000"

- 1) Close _____ and anvil together
- 2) Observe _____ references on the sleeve and thimble

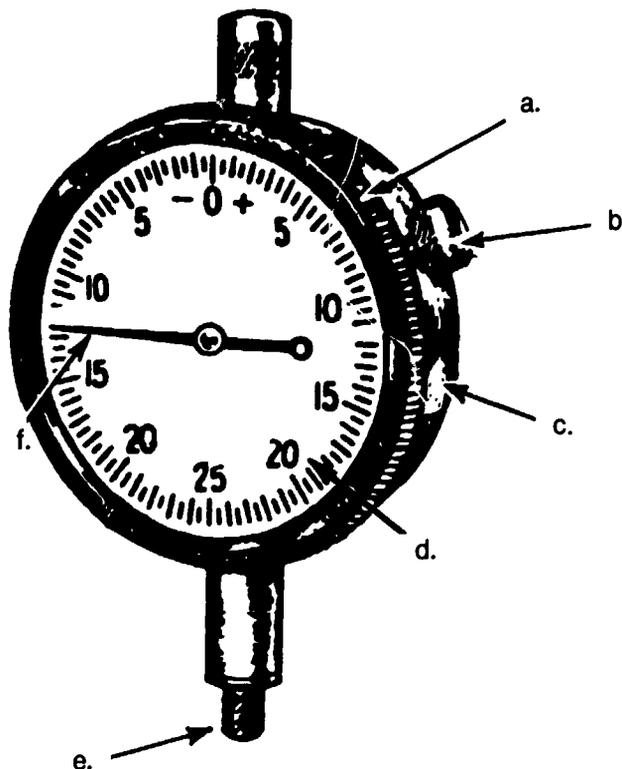
TEST

b. More than one inch

- 1) Use a standard bar or disc to check the _____ capacity
- 2) Observe zero references on the _____ and _____

8. Identify the major parts of a dial indicator.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____
- e. _____
- f. _____

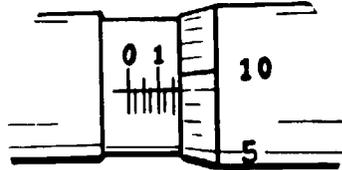


9. Arrange in order the steps for set up and use of a dial indicator by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

- _____ a. Pre-load dial indicator
- _____ b. Measure work
- _____ c. Position plunger in contact with surface to be measured
- _____ d. Secure dial indicator to suitable mounting fixture
- _____ e. Zero dial

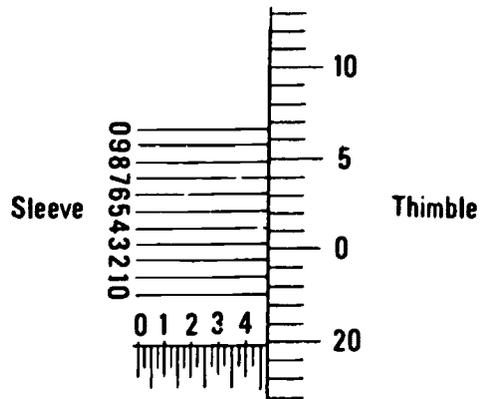
TEST

10. Read the following plain micrometer settings.



Answer: _____

11. Read the following vernier micrometer settings.



Answer: _____

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

12. Demonstrate the ability to:
- Use a vernier caliper (Job Sheet #1).
 - Use a plain micrometer (Job Sheet #2).
 - Use a dial indicator (Job Sheet #3).
 - Use a telescoping gauge (Job Sheet #4).

MEASURING UNIT IV-A

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 4 d. 2
 b. 1 e. 5
 c. 6 f. 3

2. a. Rule
 b. Outside micrometer
 c. Depth micrometer
 d. Inside micrometer
 e. Vernier caliper
 f. Hole gauge
 g. Dial indicator
 h. Telescoping gauge

3. a. Scale
 b. Graduations
 c. Whole
 d. Reduce

4. a,b,d

5. a. Fixed jaw
 b. Movable jaw
 c. Vernier scale
 d. Adjusting nut
 e. Main scale
 f. Clamp
 g. Clamp screws
 h. Beam

6. a. Frame
 b. Anvil
 c. Spindle
 d. Lock
 e. Sleeve
 f. Thimble
 g. Ratchet stop

7. a. 0" - 1.000"
 1) Spindle
 2) Zero

 b. More than one inch
 1) Minimum
 2) Sleeve, thimble

ANSWERS TO TEST

8. a. Bezel
b. Clamp
c. Housing
d. Dial
e. Plunger
f. Pointer
9. a. 3
b. 5
c. 2
d. 1
e. 4
10. 0.159
11. 0.4697
12. Performance skills evaluated according to the standards identified by the instructor.

ENGINE IDENTIFICATION AND INSPECTION UNIT I-B

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with assignment sheets.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Discuss decoding of serial numbers with students.
2. Show examples of different types of engines and demonstrate their differences.
3. Provide students with information on locating the nameplate and finding information about engine.
4. Have operator's instruction booklets for engines available for use by the class.
5. Show students how to complete a work order and have them practice procedure.
6. Show examples of different operating positions of the crankshaft.
7. Discuss procedures outlined in assignment sheets.

(NOTE: Assignment Sheet #2 is optional and may be used to provide additional experience for advanced students.)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

8. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.
- I. Give test.
- J. Evaluate test.
- K. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 1. TM 1 — Engine Type Identification
 2. TM 2 — Nameplate Information
 3. TM 3 — Operating Positions of Crankshafts
- E. Assignment sheets
 1. Assignment Sheet #1 — Complete an Engine Information Form
 2. Assignment Sheet #2 — Complete an Information Form on Accessories and Major Units Found on an Engine (Optional)
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Small Engines*. Volume 1. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials.
- B. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

ENGINE IDENTIFICATION AND INSPECTION UNIT I-B

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Combustion chamber — Area between the piston and cylinder head when the piston is at the top of its stroke

(NOTE: It is in this area where the compressed fuel mixture is ignited and burned.)

- B. Crankcase — Housing for the crankshaft and other related internal parts
- C. Cycle — Completion of a series of events to produce a power impulse
- D. Exhaust port — Opening to the outside of the combustion chamber for the release of exhaust gases
- E. Intake port — Opening into the combustion chamber for the intake of the fuel-air charge

(NOTE: This is also called the transfer port on some engines.)

- F. Four-stroke cycle engine — Engine design which develops a power stroke every other revolution of the crankshaft
- G. Two-stroke cycle engine — Engine design permitting a power stroke once for each revolution of the crankshaft
- H. Nameplate — Information plate attached by the manufacturer giving their name, the engine make, model, serial number, and other information

II. Characteristics of four-stroke cycle and two-stroke cycle engines (Transparency 1)

- A. Four-stroke cycle engine
1. Usually has an oil sump and possibly an oil filter
 2. Exhaust muffler connects at the head of the engine cylinder
 3. Carburetor will always be on or near the cylinder head
 4. Compression resistance is felt every other revolution

INFORMATION SHEET

B. Two-stroke cycle engine

1. Does not have an oil sump and oil filter
2. Exhaust port is about midpoint on the cylinder
3. Carburetor may be located at the base of the cylinder or on the bottom or side of the crankcase
4. Compression resistance is felt every revolution

III. Meaning of the model, type and code numbers found on the engine (Transparencies 1 and 2)

(NOTE: These numbers are essential to order parts. This information will be found stamped on the blower housing of most engines, or a special metal tag. The following information is for Briggs and Stratton Engines.)

A. Model numbers describe the basic engine

(NOTE: For example, the model #92902. Read numbers in sequence. The "9" indicates the piston displacement is 9 cubic inches. The "2" indicates the basic design series, in this case indicating the engine has a aluminum bore with a chrome plated piston. "9" means the crankshaft position is vertical and the engine is equipped with a Pulsa-Jet carburetor and has an air vane governor. The next "0" indicates the engine has plain bearings, and the "2" indicates the engine has a rewind type starter.)

B. The type number describes the variations of the engine and these numbers are required when ordering parts

(NOTE: For example, the type number 0515-01. The first four digits indicate the mechanical parts of the engine. The following two digits describe the trim, color of paint and packaging for the engine.)

C. The code number indicates the date the engine was built and assembly line number making the engine

(NOTE: For example, the 8408041 indicates the engine was built 1984 — eight month — fourth day on assembly line No. 1.)

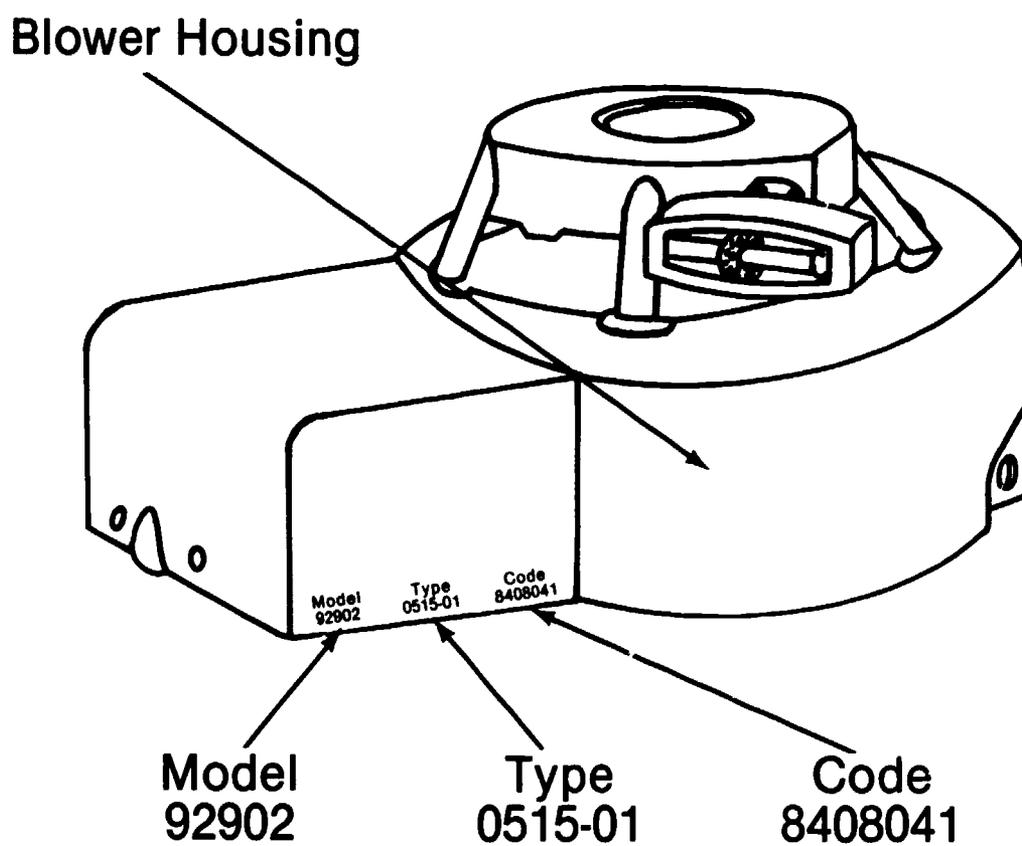
In sequence

- 84 indicates year of engine
- 08 indicates month
- 04 indicates day
- 1 indicates assembly line

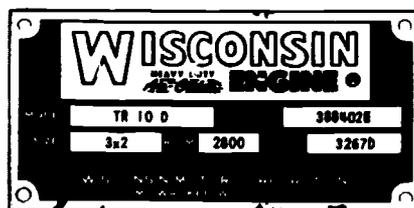
INFORMATION SHEET

- IV. Engine information which may be determined from the operator's instructions and/or inspection of the engine**
- A. General information
 - 1. Name of equipment manufacturer
 - 2. Address of equipment manufacturer
 - B. Operating position of the crankshaft (Transparency 3)
 - C. Engine cycle
 - D. Model and other numbers
 - E. Types of accessories and major units
 - F. Service and maintenance specifications
- V. Operating positions of the crankshaft (Transparency 3)**
- A. Vertical
 - B. Horizontal
 - C. Multi-position

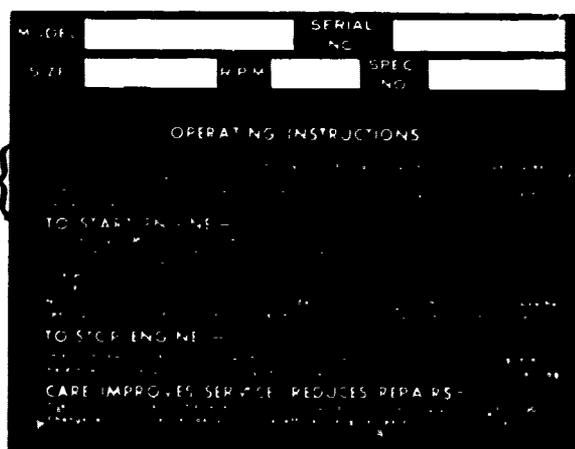
Engine Type Identification



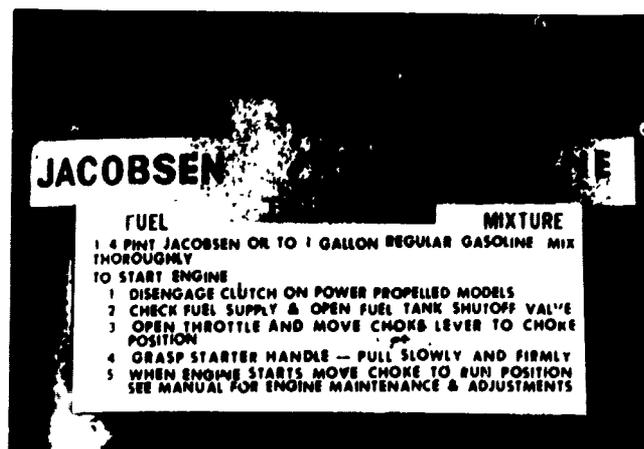
Nameplate Information



Nameplate



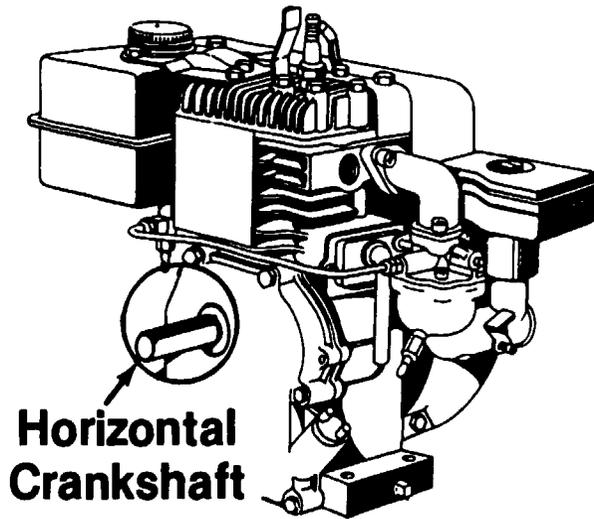
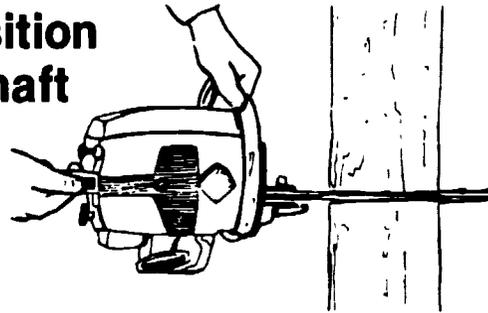
Four-Stroke Cycle Engine



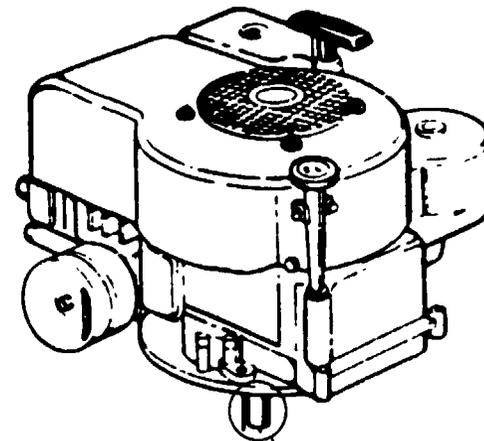
Two-Stroke Cycle Engine

Operating Positions of Crankshafts

**Multi-Position
Crankshaft**



**Horizontal
Crankshaft**



Vertical Crankshaft

ENGINE IDENTIFICATION AND INSPECTION UNIT I-B

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1 — COMPLETE AN ENGINE INFORMATION FORM

Complete the following engine information form by looking at an engine and its operator's manual.

NAME OF EQUIPMENT (ON WHICH ENGINE IS MOUNTED) _____

NAME AND ADDRESS OF EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER _____

NAME AND ADDRESS OF ENGINE MANUFACTURER _____

OPERATING POSITION OF CRANKSHAFT: VERTICAL. _____, HORIZONTAL _____, MULTI-
POSITION _____.

ENGINE CYCLE: 2-Cycle _____, 4-Cycle _____.

MODEL NUMBER _____

SERIAL NUMBER _____

SPECIFICATION NUMBER _____

TYPE NUMBER _____

HORSEPOWER _____

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION _____

ENGINE IDENTIFICATION AND INSPECTION UNIT I-B

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2 — COMPLETE AN ENGINE INFORMATION FORM ON ACCESSORIES AND MAJOR UNITS FOUND ON AN ENGINE

(NOTE: This is an optional assignment sheet and you may wish to complete the following form after studying additional units in this manual. Check with your instructor.)

Types of accessories and major units:

Carburetor air cleaner: Oil bath _____, Oiled filter _____, Dry filter _____.

Fuel strainer: Combination screen and sediment bowl _____, Screen inside the fuel tank _____.

Crankcase breather: Reed valve _____, Floating disc valve _____.

Starter: Rope-wind _____, Rope-rewind _____, Wind up _____, Electric, AC _____, Electric, DC _____.

Ignition system: Flywheel magneto _____, External magnet _____, Battery _____.

Fuel pump: _____

Carburetor: Float _____, Suction lift _____, Diaphragm _____.

Governor: Air vane _____, Centrifugal _____.

Service and maintenance specifications:

Fuel: Mixture of oil and gasoline (2-cycle) Refer to Operator's Manual for the correct fuel mixture specific to your equipment.

Oil: SAE grade: 5 W _____, SAE 10 W _____, SAE 20 W _____, SAE 30 _____, SAE 10 W-30 _____.
Classification: _____SC _____SD _____SE _____SF

Type of spark plug: _____ Gap setting .020", .025", Other _____.

Ignition breaker-point gap: .012" _____, .015" _____, Other _____.

ENGINE IDENTIFICATION AND INSPECTION UNIT I-B

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| _____a. Area between the piston and cylinder head when the piston is at the top of its stroke | 1. Nameplate |
| _____b. Information plate attached by the manufacturer giving their name, the engine make, model, serial number, and other information | 2. Exhaust port |
| _____c. Opening into the combustion chamber for the intake of the fuel-air charge | 3. Combustion chamber |
| _____d. Engine design which develops a power stroke every other revolution of the crankshaft | 4. Crankcase |
| _____e. Completion of a series of events to produce a power impulse | 5. Two-stroke cycle engine |
| _____f. Opening to the outside of the combustion chamber for the release of exhaust gases | 6. Intake port |
| _____g. Engine design permitting a power stroke once for each revolution of the crankshaft | 7. Four-stroke cycle engine |
| _____h. Housing for the crankshaft and other related internal parts | 8. Cycle |

2. Distinguish between the characteristics of a four-stroke cycle engine and a two-stroke cycle engine by placing an "X" next to the characteristics of a four-stroke cycle engine.

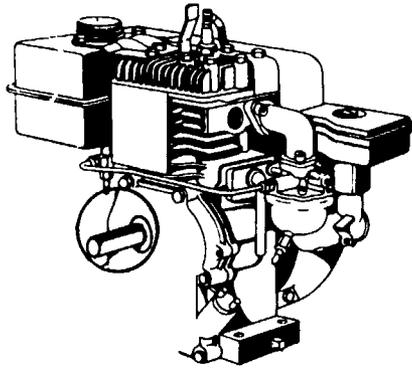
- _____a. Carburetor will always be on or near the cylinder head
- _____b. Usually has an oil sump and possibly an oil filter
- _____c. Compression resistance is felt every other revolution
- _____d. Exhaust port is about midpoint on the cylinder
- _____e. Compression resistance is felt every revolution
- _____f. Does not have an oil sump and oil filter
- _____g. Carburetor will always be on or near the cylinder head

TEST

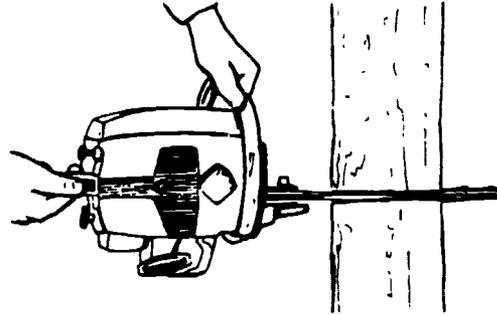
3. Select true statements concerning the meaning of the model, type and code numbers found on the engine by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- a. Model numbers describe the variations of the engine and these numbers are required when ordering parts
 - b. The type number describes the variations of the engine and these numbers are required when ordering parts
 - c. The code number indicates the date the engine was built and assembly line number making the engine
 - d. Model numbers describe the basic engine
 - e. The code number describes the basic engine
4. Select engine information which may be determined from the operator's instructions and/or inspection of the engine by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- a. Engine cycle
 - b. Model and other numbers
 - c. Service and maintenance specifications
 - d. Paint specifications on engine block
 - e. Diameter of wire on high tension leads
 - f. Operating position of the crankshaft
 - g. Breaker point weight

TEST

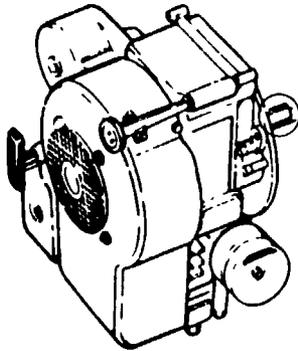
5. Identify the operating positions of the following crankshafts.



a. _____



b. _____



c. _____

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

6. Complete an engine information form (Assignment Sheet #1).
7. Complete an information form on accessories and major units found on an engine (Assignment Sheet #2 — Optional).

ENGINE IDENTIFICATION AND INSPECTION UNIT I-B

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.
 - a. 3
 - b. 1
 - c. 6
 - d. 7
 - e. 8
 - f. 2
 - g. 5
 - h. 4
2. a,b,c,g
3. b,c,d
4. a,b,c,f
5.
 - a. Horizontal
 - b. Multi-position
 - c. Vertical
6. Evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor
7. Evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor

OBJECTIVE SHEET

11. Calculate problems using the formula for engine cubic inch displacement (Assignment Sheet #4).
12. Calculate problems using the formula for compression ratio (Assignment Sheet #5).
13. Identify types of engine design.
14. Identify types of engine cooling.

BASIC ENGINE PRINCIPLES AND DESIGN UNIT II-B

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.
D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.
E. Provide students with information sheet.
F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with assignment sheets.
H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:
1. Check with the major small engine manufacturers for visual aids to demonstrate basic engine principles.
2. Give examples of types of motion. If possible, show examples to class.
3. Discuss procedures outlined in assignment sheets.
4. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.
I. Give test.
J. Evaluate test.
K. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
B. Suggested activities
C. Information sheet

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Types of Motion
 - 2. TM 2 — Basic Internal Combustion Engine Parts
 - 3. TM 3 — Chemical Energy to Rotary Motion
 - 4. TM 4 — Cubic Inch Displacement
 - 5. TM 5 — Compression Ratio-6 to 1
 - 6. TM 6 — Engine Designs
 - 7. TM 7 — Engine Designs (Continued)
 - 8. TM 8 — Engine Cooling Systems
- E. Assignment sheets
 - 1. Assignment Sheet #1 — Calculate Work
 - 2. Assignment Sheet #2 — Calculate Horsepower
 - 3. Assignment Sheet #3 — Calculate Torque
 - 4. Assignment Sheet #4 — Calculate Cubic Inch Displacement
 - 5. Assignment Sheet #5 — Calculate Compression Ratio
- F. Answers to assignment sheets
- G. Test
- H. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. Bohn, Ralph C., and MacDonald, Angus J. *Power: Mechanics of Energy Control*. Bloomington, Illinois: McKnight and McKnight, 1970.
- B. Stockel, Martin W. *Auto Mechanics Fundamentals*. South Holland, Illinois: Goodheart-Willcox Co., 1982.
- C. *A Power Primer*. Detroit, Michigan: General Motors.
- D. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

BASIC ENGINE PRINCIPLES AND DESIGN

UNIT II-B

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Force — Any agent that produces or tends to produce motion
- B. Work — Results of force overcoming a resistance over a definite distance
- C. Energy — Ability to do work
- D. Potential energy — Stored energy
- E. Kinetic energy — Energy in motion
- F. Power — Rate at which work is done
- G. Horsepower — Measurement of work accomplished in a given period of time

(NOTE: One horsepower is a unit of power equal to 746 watts.)
- H. Torque — Measurement of turning effort
- I. Friction — Resistance to relative motion between two bodies in contact
- J. PSI — Pounds per square inch; most common unit for measuring pressure

(NOTE: The metric equivalent to psi is kilogram per square centimeter, kg/cm².)
- K. Mechanical power — Transmission and control of motion through the use of gears, pulleys, shafts, and other mechanical devices
- L. Reciprocating motion — Back and forth motion
- M. Cycle — Series of events or operations that happen regularly and lead back to the starting point
- N. Control — To exercise restraining or directing influence over working forces
- O. Transmission — Relaying of a working force
- P. TDC — Top dead center

(NOTE: TDC may also be stated as ATDC, after top dead center, or BTDC, before top dead center.)

INFORMATION SHEET

Q. BDC — Bottom dead center

(NOTE: BDC may also be stated as ABDC, after bottom dead center, or BBDC, before bottom dead center.)

R. Stroke — Distance the piston moves when traveling from TDC to BDC

S. Bore — Diameter of the cylinder

T. Displacement — Total volume of air-fuel compressed by the piston in traveling from BDC to TDC

U. CID — Cubic inch displacement

(NOTE: Metric measurement for displacement is in cubic centimeters or liters.)

V. Combustion — Action or operation of burning

II. Characteristics of energy

A. Energy is ever present

B. Energy cannot be created or destroyed

C. Energy can only be changed from one kind to another

III. Types of energy

A. Light

(NOTE: Light energy promotes growth in plants and makes our surroundings visible.)

B. Heat

(NOTE: Heat energy cooks food, develops mechanical energy to power automobiles, and warms homes.)

C. Chemical

(NOTE: Chemical energy is the energy of life.)

D. Electrical

(NOTE: Electrical energy is the most flexible and is best known for lighting lights, running motors, and providing communications.)

INFORMATION SHEET**E. Nuclear**

(NOTE: Nuclear energy, also known as atomic energy, is produced through rearrangement of atoms.)

F. Mechanical

(NOTE: Mechanical energy is contained in every moving object; it is the energy involved in motion.)

IV. Forms of available energy**A. Potential**

(NOTE: Potential energy is stored energy.)

Examples: Fuel, battery, stretched spring

B. Kinetic

(NOTE: Kinetic energy is energy in motion)

Examples: Gasoline burning, wind, flowing water

V. Types of motion (Transparency 1)**A. Reciprocating****B. Rotary****C. Linear****VI. Formula for work — Work = Force × Distance**

(NOTE: Force must be used to measure work for all movement except lifting. Work is measured in foot pounds.)

Example: How much work is accomplished if it takes 80 pounds of force to move a 300 pound box 50 feet?

$$W = F \times D$$

$$W = 80 \times 50$$

$$W = 4000 \text{ foot pounds}$$

INFORMATION SHEET

VII. **Formula for horsepower** — $\text{Horsepower} = \frac{\text{Force} \times \text{distance}}{\text{Time (sec)} \times 550}$ or

$$\frac{\text{Weight} \times \text{distance}}{\text{Time (sec)} \times 550}$$

(NOTE: One horsepower is 550 foot pounds of work done in one second. Force must be used instead of weight in all situations except lifting.)

Example: A 180 pound man climbs a 10 foot flight of stairs in 5 seconds. How much horsepower does he develop?

$$\text{HP} = \frac{W \times D}{\text{Time (sec)} \times 550}$$

$$\text{HP} = \frac{180 \times 10}{5 \times 550}$$

$$\text{HP} = \frac{1800}{2750}$$

$$\text{HP} = .65 \text{ horsepower}$$

VIII. **Formula for torque** — $\text{Torque} = \text{Force} \times \text{Radius}$

(NOTE: Unit of measurement is pound feet measured as a force applied to a radius.)

Example: If 25 pounds of force is applied to a wrench 2 feet long, what is the torque?

$$T = F \times R$$

$$T = 25 \times 2$$

$$T = 50 \text{ pound feet}$$

IX. **Parts of basic internal combustion engine (Transparency 2)**

- A. **Cylinder** — Hollow tube closed at one end by the cylinder head
- B. **Piston** — Cylindrical object which slides in the tube, fitting tightly to seal other end of tube
- C. **Rings** — Circular devices fitted to the upper end of the piston which seal the piston to the cylinder to control loss of compression and lubricating oil
- D. **Connecting rod** — Rod which connects the crank on the crankshaft to the piston
- E. **Crankshaft** — Main shaft of an engine which, in conjunction with connecting rods, changes reciprocating motion of pistons into rotary motion

(NOTE: The lower end of the connecting rod is connected to offset center portion of crankshaft and must follow the same circular path as shaft.)

INFORMATION SHEET

- F. Valve — Movable plug to open and close the cylinder in order to let in air-fuel mixture and to remove the burned fuel from the cylinder
- G. Port — Passage behind the valves which conducts fuel and air into and exhaust out of the cylinder

X. Process by which an internal combustion engine converts chemical energy into rotary motion (Transparency 3)

- A. Gasoline and air are introduced into the upper end of the cylinder
- B. Air-fuel mixture is ignited and burned, producing heat energy
- C. Heat energy causes the cylinder gases to expand
- D. Expansion of the burning gases pushes piston down the cylinder
- E. Downward motion of piston transmits force to the crankshaft through the connecting rod to produce rotary motion

(NOTE: Rotary motion is a result of the turning crankshaft.)

XI. Formula for engine cubic inch displacement (Transparency 4)

$$\text{Cubic inch displacement} = \frac{\pi \times \text{Bore}^2 \times \text{Stroke} \times \text{Number of cylinders}}{4}$$

Example: An 8-cylinder engine with a 4" bore and a 3 1/2" stroke has how much displacement?

$$\text{CID} = \frac{(3.1416) \times \text{Bore}^2 (4^2) \times \text{Stroke} (3.50) \times \text{No. of cylinders} (8)}{4}$$

$$\text{CID} = \frac{3.1416 \times 4^2 \times 3.5 \times 8}{4}$$

$$\text{CID} = 43.98 \times 8$$

$$\text{CID} = 351.85 \text{ cubic inch displacement}$$

(NOTE: One liter is equal to 61.02 cubic inches.)

XII. Formula for compression ratio — Air volume of cylinder with the piston at BDC divided by volume with piston at TDC (Transparency 5)

Example: Cylinder volume at BDC is 42.35 cu. in. Volume at TDC is 4.45 cu. in. Compression ratio is 9.5 to 1 [42.35 ÷ 4.5 = 9.5:1]

INFORMATION SHEET

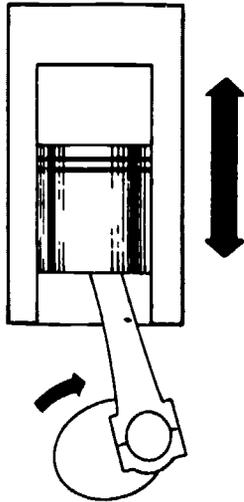
XIII. Types of engine design (Transparencies 6 and 7)

- A. In-line
- B. V-type
- C. Opposed
- D. Radial
- E. Rotary

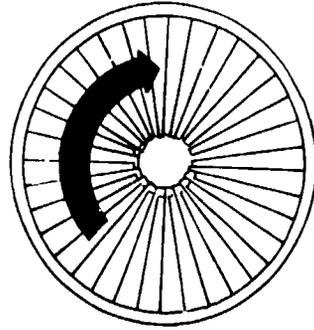
XIV. Types of engine cooling systems (Transparency 8)

- A. Liquid
- B. Air

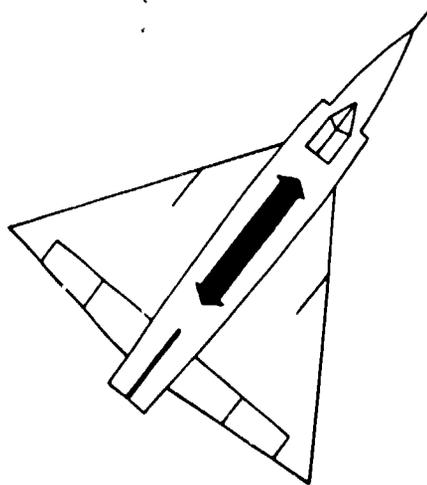
Types of Motion



Reciprocating Input Motion
From a Piston

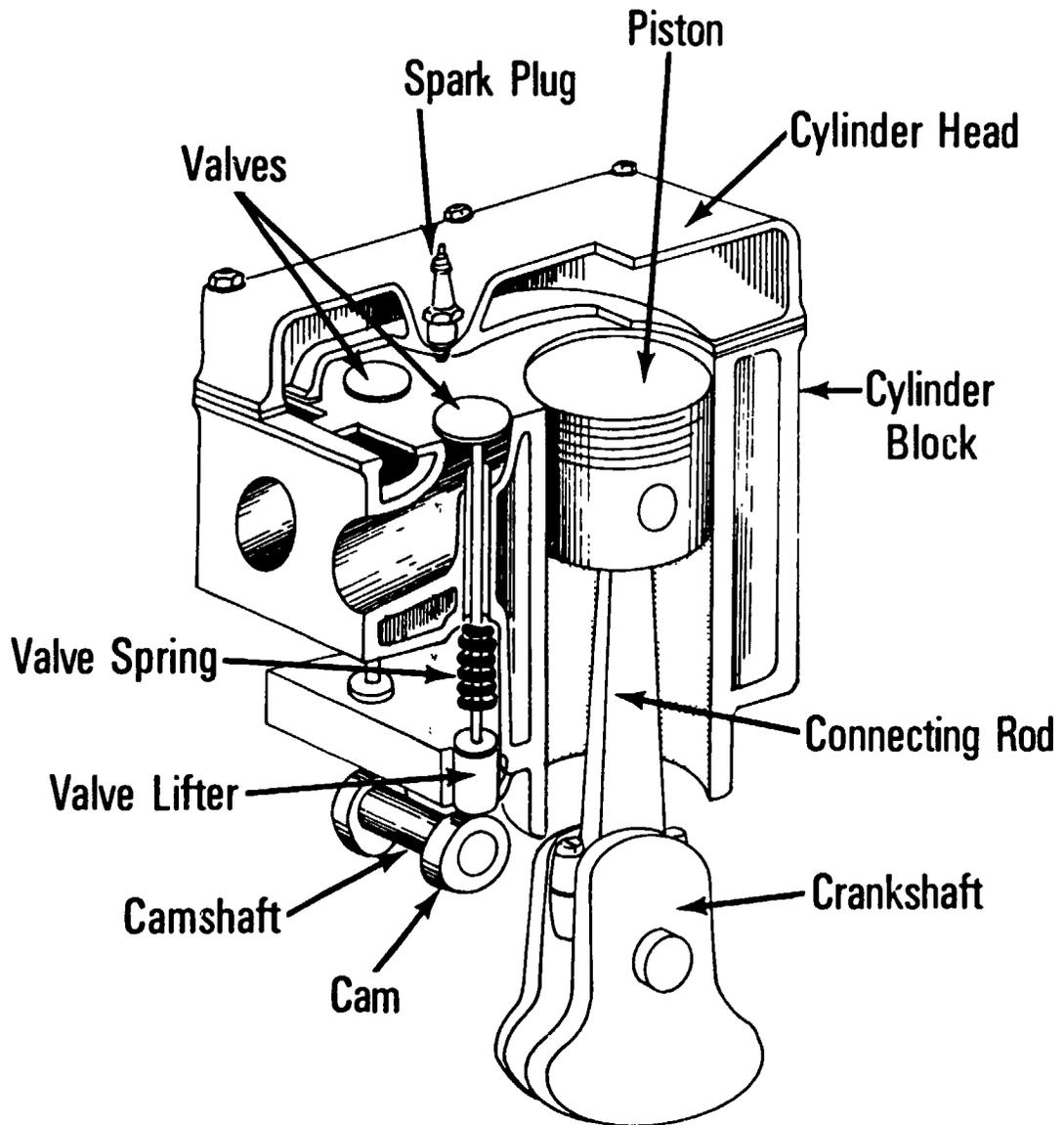


Rotary Input Motion
from a Turbine

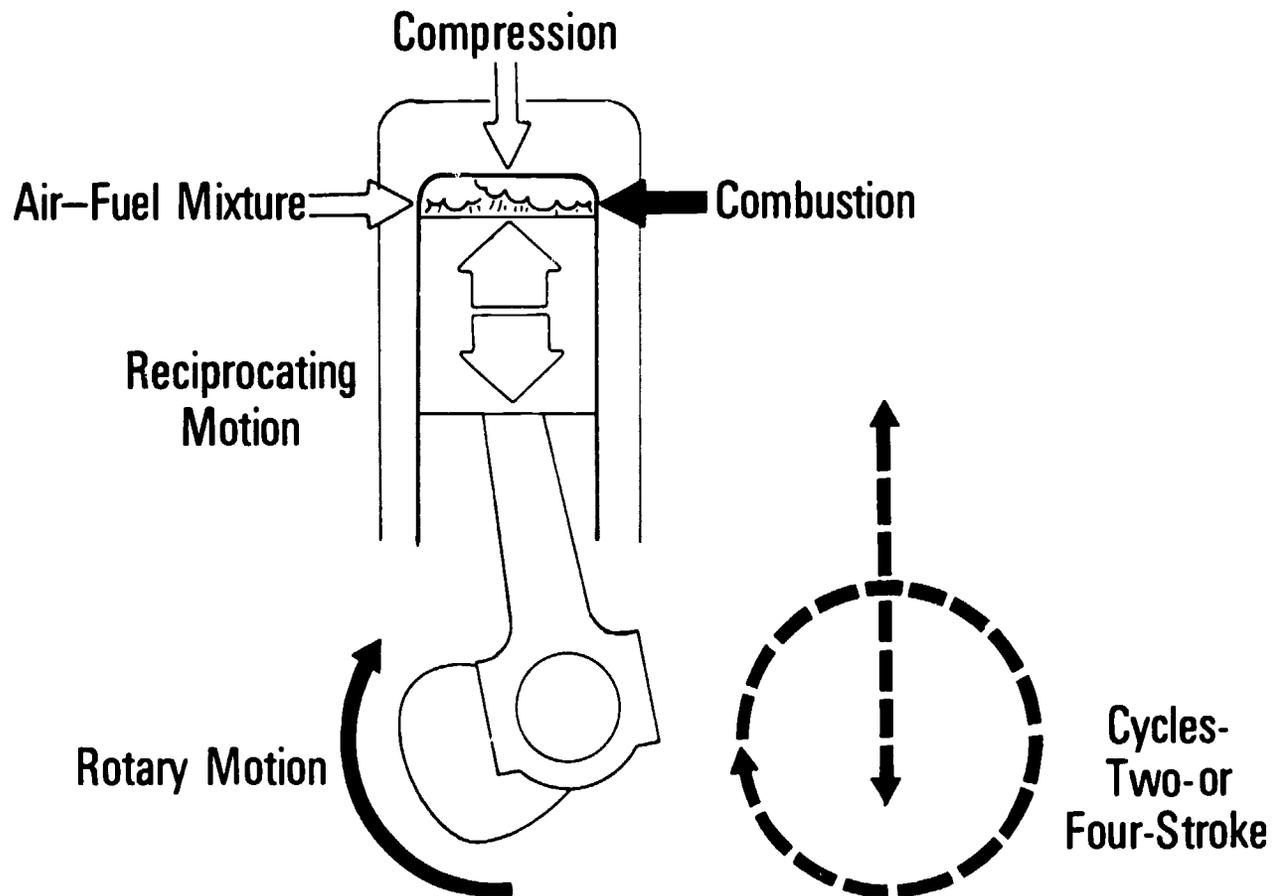


Linear Input Motion
from a Jet

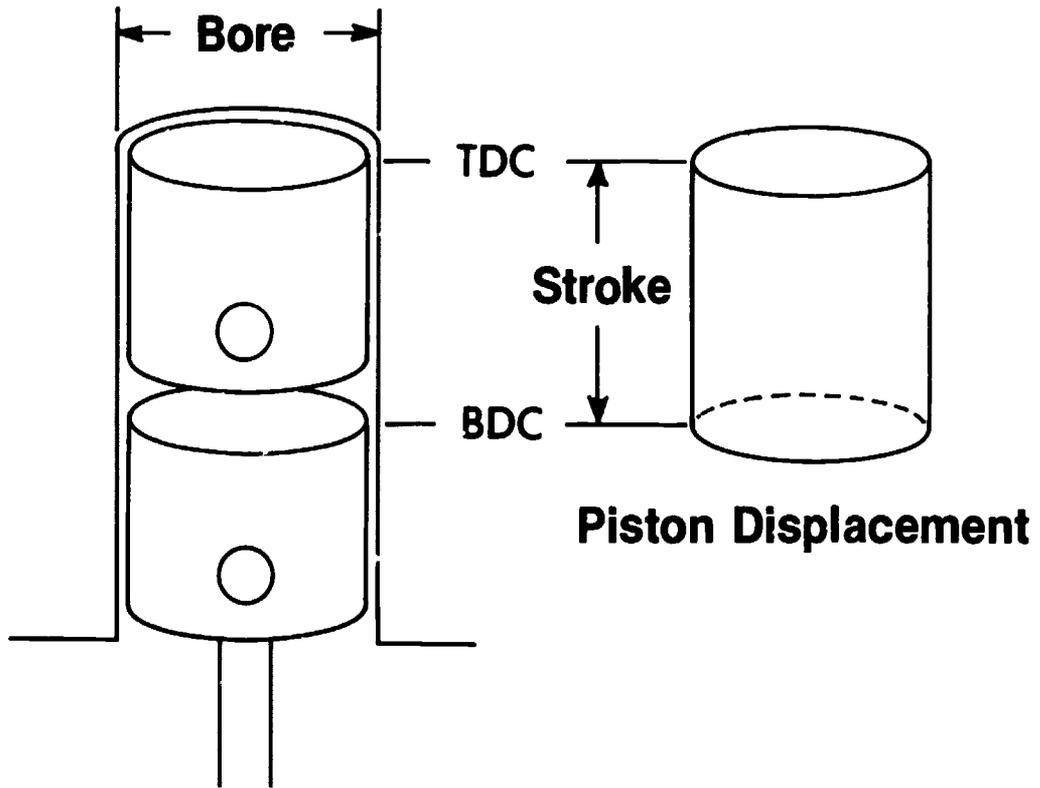
Basic Internal Combustion Engine Parts



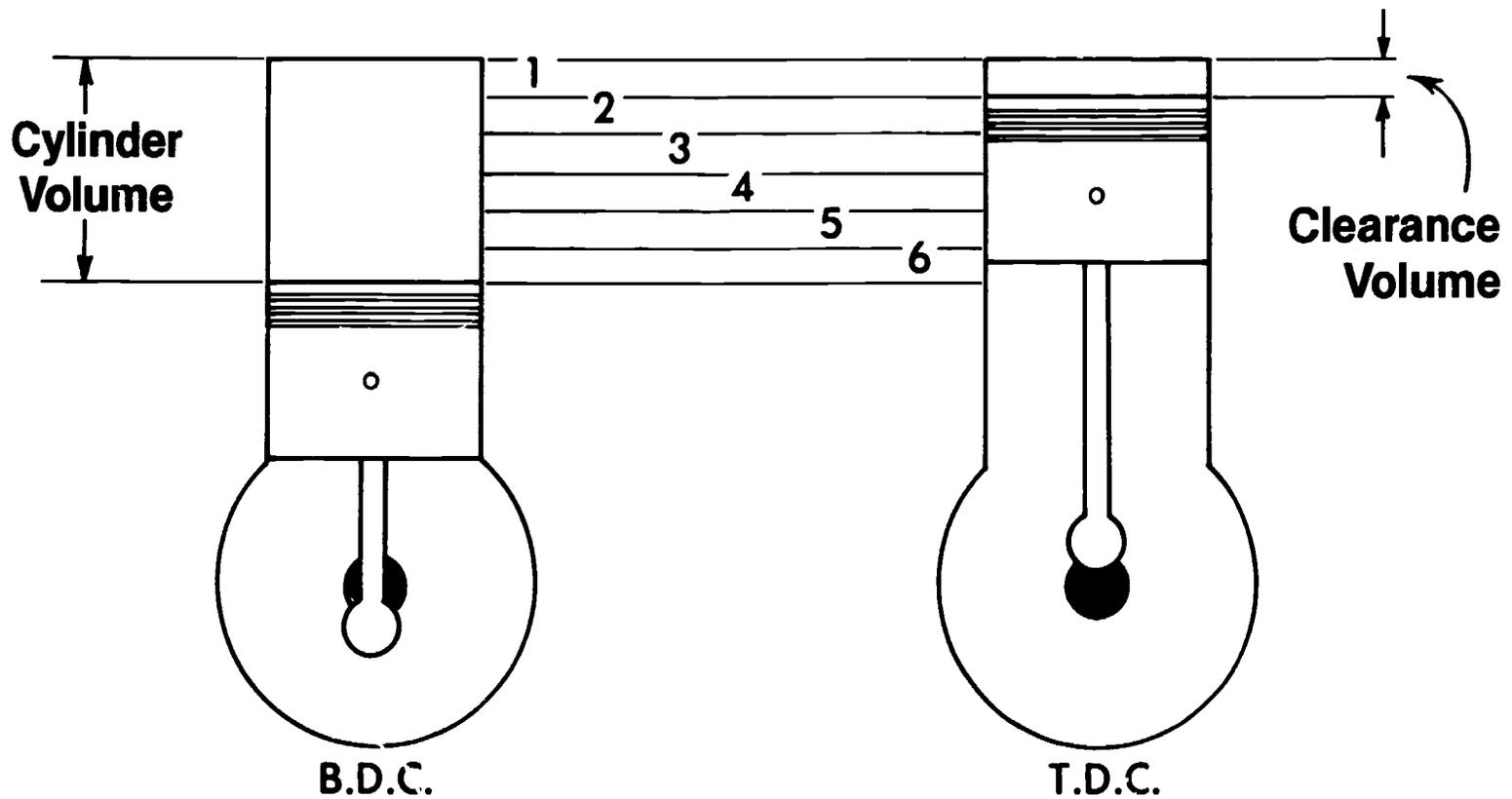
Chemical Energy to Rotary Motion



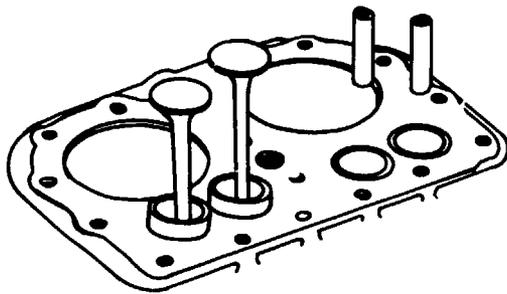
Cubic Inch Displacement



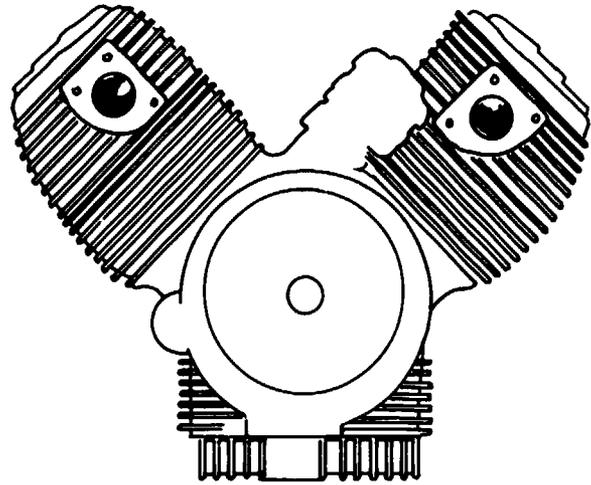
Compression Ratio 6 To 1



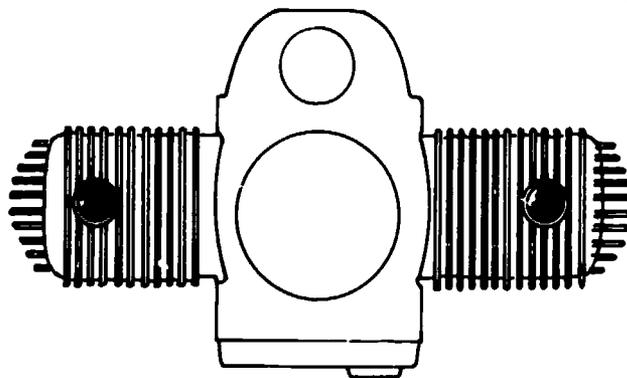
Engine Designs



In-Line



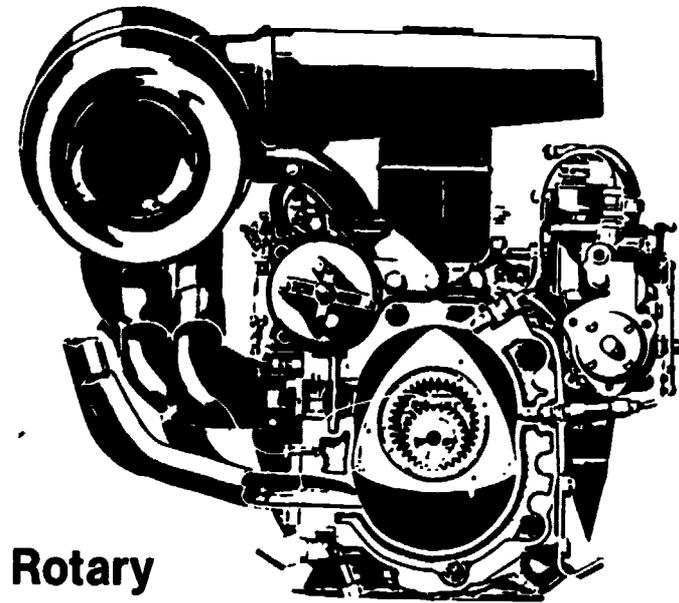
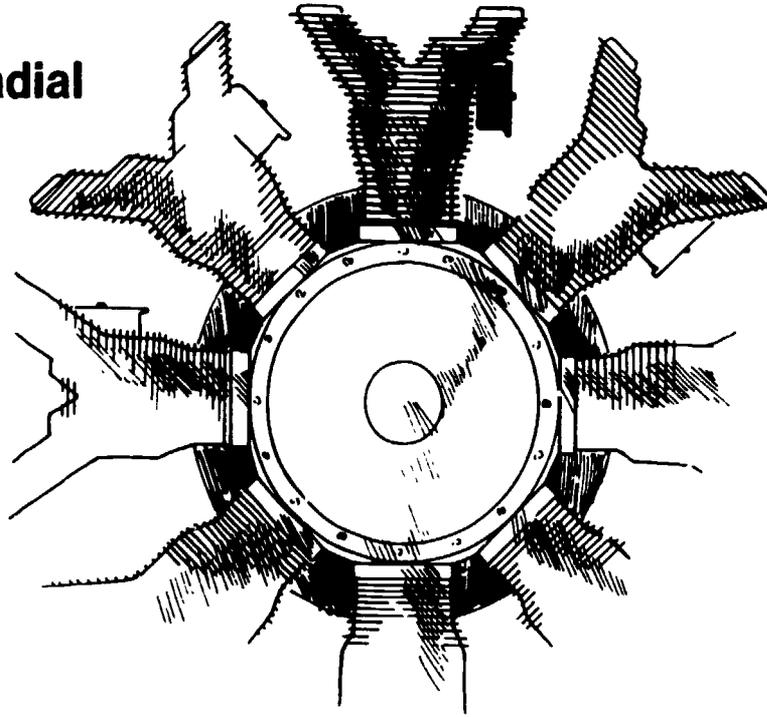
V-Type



Opposed

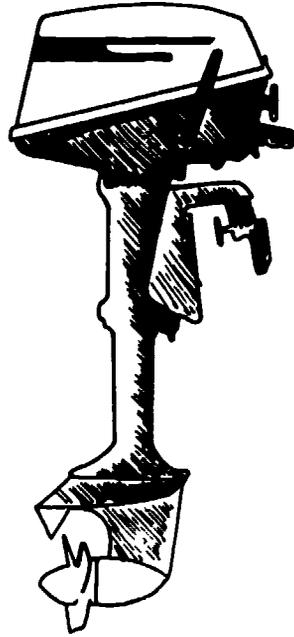
Engine Designs (Continued)

Radial

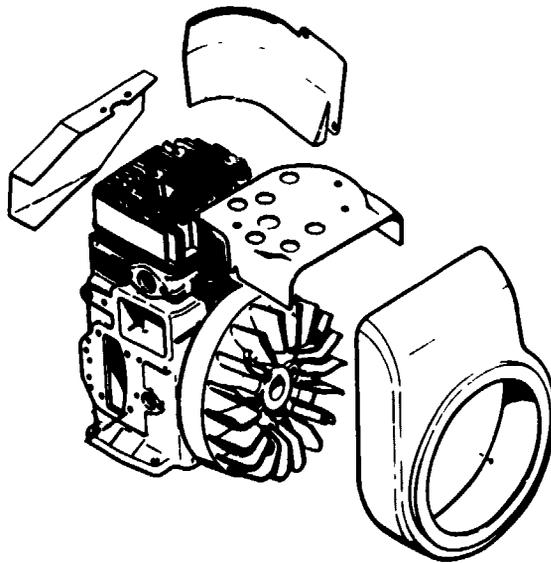


Rotary

Engine Cooling Systems



Liquid



Air

BASIC ENGINE PRINCIPLES AND DESIGN UNIT II-B

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5 — CALCULATE COMPRESSION RATIO

Calculate the following problems using the formula for compression ratio.

$$\text{Compression Ratio} = \frac{\text{Volume BDC}}{\text{Volume TDC}}$$

1. What is the compression ratio of a cylinder with a volume of 36 cu. in. with the piston at BDC and a TDC volume of 4 cu. in.?
2. Engine A has BDC volume of 16.7 cubic inches and a TDC volume of 2.3 cubic inches. What is the compression ratio?
3. A specific 3 cylinder engine has a total BDC volume of 86 cubic inches and TDC volume of 3 cubic inches in each cylinder. What is the compression ratio of this engine?
4. The maximum practical compression ratio for a specific one cylinder engine is 11.2 to 1. The engine has a BDC volume of 38.77 cubic inches and a TDC volume of 3.5 cubic inches. Is the compression ratio within the practical limits?

BASIC ENGINE PRINCIPLES AND DESIGN UNIT II-B

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

Assignment Sheet #1

1. $W = F \times D$
 $W = 110 \times 50$
 $W = 5500$ foot pounds
2. $W = F \times D$
 $W = 92 \times 44$
 $W = 4048$ foot pounds
3. $W = F \times D$
 $W = 49 \times 60$
 $W = 2940$ foot pounds

Assignment Sheet #2

1. $HP = \frac{F \times D}{\text{Time (sec)} \times 550}$
 $HP = \frac{200 \times 40}{20 \times 550}$
 $HP = \frac{8000}{11000}$
 $HP = .727$ or approx. $\frac{7}{10}$ horsepower
2. $HP = \frac{F \times D}{\text{Time (sec)} \times 550}$
 $HP = \frac{200 \times 60}{60 \times 550}$
 $HP = \frac{12000}{33,000}$
 $HP = .364$ horsepower
3. $HP = \frac{F \times D}{\text{Time (sec)} \times 550}$
 $HP = \frac{500 \times 10}{5 \times 550}$
 $HP = \frac{5000}{2750}$
 $HP = 1.82$ horsepower

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

Assignment Sheet #3

$$1. \quad T = F \times R$$

$$T = 10 \times 8$$

$$T = 80 \text{ pound inches}$$

$$2. \quad T = F \times R$$

$$T = 15 \times 6$$

$$T = 90 \text{ pound inches}$$

$$3. \quad T = F \times R$$

$$T = 8 \times 12$$

$$T = 96 \text{ pound inches}$$

Assignment Sheet #4

$$1. \quad CID = \left(\frac{3.1416 \times 2^2 \times 3}{4} \right) \times 1$$

$$CID = \left(\frac{3.1416 \times 4 \times 3}{4} \right) \times 1$$

$$CID = \left(\frac{37.6992}{4} \right)$$

$$CID = 9.42 \text{ or } 9$$

$$2. \quad CID = \left(\frac{3.1416 \times 2.5^2 \times 3.75}{4} \right) \times 4$$

$$CID = \left(\frac{3.1416 \times 6.25 \times 2.48}{4} \right) \times 4$$

$$CID = \left(\frac{48.6948}{4} \right) \times 4$$

$$CID = 12.1737 \times 4$$

$$CID = 48.6948 \text{ or } 49$$

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

$$3. \text{ CID} = \left(\frac{3.1416 \times 1.852 \times 1.969}{4} \right) \times 6$$

$$\text{CID} = \left(\frac{3.1416 \times 3.4225 \times 1.969}{4} \right) \times 6$$

$$\text{CID} = \left(\frac{21.1709}{4} \right) \times 6$$

$$\text{CID} = 5.2927 \times 6$$

$$\text{CID} = 31.7564 \text{ or } 32$$

Assignment Sheet #5

$$1. \quad 4 \overline{) 36} \quad 9 \text{ to } 1$$

$$2. \quad 23 \overline{) 167.00} \quad 7.26 \text{ to } 1$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 161 \\ 60 \\ 46 \\ 140 \\ 138 \\ 2 \end{array}$$

$$3. \quad 3 \overline{) 86.0} \quad 3 \overline{) 28.6} \quad 9.53 \text{ to } 1$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 6 \\ 26 \\ 24 \\ 20 \\ 18 \\ 2 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{r} 27 \\ 16 \\ 15 \\ 10 \\ 9 \\ 1 \end{array}$$

$$4. \quad 3.5 \overline{) 38.7700} \quad 11.07 \text{ to } 1 \quad \text{Yes}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 35 \\ 37 \\ 35 \\ 270 \\ 245 \\ 25 \end{array}$$

BASIC ENGINE PRINCIPLES AND DESIGN UNIT II-B

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions. (Terms and definitions are continued on the following page.)

- | | | |
|---------|--|--------------------------|
| _____a. | Any agent that produces or tends to produce motion | 1. Energy |
| _____b. | Rate at which work is done | 2. Work |
| _____c. | Ability to do work | 3. Force |
| _____d. | Stored energy | 4. Friction |
| _____e. | Measurement of turning effort | 5. Power |
| _____f. | Transmission and control of motion through the use of gears, pulleys, shafts, and other mechanical devices | 6. Kinetic energy |
| _____g. | Bottom dead center | 7. Torque |
| _____h. | To exercise restraining or directing influence over working forces | 8. Horsepower |
| _____i. | Back and forth motion | 9. Potential energy |
| _____j. | Energy in motion | 10. PSI |
| _____k. | Relaying of a working force | 11. Cycle |
| _____l. | Measurement of work accomplished in a given period of time | 12. TDC |
| _____m. | Pounds per square inch; most common unit for measuring pressure | 13. Mechanical power |
| _____n. | Series of events or operations that happen regularly and lead back to the starting point | 14. Transmission |
| _____o. | Resistance to relative motion between two bodies in contact | 15. Reciprocating motion |
| | | 16. BDC |
| | | 17. Control |

TEST

- | | | |
|---------|--|------------------|
| _____p. | Results of force overcoming a resistance over a definite distance | 18. Stroke |
| _____q. | Top dead center | 19. Combustion |
| _____r. | Total volume of air-fuel compressed by the piston in traveling from BDC to TDC | 20. CID |
| _____s. | Cubic inch displacement | 21. Displacement |
| _____t. | Action or operation of burning | 22. Bore |
| _____u. | Distance the piston moves when traveling from TDC to BDC | |
| _____v. | Diameter of the cylinder | |

2. List three characteristics of energy.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____

3. Select types of energy from the following list by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- _____a. Cosmic
- _____b. Light
- _____c. Heat
- _____d. Nuclear
- _____e. Electrical
- _____f. Chemical
- _____g. Mechanical

4. List two forms of available energy.

- a. _____
- b. _____

TEST

5. Select types of motion from the following list by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Reciprocating

_____b. Vertical

_____c. Rotary

_____d. Horizontal

_____e. Linear

6. Calculate the following problem using the formula for work.

$$W = F \times D$$

A boy pushes a 200-pound box a distance of 20 feet along the floor. The force necessary to slide the box is 55 pounds. How much work is accomplished?

7. Calculate the following problem using the formula for torque.

$$HP = \frac{F \times D}{\text{Time (sec)} \times 550}$$

Using the problem above, how much horsepower is produced if it takes 20 seconds to slide the box along the floor?

8. Calculate the following problem using the formula for torque.

$$T = F \times R$$

What is the torque if a force of 40 pounds is applied to a wrench two feet long?

TEST

9. Match the parts of a basic internal combustion engine on the right with their correct descriptions.

- | | | |
|----------|---|-------------------|
| _____ a. | Hollow tube closed at one end by the cylinder head | 1. Port |
| _____ b. | Cylindrical object which slides in the tube, fitting tightly to seal other end of tube | 2. Crankshaft |
| _____ c. | Rod which connects the crank on the crankshaft to the piston | 3. Rings |
| _____ d. | Main shaft of an engine which, in conjunction with connecting rods, changes reciprocating motion of pistons into rotary motion | 4. Cylinder |
| _____ e. | Movable plug to open and close the cylinder in order to let in air-fuel mixture and to remove the burned fuel from the cylinder | 5. Connecting rod |
| _____ f. | Circular devices fitted to the upper end of the piston which seal the piston to the cylinder to control loss of compression and lubricating oil | 6. Piston |
| _____ g. | Passage behind the valves which conducts fuel and air into and exhaust out of the cylinder | 7. Valve |

10. Complete the following list of statements concerning the process by which an internal combustion engine converts chemical energy into rotary motion.

- a. _____ and _____ are introduced into the upper end of the cylinder
- b. _____ mixture is ignited and burned, producing heat energy
- c. Heat energy causes the cylinder gases to _____
- d. Expansion of the burning gases pushes piston down the _____
- e. Downward motion of piston transmits force to the crankshaft through the connecting rod to produce _____ motion

TEST

11. Calculate the following problem using the formula for engine cubic inch displacement.

$$\text{CID} = \frac{\pi \times \text{Bore}^2 \times \text{Stroke}}{4} \times \text{Number of cylinders}$$

What is the cubic inch displacement of a 2-cylinder engine that has a bore of 2.3 and a stroke of 3.2 inches?

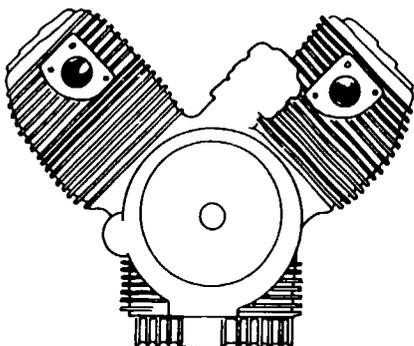
12. Calculate the following problem using the formula for compression ratio.

$$\text{Compression ratio} = \frac{\text{Volume BDC}}{\text{Volume TDC}}$$

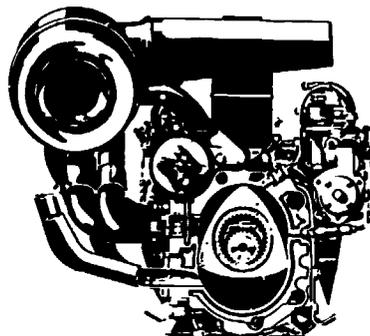
A specific 2-cylinder engine has a CID of 37 inches. Each cylinder has a BDC volume of 16.5 cubic inches and a TDC volume of 3.3 cubic inches. What is the compression ratio?

TEST

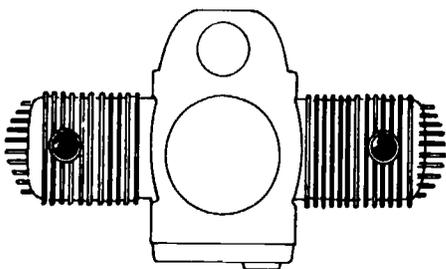
13. Identify types of engine design.



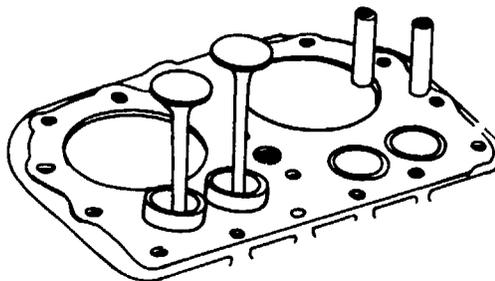
a. _____



b. _____

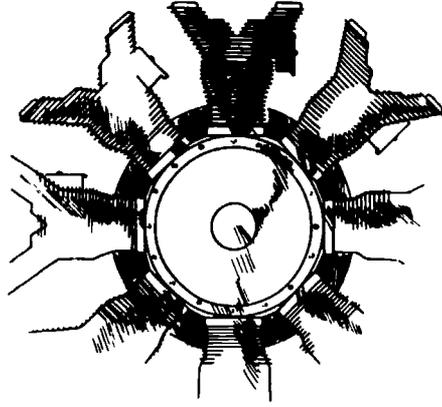


c. _____



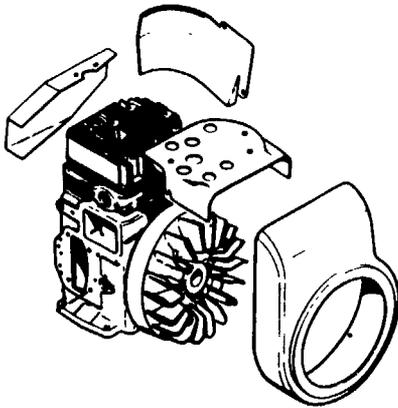
d. _____

TEST

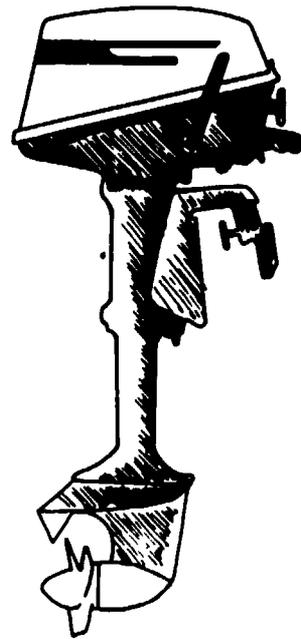


e. _____

14. Identify types of engine cooling systems.



a. _____



b. _____

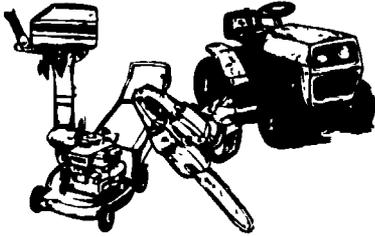
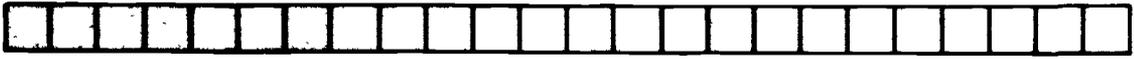
BASIC ENGINE PRINCIPLES AND DESIGN UNIT II-B

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 3 g. 16 m. 10 s. 20
 b. 5 h. 17 n. 11 t. 19
 c. 1 i. 15 o. 4 u. 18
 d. 9 j. 6 p. 2 v. 22
 e. 7 k. 14 q. 12
 f. 1
2. a. Energy is ever present
 b. Energy cannot be created or destroyed
 c. Energy can only be changed from one kind to another
3. b,c,d,e,f,g
4. a. Potential
 b. Kinetic
5. a,c,e
6. $W = F \times D$
 $W = 55 \text{ lbs} \times 20 \text{ ft}$
 $W = 1100 \text{ foot pounds}$
7. $HP = \frac{F \times D}{\text{Time (sec)} \times 550}$
 $HP = \frac{55 \times 20}{20 \times 550}$
 $HP = \frac{1100}{11000}$
 $HP = .10$
8. $T = F \times R$
 $T = 40 \times 2$
 $T = 80 \text{ pound feet}$
9. a. 4 e. 7
 b. 6 f. 3
 c. 5 g. 1
 d. 2
10. a. Gasoline, air
 b. Air-fuel
 c. Expand
 d. Cylinder
 e. Rotary

ANSWERS TO TEST

11. 26.6 CID
12. 5 to 1
13.
 - a. V-type
 - b. Rotary
 - c. Opposed
 - d. In-line
 - e. Radial
14.
 - a. Air
 - b. Liquid



Principles of Operation - Four-Stroke Cycle Unit III-B



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify the components of a four-stroke cycle engine, the parts of a camshaft lobe, and the types of valve arrangements. The student should also be able to complete statements concerning valve timing and overlap. Competency will be demonstrated by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to the principles of operation of a four-stroke cycle engine with their correct definitions.
2. Identify the components of a four-stroke cycle engine.
3. Select true statements concerning the operation of a four-stroke cycle engine.
4. List two factors that determine the firing order of a multi-cylinder engine.
5. Identify the parts of a camshaft lobe.
6. Complete a list of statements concerning valve timing and overlap.
7. Identify types of valve arrangements.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — FOUR-STROKE CYCLE UNIT III-B

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.
D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.
E. Provide students with information sheet.
F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:
1. Buy or make a cutaway of small engine to explain the operation of a 4-stroke cycle.
 2. Demonstrate the location of components on a live engine.
 3. Demonstrate the operation of the four strokes in a cycle.
 4. Provide examples of the different types of valve arrangements.
 5. Discuss volumetric efficiency.
 6. Disassemble an engine so that students can identify individual components and list their functions.
 7. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement of the unit.
- H. Give test.
I. Evaluate test.
J. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES**CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT**

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Components of a Four-Stroke Cycle Engine
 - 2. TM 2 — Four-Stroke Cycle
 - 3. TM 3 — Valve Action on Intake Stroke
 - 4. TM 4 — Valve Action on Compression Stroke
 - 5. TM 5 — Valve Action on Power Stroke
 - 6. TM 6 — Valve Action on Exhaust Stroke
 - 7. TM 7 — Cam Lobe Contour Design
 - 8. TM 8 — Valve Timing and Overlap
 - 9. TM 9 — Valve Arrangements
- E. Test
- F. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. Armstrong, Ivan. *Auto Mechanics, Volume One*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Oklahoma State Department of Vocational and Technical Education, 1976.
- B. *Small Engine Service Repair and Maintenance*. St. Paul, Minnesota: Departments of Agricultural Education and Agricultural Engineering, University of Minnesota, 1968.
- C. *Small Gasoline Engines*. University Park, Pennsylvania: College of Agriculture, The Pennsylvania State University, 1969.
- D. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — FOUR-STROKE CYCLE UNIT III-B

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Intake stroke — Downward movement of piston which permits fuel-air mixture to enter cylinder
- B. Compression stroke — Upward movement of piston which compresses fuel-air mixture
- C. Power stroke — Downward piston movement caused by spark ignition of compressed fuel-air mixture
- D. Exhaust stroke — Upward piston movement which expels burnt gases from cylinder
- E. Valve — Device for alternately opening and closing a passage
- F. Intake valve — Engine component which opens to allow fuel-air mixture to enter cylinder during intake stroke
- G. Exhaust valve — Engine component which opens during exhaust stroke and allows burnt gases to be expelled from cylinder
- H. Overlap — Brief period when both intake and exhaust valves are open
- I. Cam lobe — Off-center or eccentric enlargement on the camshaft which converts rotary motion to reciprocating motion for operating a valve
- J. Camshaft — Shaft which contains lobes or cams to operate engine valves
- K. Valve lifter or tappet — Push rod or plunger placed between the cam and the valve on an engine
- L. Valve seat — Matched surface upon which the valve rests
- M. Valve spring — Spring attached to a valve to return it to the seat

II. Components of a four-stroke cycle engine (Transparency 1)

- A. Cylinder block
- B. Cylinder head
- C. Piston
- D. Connecting rod

INFORMATION SHEET

- E. Crankshaft
- F. Camshaft
- G. Valves
- H. Valve spring
- I. Valve lifter
- J. Cam lobe

III. Operation of four-stroke cycle engine (Transparencies 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6)

(NOTE: Four-stroke refers to the number of times the piston moves up and down in the cylinder to complete one cycle of operation. Four-stroke cycle engines are commonly called four cycle engines.)

A. Intake stroke

1. Cycle starts with piston at uppermost position in cylinder (TDC) with intake valve open and exhaust valve closed
2. As the piston moves down the cylinder, it draws air-fuel mixture into the cylinder from the carburetor
3. When the piston reaches the bottom of the cylinder (BDC), the intake valve closes

B. Compression stroke

1. Air-fuel mixture is compressed tightly as the piston moves up the cylinder
2. Compression of the fuel creates heat which prepares the fuel for instant ignition

C. Power stroke

1. As the piston reaches the top of the cylinder on compression stroke, a spark from the ignition system ignites the air-fuel mixture
2. Burning gases expand very rapidly and force the piston down the cylinder

D. Exhaust stroke

1. As the piston reaches the bottom of the cylinder on power stroke, the exhaust valve opens

INFORMATION SHEET

2. Piston travels up the cylinder, forcing the burned gases out of the cylinder into the exhaust manifold

(NOTE: The complete cycle takes two rotations of the crankshaft or 720 degrees of rotation.)

IV. Factors that determine the firing order of a multi-cylinder engine

- A. Design of the crankshaft
- B. Location of the cams on the camshaft

V. Camshaft lobe (Transparency 7)

- A. Lobe
- B. Nose
- C. Flank
- D. Base circle
- E. Lift

VI. Valve timing and overlap (Transparency 8)

(NOTE: Valve angles given below are approximated; the actual angles will vary widely depending upon engine design.)

- A. Intake valve — Opens approximately 15 degrees before the intake stroke begins and remains open through intake stroke and 20 degrees into compression stroke

(NOTE: The intake valve is open approximately 235 degrees of the 720 degree cycle.)

- B. Exhaust valve — Opens approximately 40 degrees before the exhaust stroke begins and remains open through exhaust stroke and 20 degrees into the intake stroke

(NOTE: The exhaust valve is open approximately 235 degrees of the 720 degree cycle.)

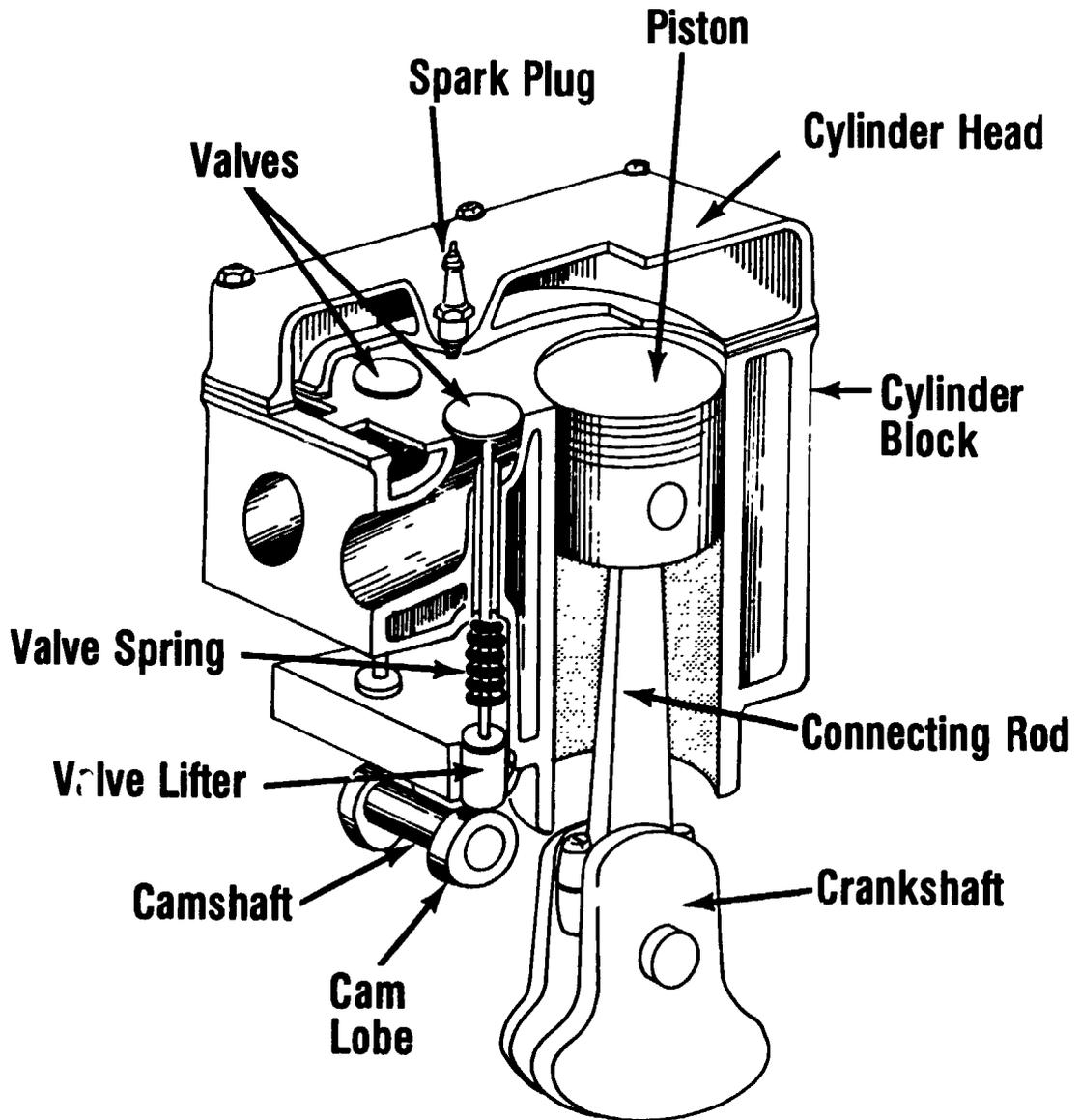
- C. Valve overlap — Both intake and exhaust valves are partially open; the intake valve is starting to open and the exhaust valve is not yet closed

INFORMATION SHEET

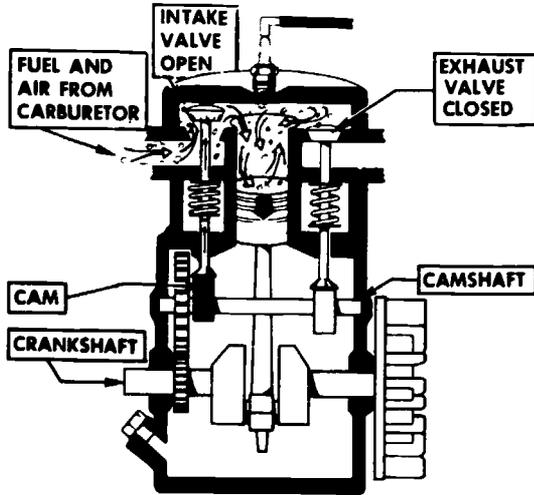
VII. Types of valve arrangements (Transparency 9)

- A. L-Head
- B. F-Head
- C. T-Head
- D. I-Head
- E. Overhead cam

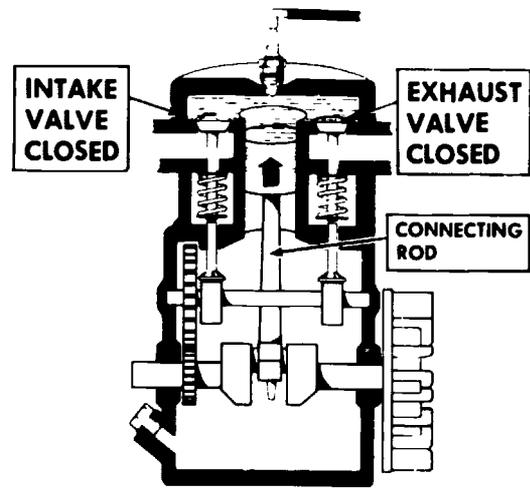
Components of a Four-Stroke Cycle Engine



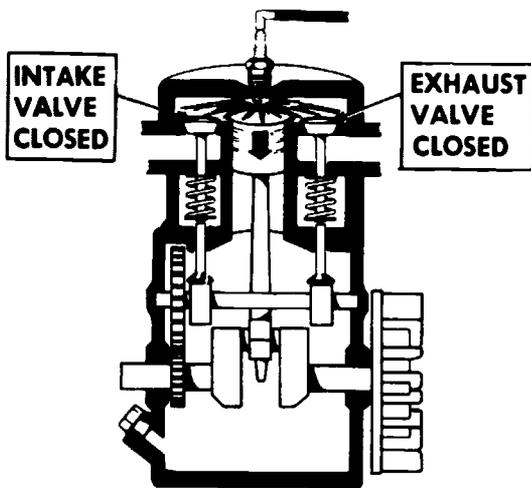
Four-Stroke Cycle



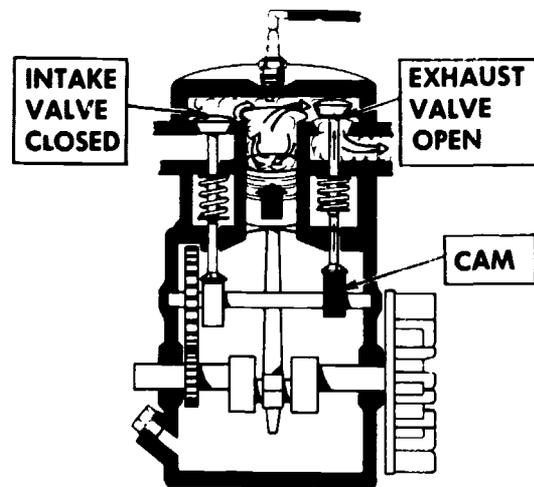
Piston Intake Stroke



Piston Compression Stroke

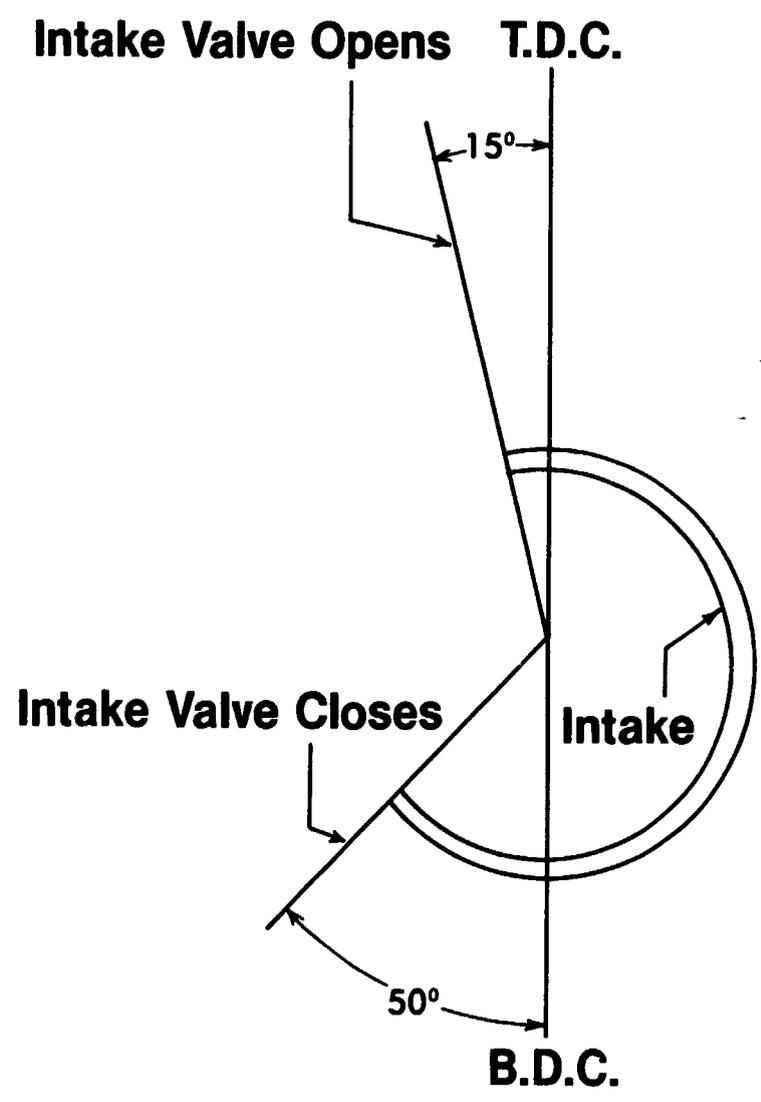


Piston Power Stroke

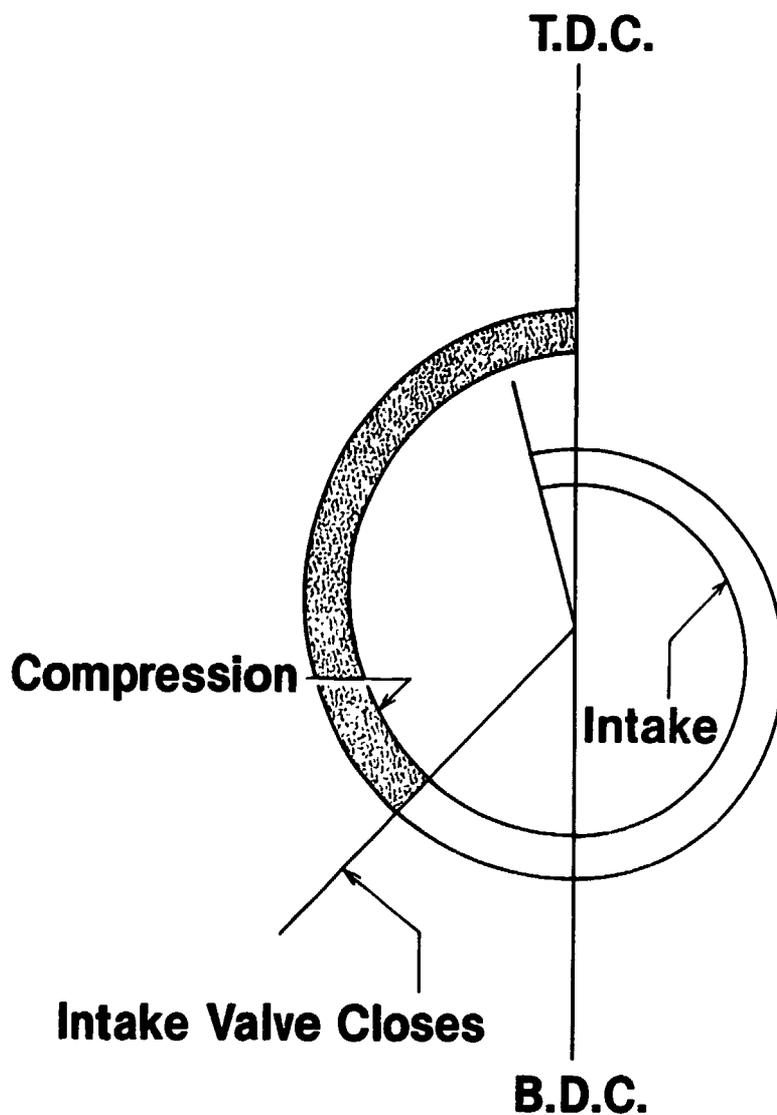


Piston Exhaust Stroke

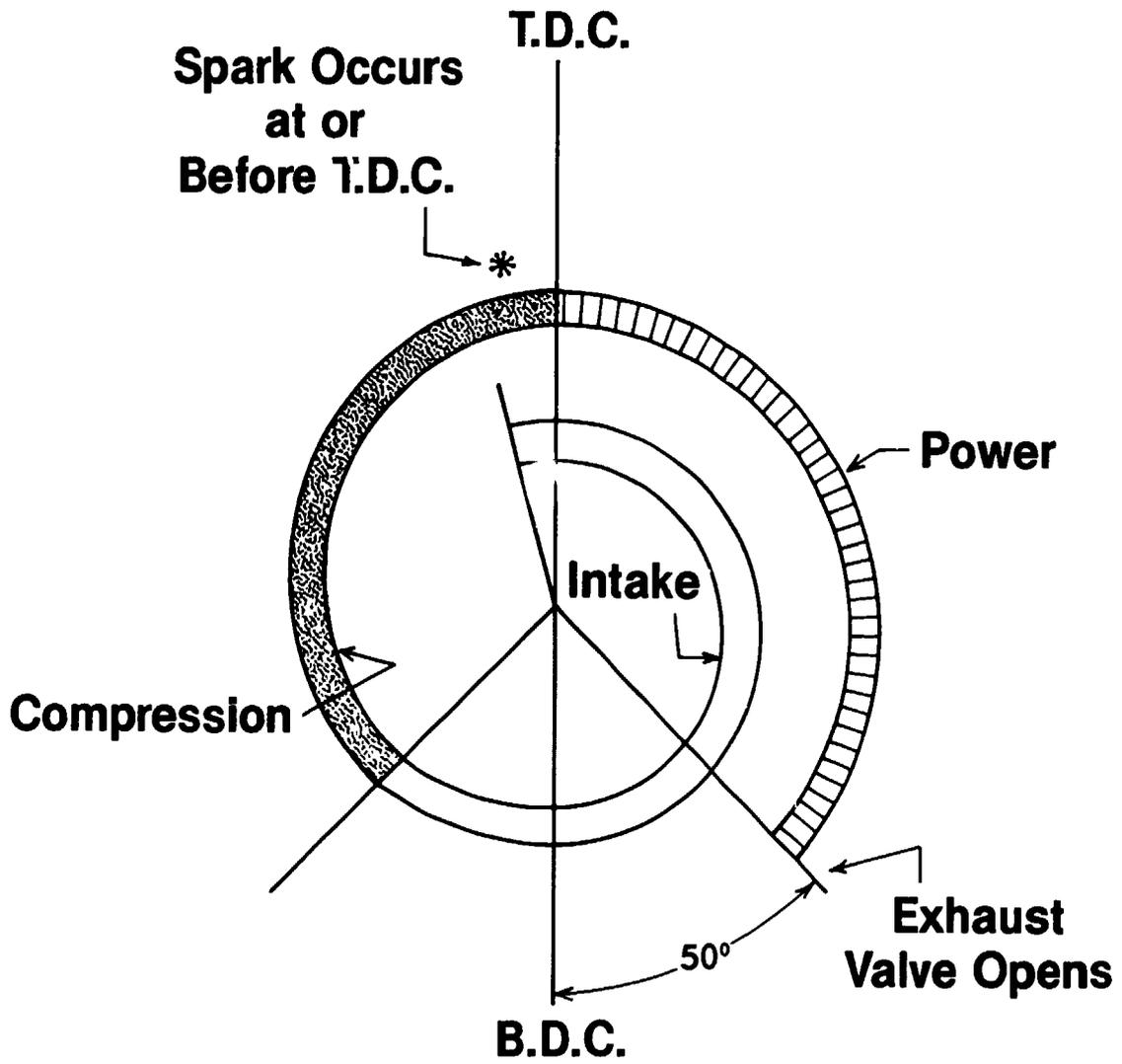
Valve Action on Intake Stroke



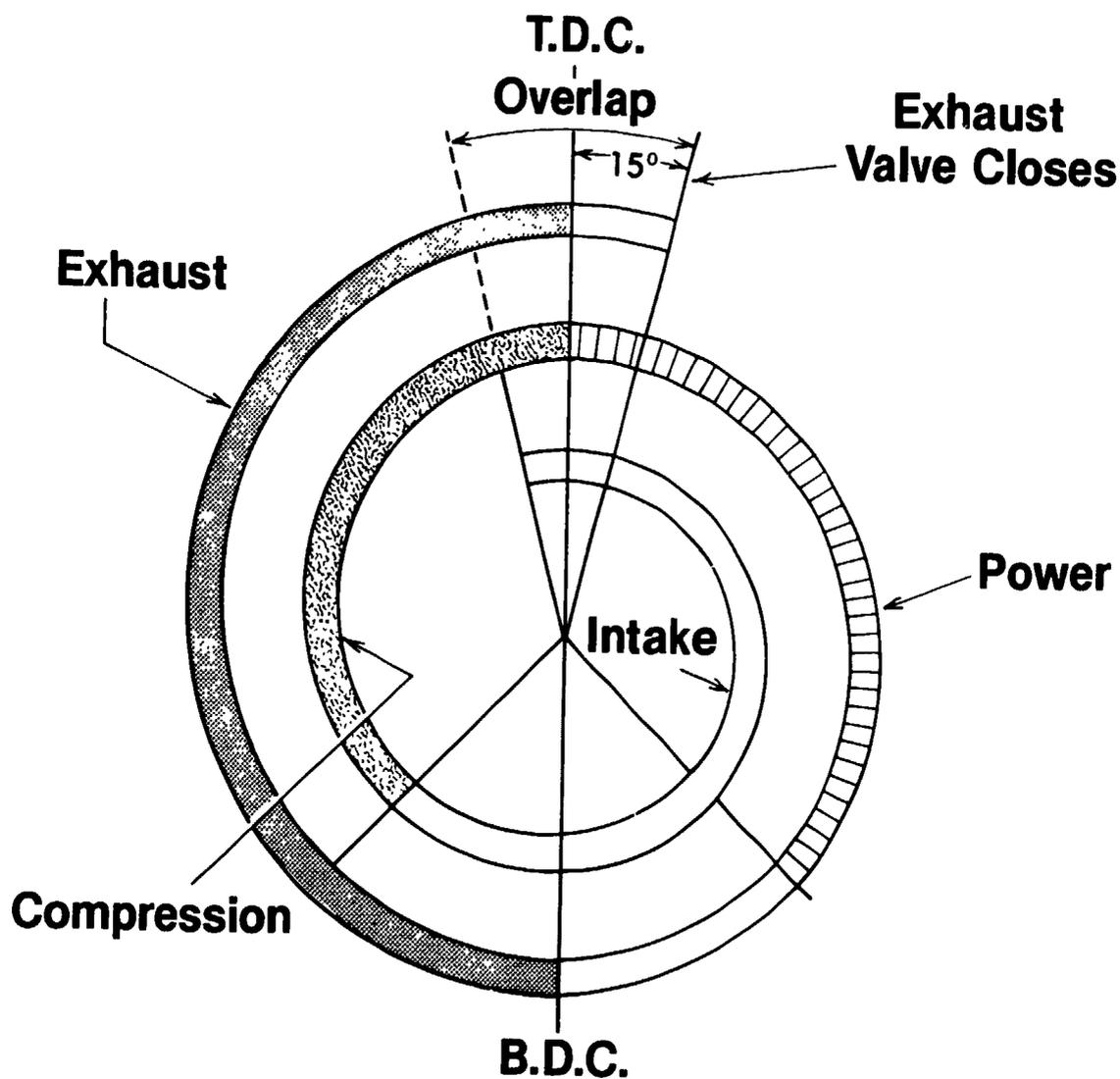
Valve Action on Compression Stroke



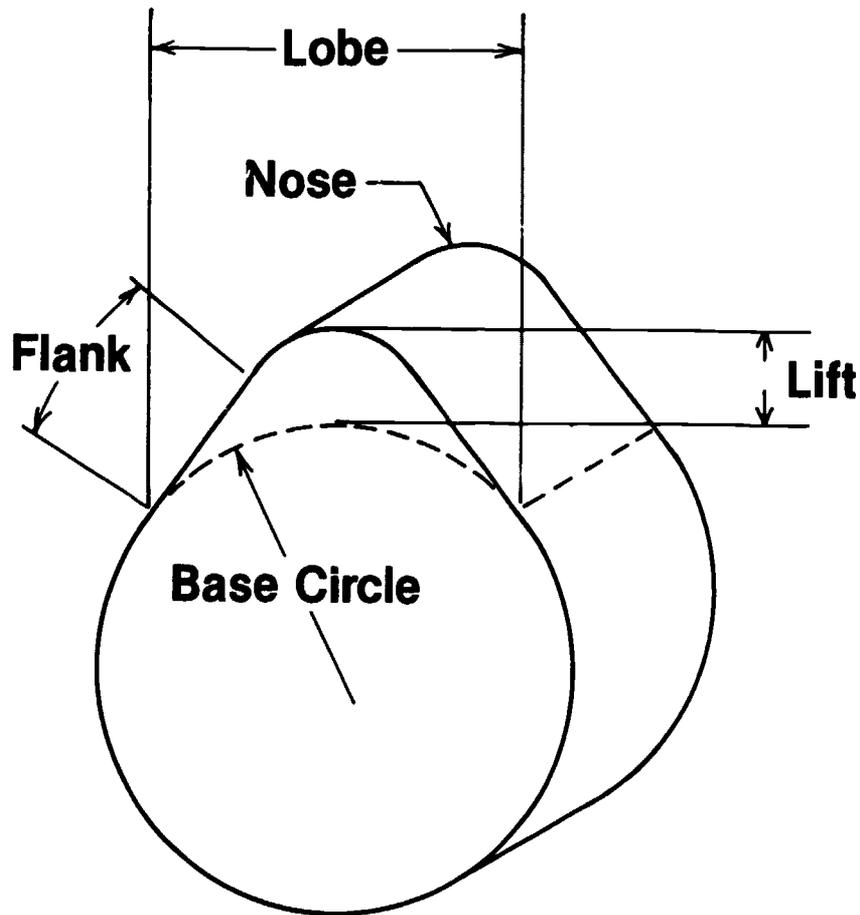
Valve Action on Power Stroke



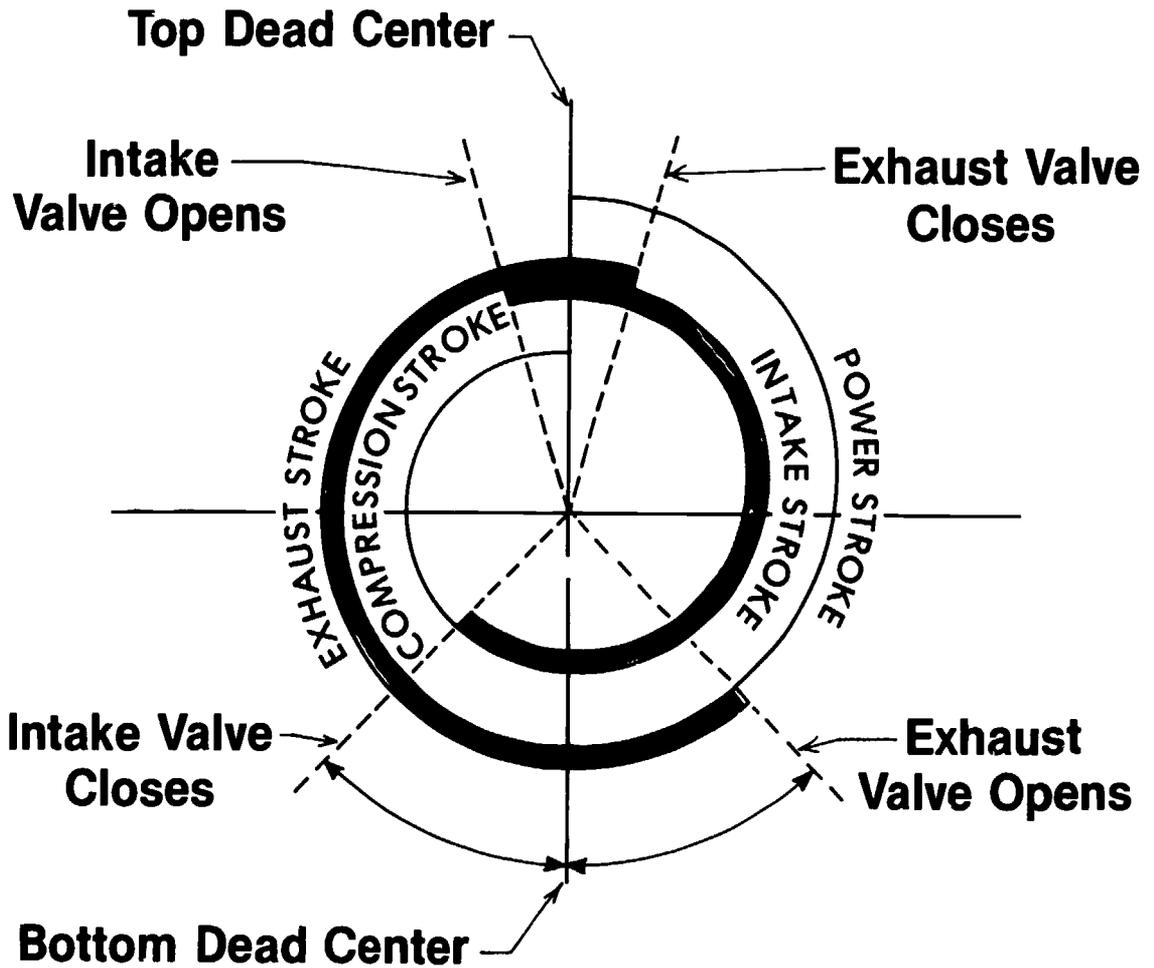
Valve Action on Exhaust Stroke



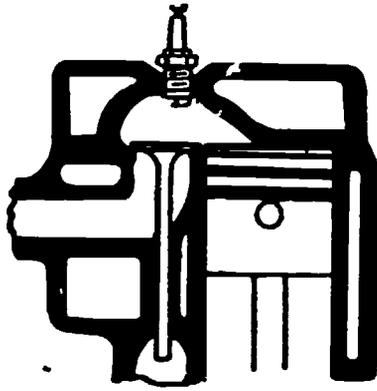
Cam Lobe Contour Design



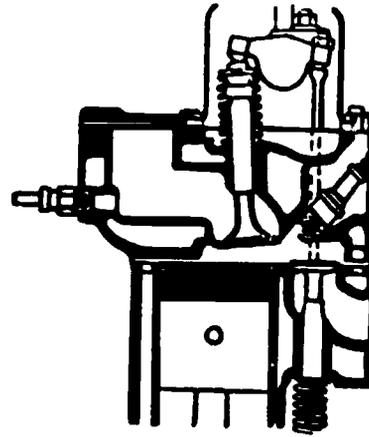
Valve Timing and Overlap



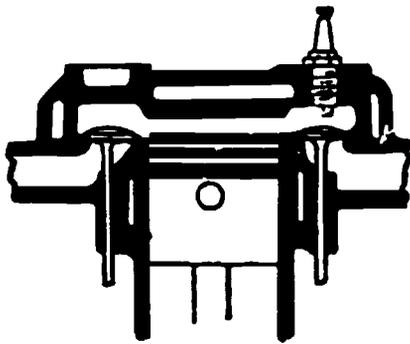
Valve Arrangements



L-Head



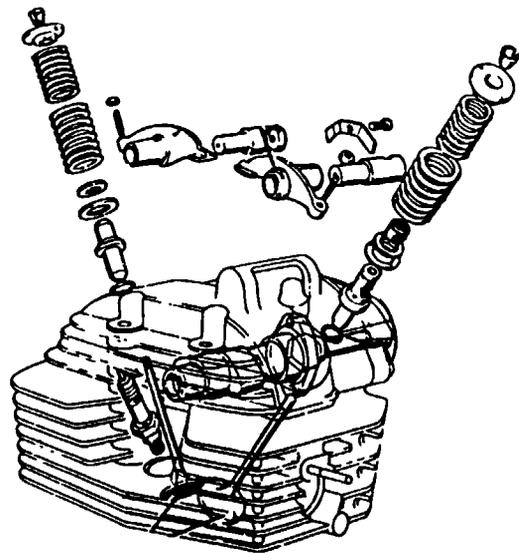
F-Head



T-Head



I-Head



Overhead Cam

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — FOUR-STROKE CYCLE UNIT III-B

NAME _____

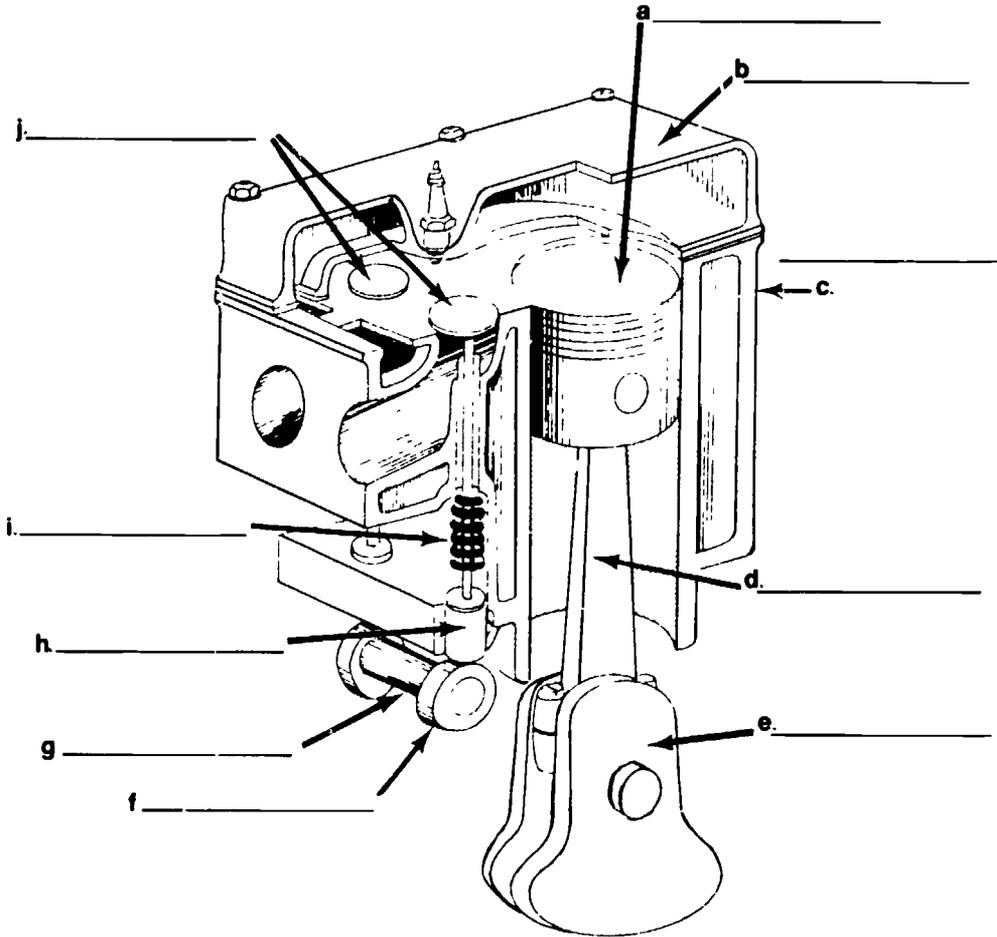
TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|---------|--|----------------------------|
| _____a. | Spring attached to a valve to return it to the seat | 1. Exhaust |
| _____b. | Device for alternately opening and closing a passage | 2. Power Stroke |
| _____c. | Off-center or eccentric enlargement on the camshaft which converts rotary motion to reciprocating motion for operating a valve | 3. Valve seat |
| _____d. | Brief period when both intake and exhaust valves are open | 4. Camshaft |
| _____e. | Upward movement of piston which compresses fuel-air mixture | 5. Intake stroke |
| _____f. | Downward movement of piston which permits fuel-air mixture to enter cylinder | 6. Cam lobe |
| _____g. | Push rod or plunger placed between the cam and the valve on an engine | 7. Valve |
| _____h. | Matched surface upon which the valve rests | 8. Valve spring |
| _____i. | Shaft which contains lobes or cams to operate engine valves | 9. Intake valve |
| _____j. | Engine component which opens during exhaust stroke and allows burnt gases to be expelled from cylinder | 10. Overlap |
| _____k. | Upward piston movement which expels burnt gases from cylinder | 11. Compression stroke |
| _____l. | Downward piston movement caused by spark ignition of compressed fuel-air mixture | 12. Exhaust stroke |
| _____m. | Engine component which opens to allow fuel-air mixture to enter cylinder during intake stroke | 13. Valve lifter or tappet |

TEST

2. Identify the components of a four-stroke cycle engine.



TEST

3. Select true statements concerning the operation of a four-stroke cycle engine by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

a. Intake stroke

- ____ 1) Cycle starts with piston at uppermost position in cylinder (TDC) with intake valve closed and exhaust valve open
- ____ 2) As the piston moves down the cylinder, it draws air-fuel mixture into the cylinder from the carburetor
- ____ 3) When the piston reaches the bottom of the cylinder (BDC), the exhaust valve closes

b. Compression stroke

- ____ 1) Air-fuel mixture is compressed tightly as the piston moves down the cylinder
- ____ 2) Compression of the fuel creates heat which prepares the fuel for instant ignition

c. Power stroke

- ____ 1) As the piston reaches the top of the cylinder on compression stroke, a spark from the ignition system ignites the air-fuel mixture
- ____ 2) Burning gases expand very rapidly and force the piston down the cylinder

d. Exhaust stroke

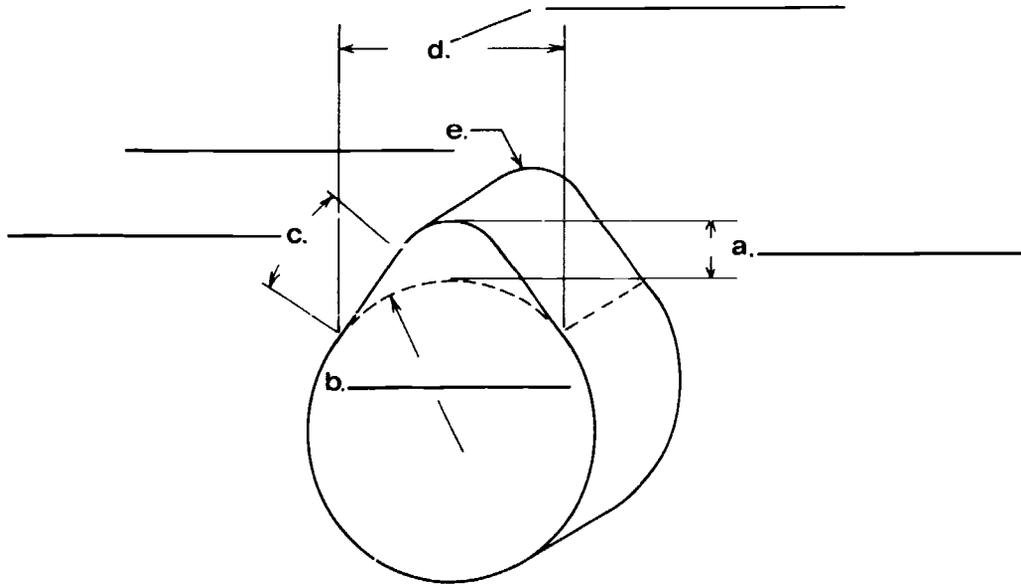
- ____ 1) As the piston reaches the top of the cylinder on power stroke, the exhaust valve closes
- ____ 2) Piston travels up the cylinder, forcing the burned gases out of the cylinder into the exhaust manifold

4. List two factors that determine the firing order of a multi-cylinder engine.

- a. _____
- b. _____

TEST

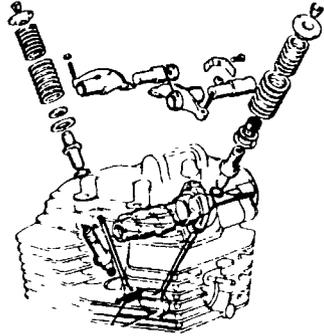
5. Identify the parts of a camshaft lobe.



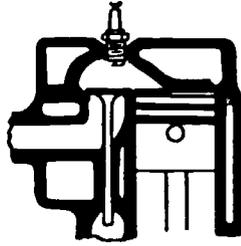
6. Complete the following list of statements concerning valve timing and overlap by correctly filling in the blanks.
- Intake valve — Opens approximately 15 degrees before the intake stroke begins and remains open through intake stroke and 20 degrees into _____ stroke
 - Exhaust valve — Opens approximately 40 degrees before the exhaust stroke begins and remains open through exhaust stroke and 20 degrees into the _____ stroke
 - Valve overlap — Both intake and exhaust valves are _____; the intake valve is starting to open and the exhaust valve is not yet closed

TEST

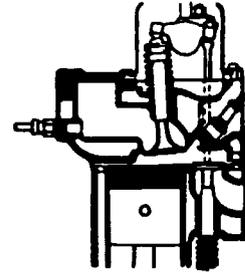
7. Identify the types of valve arrangements.



a. _____



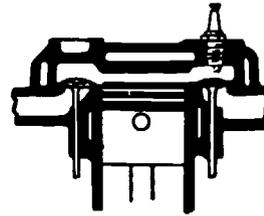
b. _____



c. _____



d. _____

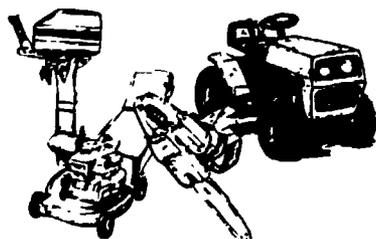


e. _____

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — FOUR-STROKE CYCLE UNIT III-B

ANSWERS TO TEST

- | | | | |
|----|---|-------|-------|
| 1. | a. 8 | f. 5 | k. 12 |
| | b. 7 | g. 13 | l. 2 |
| | c. 6 | h. 3 | m. 9 |
| | d. 10 | i. 4 | |
| | e. 11 | j. 1 | |
| | | | |
| 2. | a. Piston | | |
| | b. Cylinder head | | |
| | c. Cylinder block | | |
| | d. Connecting rod | | |
| | e. Crankshaft | | |
| | f. Cam lobe | | |
| | g. Camshaft | | |
| | h. Valve lifter | | |
| | i. Valve spring | | |
| | j. Valves | | |
| | | | |
| 3. | a. 2 | | |
| | b. 2 | | |
| | c. 1,2 | | |
| | d. 2 | | |
| | | | |
| 4. | a. Design of the crankshaft | | |
| | b. Location of the cams on the camshaft | | |
| | | | |
| 5. | a. Lift | | |
| | b. Base circle | | |
| | c. Flank | | |
| | d. Lobe | | |
| | e. Nose | | |
| | | | |
| 6. | a. Compression | | |
| | b. Intake | | |
| | c. Partially open | | |
| | | | |
| 7. | a. Overhead cam | | |
| | b. L-Head | | |
| | c. F-Head | | |
| | d. I-Head | | |
| | e. T-Head | | |



Principles of Operation - Two-Stroke Cycle Unit IV-B



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify the components of a basic two-stroke cycle engine and list features which make a two-stroke cycle engine preferable for many applications. Competency will be demonstrated by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to two-stroke cycle engines with their correct definitions.
2. Identify the components of a basic two-stroke cycle engine.
3. Select true statements concerning the operation of a two-stroke cycle engine.
4. Identify the types of valves that may be used in two-stroke cycle engines.
5. Select the factors which determine timing on a two-stroke cycle engine.
6. Distinguish between cross-scavenged and loop-scavenged two-stroke cycle engines.
7. List features which make a two-stroke engine preferable for many applications.
8. Complete a list of statements concerning the importance of correct exhaust system design on a two-stroke cycle engine.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — TWO-STROKE CYCLE UNIT IV-B

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Check with local shops for engines which may be used in class activities.
2. Buy or make a cutaway of small engine to explain the operation of a 2-stroke cycle.
3. Demonstrate the location of components on a live engine.
4. Disassemble an engine so that students can identify individual components and list their functions.
5. Provide examples of reed and rotary valves.
6. Provide examples of cross-scavenged and loop-scavenged engines.
7. Demonstrate the use of correct and incorrect exhaust system components.
8. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement of the unit.

- H. Give test.

- I. Evaluate test.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- J. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Two-Stroke Cycle Engine
 - 2. TM 2 — Operation of the Two-Stroke Cycle Engine
 - 3. TM 3 — Reed Valves
 - 4. TM 4 — Rotary Valves and Piston Port
 - 5. TM 5 — Timing Essentials
 - 6. TM 6 — Design Variations
 - 7. TM 7 — Exhaust System Design
- E. Test
- F. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. Roth, Alfred C. and Ronald J. Baird. *Small Gas Engines*. South Holland, Illinois: The Goodheart-Wilcox Company, Inc., 1975.
- B. *Small Engine Service Manual*. Eleventh Edition. Kansas City, Missouri: Technical Publications Division, Intertec Publishing Corporation, 1976.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — TWO-STROKE CYCLE UNIT IV-B

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Exhaust port — Openings in the cylinder wall which allows the exhaust to escape
- B. Transfer port — Passage which allows movement of the fuel-air mixture from the crankcase into the combustion chamber
- C. Rotary valve — Flat circular plate with a section of the plate cut away that operates between the carburetor and the crankcase
- D. Reed valve (leaf valve) — One way valve made of spring steel which allows the fuel-air mixture to flow in one direction only
- E. Crankcase pressure — Pressure built up in the crankcase by the downward movement of the piston

(NOTE: This causes the fuel-air mixture to move into the combustion chamber.)
- F. Crankcase vacuum — Negative crankcase pressure created when piston moves upward in cylinder
- G. Expansion chamber — Exhaust system specially designed to produce maximum horsepower at a specific RPM range

II. Components of a basic two-stroke cycle engine (Transparency 1)

(NOTE: The two-stroke cycle engine may be referred to as a two-cycle engine.)

- A. Cylinder
- B. Piston
- C. Transfer port
- D. Exhaust port
- E. Crankshaft
- F. Connecting rod
- G. Cylinder head
- H. Crankcase

(NOTE: The cylinder and cylinder head may be made as one piece.)

INFORMATION SHEET

III. Operation of a two-stroke cycle engine (Transparency 2)

- A. Piston moves up in cylinder drawing fuel-air mixture into crankcase
- B. Piston moves down cylinder, pressurizing mixture in crankcase
- C. Piston moves past transfer port allowing pressurized mixture to move into combustion chamber
- D. Piston moves up in cylinder again
 - 1. Compresses fuel-air mixture
 - 2. Draws more fuel-air mixture into crankcase
- E. Spark plug fires compressed mixture
- F. Combustion moves piston back down cylinder
 - 1. Piston uncovers exhaust port as it nears bottom of stroke allowing exhaust to escape
 - 2. Piston uncovers transfer port as it moves nearer bottom of stroke allowing fresh charge of fuel-air to enter combustion chamber
- G. Piston starts back up cylinder closing both transfer and exhaust ports

IV. Valves used in two-stroke cycle engines (Transparencies 3 and 4)

- A. Reed valve
- B. Rotary valve
- C. Piston port

V. Factors which determine timing on two-stroke cycle engines (Transparency 5)

- A. Location of intake port
- B. Location of transfer port
- C. Location of exhaust port

INFORMATION SHEET

VI. Design variation: (Transparency 6)

A. Cross-scavenged

1. Special piston shape acts as baffle
2. Deflected fuel air charge moves upward in cylinder
3. Charge prevented from going straight out exhaust port

B. Loop-scavenged

1. Transfer ports shaped and located so that incoming fuel-air mixture swirls
2. Controlled flow of gas helps exhaust out and new charge to enter

VII. Features which make a two-stroke cycle engine preferable for many applications

A. Simple design

B. Light weight

C. Smaller size for equivalent horsepower

D. Adequate lubrication in any position

E. Continuous supply of new, clean oil to all moving parts

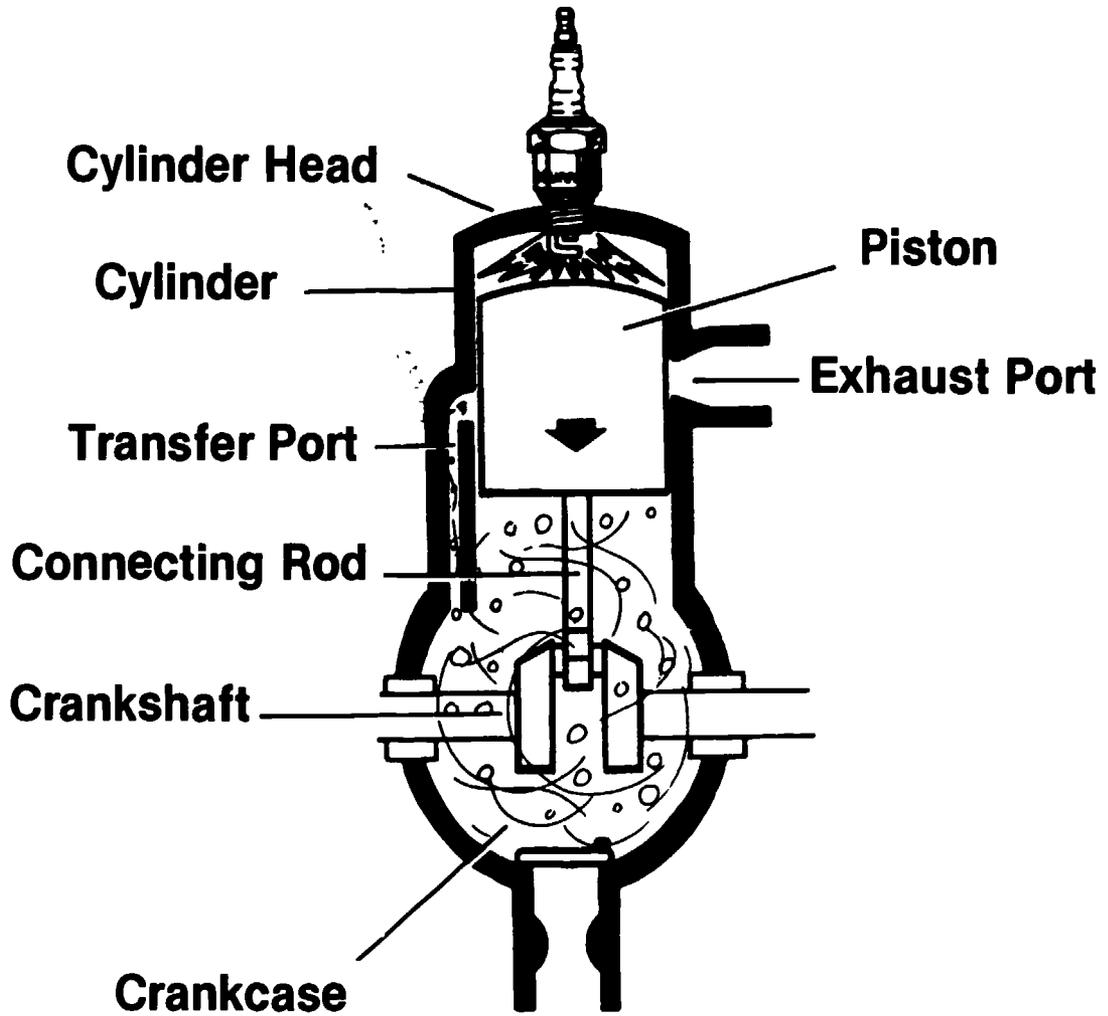
VIII. Correct exhaust system design (Transparency 7)

A. Scavenges all exhaust from combustion chamber

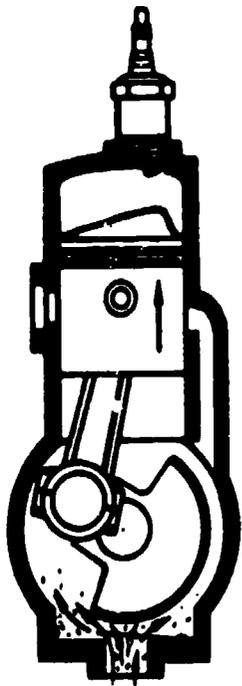
B. Allows new fuel charge to move into combustion chamber rapidly

C. Sound waves hold fuel charge momentarily while exhaust port is open

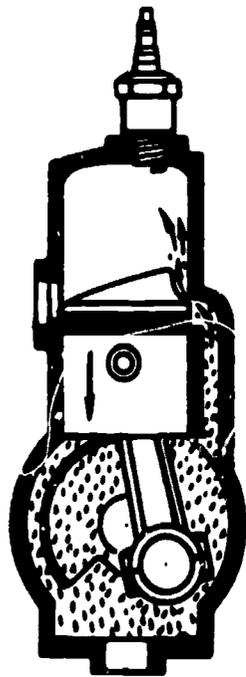
Two-Stroke Cycle Engine



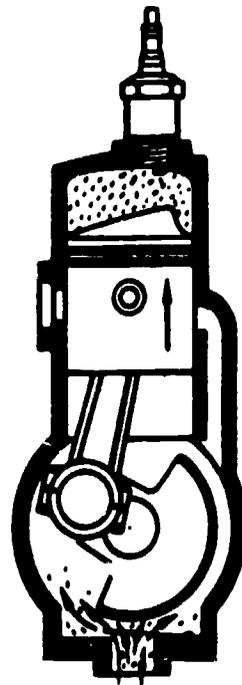
Operation of the Two-Stroke Cycle Engine



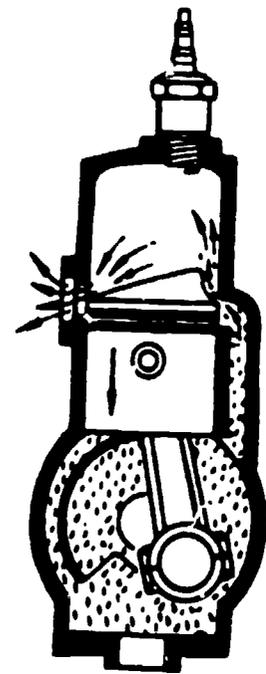
Intake



Compression

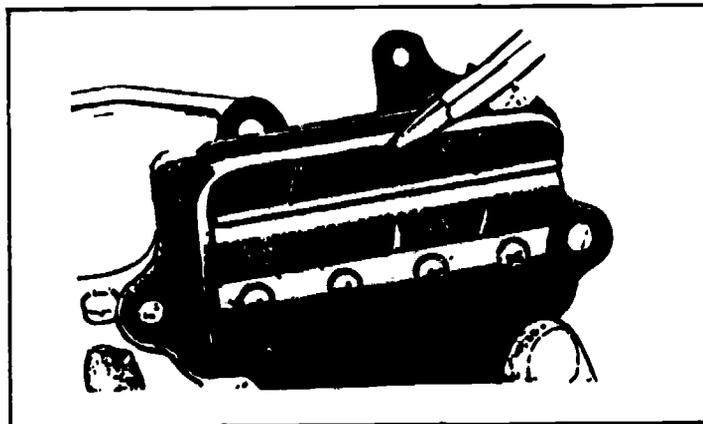
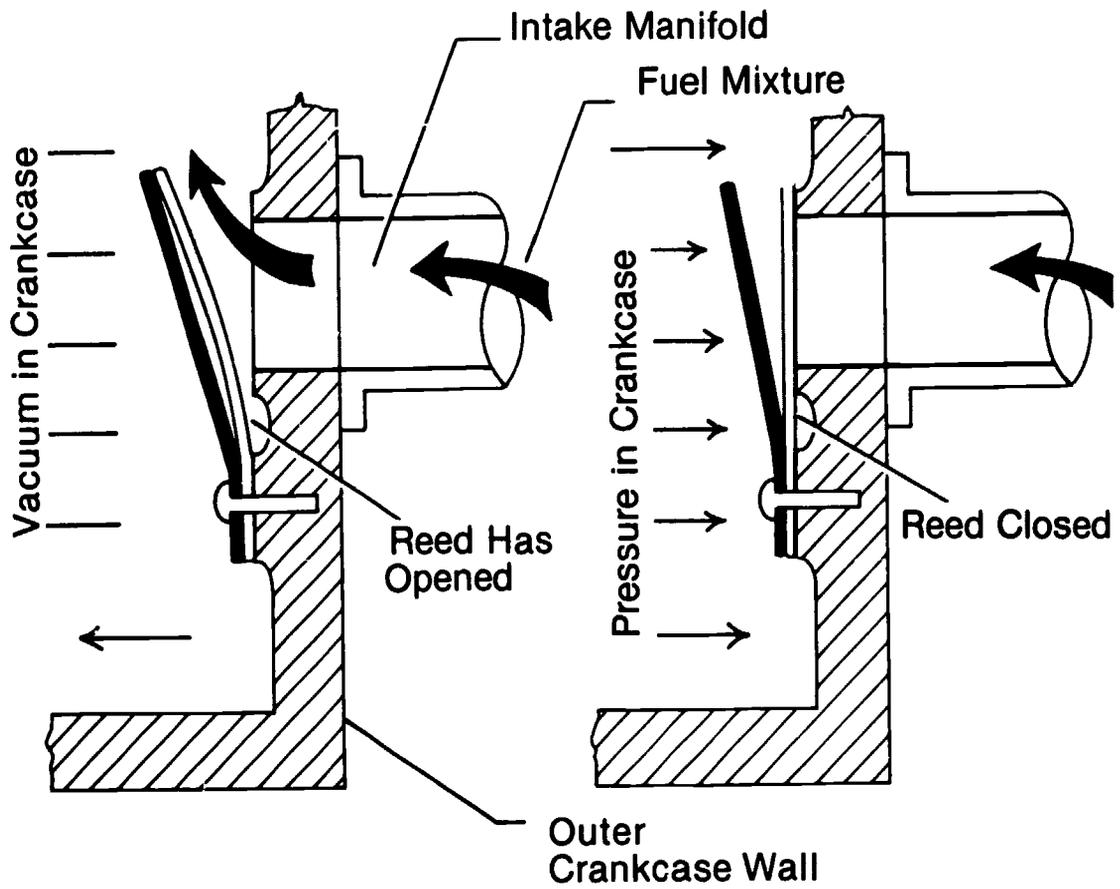


Power



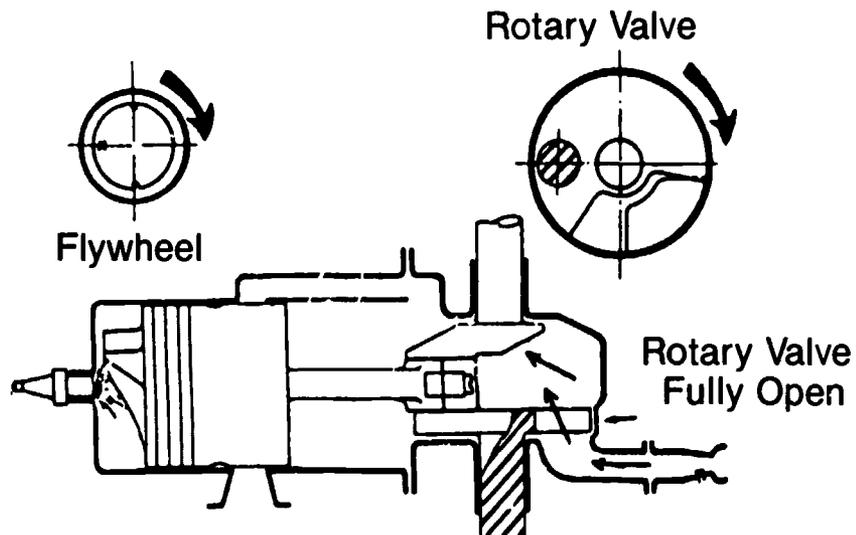
Exhaust

Reed Valves

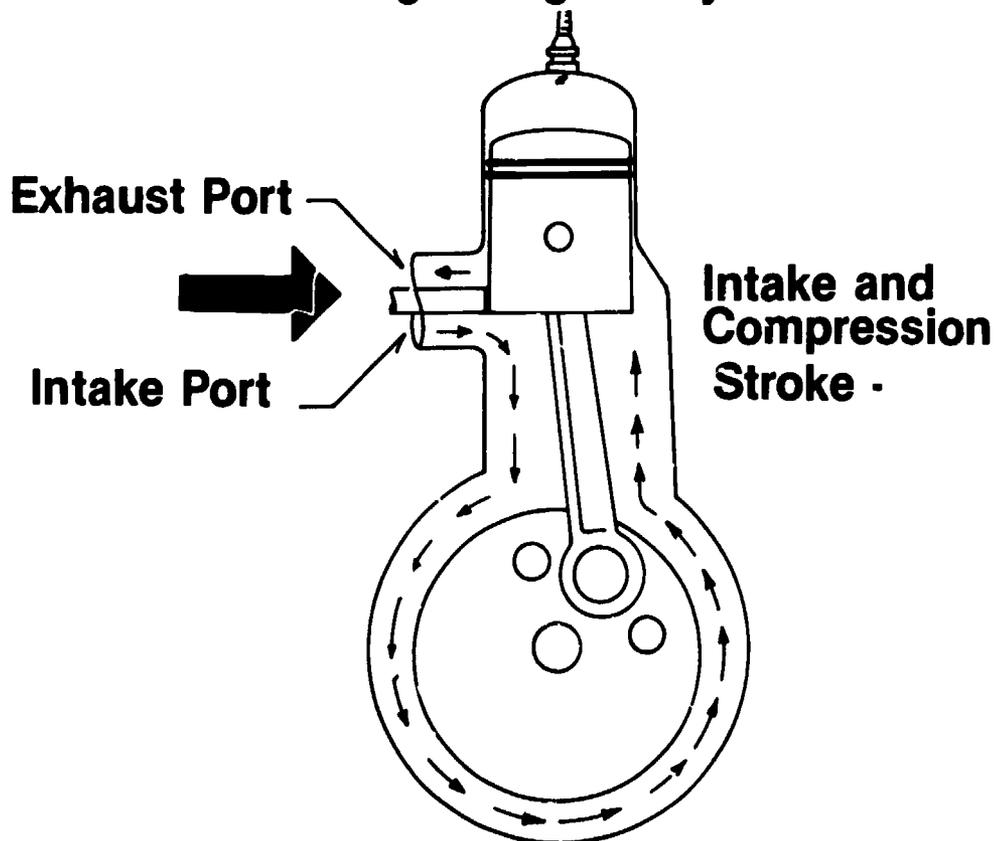


Frontal View of Reed Valve

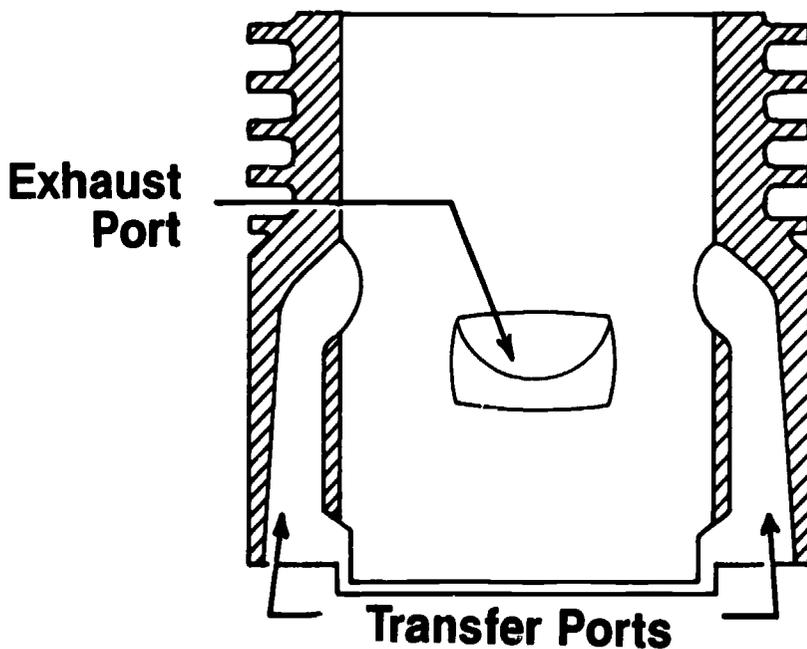
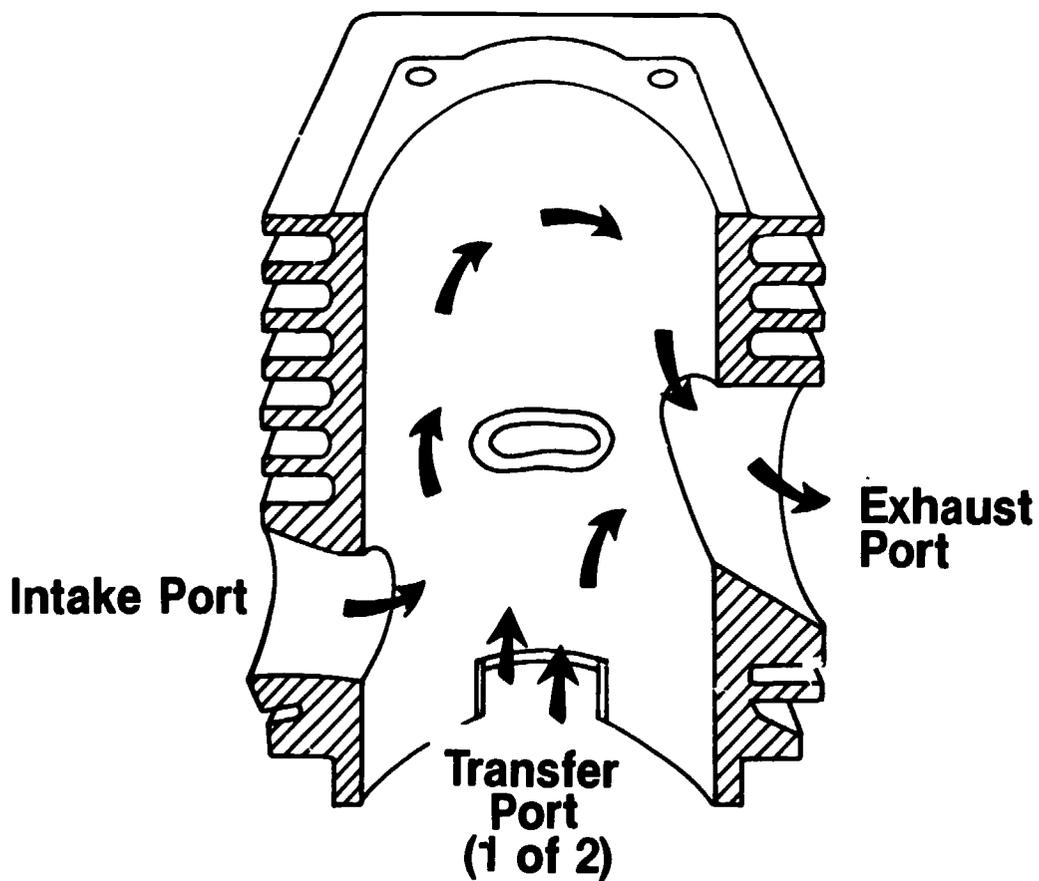
Rotary Valves and Piston Port



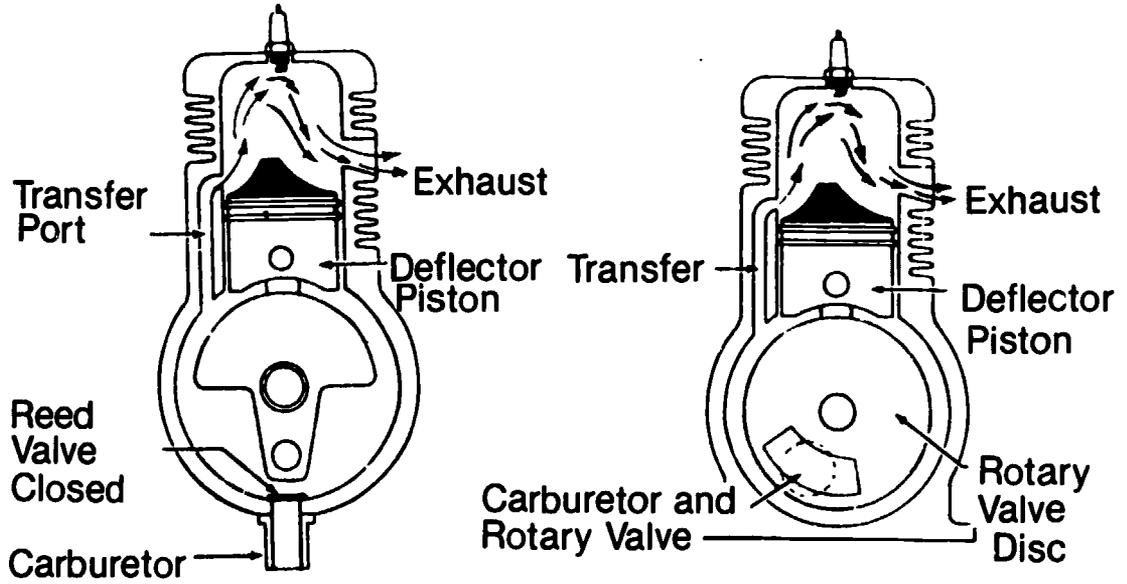
Firing Charge in Cylinder



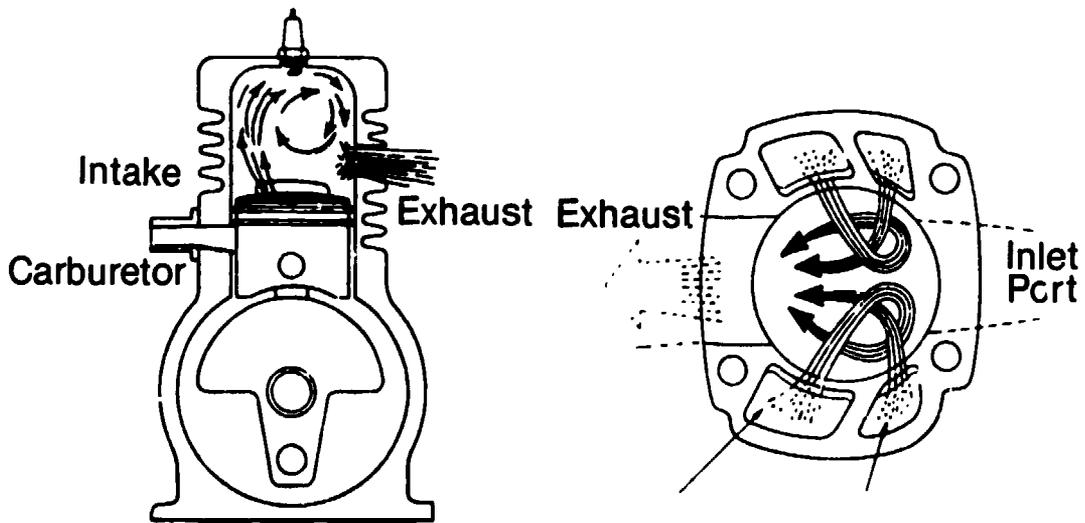
Timing Essentials



Design Variations



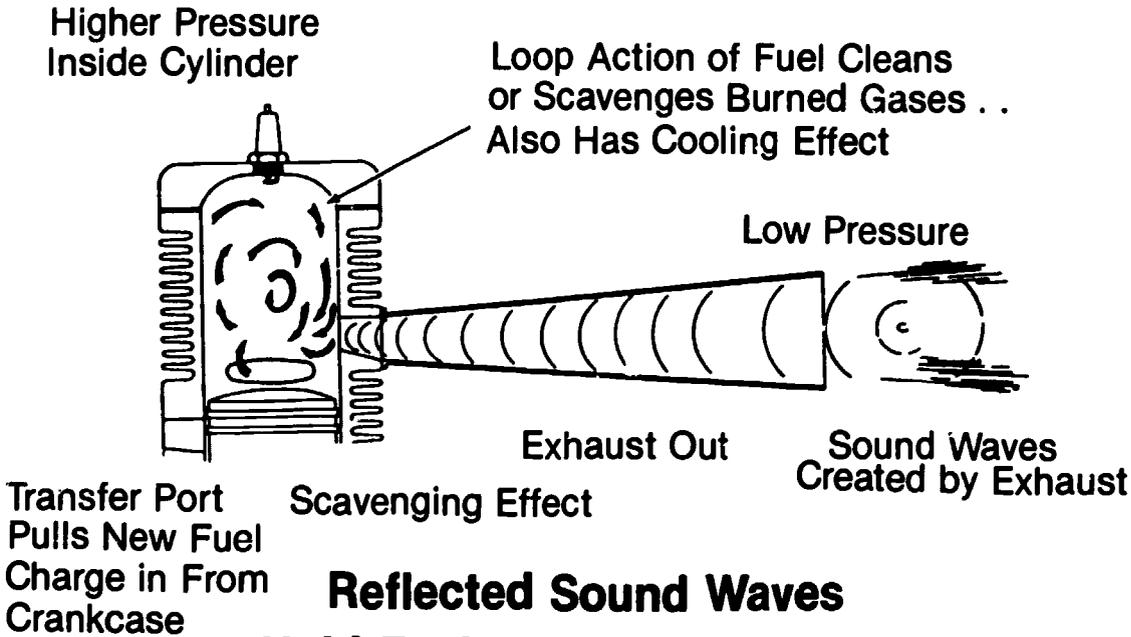
Cross Scavenged



Loop Scavenged

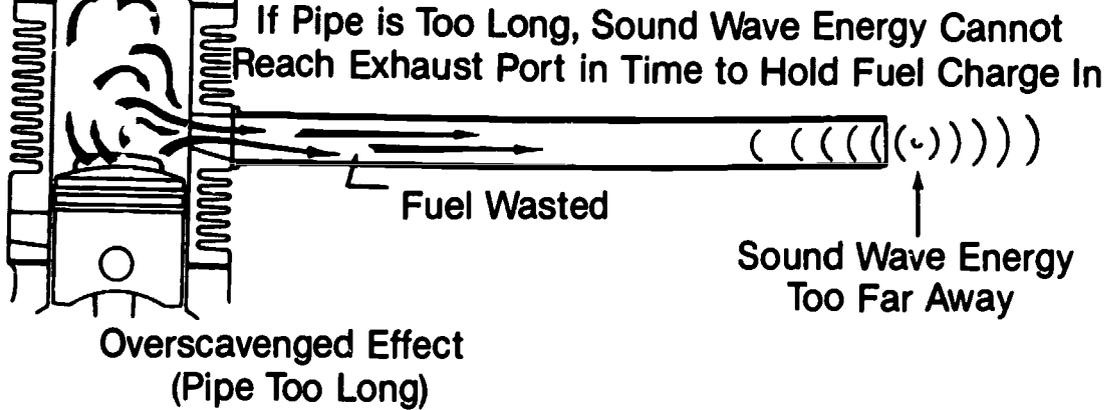
Exhaust System Design

Correct



Without Back Pressure Fuel Can Go Right Out Open Exhaust

Incorrect



Overscavenging From Wrong Length of Exhaust Pipe

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — TWO-STROKE CYCLE UNIT IV-B

NAME _____

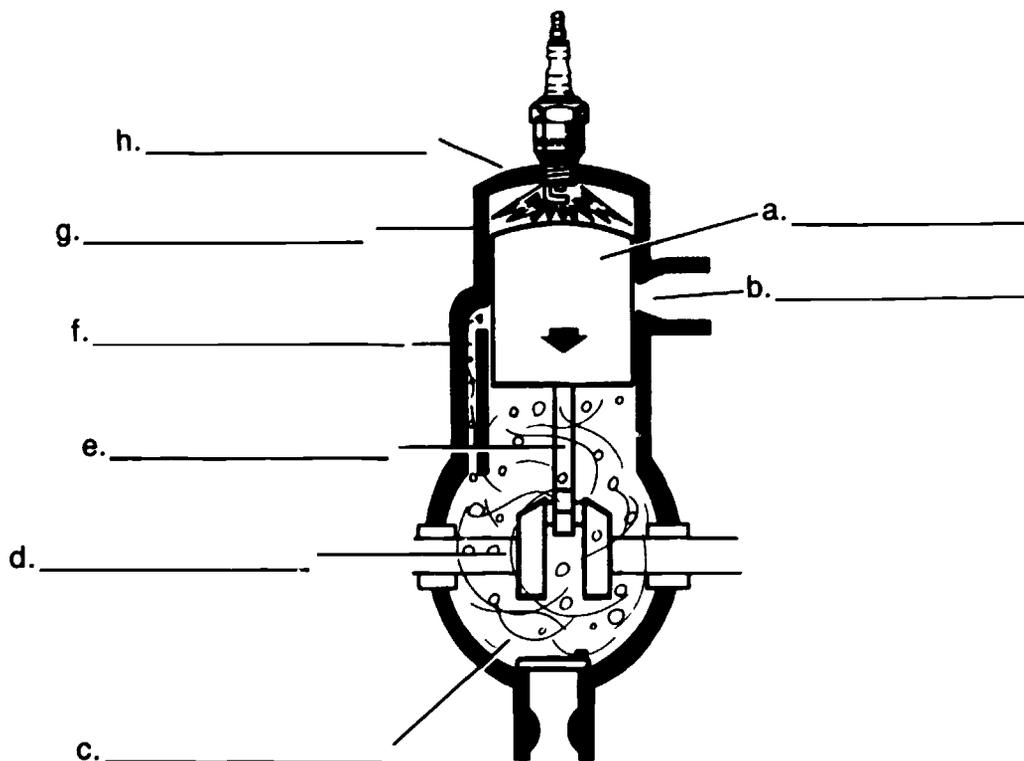
TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|----------------------------|
| _____a. | Pressure built up in the crankcase by the downward movement of the piston | 1. Transfer port |
| _____b. | One way valve made of spring steel which allows the fuel-air mixture to flow in one direction only | 2. Reed valve (leaf valve) |
| _____c. | Openings in the cylinder wall which allows the exhaust to escape | 3. Exhaust port |
| _____d. | Passage which allows movement of the fuel-air mixture from the crankcase into the combustion chamber | 4. Expansion chamber |
| _____e. | Flat circular plate with a section of the plate cut away that operates between the carburetor and the crankcase | 5. Crankcase pressure |
| _____f. | Exhaust system specially designed to produce maximum horsepower at a specific RPM range | 6. Crankcase vacuum |
| _____g. | Negative crankcase pressure created when piston moves upward in cylinder | 7. Rotary valve |

TEST

2. Identify the components of a basic two-stroke cycle engine.

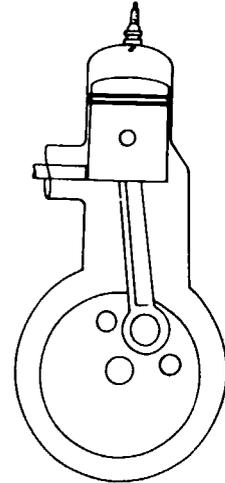
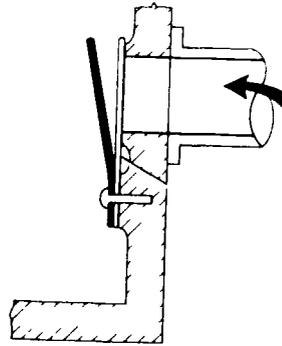
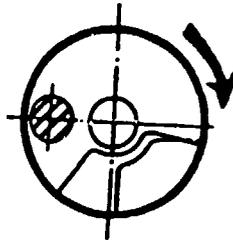


3. Select true statements concerning the operation of a two-stroke cycle engine by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ___ a. Piston moves down cylinder drawing fuel-air mixture into crankcase
- ___ b. Piston moves down cylinder, pressurizing mixture in crankcase
- ___ c. Piston moves past transfer port allowing pressurized mixture to move into crankcase
- ___ d. Piston moves up in cylinder again and draws more fuel-air mixture into crankcase
- ___ e. Spark plug fires compressed mixture
- ___ f. Combustion moves piston back down cylinder
- ___ g. Piston starts back up cylinder closing transfer port and opening exhaust port

TEST

4. Identify the types of valves that may be used in two-stroke cycle engines.



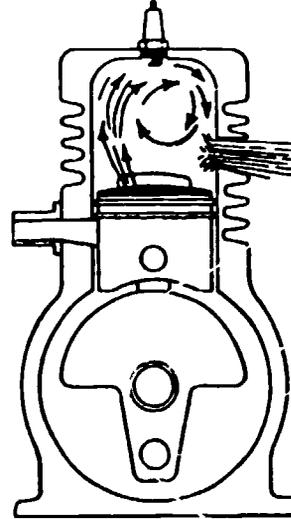
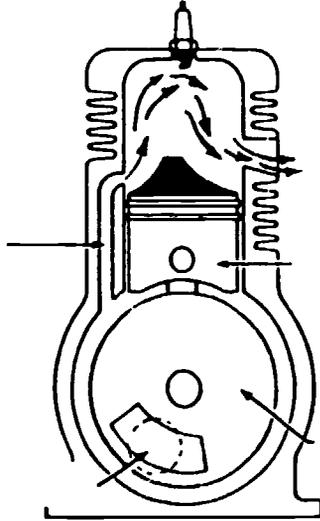
a. _____ b. _____ c. _____

5. Select the factors which determine timing on a two-stroke cycle engine by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ____ a. Location of transfer port
 ____ b. Location of cam lobe positions
 ____ c. Location of exhaust valve
 ____ d. Location of intake port
 ____ e. Location of exhaust port

TEST

6. Distinguish between cross-scavenged and loop-scavenged two-stroke cycle engines by writing the name of each in the appropriate blank.



- a. _____ b. _____

7. List three features which make a two-stroke cycle engine preferable for many applications.

- a. _____
 b. _____
 c. _____

8. Complete the following statements concerning the importance of correct exhaust system design on a two-stroke cycle engine by circling the correct words.

- a. Scavenges (**all**, **partial**) exhaust from combustion chamber
 b. Allows new fuel charge to move into combustion chamber (**rapidly**, **slowly**)
 c. Sound waves hold fuel charge momentarily while exhaust port is (**open**, **closed**)

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION — TWO-STROKE CYCLE UNIT IV-B

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 5 e. 7
 b. 2 f. 4
 c. 3 g. 6
 d. 1

2. a. Piston
 b. Exhaust port
 c. Crankcase
 d. Crankshaft
 e. Connecting rod
 f. Transfer port
 g. Cylinder
 h. Cylinder head

3. b,d,e,f

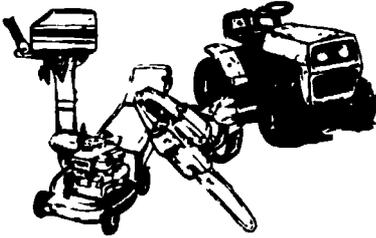
4. a. Rotary
 b. Reed
 c. Piston port

5. a,d,e

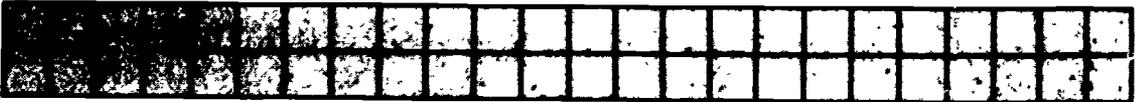
6. a. Cross-scavenged
 b. Loop-scavenged

7. Any three of the following:
 a. Simple design
 b. Light weight
 c. Smaller size for equivalent horsepower
 d. Adequate lubrication in any position
 e. Continuous supply of new, clean oil to all moving parts

8. a. All
 b. Rapidly
 c. Open



Basic Electricity Unit I-C



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify types of electrical circuits, solve problems using Ohm's law, and demonstrate the ability to check electrical circuits using an ohmmeter, ammeter, and voltmeter. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment and job sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

1. Match terms related to basic electricity with their correct definitions.
2. Select sources of electricity related to small engine repair.
3. Select parts of a basic circuit.
4. Distinguish between good conductors and insulators of electricity.
5. Distinguish between direct and alternating current.
6. Match basic electrical schematic symbols with their correct names.
7. Match the letter designations used in Ohm's law with their correct terms.
8. Draw Ohm's law in triangle expression.
9. State Ohm's law in letter formula for calculating voltage, current, and resistance.
10. Identify three types of electrical circuits.
11. Select true statements concerning rules for series circuits.

OBJECTIVE SHEET

12. Complete a list of rules for parallel circuits.
13. Select factors affecting resistance in a conductor.
14. Select true statements concerning the relationship between electricity and magnetism.
15. Select factors that determine the magnitude of induced voltage.
16. List three instruments used in checking electrical circuits.
17. Solve problems using Ohm's law formula (Assignment Sheet #1).
18. Identify basic electrical schematic symbols (Assignment Sheet #2).
19. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Measure resistance using an ohmmeter (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Check continuity (Job Sheet #2).
 - c. Use an ohmmeter to test for defective diodes (Job Sheet #3).
 - d. Measure amperage in a circuit (Job Sheet #4).
 - e. Check voltage (Job Sheet #5).
 - f. Use a digital voltohmmeter (Job Sheet #6).

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.
D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.
E. Provide students with information sheet.
F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with assignment and job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.
H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Discuss electron theory to promote a basic understanding of electricity.
2. Prepare a training aid to help teach basic principles of electricity.
3. Demonstrate magnetic lines of force by using iron filings and a conductor.
4. Demonstrate the construction of a series and a parallel circuit.
5. Provide inductance ammeter for class to check current flow in an operating system such as a garden tractor.

(NOTE: If your shop does not have an inductance ammeter, check with automotive instructor about borrowing one.)

6. Discuss procedures outlined in the assignment sheets.
7. Demonstrate and discuss procedures outlined in the job sheets.
8. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- I. Give test.
- J. Evaluate test.
- K. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Sources of Electricity
 - 2. TM 2 — Ohm's Law in Triangle Expression
 - 3. TM 3 — Ohm's Law in Letter Formula
 - 4. TM 4 — Series Circuit Rules
 - 5. TM 5 — Parallel Circuit Rules
 - 6. TM 6 — Magnetism and Field of Force
 - 7. TM 7 — Electricity and Magnetism Relationship
 - 8. TM 8 — Measuring Instruments
- E. Assignment sheets
 - 1. Assignment Sheet #1 — Solve Problems Using Ohm's Law
 - 2. Assignment Sheet #2 — Identify Basic Electrical Schematic Symbols
- F. Answers to assignment sheets
- G. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Measure Resistance Using an Ohmmeter
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Check Continuity
 - 3. Job Sheet #3 — Use an Ohmmeter to Test for Defective Diodes
 - 4. Job Sheet #4 — Measure Amperage in a Circuit
 - 5. Job Sheet #5 — Check Voltage
 - 6. Job Sheet #6 — Use a Digital Voltohmmeter

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- H. Test
- I. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. Parady, Harold W., and J. Howard Turner. *Electrical Energy*. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, 1976.
- B. *Small Engines, Volume 2*. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, 1971.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, OK: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Ampere — Unit of measure for electrical current
- B. Ohm — Standard unit for measuring resistance to flow of an electrical current
- C. Resistance — Opposition to current flow in a conductor
- D. Voltage (emf) — Electromotive force which causes current to flow in an electrical circuit
- E. Current — Flow of electrons through a conductor, measured in amperes
- F. Conductor — Substance or body through which an electrical current readily flows

Examples: Copper, aluminum, silver
- G. Insulator — Material which does not readily permit current flow

Examples: Rubber, glass, porcelain, air, oil, and plastic
- H. Semiconductor — An element with an atomic configuration which makes it neither a good conductor nor insulator
- I. Circuit — Continuous, unbroken path along a conductor through which electrical current can flow from a source, through various units and back to the source
- J. Capacitor (condenser) — Device which stores an electrical charge
- K. Magnetic induction — Inducing voltage in a conductor that moves across a magnetic field

II. Sources of electricity (Transparency 1)

- A. Chemical

Example: Battery
- B. Magnetic

Example: Generator

INFORMATION SHEET

III. Parts of a basic circuit

A. Voltage source

Example: Battery

B. Resistor

Example: Light bulb

C. Conductor

Example: Copper wire

IV. Conductors and insulators of electricity

A. Conductors

1. Copper

(NOTE: Copper is a good conductor because it has only one electron in outer ring and is comparatively cheaper than other metals which may have similar properties.)

2. Aluminum

3. Steel

4. Lead

5. Mercury

B. Insulators

1. Glass

2. Rubber

3. Plastic

4. Wood

INFORMATION SHEET

V. Direct and alternating current

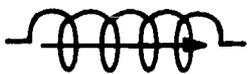
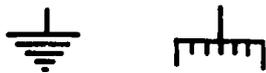
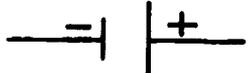
A. Direct current

1. Supplied by
 - a. Generator
 - b. Battery
 - 1) Dry cell
 - 2) Wet cell
2. Flows in one direction only
3. Abbreviated as DC

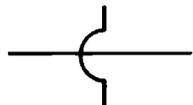
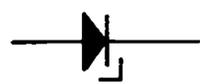
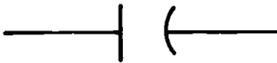
B. Alternating current

1. Supplied by an alternating current generator (alternator)
2. Flows in one direction then reverses and flows in the opposite direction
3. Abbreviated as AC

VI. Basic electrical schematic symbols

- | | | |
|----|--------------------|---|
| A. | Resistance or load |  |
| B. | Ohms of resistance |  |
| C. | Coil |  |
| D. | Solenoid |  |
| E. | Ground |  |
| F. | Battery |  |

INFORMATION SHEET

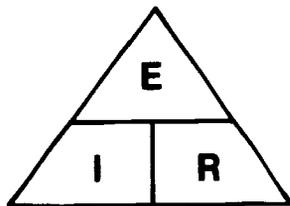
- G. Connection 
- H. Terminal 
- I. Switch (open) 
- J. Circuit breaker 
- K. Crossover 
- L. Direction of current 
- M. Diode (one-way) 
- N. Zener diode 
- O. Capacitor 
- P. Fuse 
- Q. Rheostat 
- R. Silicon controlled rectifier (SCR) 

VII. Letters and their terms

- A. E — Electromotive force in volts
- B. I — Intensity (current) in amps
- C. R — Resistance in ohms

INFORMATION SHEET

VIII. Ohm's law formula in triangle expression (Transparency 2)



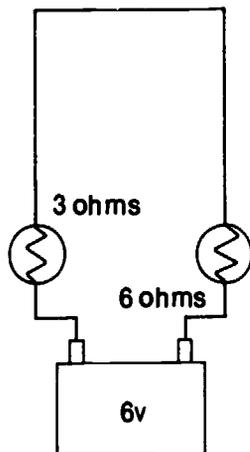
(NOTE: E.I.R. formula reminder is the phrase "Even I Remember.")

IX. Ohm's law in letter formula (Transparency 3)

- A. $E = I \times R$ or Volts = Amps \times Ohms
- B. $I = E/R$ or Amps = Volts \div Ohms
- C. $R = E/I$ or Ohms = Volts \div Amps

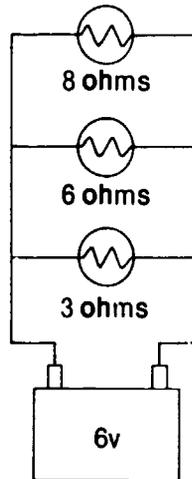
X. Types of electrical circuits

A. Series

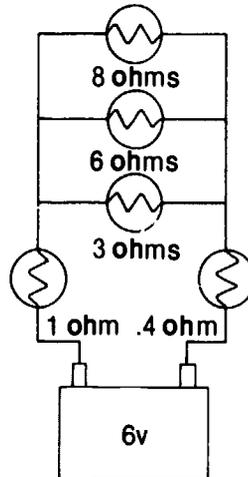


INFORMATION SHEET

B. Parallel



C. Series-parallel



XI. Rules for series circuits (Transparency 4)

- A. Current through each resistor is the same
- B. Voltage drops across each resistor will be different if the resistance values are different
- C. Sum of the voltage drops equals the source voltage

XII. Rules for parallel circuits (Transparency 5)

- A. Voltage across each resistor is the same
- B. Current through each resistor will be different if the resistance values are different
- C. Sum of the separate currents equals the total circuit current

INFORMATION SHEET

XIII. Factors affecting resistance in a conductor

- A. Length
- B. Diameter
- C. Temperature
- D. Composition

XIV. Relationship between electricity and magnetism (Transparency 6 & 7)

- A. Current passed through a wire (conductor) creates a magnetic field around the wire
- B. Magnetic lines have direction and change direction when the current flow changes from one direction to another

(NOTE: The Right Hand Rule for a straight conductor can be used to find the direction of the lines of force around the wire. To apply the rule, grasp the wire with the thumb extended in the direction of conventional current flow (positive to negative); the fingers will then point in the direction in which the lines of force surround the conductor. These lines of force are always at right angles to the conductor.)

- C. Conductor moving across a magnetic field will have a voltage induced in it
- D. Voltage polarity and the current flow direction are determined by the direction of wire movement and direction of the lines of force

(NOTE: The conductor can move or the magnetic field can move.)

- E. Ways to induce voltage by magnetic induction
 - 1. Generated voltage by relative motion
Examples: Generators and alternators
 - 2. Self-induction voltage created by a change of current in the conductor
Example: Primary of ignition coils
 - 3. Mutual-induction which occurs when changing current in one coil induces voltage in a second coil
Example: Two windings of ignition coils

INFORMATION SHEET

- F. Two conductors on an armature, carrying current in opposite directions, create a strong and weak field on opposite sides causing conductors to move apart or armature to rotate

(NOTE: The downward movement or rotation is caused by current flowing in the conductor. This is the principle by which a cranking motor operates.)

XV. Factors that determine the magnitude of induced voltage

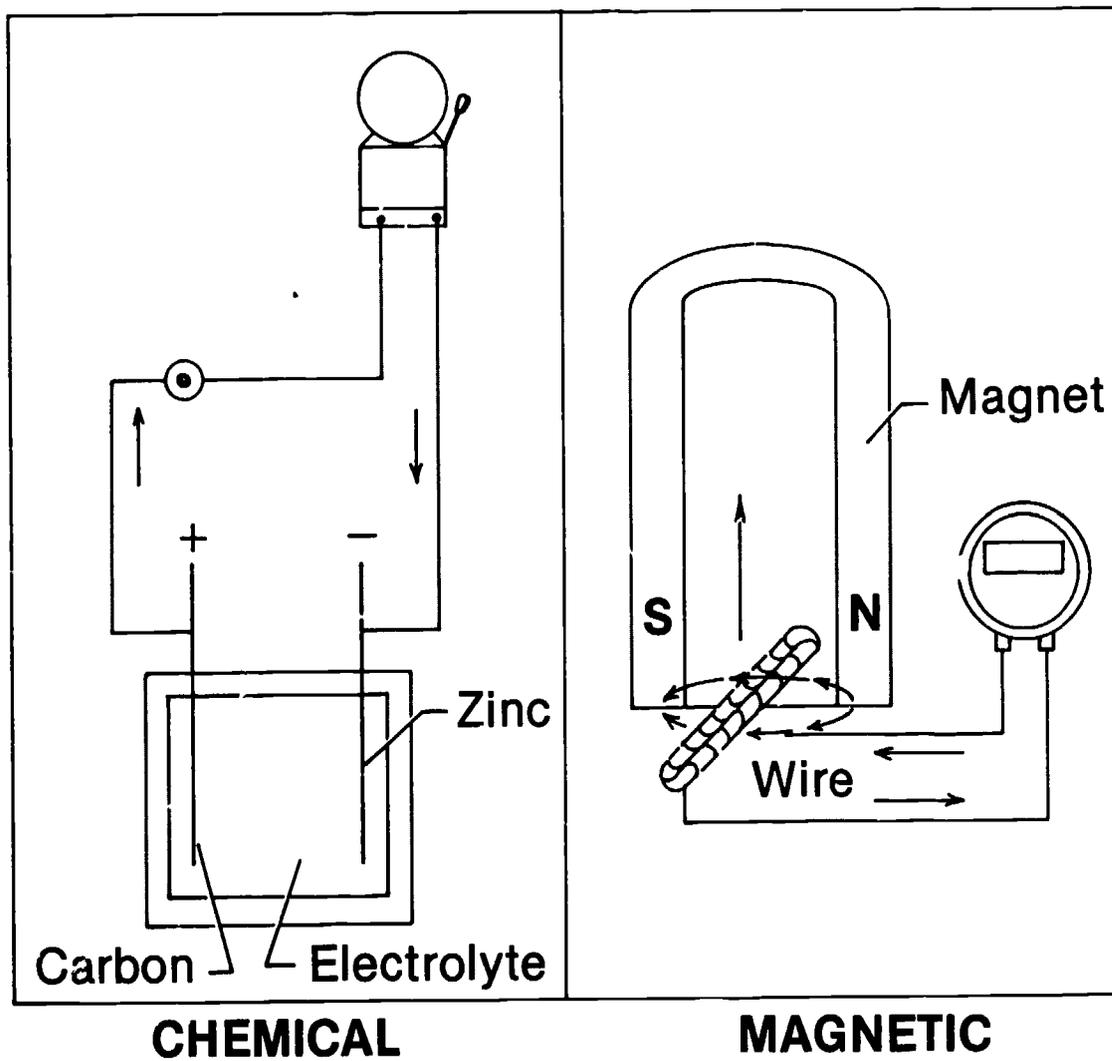
- A. Strength of the magnetic field
- B. Speed at which lines of force are cutting across the conductor
- C. Number of conductors that are cutting across the lines of force

XVI. Instruments used in checking electrical circuits (Transparency 8)

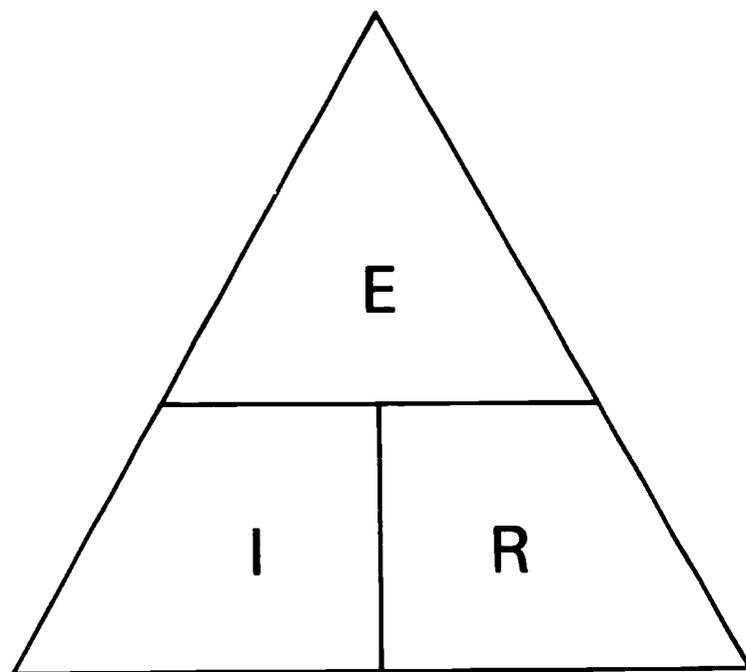
- A. Ammeter
- B. Voltmeter
- C. Ohmmeter

(NOTE: Modern testers often combine the voltmeter, ammeter, and ohmmeter in one test unit, such as a battery-starter tester.)

Sources of Electricity



Ohm's Law in Triangle Expression



NOTE: Solve for Volts, Amps,
or Resistance by
Covering the Unknown

Example: Cover E, then $E = I \times R$
Cover I, then $I = E \div R$
Cover R, then $R = E \div I$

E=Volts I=Amps R=Resistance

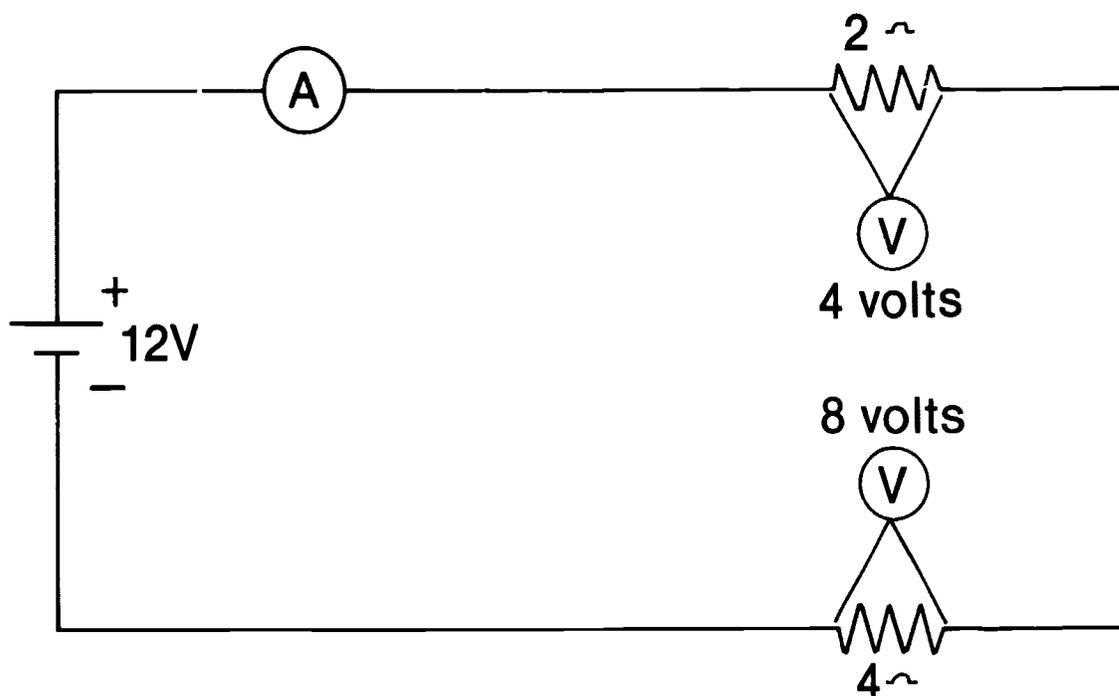
Ohm's Law in Letter Formula

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Electromotive Force} = \text{Current} \times \text{Resistance} \\ E = IR \quad \text{Volts} = \text{Amperes} \times \text{Ohms} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Current} = \frac{\text{Electromotive Force}}{\text{Resistance}} \\ I = \frac{E}{R} \quad \text{Amperes} = \frac{\text{Volts}}{\text{Ohms}} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Resistance} = \frac{\text{Electromotive Force}}{\text{Current}} \\ R = \frac{E}{I} \quad \text{Ohms} = \frac{\text{Volts}}{\text{Amperes}} \end{array}$$

Series Circuit Rules

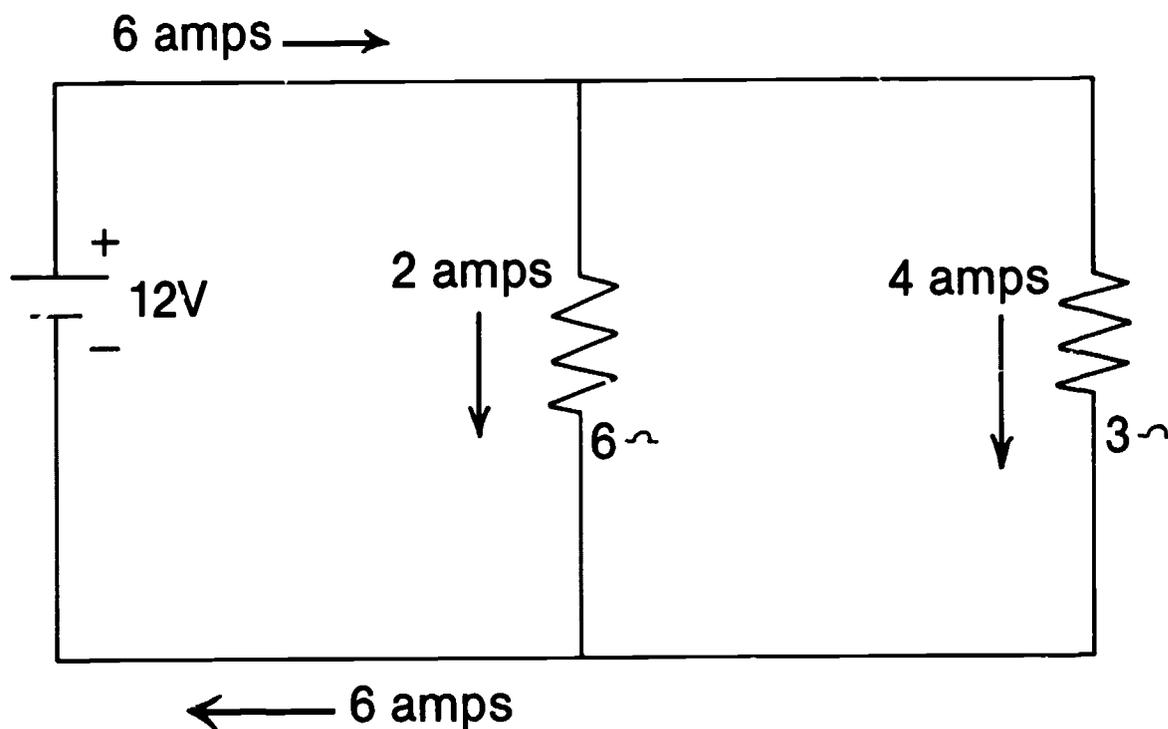


A. $I = E/R$
 $I = 12/6 = 2 \text{ amp}$

B. $E = IR$
 $E = 2 \times 2 = 4 \text{ volts}$
 $E = 2 \times 4 = 8 \text{ volts}$

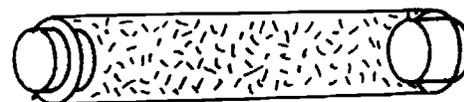
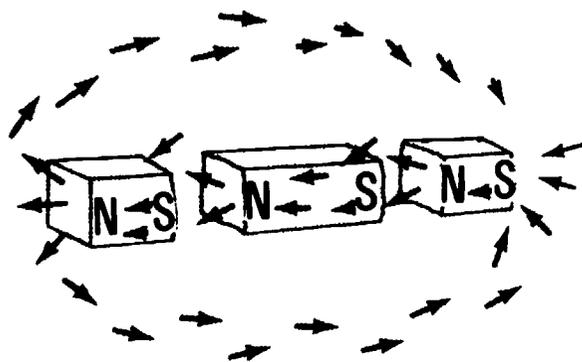
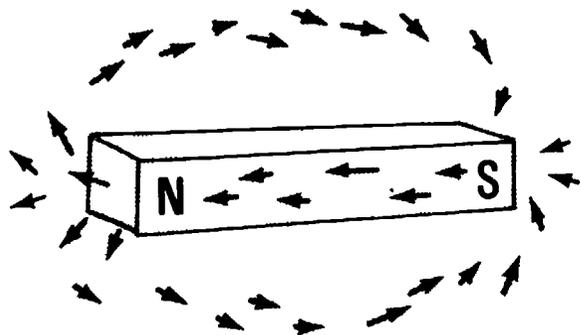
C. $4 + 8 = 12 \text{ volts}$

Parallel Circuit Rules



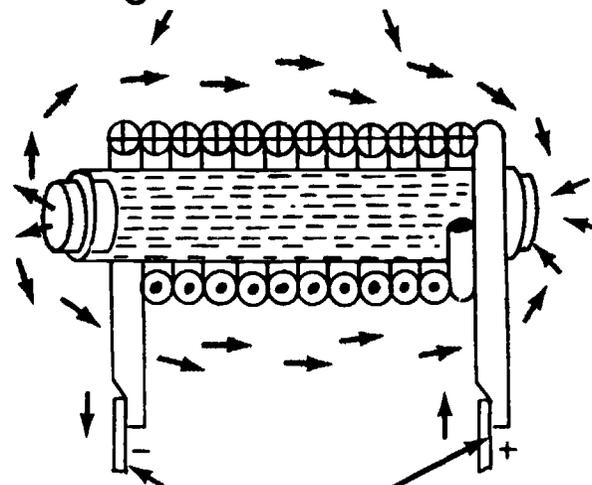
- A. Battery voltage across each resistor 12 volts
- B. $I = E/R$ $12/6 = 2$ ampere
 $I = E/R$ $12/3 = 4$ ampere
- C. $I = 6$ amps
 $R = E/I$ $12/6 = 2$ ohms

Magnetism and Field of Force



Unmagnetized Iron Filings

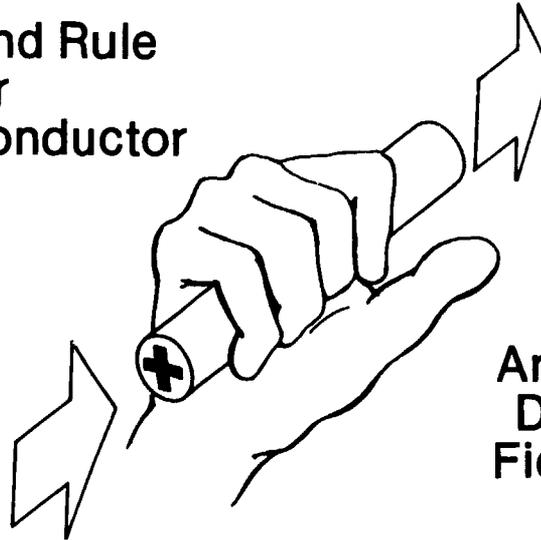
Magnetic Lines of Force



Leads From Battery

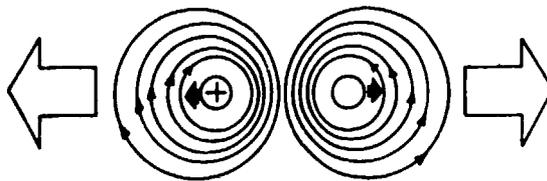
Electricity and Magnetism Relationship

Right Hand Rule
for
Straight Conductor

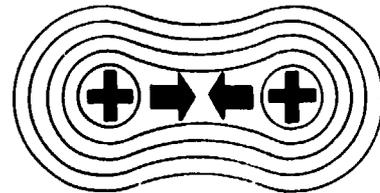


Arrows Show
Direction of
Field of Force

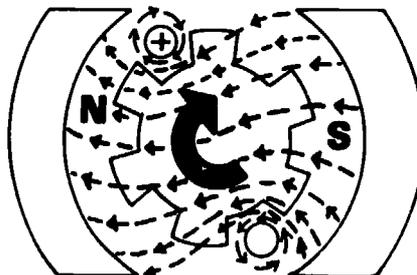
Strong Field Between Conductors



Conductors Tend To
Move Apart



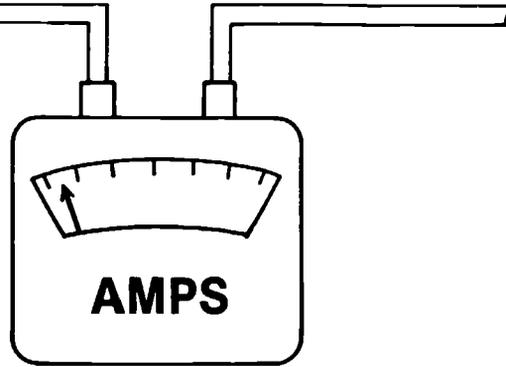
Conductors Tend To
Move Together



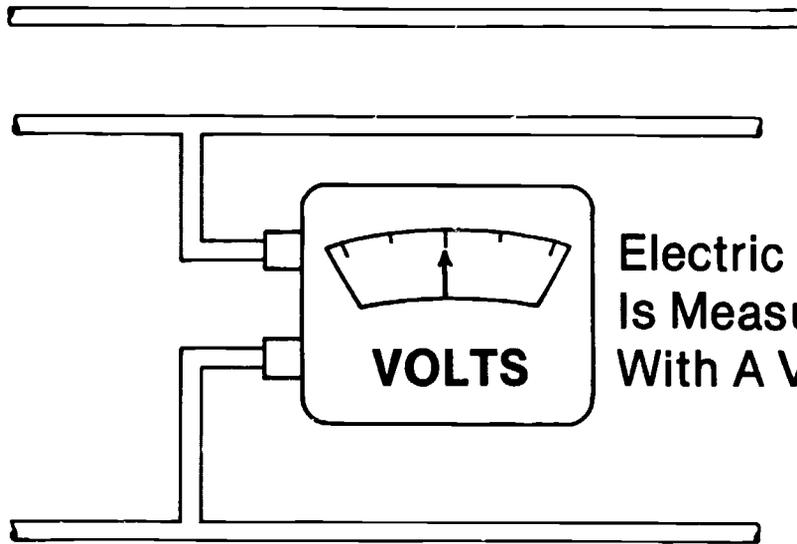
Motor Principle

Measuring Instruments

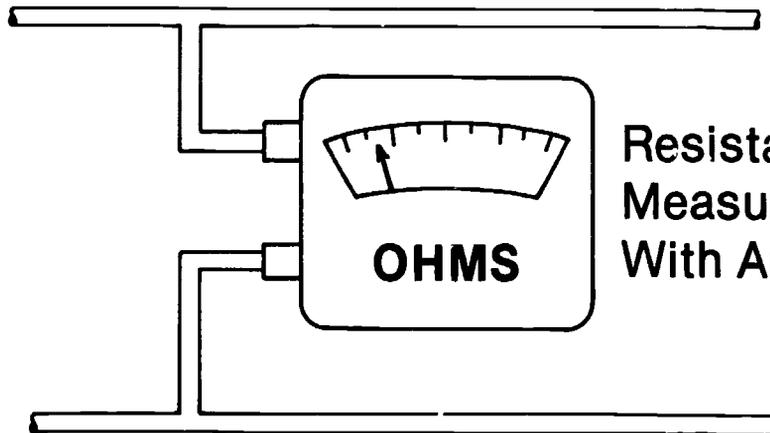
Electric Current
Is Measured in
Amperes With An
Ammeter



Electric "Pressure"
Is Measured In Volts
With A Voltmeter



Resistance Is
Measured In OHMS
With An Ohmmeter



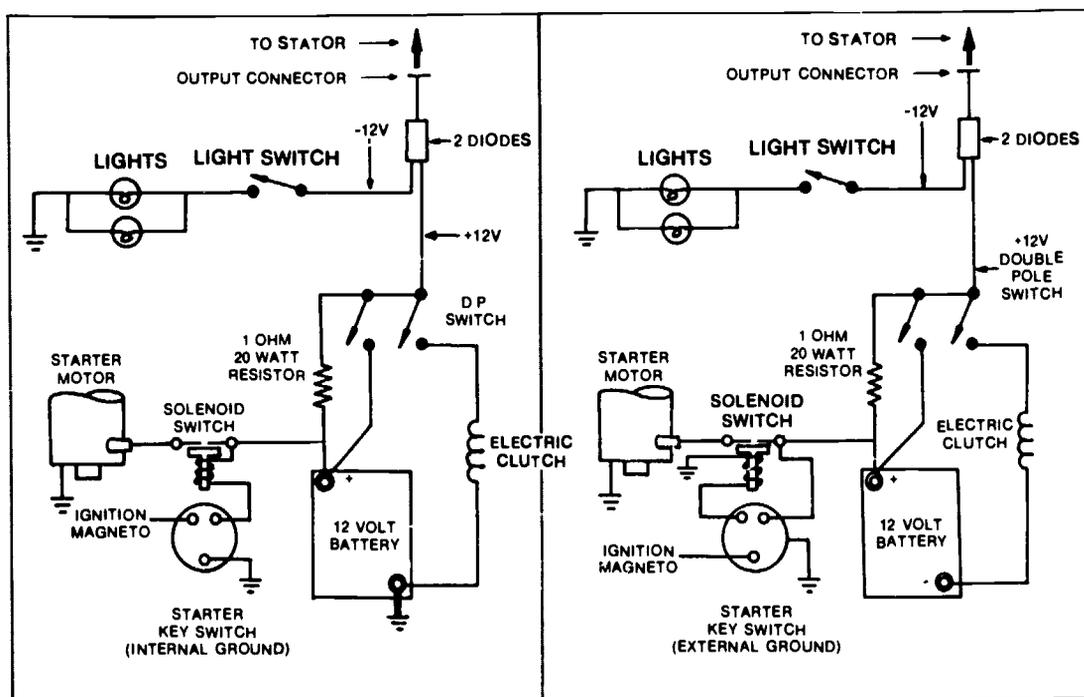
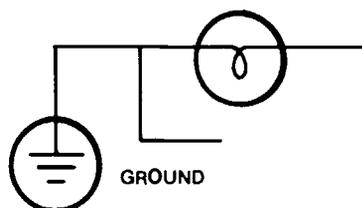
BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2 — IDENTIFY BASIC ELECTRICAL SCHEMATIC SYMBOLS

Directions: Circle and identify the basic electrical schematic symbols which appear on the wiring diagram below.

(NOTE: Red or blue ink is suggested to contrast with diagram.)

Example:



BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

Assignment Sheet #1

1. Covering up the E shows the formula for this problem to be $I \times R$. Therefore, $E = IR = 4 \times 3 = 12$ volts.
2. Covering up the R shows that $R = E/I$ which equals $12/12 = 1$ ohm.
3. Covering up the I shows that $I = E/R$. Therefore, $12/20 = .6$ amperes.
4. $E = I \times R$. Therefore, $6 \times 2 = 12$ volts.
5. $R = E/I$. Therefore, $12/2 = 6$ ohms.

Assignment Sheet #2 — Evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor

(NOTE: If instructor prefers, students may perform a self-check by reviewing symbols found in objective VI of this unit.)

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

JOB SHEET #1 — MEASURE RESISTANCE USING AN OHMMETER

- A. Equipment and materials needed
1. Ohmmeter
 2. Three various lengths of wires at same gauge
 3. Three of same length of wire at various gauges
- B. Procedure
1. Turn ohmmeter on
 2. Connect terminal leads of ohmmeter together and observe meter reading to check operation of meter.
 3. Attach negative lead to one end of wire
 4. Attach positive lead to other end of wire
 5. Read and record resistance in space provided below
 6. Repeat steps 3-5 for other wires
 7. Clean work area

Various Lengths of Wire at Same Gauge

Wire #1	Wire #2	Wire #3
---------	---------	---------

Same Lengths of Wire at Various Gauges

Wire #1	Wire #2	Wire #3
---------	---------	---------

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

JOB SHEET #2 — CHECK CONTINUITY

A. Equipment and materials needed

1. Battery
2. Ohmmeter
3. Appropriate service manual
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

(CAUTION: Remove all jewelry before working on electrical circuits and follow all shop safety procedures.)

1. Disconnect battery ground cable from battery terminal

(CAUTION: Continuity light will be damaged if ground cable is not disconnected.)

2. Connect ohmmeter positive (+) lead to hot lead of the circuit
3. Connect ohmmeter negative (-) lead to ground
4. If the bulb lights or if the ohmmeter scale indicates minor resistance, the circuit is okay

(NOTE: Switches and grounds are checked in the same manner.)

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

JOB SHEET #3 — USE AN OHMMETER TO TEST FOR DEFECTIVE DIODES

A. Equipment and materials needed

1. Ohmmeter with test leads
2. Assortment of diodes furnished by instructor
3. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

(NOTE: Recall that diodes pass current easily in one direction but not in the opposite direction. Use this information to determine which diodes may be defective.)

1. Connect ohmmeter across diodes, one at a time, and switch leads to determine whether there is a difference in conductivity
2. Separate diodes by placing defective ones on workbench in a group to the left
(NOTE: Discuss your results with your instructor.)
3. Disconnect ohmmeter
4. Clean work area; put away equipment and materials

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

JOB SHEET #4 — MEASURE AMPERAGE IN A CIRCUIT

A. Equipment and materials needed

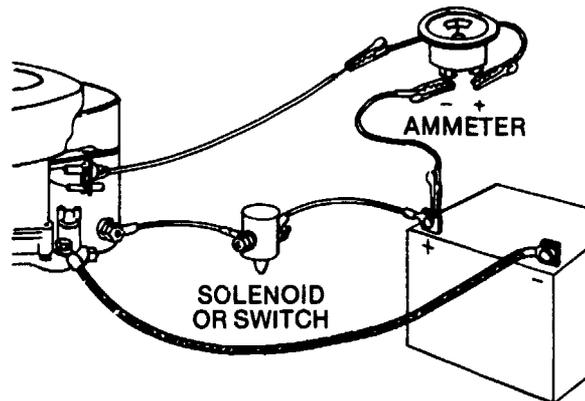
1. Ammeter
2. Test leads
3. Operating system
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

(CAUTION: Remove all jewelry before working on any electrical circuit and follow all shop safety procedures.)

1. Disconnect charging lead from battery circuit
2. Attach ammeter in series with charging lead (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



3. Start engine
4. Read ammeter and record charge rate in space provided _____
(NOTE: The charge rate is dependent on the battery.)
5. Turn off engine
6. Disconnect ammeter from charging lead circuit
7. Reconnect charging lead to battery circuit

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

JOB SHEET #5 — CHECK VOLTAGE

A. Equipment and materials needed

1. Battery
2. Voltmeter
3. Appropriate service manual
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

(CAUTION: Remove all jewelry before working on any electrical circuit and follow all shop safety procedures.)

1. Connect negative lead from voltmeter to negative (-) battery terminal
2. Connect positive lead from voltmeter to positive (+) battery terminal

(NOTE: The positive (+) battery terminal is larger in diameter than the negative (-) terminal.)
3. Read voltmeter scale to determine if battery contains normal rated voltage according to manufacturers' specifications
4. If battery is on full charge, continue with other electrical tests as necessary
5. If battery voltage is below normal rating, recharge before performing other electrical tests
6. Clean work area; put away equipment and materials

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

JOB SHEET #6 — USE A DIGITAL VOLTOHMMETER

A. Equipment and materials needed

1. Digital voltohmmeter and instruction booklet

(NOTE: Use only meters with a 10-megohm impedance for testing computerized components.)

2. Circuit containing less than 1 volt
3. Circuit containing variable resistance
4. Appropriate service manual
5. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Test accuracy of voltohmmeter
 - a. Place meter selectors in TEST position
 - b. Verify reading on meter with specified reading in instruction booklet
 - c. If meter is inaccurate, replace with another and repeat test
2. Test circuit containing normal battery voltage
 - a. Place FUNCTION switch at DC VOLTS indicator
 - b. Check range of circuit in service manual, and place RANGE switch in proper position

EXAMPLE: Range 1 = 1 to 10 volts
Range 10 = 10 to 100 volts
Range 100 = 100 to 1000 volts
Range 1000 = 1000 to 100,000 volts

(NOTE: If meter is equipped with AUTO position, it will select the proper range automatically. If meter is not equipped with AUTO position, prevent damage to meter by placing range selector on highest scale and reducing to lower scales until satisfactory reading is obtained.)

JOB SHEET #6

- c. Connect red lead of meter to source of power to be tested; connect black lead to suitable ground; turn on current
 - d. Observe reading, and compare to manufacturer's specifications
 - e. Turn off current, and disconnect meter leads
3. Test circuit of less than 1 volt

- a. Place FUNCTION switch at MILLIVOLTS indicator
- b. Check range of circuit in service manual, and place RANGE switch in proper position

EXAMPLE: Range 1 = 0 to 10 millivolts
 Range 10 = 10 to 100 millivolts
 Range 100 = 100 to 1000 millivolts

(NOTE: If meter is equipped with AUTO position, it will select proper range automatically. If meter is not equipped with AUTO position, prevent damage to meter by placing range selector on highest scale and reducing to lower scales until satisfactory reading is obtained.)

- c. Connect red lead of meter to source of power to be tested; connect black lead to suitable ground; turn on current
 - d. Observe reading, and compare to manufacturer's specifications
 - e. Turn off current, and disconnect meter leads
4. Test resistance in a circuit or component

- a. Turn off current to circuit or component
- b. Place FUNCTION switch at proper ohms indicator

(NOTE: Meter indicators vary; therefore, the indicator may designate CHMS, KILOHMS, or MEGOHMS.)

- c. Check range of circuit or component in service manual, and place RANGE switch in proper position

EXAMPLES: Function switch in OHMS position:

Range 1 = 0 to 10 ohms
 Range 10 = 10 to 100 ohms
 Range 100 = 100 to 1000 ohms
 Range 1000 = 1000 to 10,000 ohms

JOB SHEET #6

Function switch in KILOHMS position:

Range 1 = 1000 to 10,000 ohms
Range 10 = 10,000 to 100,000 ohms
Range 100 = 100,000 to 1,000,000 ohms

Function switch in MEGOHMS position:

Range 1 = 1 to 10 megohms
Range 10 = 10 to 100 megohms
Range 100 = 100 to 1000 megohms

(NOTE: If meter is equipped with AUTO position, it will select the proper range automatically. If meter is not equipped with AUTO position, prevent damage to meter by placing selector on highest scale and reducing to lower scales until satisfactory reading is obtained.)

- d. Connect either red or black lead of meter to one side of component to be tested; connect other lead to opposite side of component; read resistance value
 - e. Observe reading, and compare to manufacturer's specifications
 - f. Disconnect meter leads
5. Deenergize voltohmmeter
 6. Clean work area; put away tools and equipment

BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| _____a. Unit of measure for electrical current | 1. Voltage (emf) |
| _____b. Device which stores an electrical charge | 2. Magnetic induction |
| _____c. Continuous, unbroken path along a conductor through which electrical current can flow from a source, through various units and back to the source | 3. Ohm |
| _____d. Substance or body through which an electrical current readily flows | 4. Conductor |
| _____e. Flow of electrons through a conductor, measured in amperes | 5. Capacitor (condenser) |
| _____f. Material which does not readily permit current flow | 6. Ampere |
| _____g. Standard unit for measuring resistance to flow of an electrical current | 7. Circuit |
| _____h. Opposition to current flow in a conductor | 8. Current |
| _____i. Inducing voltage in a conductor that moves across a magnetic field | 9. Insulator |
| _____j. An element with an atomic configuration which makes it neither a good conductor nor insulator | 10. Resistance |
| _____k. Electromotive force which causes current to flow in an electrical circuit | 11. Semiconductor |

2. Select the sources of electricity related to small engine repair by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

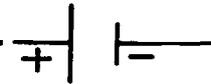
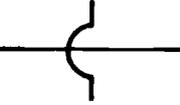
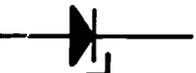
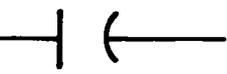
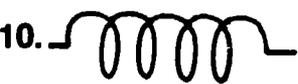
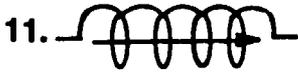
- _____a. Pressure
- _____b. Magnetic
- _____c. Chemical

TEST

3. Select the parts of a basic circuit by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- ____a. Conductor
 - ____b. Insulator
 - ____c. Magnet
 - ____d. Voltage source
 - ____e. Resistor
4. Distinguish between good conductors and insulators of electricity by placing a "C" in front of the items that are good conductors and an "I" in front of the items that are insulators.
- ____a. Mercury
 - ____b. Lead
 - ____c. Rubber
 - ____d. Glass
 - ____e. Wood
 - ____f. Steel
 - ____g. Plastic
 - ____h. Copper
 - ____i. Aluminum
5. Distinguish between direct and alternating current by placing a "D" in front of characteristics of a direct current and an "A" in front of characteristics of an alternating current.
- ____a. Flows in one direction only
 - ____b. Supplied by an alternating current generator
 - ____c. Supplied by generator and battery
 - ____d. Abbreviated as DC
 - ____e. Flows in one direction then reverses and flows in the opposite direction
 - ____f. Abbreviated as AC

TEST

6. Match the basic electrical schematic symbols on the right to the correct names.

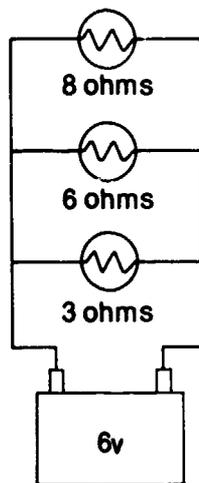
___ a.	Solenoid	1. 	13. 
___ b.	Battery	2. 	14. 
___ c.	Terminal	3. 	15. 
___ d.	Circuit breaker	4. 	16. 
___ e.	Resistance or load	5. 	17. 
___ f.	Coil	6. 	18. 
___ g.	Ohms of resistance	7. 	
___ h.	Ground	8. 	
___ i.	Connection	9. 	
___ j.	Switch (open)	10. 	
___ k.	Crossover	11. 	
___ l.	Fuse	12. 	
___ m.	Diode (one-way)		
___ n.	Zener diode		
___ o.	Capacitor		
___ p.	Direction of current		
___ q.	Silicon controlled rectifier		
___ r.	Rheostat		

7. Match the letter designations used in Ohm's law on the right with their correct terms.

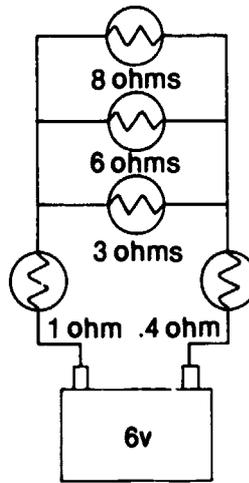
___ a.	Electromotive force in volts	1. I
___ b.	Intensity in amps	2. R
___ c.	Resistance in ohms	3. E

TEST

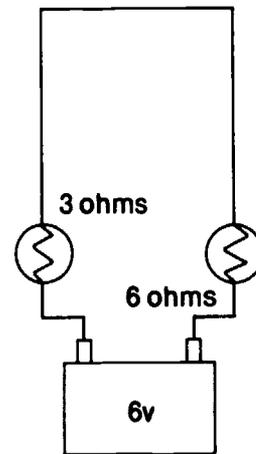
8. Draw Ohm's law formula in triangle expression.
9. State Ohm's law in letter formula for calculating voltage, current, and resistance.
- A. $E =$
- B. $I =$
- C. $R =$
10. Identify the following types of electrical circuits.



a. _____



b. _____



c. _____

TEST

11. Select true statements concerning rules for series circuits by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- a. Current through each resistor is the same
 - b. Voltage drops across each resistor will be different if the resistance values are different
 - c. Sum of the voltage drops equals the source voltage
12. Complete the following list of rules for parallel circuits by correctly filling in the blanks.
- a. Voltage across each resistor is _____.
 - b. _____ through each resistor will be different if the resistance values are different
 - c. Sum of the separate currents equals the total _____.
13. Select the factors affecting resistance in a conductor by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- a. Length
 - b. Altitude
 - c. Viscosity
 - d. Diameter
 - e. Composition
 - f. Temperature
14. Select true statements concerning the relationship between electricity and magnetism by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- a. Current passed through a wire (conductor) creates a magnetic field around the wire
 - b. Magnetic lines have direction and change direction when the current flow changes from one direction to another
 - c. Conductor moving across a magnetic field will have a voltage induced in it
 - d. Voltage polarity and the current flow direction are determined by the direction of wire movement and direction of the lines of force
 - e. Mutual induction is one way to induce voltage by magnetic induction and occurs when changing current in one coil induces voltage in the alternator
 - f. Two conductors on an armature, carrying current in opposite directions, create a strong and weak field on opposite sides causing conductors to move apart or armature to rotate

TEST

15. Select factors that determine the magnitude of induced voltage by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- ____ a. Number of conductors that are cutting across the lines of force
 - ____ b. Strength of the magnetic field
 - ____ c. Atmospheric pressure
 - ____ d. Speed at which lines of force are cutting across the conductor
16. List three instruments used in checking electrical circuits.
- a. _____
 - b. _____
 - c. _____

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

17. Solve problems using Ohm's law formula (Assignment Sheet #1).
18. Identify basic electrical schematic symbols (Assignment Sheet #2).
19. Demonstrate the ability to:
- a. Measure resistance using an ohmmeter (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Check continuity (Job Sheet #2).
 - c. Use an ohmmeter to test for defective diodes (Job Sheet #3).
 - d. Measure amperage in a circuit (Job Sheet #4).
 - e. Check voltage (Job Sheet #5).
 - f. Use a digital voltohmmeter (Job Sheet #6).

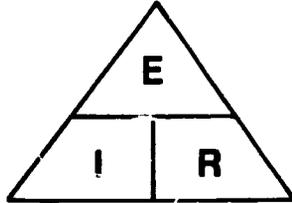
BASIC ELECTRICITY UNIT I-C

ANSWERS TO TEST

- | | | | | | |
|----|-------|-------|-------|--|--|
| 1. | a. 6 | g. 3 | | | |
| | b. 5 | h. 10 | | | |
| | c. 7 | i. 2 | | | |
| | d. 4 | j. 11 | | | |
| | e. 8 | k. 1 | | | |
| | f. 9 | | | | |
| 2. | b,c | | | | |
| 3. | a,d,e | | | | |
| 4. | a. C | f. C | | | |
| | b. C | g. I | | | |
| | c. I | h. C | | | |
| | d. I | i. C | | | |
| | e. I | | | | |
| 5. | a. D | | | | |
| | b. A | | | | |
| | c. D | | | | |
| | d. D | | | | |
| | e. A | | | | |
| | f. A | | | | |
| 6. | a. 11 | h. 12 | o. 7 | | |
| | b. 13 | i. 14 | p. 4 | | |
| | c. 15 | j. 16 | q. 17 | | |
| | d. 2 | k. 3 | r. 18 | | |
| | e. 8 | l. 1 | | | |
| | f. 10 | m. 5 | | | |
| | g. 9 | n. 6 | | | |
| 7. | a. 3 | | | | |
| | b. 1 | | | | |
| | c. 2 | | | | |

ANSWERS TO TEST

8.



9. a. $E = I \times R$ or Volts = Amps \times Ohms
 b. $I = E/R$ or Amps = Volts \div Ohms
 c. $R = E/I$ or Ohms = Volts \div Amps
10. a. Series
 b. Parallel
 c. Series-parallel
11. a,b,c
12. a. The same
 b. Current
 c. Circuit current
13. a,d,e,f
14. a,b,c,d,f
15. a,b,d
16. a. Ammeter
 b. Voltmeter
 c. Ohmmeter
- 17-18. Evaluated according to the satisfaction of the instructor
19. Performance skills evaluated according to the standards identified by the instructor

OBJECTIVE SHEET

- d. Test and adjust a solid state ignition system (Job Sheet #4).
- e. Perform a coil power test (Job Sheet #5).
- f. Check ignition timing using a dial indicator (Job Sheet #6).
- g. Test condenser for leakage or short (Job Sheet #7).

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional information and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Show examples of the different types of ignition systems.
2. Show primary and secondary windings of a coil.
3. Obtain a cutaway diagram of a spark plug.
4. Prepare a test board with coils and condensers for student use.
5. Cut a coil and condenser to show makeup.
6. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
7. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Primary Circuit
 - 2. TM 2 — Secondary Circuit
 - 3. TM 3 — Magneto Ignition System
 - 4. TM 4 — Solid State Ignition System
 - 5. TM 5 — Breakerless Ignition System
 - 6. TM 6 — Principles of a Magneto
 - 7. TM 7 — Principles of a Magneto (Continued)
 - 8. TM 8 — Principles of a Magneto (Continued)
- E. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Remove, Service, and Replace Spark Plugs
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Remove and Replace Contact Points and Condenser
 - 3. Job Sheet #3 — Test the Coil, Condenser, Armature, and Flywheel Magnets
 - 4. Job Sheet #4 — Test and Adjust a Solid State Ignition System
 - 5. Job Sheet #5 — Perform a Coil Power Test
 - 6. Job Sheet #6 — Check Ignition Timing Using a Dial Indicator
 - 7. Job Sheet #7 — Test Condenser For Leakage or Short
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. Roth, Alfred C. *Small Gas Engines*. South Holland, Illinois: Goodheart-Willcox Co., 1975.
- B. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

IGNITION SYSTEMS

UNIT II-C

INFORMATION SHEET

- I. **Purpose of the ignition system** — Produces high voltage current to ignite the fuel-air mixture in the engine cylinder
- II. **Types of ignition systems**
 - A. **Battery ignition system** — Uses battery to supply source of current for the primary ignition circuit
 - B. **Magneto ignition system** — Produces current by magnetic induction for the primary ignition circuit without any outside source of electricity
 - C. **Solid state ignition system** — Uses semiconductors in place of one or more standard ignition components
 - D. **Breakerless ignition system** — Uses electronic parts in place of mechanically operated ignition points
- III. **Battery ignition systems circuit components (Transparencies 1 and 2)**
 - A. **Primary circuit (low voltage)**
 1. Battery
 2. Ignition switch
 3. Resistance unit (resistor)
 4. Primary winding
 5. Contact points
 6. Condenser
 7. Low voltage wire
 - B. **Secondary circuit (high voltage)**
 1. Secondary winding
 2. Distributor cap
 3. Rotor
 4. Spark plug
 5. High voltage wire

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Components of a magneto ignition system (Transparency 3)

- A. Primary system (low voltage)
 - 1. Flywheel with magnets
 - 2. Armature (laminated)
 - 3. Switch stop
 - 4. Coil
 - 5. Contact points
 - 6. Condenser
- B. Secondary system (high voltage)
 - 1. Spark plug
 - 2. High voltage wire

V. Components of a solid state ignition system (Transparency 4)

- A. Flywheel with magnets
- B. Trigger coil
- C. Resistor
- D. Transistorized rectifier (solid state switch)
- E. Diode rectifier
- F. Ignition coil
- G. Low voltage wire

(NOTE: The same secondary circuit components are used on the solid state ignition system that are used on the magneto ignition system.)

VI. Components of a breakerless ignition system (Transparency 5)

- A. Battery
- B. Flywheel
- C. Trigger module
- D. Ignition switch
- E. Alternator-stator

INFORMATION SHEET

- F. Ignition coil assembly
- G. Rectifier-regulator
- H. Low voltage wire
- I. Silicon rectifier (SCR)

(NOTE: The same secondary circuit components are used on the breakerless ignition system that are used on the magneto ignition system.)

VII. Purpose of the ignition system components

- A. Battery — Source of electrical power
- B. Ignition switch — Opens and closes the primary circuit from the battery or coil to the contact points
- C. Coil — Transforms low voltage into high voltage necessary to jump the spark plug gap
- D. Contact points — Make and break the primary circuit to allow the coil to produce high voltage at the spark plug
- E. Condenser — Stores extra current as the contact points open to prevent arcing and burning
- F. Breaker cam — Opens the contact points
- G. Diode rectifier — Changes alternating (AC) current to direct (DC) current
- H. Capacitor — Used in solid state ignition systems and operates like the condenser
- I. Trigger coil — Generates a small amount of current that is used to activate the current from the capacitor
- J. Resistor — Reduces voltage in the primary circuit to protect the contact points
- K. Spark plug — Provides a spark gap inside the engine cylinder to ignite the fuel-air mixture
- L. Low voltage wire — Carries low-voltage from the battery or armature to the primary side of the ignition coil

(NOTE: This is a wire with thin insulation.)

- M. High voltage wire — Carries high voltage from the secondary side of the coil to the spark plug

(NOTE: This is a heavily insulated wire.)

INFORMATION SHEET

VIII. Operation of the ignition systems (Transparencies 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, and 8)

A. Battery

1. With the ignition switch on and the contact points closed, low voltage current flows from the battery through the primary windings of the coil and through the contact points to ground
2. The flow of low voltage current through the primary windings of the coil causes a magnetic field buildup
3. As the contact points open, current attempts to continue to flow across the point surfaces; the condenser is attached to the points to absorb this flow of current to prevent arcing
4. Stopping the flow of current causes the magnetic field of the coil to collapse across the secondary coil windings, causing a high voltage surge
5. The high voltage surge is directed from the secondary windings of the coil through the distributor cap and rotor and on to the spark plug to ground

B. Magneto

1. With the ignition switch on or the contact points closed, low voltage current is induced by magnets through the primary windings of the coil and through the contact points to ground
2. The flow of low voltage current through the primary windings of the coil causes a magnetic field buildup
3. As the contact points open, current attempts to continue to flow across the point surfaces; the condenser is attached to the points to absorb this flow of current to prevent arcing
4. Stopping the flow of current causes the magnetic field of the coil to collapse across the secondary coil windings, causing a high voltage surge
5. The high voltage surge is directed from the secondary windings of the coil through the secondary wire on to the spark plug to ground

C. Solid state

1. With the ignition switch on, low voltage current from the flywheel magnet induces alternating current (AC) in charge coil

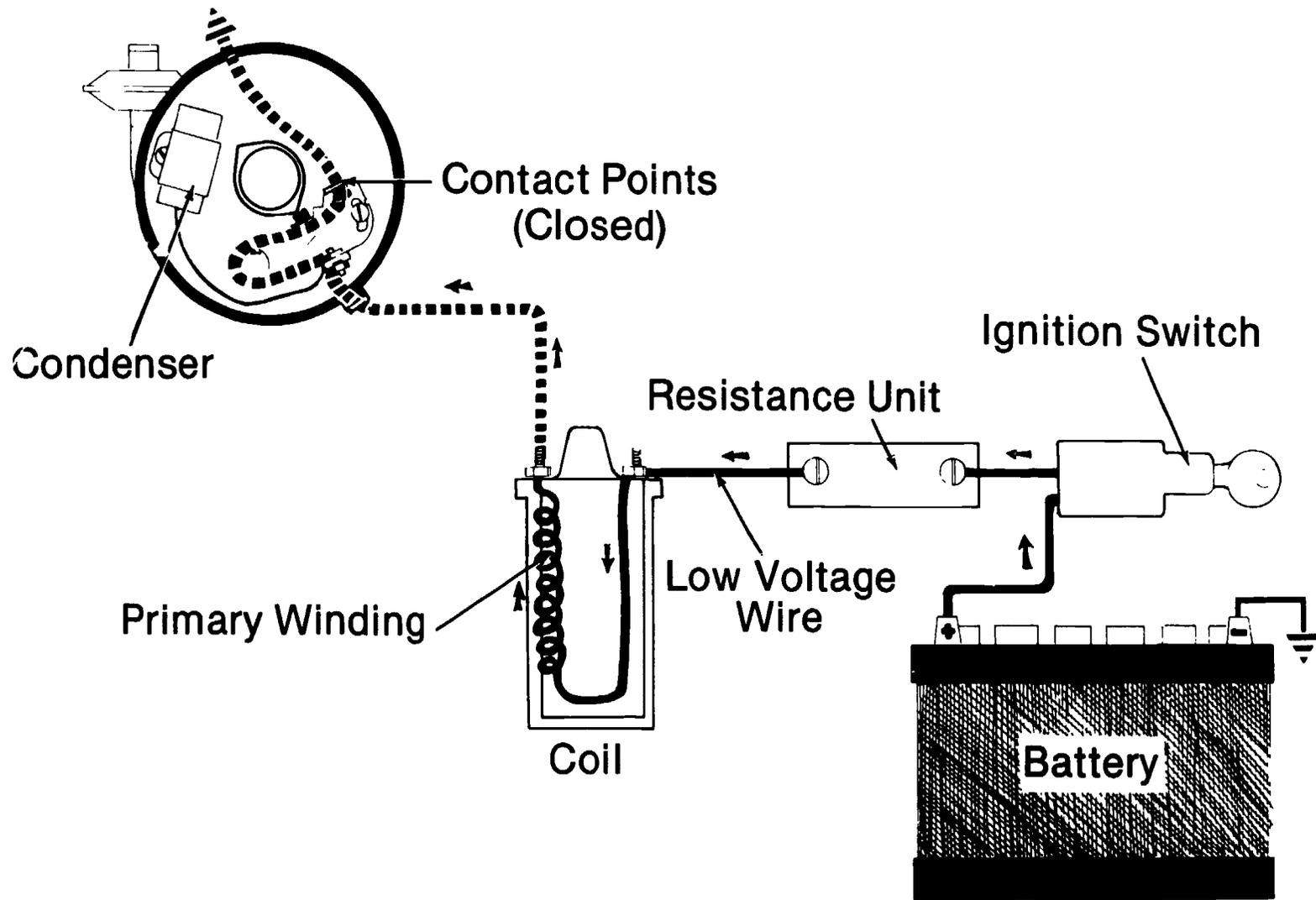
INFORMATION SHEET

2. The AC current passes through a rectifier and changes to direct current (DC), which travels to the capacitor (condenser) where it is stored
3. The flywheel magnets pass the trigger coil and induce a small electrical charge, which turns on the silicon controlled rectifier (SCR)

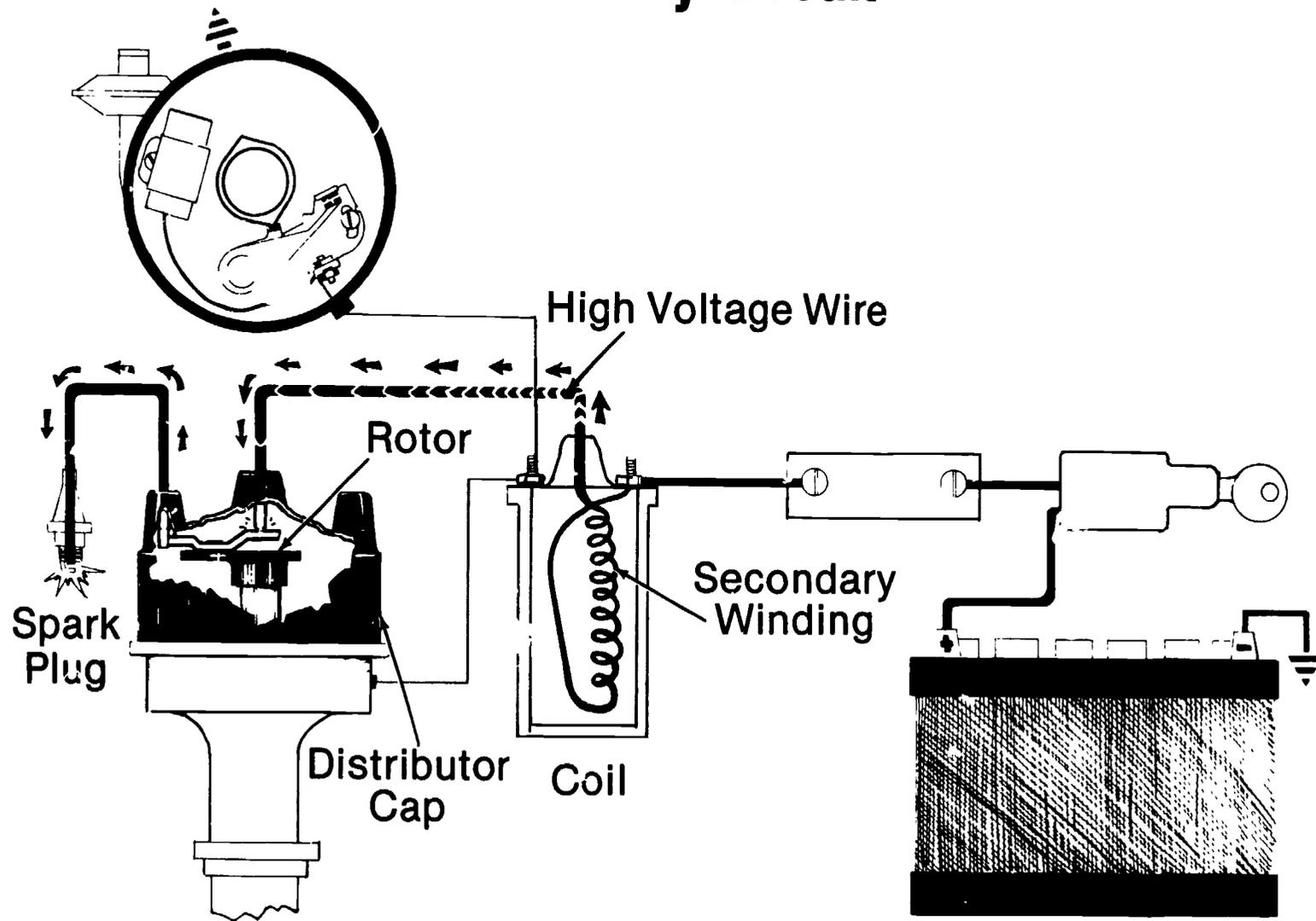
(NOTE: This completes the circuit from the charged side of the high tension coil to the negative side of the capacitor.)

4. The instantaneous discharge of energy induces a very high density magnetic field around the primary winding of the coil, which cuts the secondary winding and thus creates sufficient energy to fire the spark plug

Primary Circuit



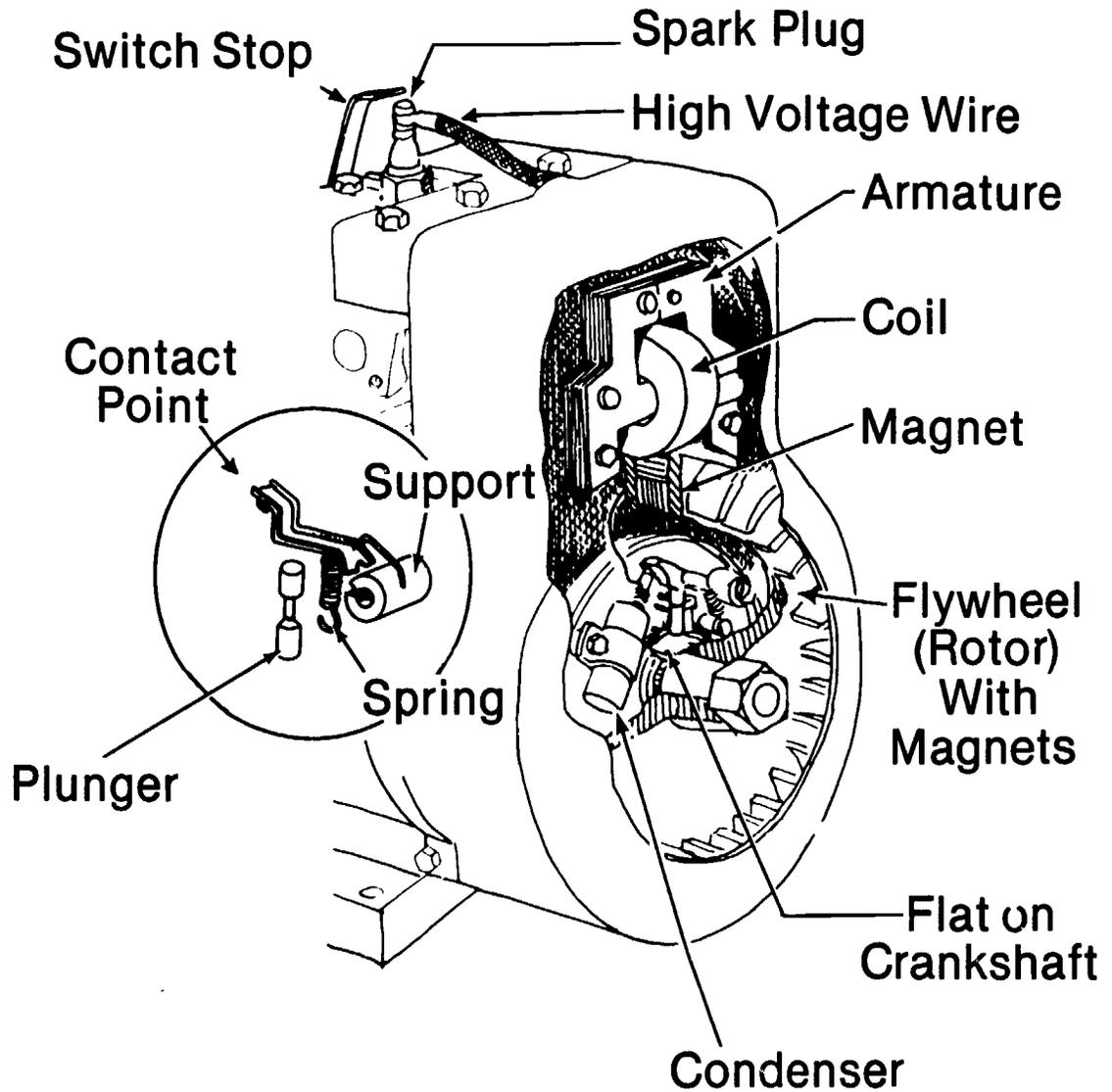
Secondary Circuit



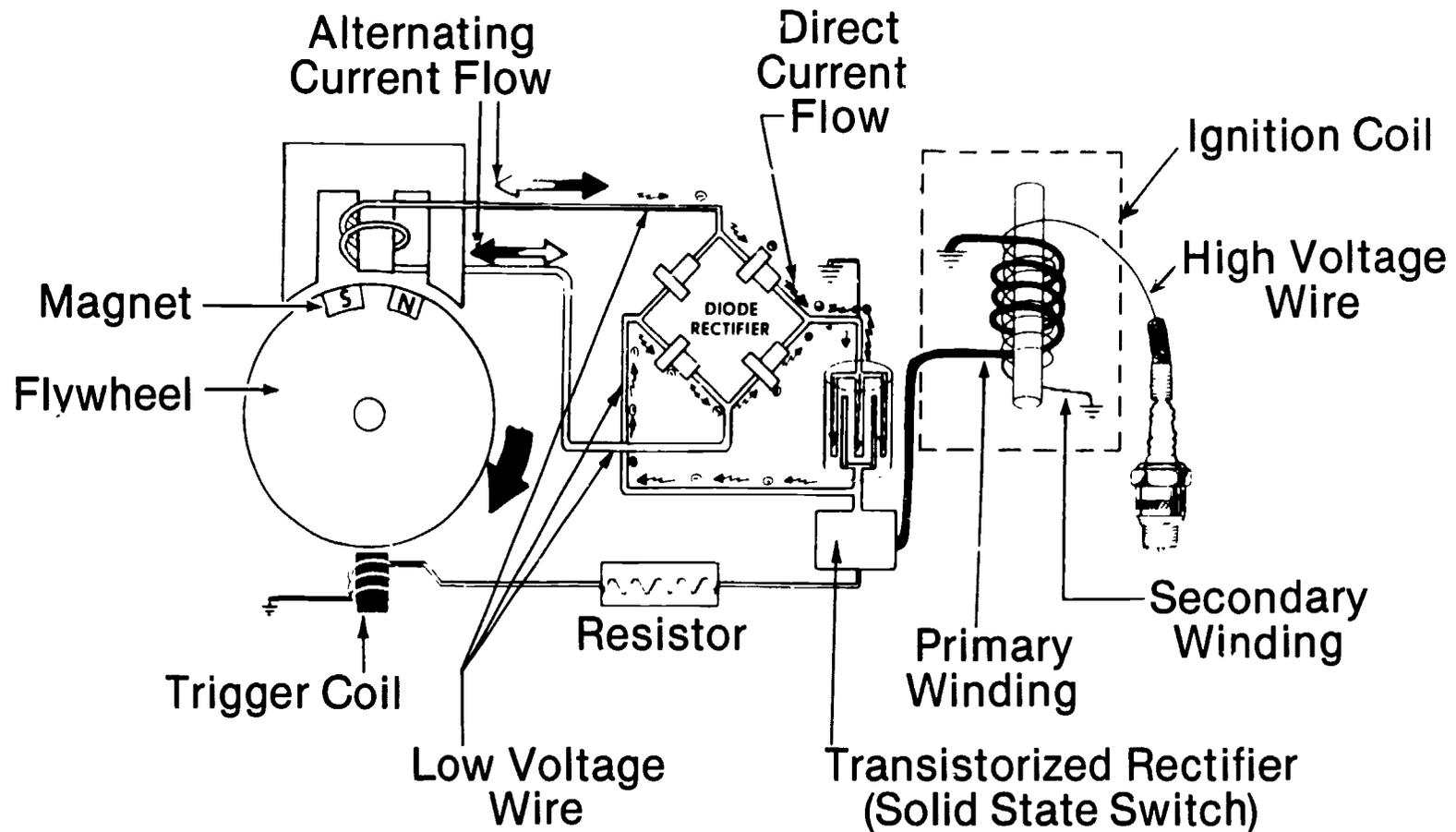
341

342

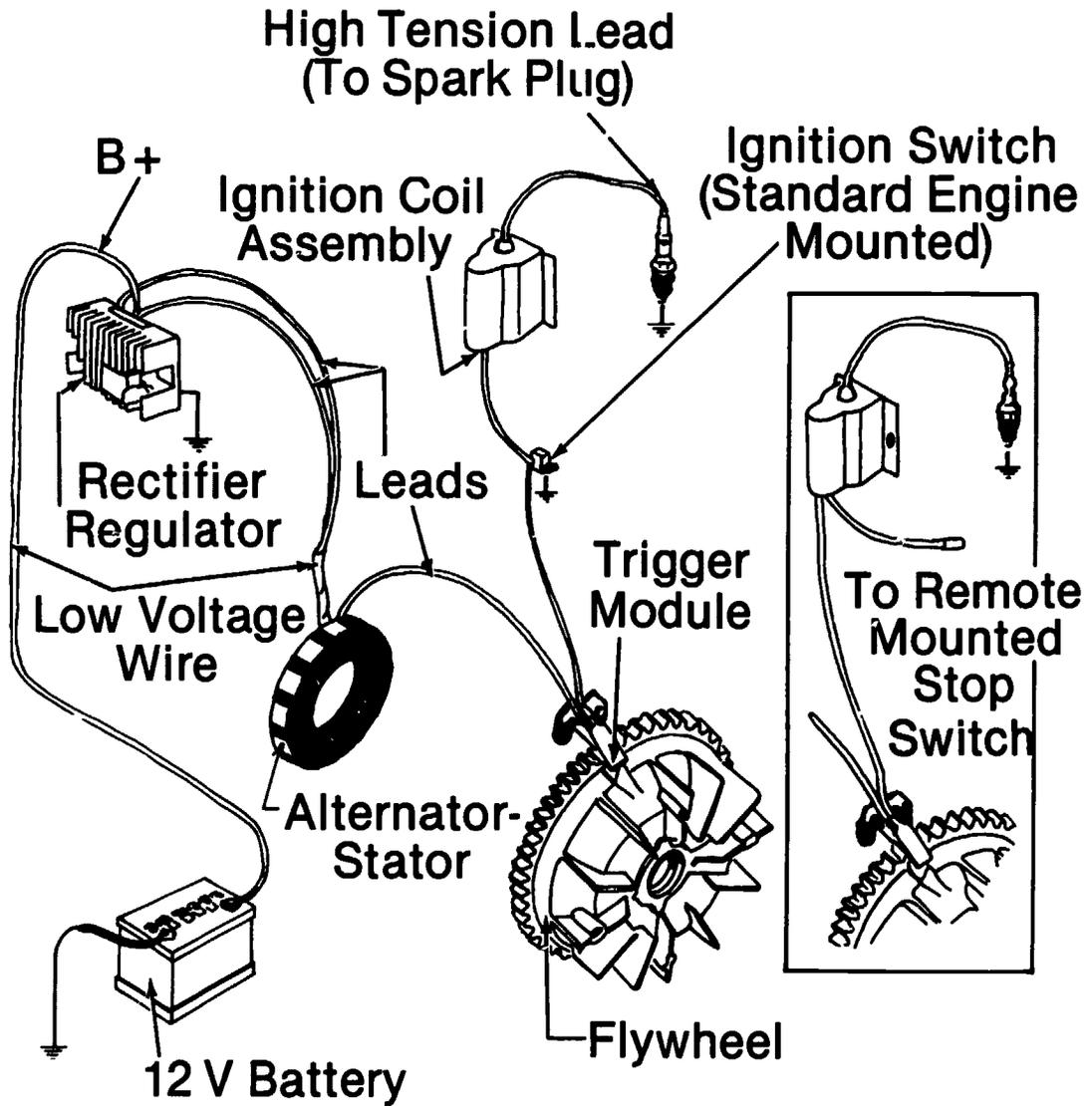
Magneto Ignition System



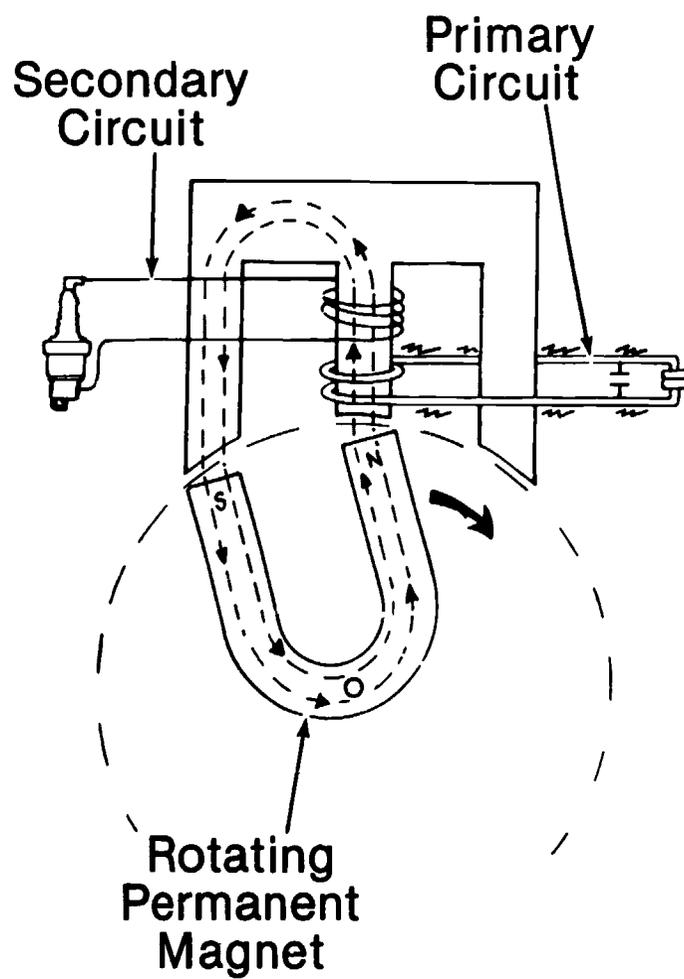
Solid State Ignition System



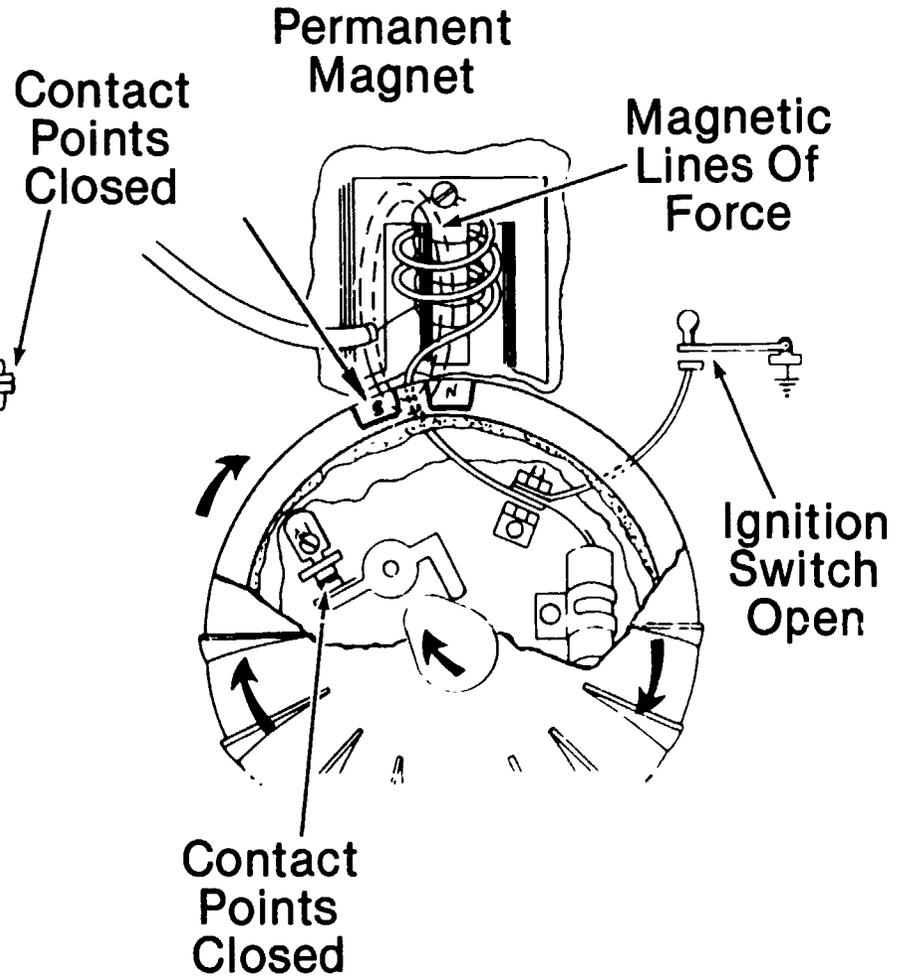
Breakerless Ignition System



Principles of a Magneto



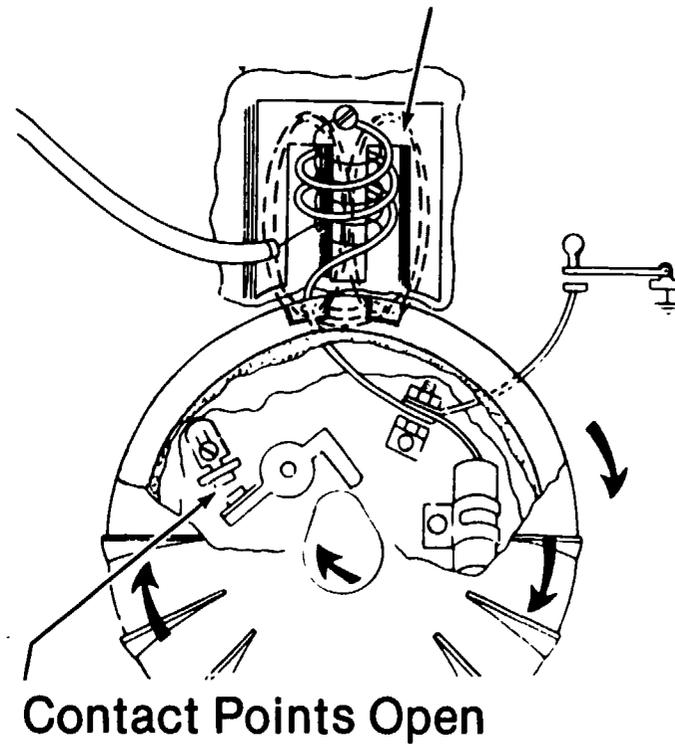
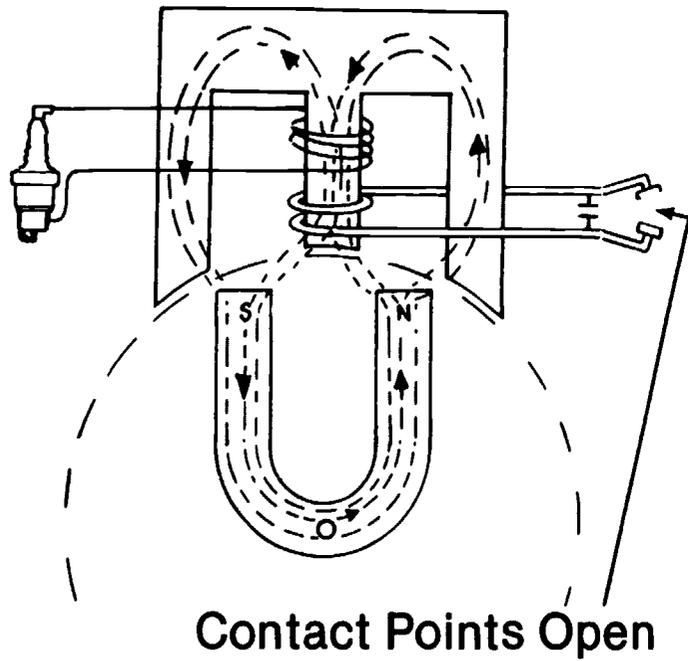
347



348

Principles of a Magneto

(Continued)

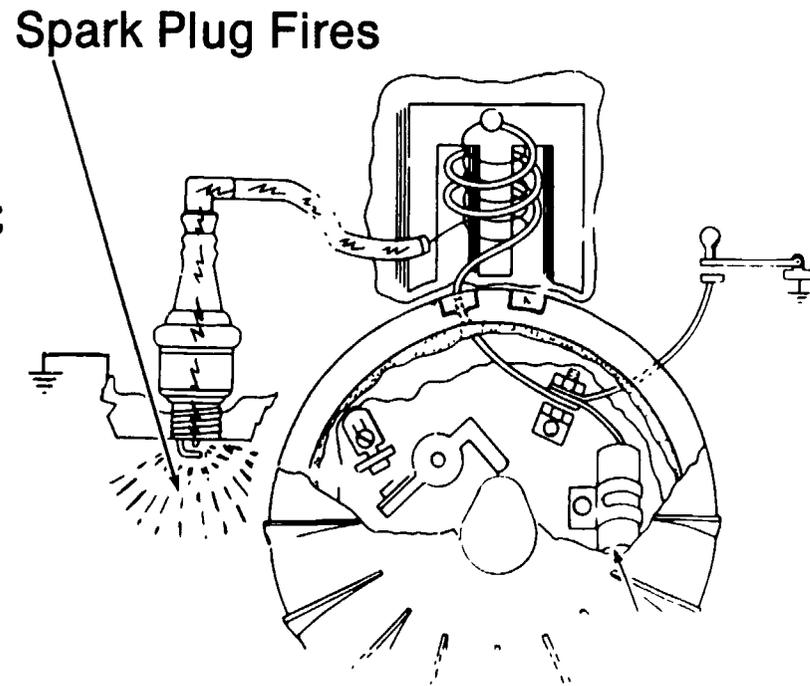
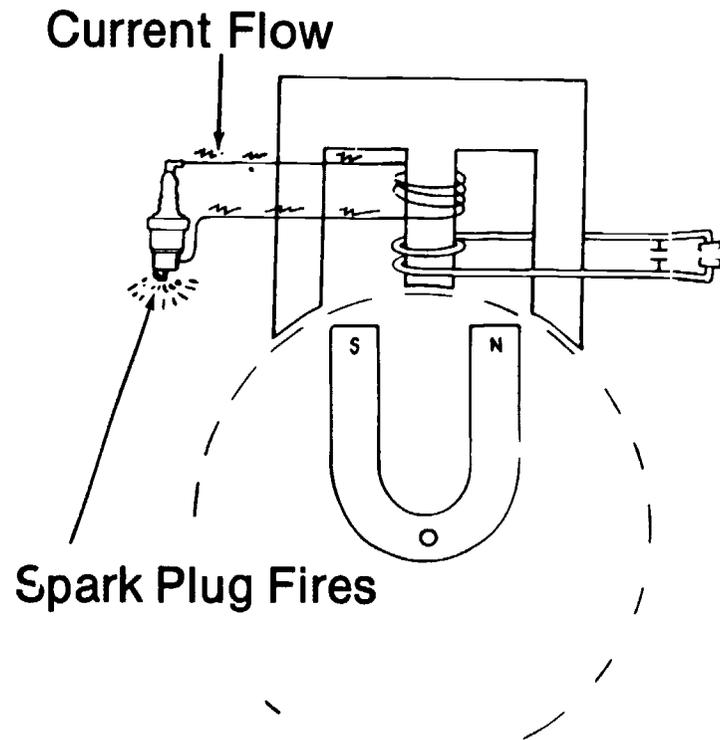


349

350

Principles of a Magneto

(Continued)



IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

JOB SHEET #1 — REMOVE, SERVICE, AND REPLACE SPARK PLUGS

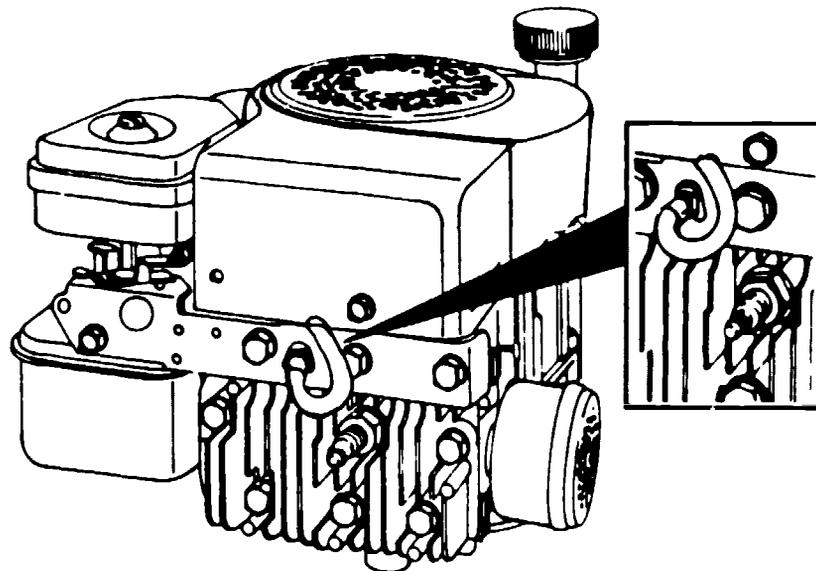
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Wire feeler gauge
3. Ignition file
4. Wire brush
5. Spark tester
6. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Clean around spark plug by blowing out dirt with compressed air
2. Secure engine to be serviced and disconnect spark plug wire; secure the wire in the V-notch above the spark plug or tape the wire in place on older models (Figure 1)

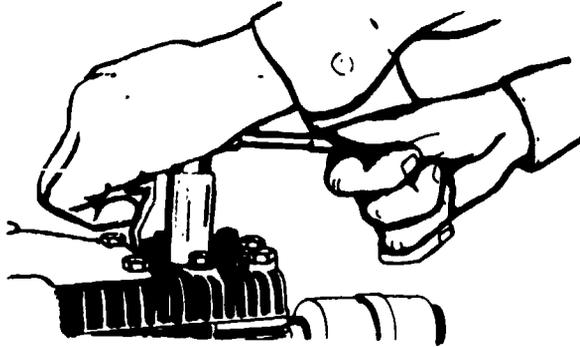
FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #1

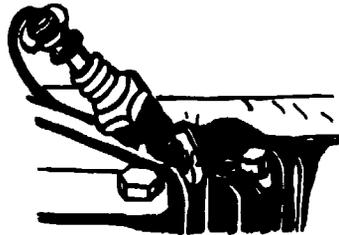
3. Loosen the spark plug one turn and blow any trapped dirt out with compressed air; remove spark plug (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



4. Reconnect spark plug wire
5. Ground spark plug to engine (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



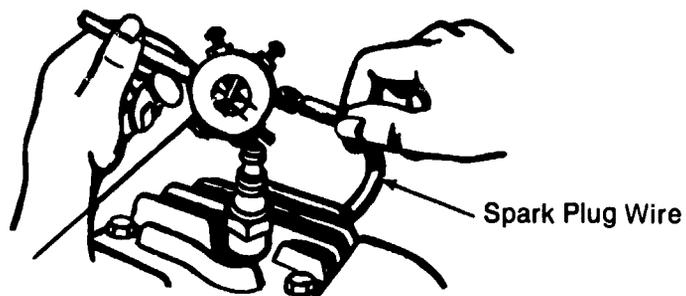
6. Crank engine one or two turns
7. Observe spark at the electrode
(NOTE: If there is no spark or the spark is weak, proceed to next step.)
8. Disconnect the spark plug wire from the spark plug

JOB SHEET #1

9. Use spark tester to check ignition (Figure 4)

(NOTE: Do not hold end of spark plug wire within $\frac{1}{4}$ inch from the cylinder head.)

FIGURE 4



10. Crank the engine one or two turns

11. Observe the spark

(NOTE: If spark jumps gap on tester, the ignition system is okay; the trouble is in the spark plug.)

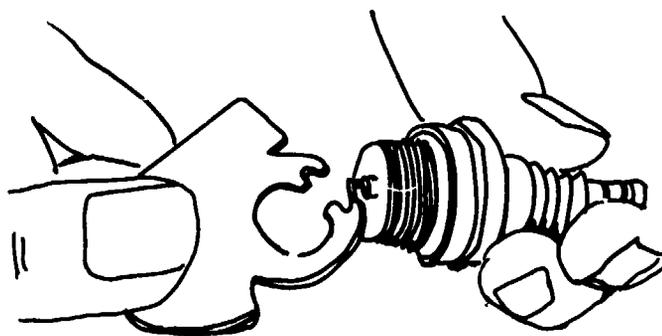
12. Service the spark plug

- a. Clean threads with a wire brush

(NOTE: Using a spark plug cleaning machine is not recommended because this will void small engine warranties.)

- b. With a gap setter, bend the ground electrode away from the central electrode just enough to allow the ignition file to fit between the two electrodes (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5

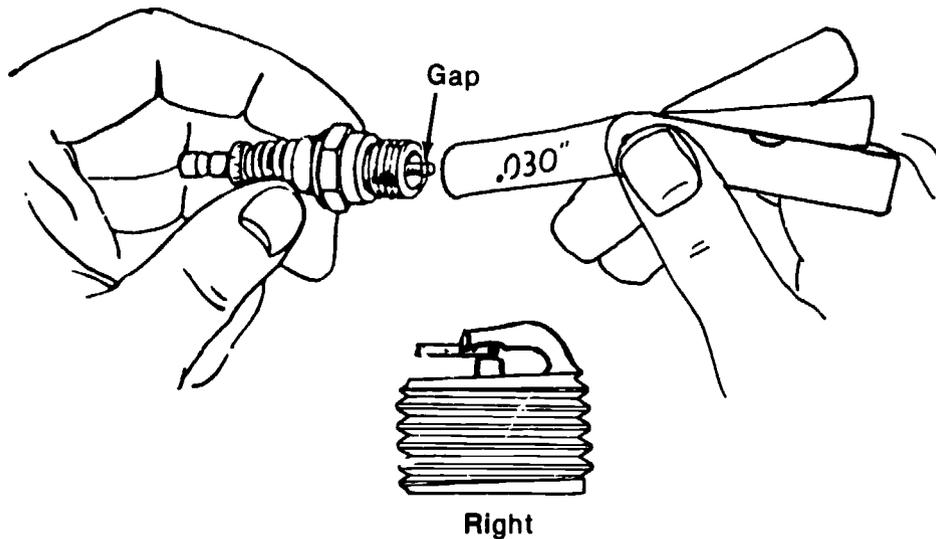


JOB SHEET #1

- c. Using the ignition file, file the ground and central electrode until both have flat, shiny surfaces
- d. Bend the ground electrode back into its original position; gap plugs to manufacturer's specifications

(NOTE: Use a wire gauge and bend only the ground electrode (Figure 6))

FIGURE 6



13. Install spark plug **by hand** until seated snugly then tighten

(NOTE: Use caution when starting the spark plug to avoid cross threading.)

14. Torque the spark plug to manufacturer's recommendations
15. Replace the spark plug wire
16. Have instructor evaluate work
17. Clean work area and return tools to proper location

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

JOB SHEET #2 — REMOVE AND REPLACE CONTACT POINTS AND CONDENSER

A. Tools and materials

1. Flywheel removal tools
2. Ignition tools and wrenches
3. Feeler gauge set .010 — .025
4. Screwdrivers
5. Cam lubricant
6. Shop towels
7. Electrical cleaner
8. Hand tool assortment
9. Safety glasses

B. Procedure (Removal) — Applies to Briggs and Stratton only

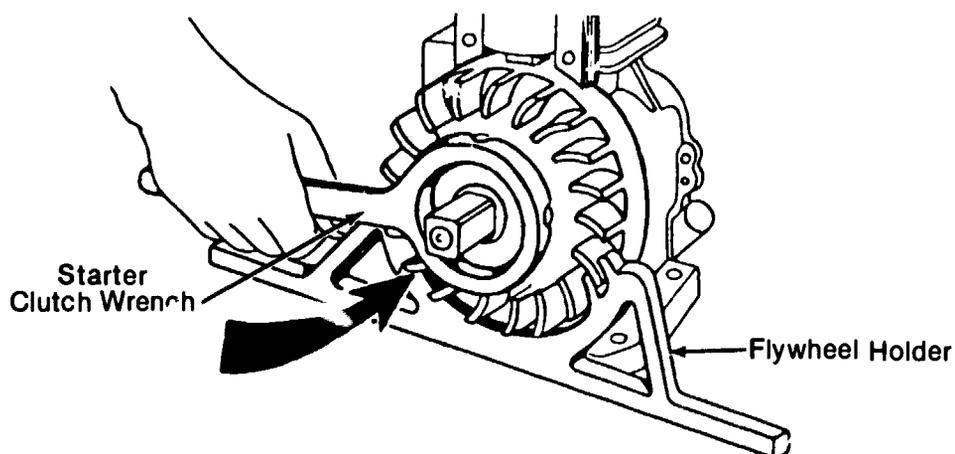
1. Find location of points and condenser

(NOTE: On most engines this will be under the flywheel. Some will be located externally on the side of the block.)

2. Remove engine shroud and any parts necessary to get at the flywheel
3. Remove flywheel

(NOTE: Check for left-hand threads on crankshaft; use special flywheel removal tools as required. See Figures 1, 2, and 3.)

FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #2

FIGURE 2

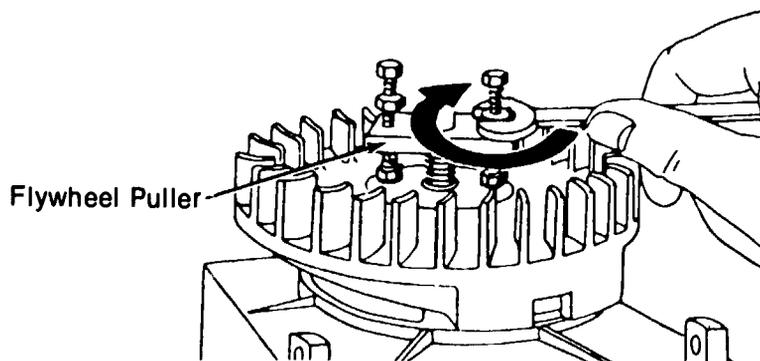
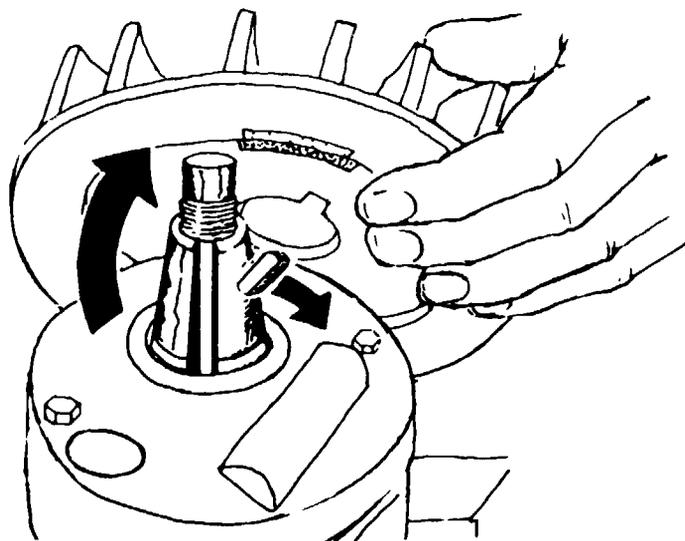


FIGURE 3



4. Inspect flywheel and key

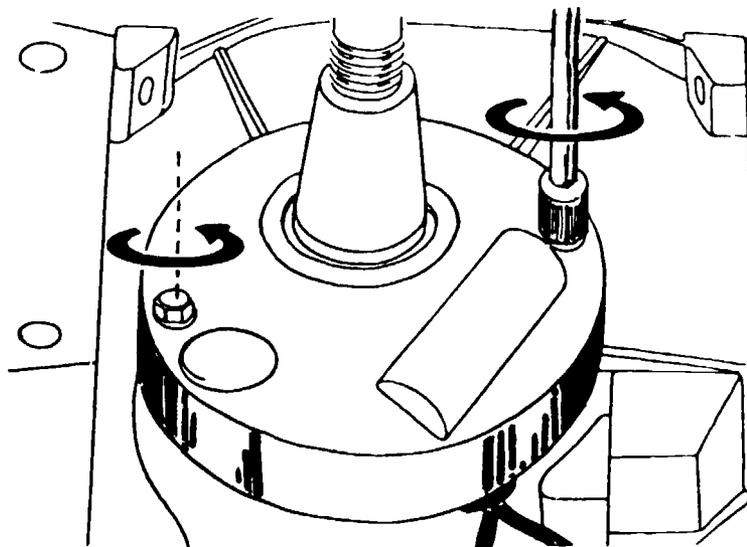
(NOTE: Check condition of flywheel keyway and magnet. If the magnet is rusty, clean with emery cloth and cleaner brush. Check key closely for damage. If damaged, replace with new key.)

JOB SHEET #2

5. Remove breaker point dust cover (Figure 4)

(NOTE: Some covers have a sealer at the point where the wires enter. Save this for reuse.)

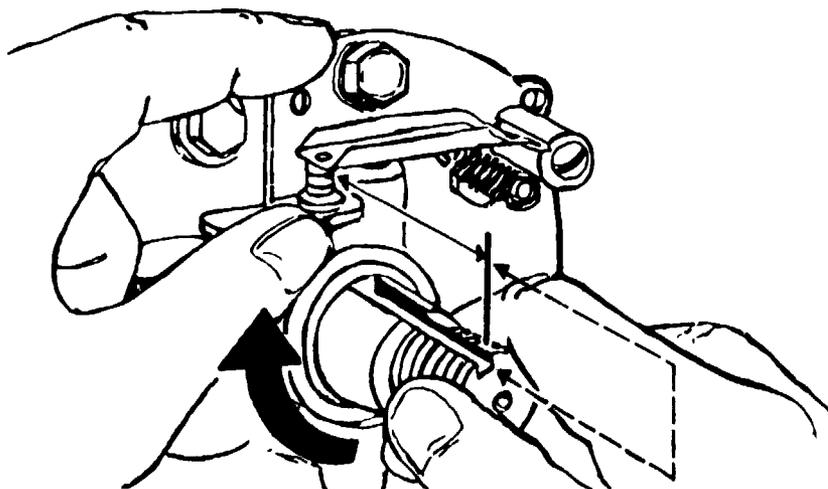
FIGURE 4



6. Determine location and condition of all wires, screws, and breaker cam (Figure 5)

(NOTE: Turn crankshaft clockwise with your hand until keyway is in line with the breaker plunger. At this point cam is at its highest position.)

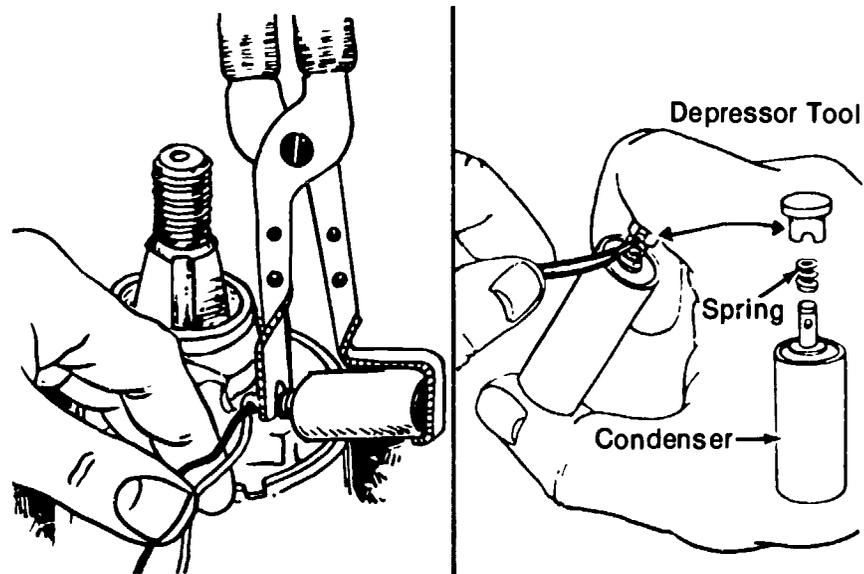
FIGURE 5



JOB SHEET #2

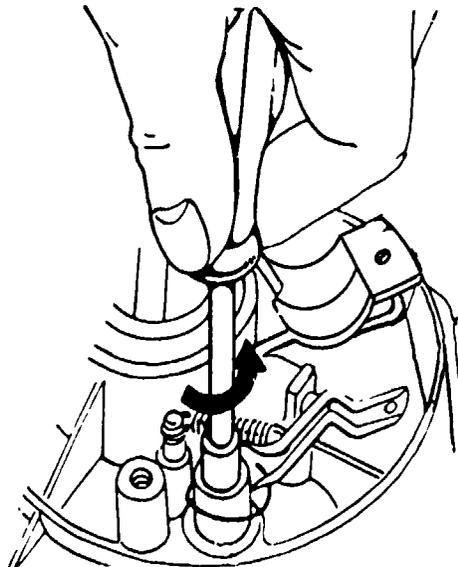
7. Remove screw holding condenser in place; using the depressor tool, disconnect contact point primary lead and ground wire (Figure 6)

FIGURE 6



8. Loosen mounting bolt and remove the movable contact point (Figure 7)

FIGURE 7

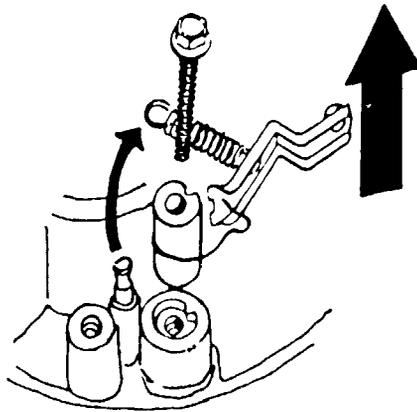


(NOTE: When mounting bolt is loosened, the contact point loses its tension.)

JOB SHEET #2

9. Lift spring from post and remove mounting bolt, contact point, mounting post, and spring (Figure 8)

FIGURE 8

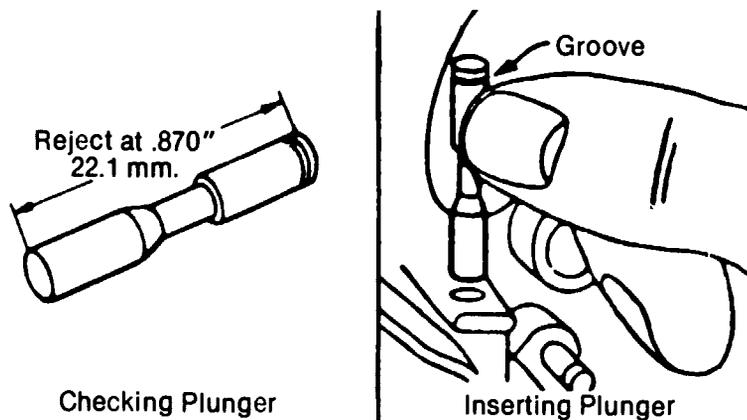


(NOTE: Keep the mounting bolt. Always replace old contact points with a new set.)

10. Inspect the breaker point plunger

(CAUTION: The plunger must be inserted with groove at the top when installed or oil will enter the breaker box [see Figure 9].)

FIGURE 9



11. Clean the point and condenser area with an approved electrical cleaner

(NOTE: Check the oil seal located in the point area to be sure it is not leaking oil onto the points.)

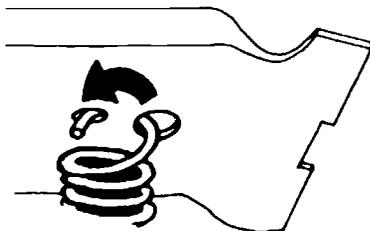
12. Lubricate the breaker cam with a light coating of cam lubricant

JOB SHEET #2

C. Procedure (Reassembly) — Applies to Briggs and Stratton only

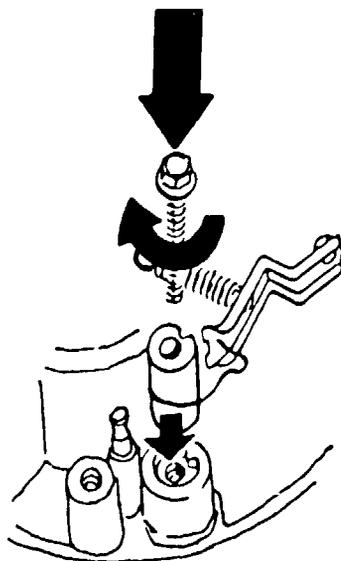
1. Install new movable contact point; hook open loop of spring through large hole then through small hole (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



2. Place mounting bolt into post and tighten (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2

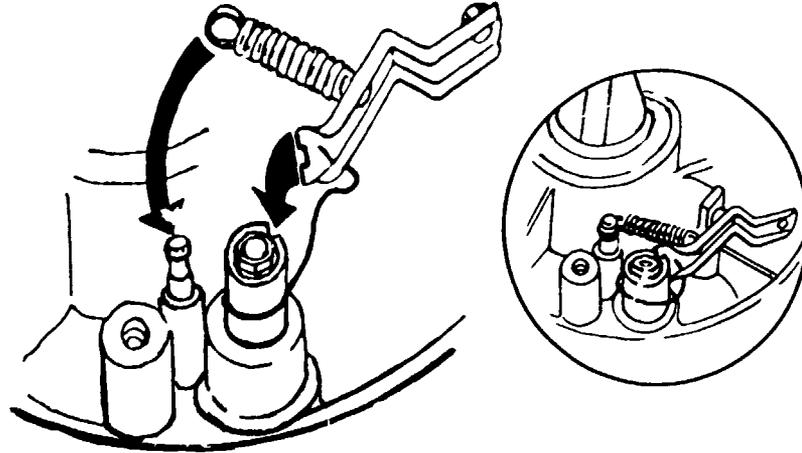


(NOTE: Handle movable point carefully to prevent breaking wire connection to post.)

JOB SHEET #2

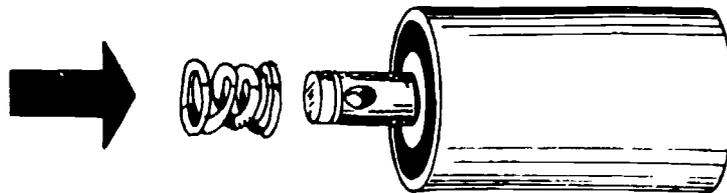
- Fit end of contact point arm into groove in mounting post; hook closed loop of spring onto the small post (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



- Place spring on condenser and hold it in place (Figure 4)

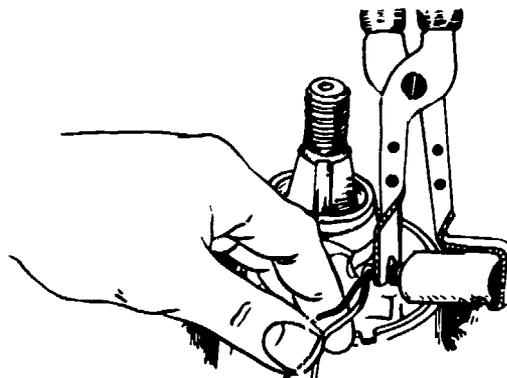
FIGURE 4



(NOTE: Flatten wire ends around fixed point.)

- Compress spring and slip the two wires into the hole on condenser (Figure 5)

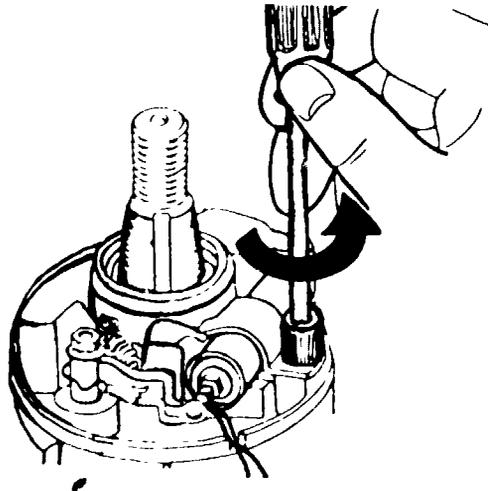
FIGURE 5



JOB SHEET #2

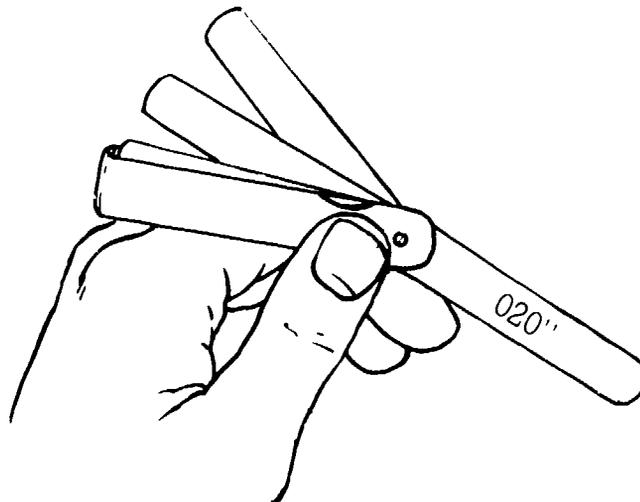
6. Install new condenser and clamp in place; tighten the clamp bolt (Figure 6)

FIGURE 6



7. Select correct size feeler gauge (Figure 7)

FIGURE 7



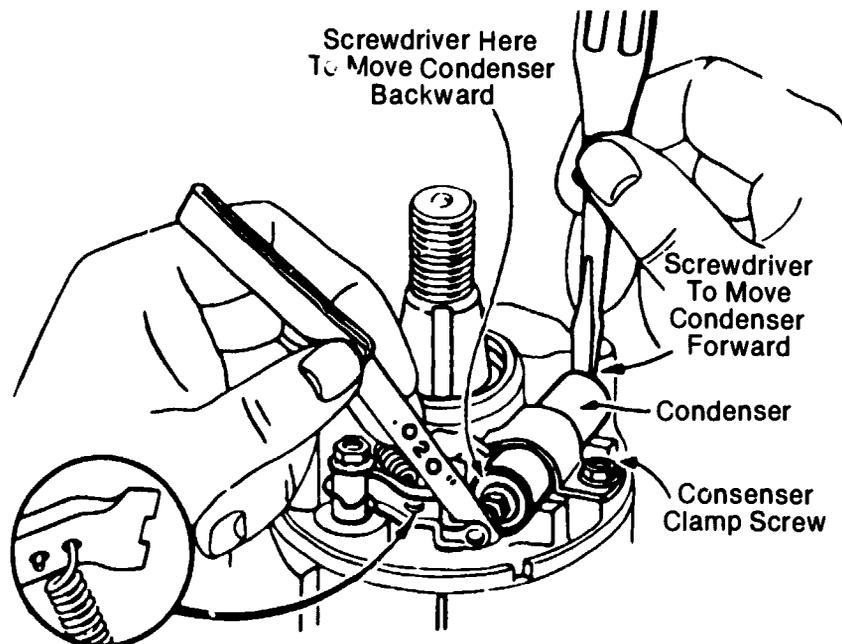
(NOTE: Make sure the crankshaft keyway is lined up with the breaker plunger.)

JOB SHEET #2

8. Tighten the condenser clamp; place feeler gauge between contact points, push condenser forward with a screwdriver, and set the points at .020 (Figure 8)

(NOTE: Make sure condenser clamp is secured. The condenser should move back and forth to properly set points.)

FIGURE 8



9. Make sure the two contact points fit squarely together and not at an angle; adjust the movable contact point, if necessary (Figure 9)

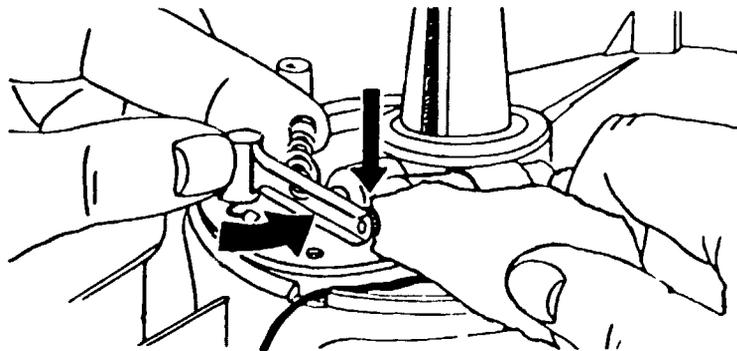
FIGURE 9



JOB SHEET #2

10. Open the points and place a piece of paper between the points; close the points with paper still between them as this removes any grease on the points (Figure 10)

FIGURE 10

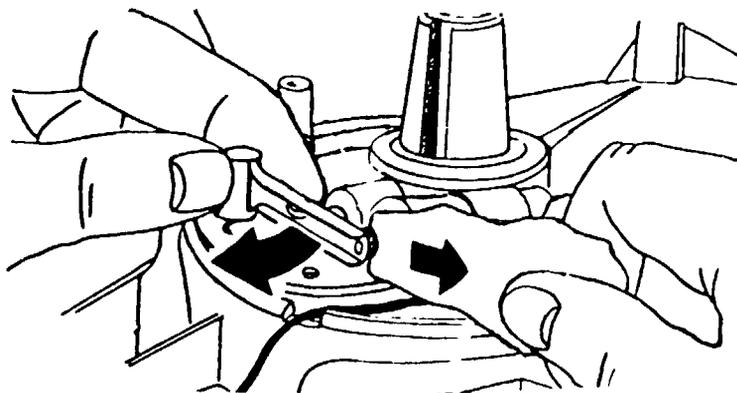


(NOTE: Use a nonfibrous paper.)

11. Open points and remove the paper (Figure 11)

(CAUTION: Always open points when removing paper.)

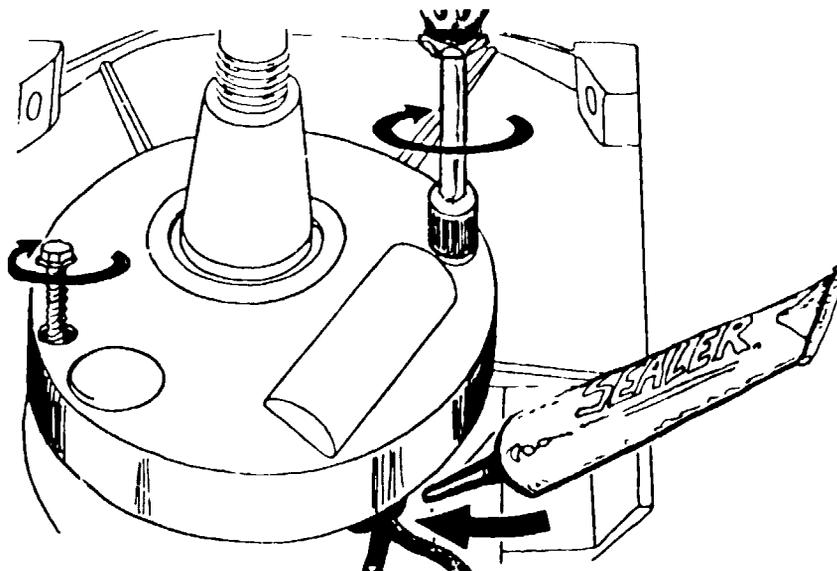
FIGURE 11



JOB SHEET #2

12. Place sealer around wiring; replace dust cover and bolts on the points and condenser (Figure 12)

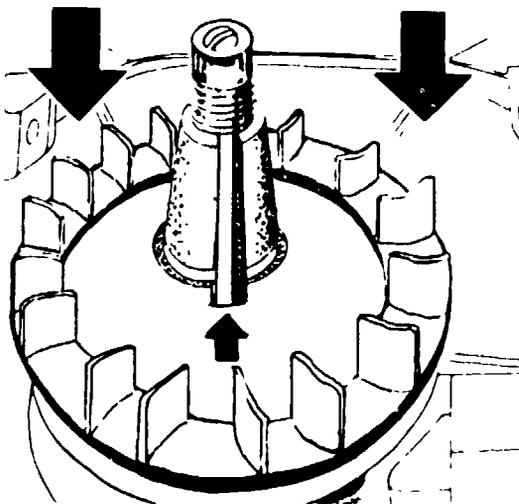
FIGURE 12



(NOTE: Do not overtighten the bolts because they will strip easily.)

13. Place flywheel on crankshaft and line up the keyway (Figure 13)

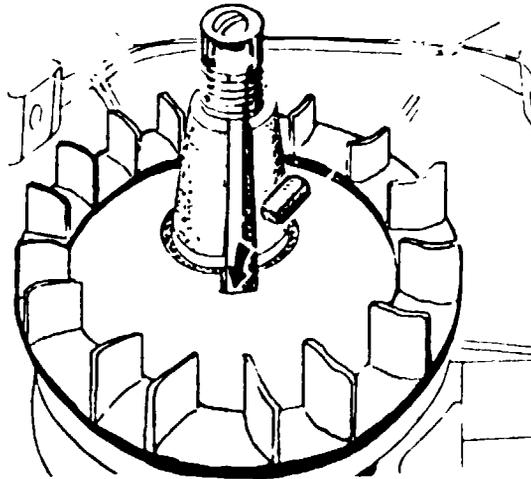
FIGURE 13



JOB SHEET #2

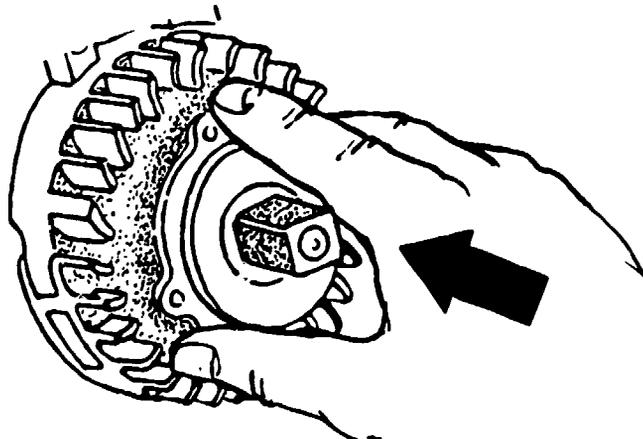
14. Place flywheel key in keyway (Figure 14)

FIGURE 14



15. Place starter clutch onto crankshaft (Figure 15)

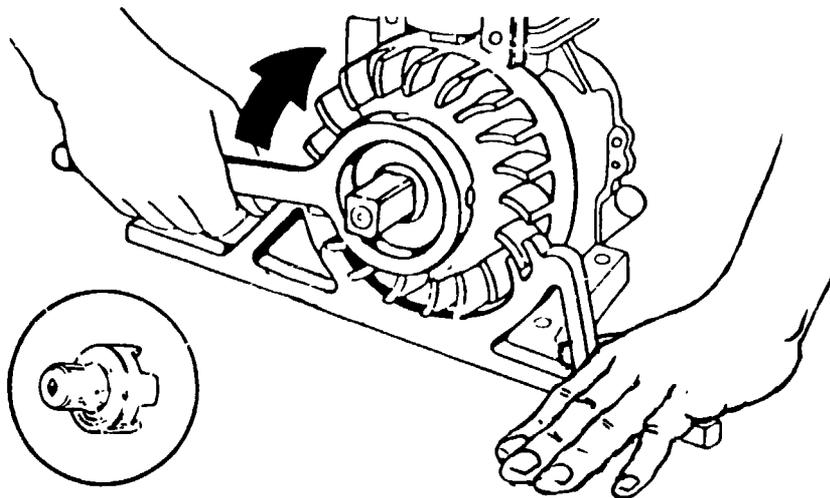
FIGURE 15



JOB SHEET #2

16. Place flywheel holder on flywheel and starter clutch wrench on starter clutch; while holding the flywheel holder, tighten starter clutch (Figure 16)

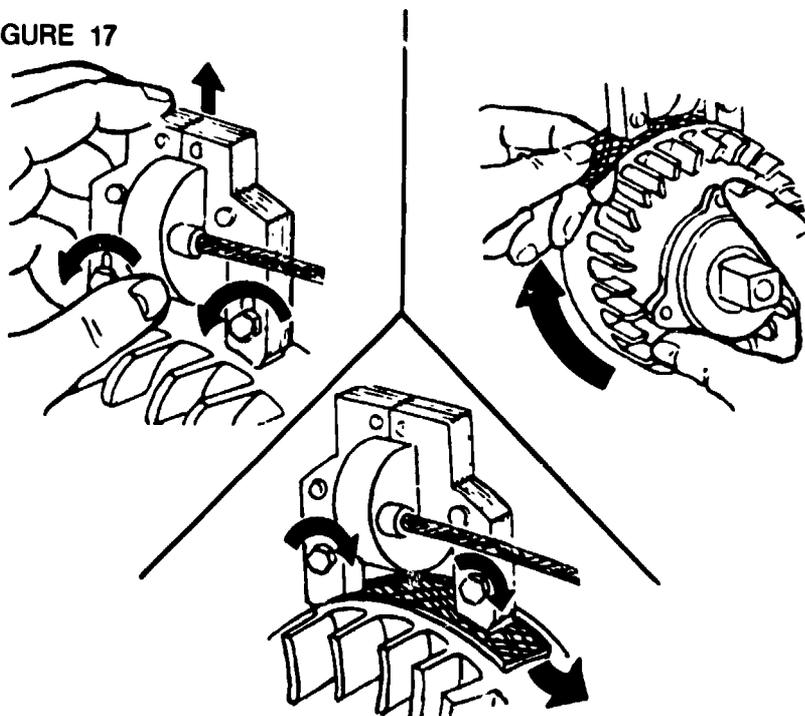
FIGURE 16



(NOTE: Torque flywheel to 55 ft.-lbs. using starter clutch wrench with $\frac{1}{2}$ " drive torque wrench.)

17. Check air gap by loosening the two armature bolts, inserting .010 shim stock between flywheel and armature, and rotating the flywheel until magnets pull armature down to shim stock; tighten armature bolts and remove shim stock (Figure 17)

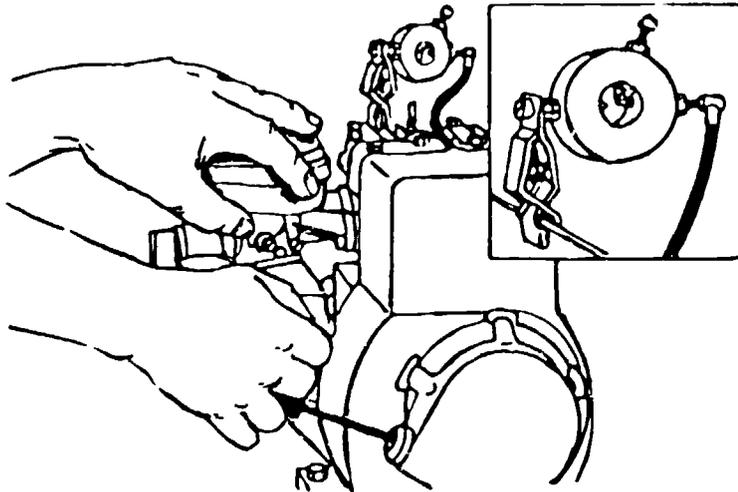
FIGURE 17



JOB SHEET #2

18. Attach flywheel screen over starter clutch
19. Replace flywheel shroud and tighten the bolts
20. Check out ignition (Figure 18)

FIGURE 18



(NOTE: Spark should be a bright blue and jump the .166" tester gap.)

21. Reconnect the spark plug wire
22. Have instructor evaluate work
23. Clean work area and return tools to their proper places

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

JOB SHEET #3 — TEST THE COIL, CONDENSER, ARMATURE, AND FLYWHEEL MAGNETS

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Ignition analyzer
3. Small thin cardboard (post card)
4. Electrical system cleaner
5. Shop towels
6. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Remove all parts necessary to get at coil and armature
2. Determine correct location of coil and armature

(NOTE: If there are not locating marks (arrows, dots, etc.) to accurately locate coil or armature, mark it and the engine block before removing. Use a small center punch or chisel to mark with.)

3. Remove coil and armature

(NOTE: It is possible to test the coil and armature without removing it from the engine.)

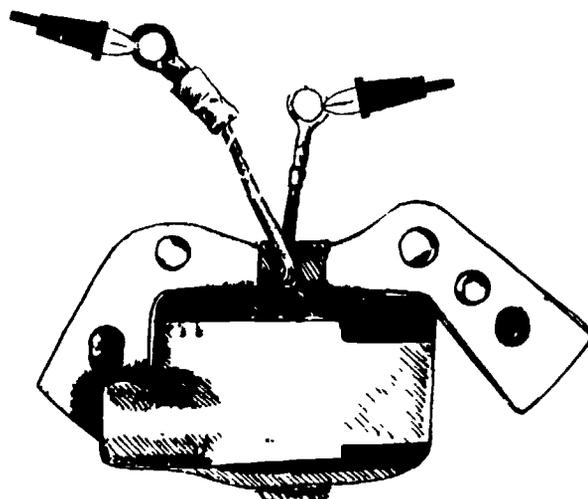
JOB SHEET #3

4. Test coil and armature

a. Test primary resistance

- 1) Following instructions for tester, connect leads (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



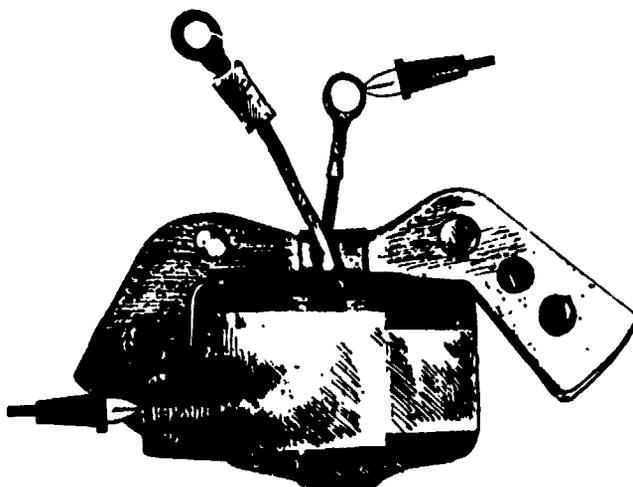
- 2) Read ohmmeter

(NOTE: Reading must be of value shown on engine specification sheet.)

b. Test continuity

- 1) Following instructions for tester, connect leads (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



JOB SHEET #3

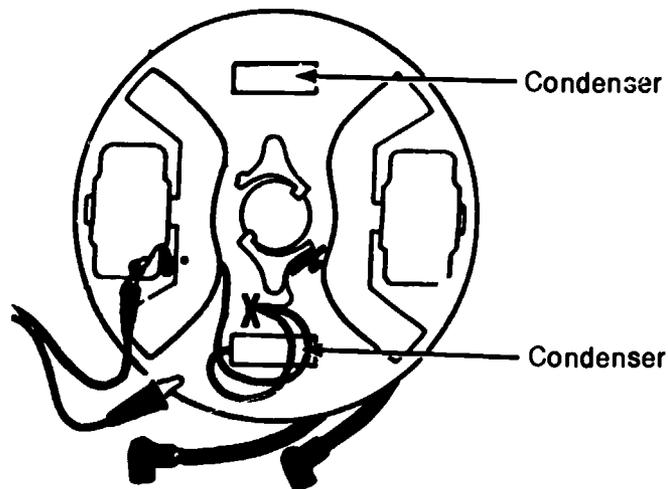
- 2) Read ohmmeter

(NOTE: Shorted windings are indicated by a lower than specified value. A broken winding is indicated by readings higher than the specified value.)

- c. Test coil ground

- 1) Following instructions for tester, connect leads (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



- 2) Read ohmmeter

(NOTE: Coils not permanently grounded should not indicate any pointer movement when tested. Coils permanently grounded must show a full deflection of the meter needle to the right of the scale.)

- d. Test power

- 1) Following instructions for tester, properly connect test leads
 2) Advance current control knob until specified operating amperage is reached on scale

(NOTE: If there is not spark or it is faint or intermittent, the coil is bad.)

- c. If the coil fails any of the tests, replace it with a new coil

JOB SHEET #3

5. Replace all defective parts

6. Test flywheel magnets

(NOTE: Hold a screwdriver one inch from the magnet. It should be strongly attracted to the magnet. Most magnets are damaged by dropping the flywheel, or storing flywheels nested in one another.)

7. Replace bad magnets

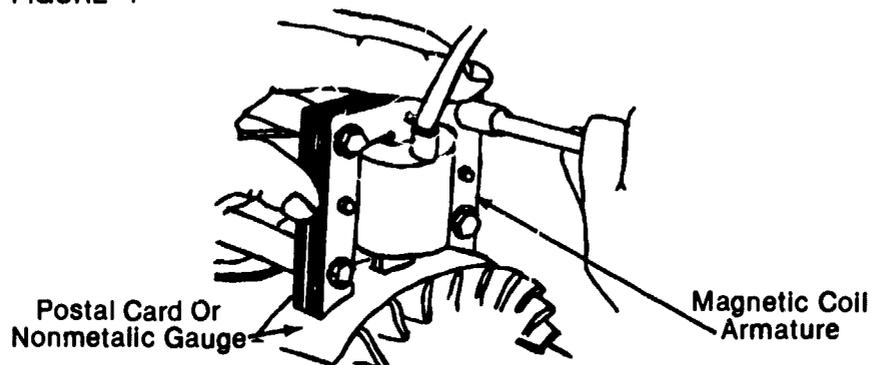
(NOTE: Usually the whole flywheel must be replaced.)

8. Install coil and armature in correct position

(NOTE: Do not overtighten mounting screws because these threads are easy to strip.)

9. Follow manufacturer's specifications for clearances, adjustments, and torque setting (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4



10. Install all other parts on engine
11. Start engine and adjust to recommended specifications
12. Have instructor evaluate work
13. Clean up work area and return tools to proper location

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

JOB SHEET #4 — TEST AND ADJUST A SOLID STATE IGNITION SYSTEM

A. Tools and materials needed

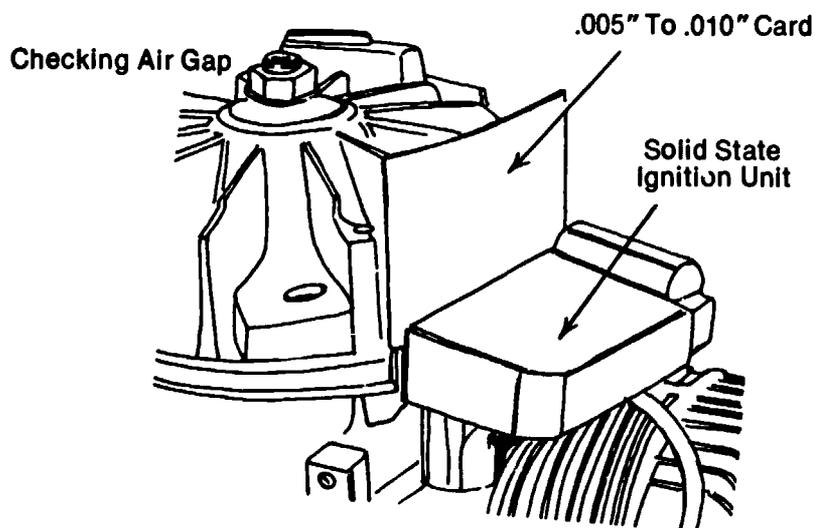
1. Hand tool assortment
2. Set flat feeler gauge .005 — .010
3. Ohmmeter
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Remove shroud covering flywheel
2. Check air gap at trigger assembly and projection on the flywheel; set about .010 ($\pm .005$) Figure 1)

(NOTE: .010 will give the fastest starting. Be sure flat surfaces on trigger and projection are parallel to each other.)

FIGURE 1



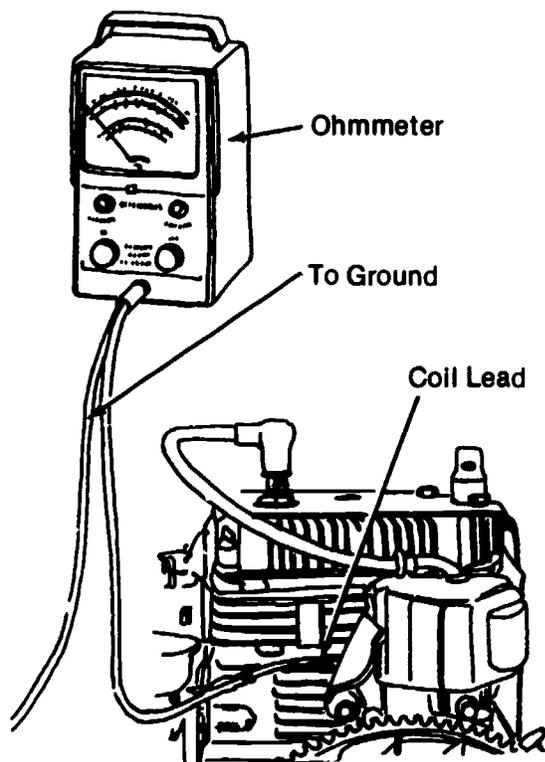
3. Retighten cap screws after gap is readjusted
4. Remove high tension lead from terminal on coil

JOB SHEET #4

5. Insert one ohmmeter lead in coil terminal and the other to the coil mounting bracket (Figure 2)

(NOTE: Consult appropriate service manual for exact resistance.)

FIGURE 2



6. Connect one tester lead to the coil mounting bracket and the other to the ignition switch wire
(NOTE: Continuity should *not* be indicated here.)
7. Replace ignition coil assembly if wrong or widely varying results are obtained from either of these tests

JOB SHEET #4

8. Test the trigger module
 - a. Connect one tester lead to the AC inlet lead on trigger module and other to lead on trigger side of ignition switch

(NOTE: This should show continuity in one direction but not the other; reverse leads to check this.)
 - b. Connect one tester lead to the trigger module mounting bracket and the other to the AC inlet lead to the module

(NOTE: Continuity should be indicated in one direction but not the opposite; reverse leads to check this.)
 - c. Disconnect leads and remove trigger from the engine
 - d. Test with a flashlight type tester
 - 1) Connect one lead to the 1 terminal and the other to the trigger mounting bracket
 - 2) Lightly tap magnet with a metal object

(NOTE: Light should come on and stay on until magnet is tapped again; this indicates that the SCR is operating properly.)
 - e. Reinstall trigger
 - f. Reset the air gap

(NOTE: Replace the trigger module if wrong results are obtained from any of these tests.)
9. If ignition trouble persists after the system checks out in each of the preceding tests, the AC leads or ignition windings are probably faulty; replace stator assembly in this event
10. Have instructor evaluate work
11. Clean up work area and return tools to proper location

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

JOB SHEET #5 — PERFORM A COIL POWER TEST

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Ignition analyzer

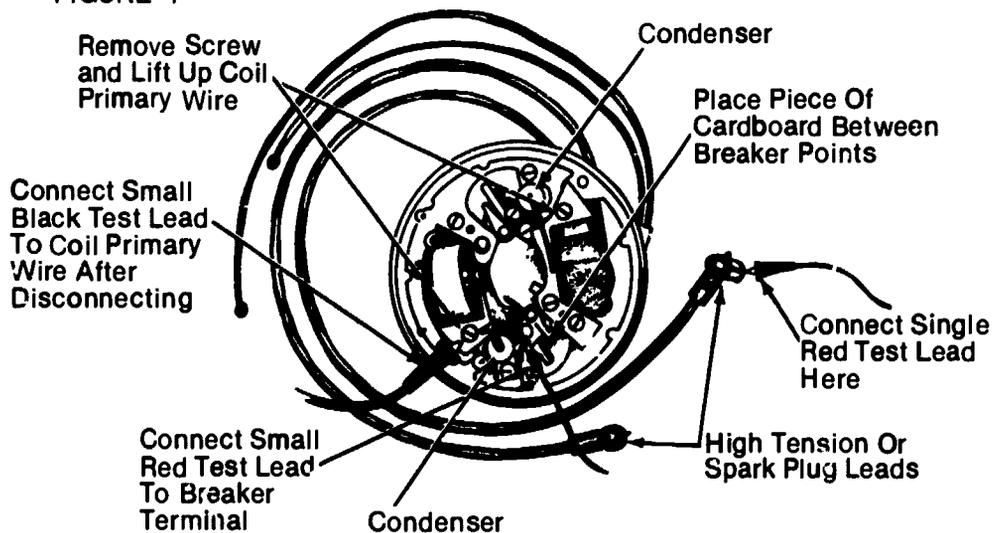
(NOTE: The Merc-O-Tronic Ignition Analyzer is used in this job sheet.)

3. Safety glasses
4. Shop towels

B. Procedure

1. Remove all parts necessary to get at ignition system (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



2. Read operator's manual and determine correct location of ignition parts and how to make proper connections for coil power test

(NOTE: It is not necessary to remove magneto assembly from engine or parts from stator plate assembly.)

3. Place a piece of cardboard between breaker points to insulate (Figure 1)

JOB SHEET #5

4. Connect small black test lead to coil primary ground wire (Figure 1)
5. Connect small red test lead to coil primary lead or breaker point assembly terminal (Figure 1)
6. Connect single red test lead to terminal spark plug wire (Figure 1)
7. Turn the current control knob to extreme left, beyond "LO" position
8. Turn selector switch to position: No. 1 (Coil Power Test)
9. Slowly turn current control knob clockwise and note the current value on Scale No. 1
10. See manufacturer's specifications for operating amperage of the coil you are testing

(NOTE: There should be a steady bright blue fire which indicates a very good coil.)
11. If you have an intermittent, faint spark or no spark the coil is defective and should be replaced
12. Proceed to the coil high speed test
13. Continue turning the current control knob clockwise to the right, for maximum reading of meter

(NOTE: The spark gap should fire steadily.)
14. If you have an intermittent, faint spark or no spark the coil is defective and should be replaced

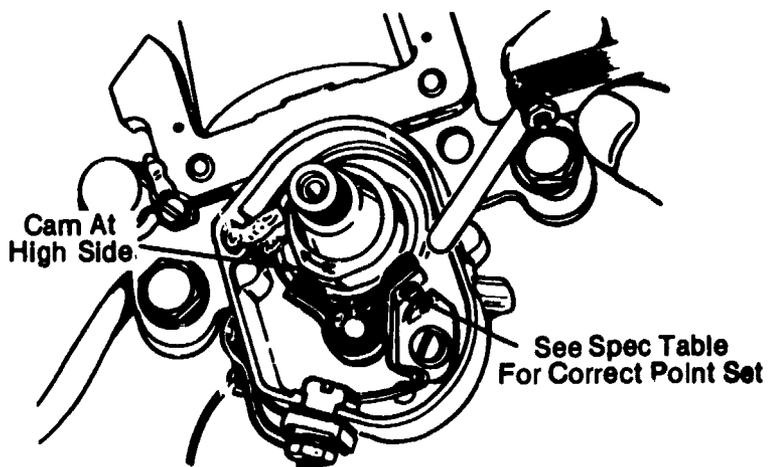
(NOTE: Complete this test as quickly as possible to prevent damage to coil.)
15. Turn selector switch and power control to "OFF" position
16. Remove all test leads
17. Replace defective coil
18. Install all other parts on engine
19. Start engine and adjust to recommended specifications
20. Have instructor evaluate work
21. Clean work area and return tools to their proper places

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

JOB SHEET #6 — CHECK IGNITION TIMING USING A DIAL INDICATOR (TECUMSEH ENGINES)

- A. Tools and materials needed
1. Hand tool assortment
 2. Dial indicator
 3. Continuity tester
 4. Safety glasses
- B. Procedure
1. Remove engine shroud and exterior parts
 2. Remove flywheel
 3. Set the point gap and align (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #6

4. Check manual for BTDC specifications (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2

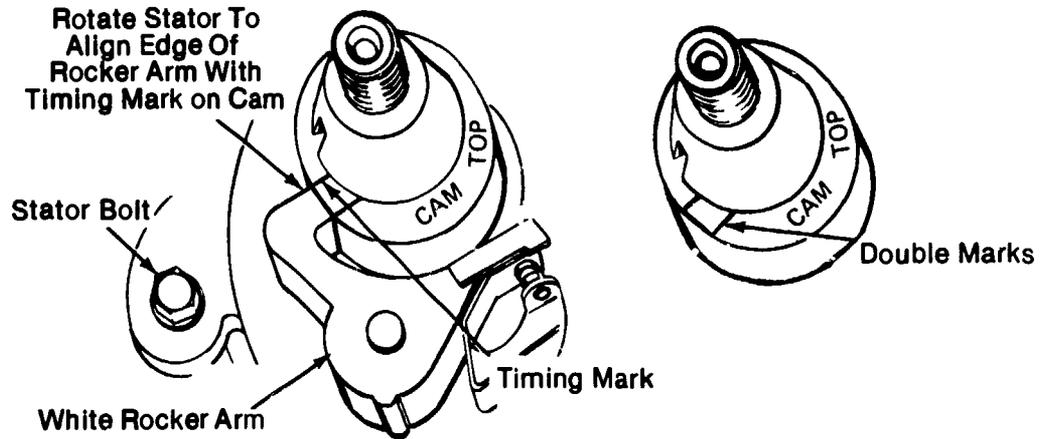
TECUMSEH MECHANICS MANUAL

16-17-18	21	B	24	26	28
19-20	22	25	27	29	31
23-24	26	28	30	32	34
25-26	27	29	31	33	35
27-28	29	31	33	35	37
29-30	31	33	35	37	39
31-32	33	35	37	39	41
33-34	35	37	39	41	43
35-36	37	39	41	43	45
37-38	39	41	43	45	47
39-40	41	43	45	47	49
41-42	43	45	47	49	51
43-44	45	47	49	51	53
45-46	47	49	51	53	55
47-48	49	51	53	55	57
49-50	51	53	55	57	59
51-52	53	55	57	59	61
53-54	55	57	59	61	63
55-56	57	59	61	63	65
57-58	59	61	63	65	67
59-60	61	63	65	67	69
61-62	63	65	67	69	71
63-64	65	67	69	71	73
65-66	67	69	71	73	75
67-68	69	71	73	75	77
69-70	71	73	75	77	79
71-72	73	75	77	79	81
73-74	75	77	79	81	83
75-76	77	79	81	83	85
77-78	79	81	83	85	87
79-80	81	83	85	87	89
81-82	83	85	87	89	91
83-84	85	87	89	91	93
85-86	87	89	91	93	95
87-88	89	91	93	95	97
89-90	91	93	95	97	99
91-92	93	95	97	99	101
93-94	95	97	99	101	103
95-96	97	99	101	103	105
97-98	99	101	103	105	107
99-100	101	103	105	107	109
101-102	103	105	107	109	111
103-104	105	107	109	111	113
105-106	107	109	111	113	115
107-108	109	111	113	115	117
109-110	111	113	115	117	119
111-112	113	115	117	119	121
113-114	115	117	119	121	123
115-116	117	119	121	123	125
117-118	119	121	123	125	127
119-120	121	123	125	127	129
121-122	123	125	127	129	131
123-124	125	127	129	131	133
125-126	127	129	131	133	135
127-128	129	131	133	135	137
129-130	131	133	135	137	139
131-132	133	135	137	139	141
133-134	135	137	139	141	143
135-136	137	139	141	143	145
137-138	139	141	143	145	147
139-140	141	143	145	147	149
141-142	143	145	147	149	151
143-144	145	147	149	151	153
145-146	147	149	151	153	155
147-148	149	151	153	155	157
149-150	151	153	155	157	159
151-152	153	155	157	159	161
153-154	155	157	159	161	163
155-156	157	159	161	163	165
157-158	159	161	163	165	167
159-160	161	163	165	167	169
161-162	163	165	167	169	171
163-164	165	167	169	171	173
165-166	167	169	171	173	175
167-168	169	171	173	175	177
169-170	171	173	175	177	179
171-172	173	175	177	179	181
173-174	175	177	179	181	183
175-176	177	179	181	183	185
177-178	179	181	183	185	187
179-180	181	183	185	187	189
181-182	183	185	187	189	191
183-184	185	187	189	191	193
185-186	187	189	191	193	195
187-188	189	191	193	195	197
189-190	191	193	195	197	199
191-192	193	195	197	199	201
193-194	195	197	199	201	203
195-196	197	199	201	203	205
197-198	199	201	203	205	207
199-200	201	203	205	207	209
201-202	203	205	207	209	211
203-204	205	207	209	211	213
205-206	207	209	211	213	215
207-208	209	211	213	215	217
209-210	211	213	215	217	219
211-212	213	215	217	219	221
213-214	215	217	219	221	223
215-216	217	219	221	223	225
217-218	219	221	223	225	227
219-220	221	223	225	227	229
221-222	223	225	227	229	231
223-224	225	227	229	231	233
225-226	227	229	231	233	235
227-228	229	231	233	235	237
229-230	231	233	235	237	239
231-232	233	235	237	239	241
233-234	235	237	239	241	243
235-236	237	239	241	243	245
237-238	239	241	243	245	247
239-240	241	243	245	247	249
241-242	243	245	247	249	251
243-244	245	247	249	251	253
245-246	247	249	251	253	255
247-248	249	251	253	255	257
249-250	251	253	255	257	259
251-252	253	255	257	259	261
253-254	255	257	259	261	263
255-256	257	259	261	263	265
257-258	259	261	263	265	267
259-260	261	263	265	267	269
261-262	263	265	267	269	271
263-264	265	267	269	271	273
265-266	267	269	271	273	275
267-268	269	271	273	275	277
269-270	271	273	275	277	279
271-272	273	275	277	279	281
273-274	275	277	279	281	283
275-276	277	279	281	283	285
277-278	279	281	283	285	287
279-280	281	283	285	287	289
281-282	283	285	287	289	291
283-284	285	287	289	291	293
285-286	287	289	291	293	295
287-288	289	291	293	295	297
289-290	291	293	295	297	299
291-292	293	295	297	299	301
293-294	295	297	299	301	303
295-296	297	299	301	303	305
297-298	299	301	303	305	307
299-300	301	303	305	307	309
301-302	303	305	307	309	311
303-304	305	307	309	311	313
305-306	307	309	311	313	315
307-308	309	311	313	315	317
309-310	311	313	315	317	319
311-312	313	315	317	319	321
313-314	315	317	319	321	323
315-316	317	319	321	323	325
317-318	319	321	323	325	327
319-320	321	323	325	327	329
321-322	323	325	327	329	331
323-324	325	327	329	331	333
325-326	327	329	331	333	335
327-328	329	331	333	335	337
329-330	331	333	335	337	339
331-332	333	335	337	339	341
333-334	335	337	339	341	343
335-336	337	339	341	343	345
337-338	339	341	343	345	347
339-340	341	343	345	347	349
341-342	343	345	347	349	351
343-344	345	347	349	351	353
345-346	347	349	351	353	355
347-348	349	351	353	355	357
349-350	351	353	355	357	359
351-352	353	355	357	359	361
353-354	355	357	359	361	363
355-356	357	359	361	363	365
357-358	359	361	363	365	367
359-360	361	363	365	367	369
361-362	363	365	367	369	371
363-364	365	367	369	371	373
365-366	367	369	371	373	375
367-368	369	371	373	375	377
369-370	371	373	375	377	379
371-372	373	375	377	379	381
373-374	375	377	379	381	383
375-376	377	379	381	383	385
377-378	379	381	383	385	387
379-380	381	383	385	387	389
381-382	383	385	387	389	391
383-384	385	387	389	391	393
385-386	387	389	391	393	395
387-388	389	391	393	395	397
389-390	391	393	395	397	399
391-392	393	395	397	399	401
393-394	395	397	399	401	403
395-396	397	399	401	403	405
397-398	399	401	403	405	407
399-400	401	403	405	407	409
401-402	403	405			

JOB SHEET #6

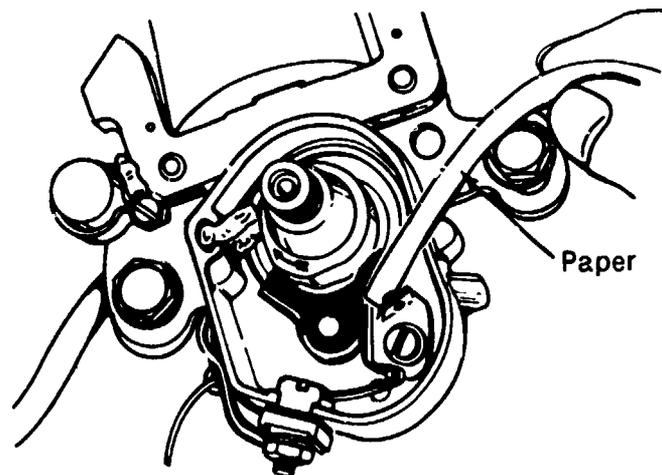
6. If cam has double timing marks, follow the procedure below for correct timing (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4



7. Clean points by pulling lint-free paper between points (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5



8. Replace spark plug, coil wires, cover, flywheel and shroud
9. Return all tools to their proper places

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

JOB SHEET #7 — TEST CONDENSER FOR LEAKAGE OR SHORT

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Ignition Analyzer

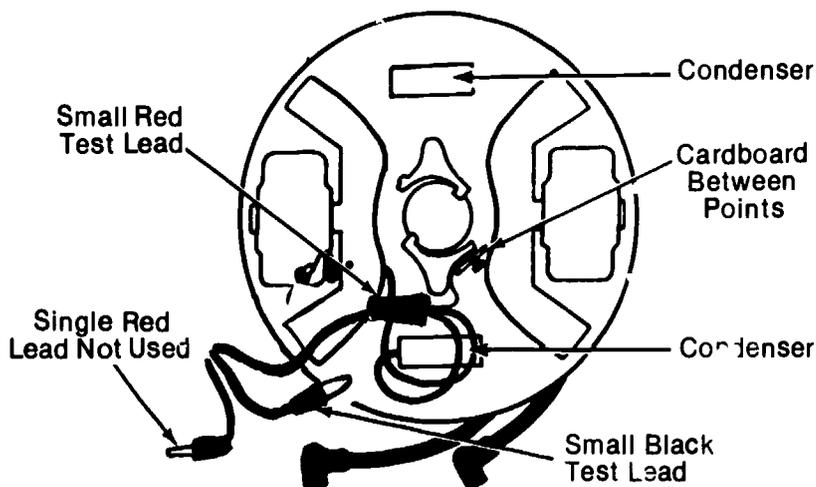
(NOTE: The Merc-O-Tronic Ignition Analyzer is used in this job sheet.)

3. Safety glasses
4. Shop towels

B. Procedure

1. Remove all parts necessary to get at ignition system
2. Read operator's manual and determine correct location of ignition parts and how to make proper connections for testing the condenser (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



3. Connect small black test lead to stator plate if condenser is mounted, otherwise to body of condenser (Figure 1)
4. Connect small red test lead to breaker terminal, or if unmounted, to condenser lead (Figure 1)
5. Place a piece of cardboard between breaker points (Figure 1)

JOB SHEET #7

6. To make the condenser test, cord must be plugged into 115 volt 60-cycle AC outlet
7. Turn selector switch to No. 5 "Leakage" and short
8. Depress red button and hold a minimum of 15 seconds; read scale No. 5
9. The meter pointer hand will move to the right and must return within range of the narrow black bar at the left

(NOTE: Any readings that fall to the right of the black bar indicates the condenser is leaking or shorted and must be replaced)
10. Remove all test leads
11. Replace defective condenser
12. Install all other parts on engine
13. Start engine and adjust to recommended specifications
14. Have instructor evaluate work
15. Clean work area and return tools to their proper places

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

NAME _____

TEST

1. State the purpose of the ignition system.

2. Match the types of ignition systems on the right with their correct descriptions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|--------------------------------|
| _____a. | Produces current by magnetic induction for the primary ignition circuit without any outside source of electricity | 1. Battery ignition system |
| _____b. | Uses semiconductors in place of one or more standard ignition components | 2. Magneto ignition system |
| _____c. | Uses electronic parts in place of mechanically operated ignition points | 3. Breakerless ignition system |
| _____d. | Uses battery to supply source of current for the primary ignition circuit | 4. Solid state ignition system |

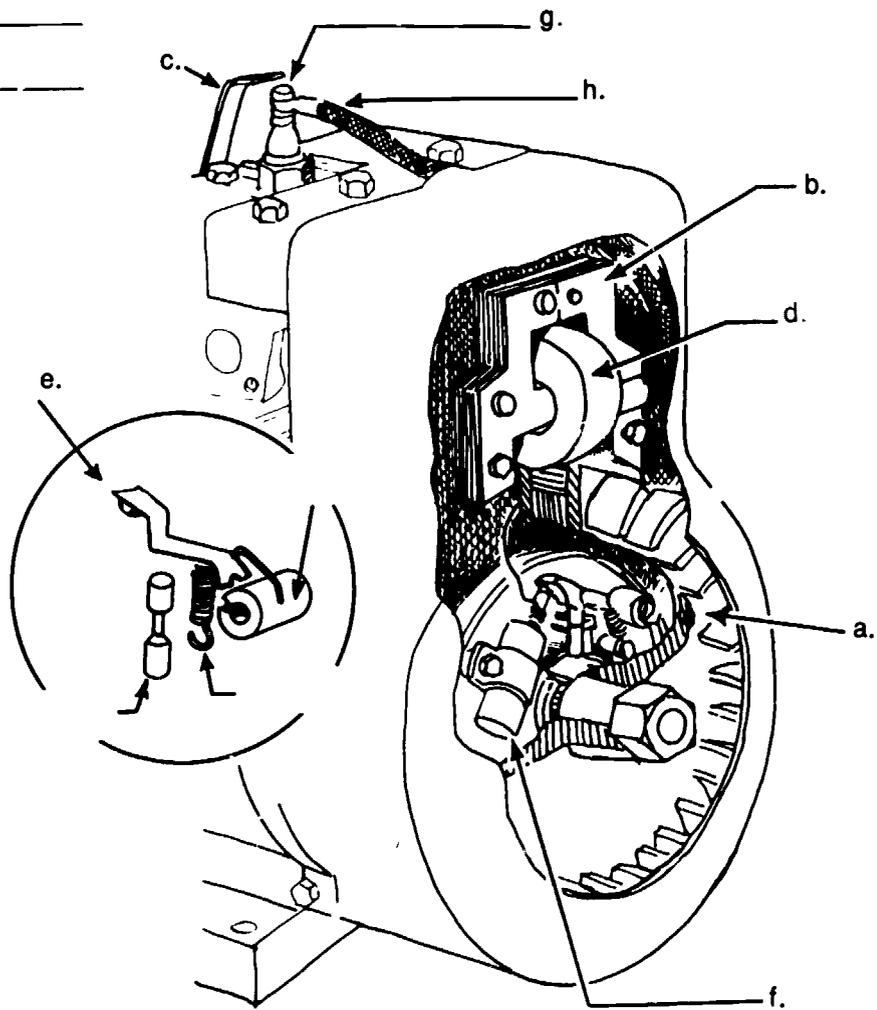
3. Distinguish between the components of the primary and secondary battery ignition circuits by placing a "P" in front of the components in the primary ignition circuit and an "S" in front of those in the secondary ignition circuit.

- _____a. Resistance unit (resistor)
- _____b. Condenser
- _____c. Distributor cap
- _____d. Ignition switch
- _____e. Rotor
- _____f. Secondary winding
- _____g. High voltage wire
- _____h. Low voltage wire
- _____i. Contact points
- _____j. Battery
- _____k. Primary winding
- _____l. Spark plug

TEST

4. Identify the components of a magneto ignition system

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____
- e. _____
- f. _____
- g. _____
- h. _____



TEST

5. Identify the components of a solid state ignition system.

a. _____

e. _____

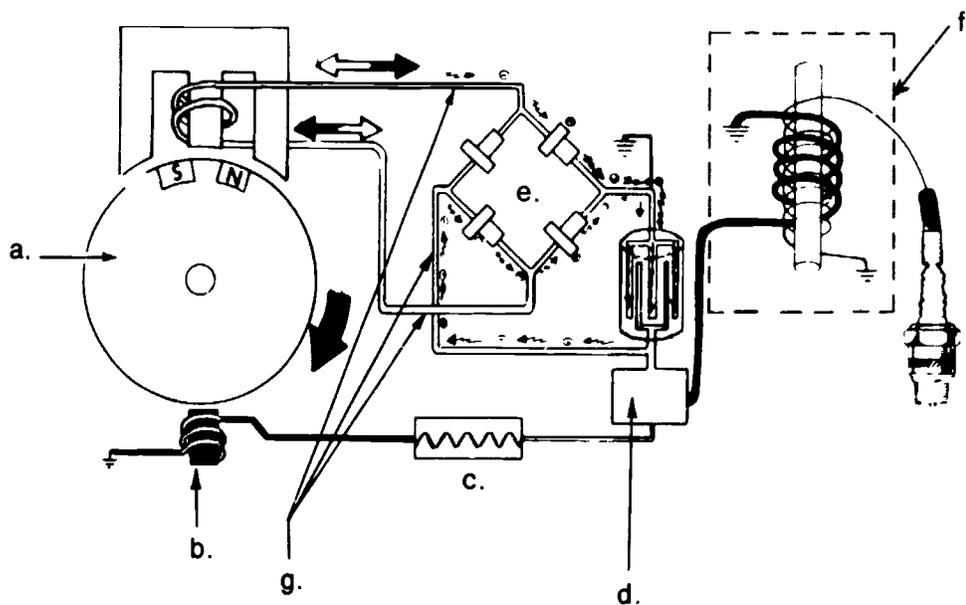
b. _____

f. _____

c. _____

g. _____

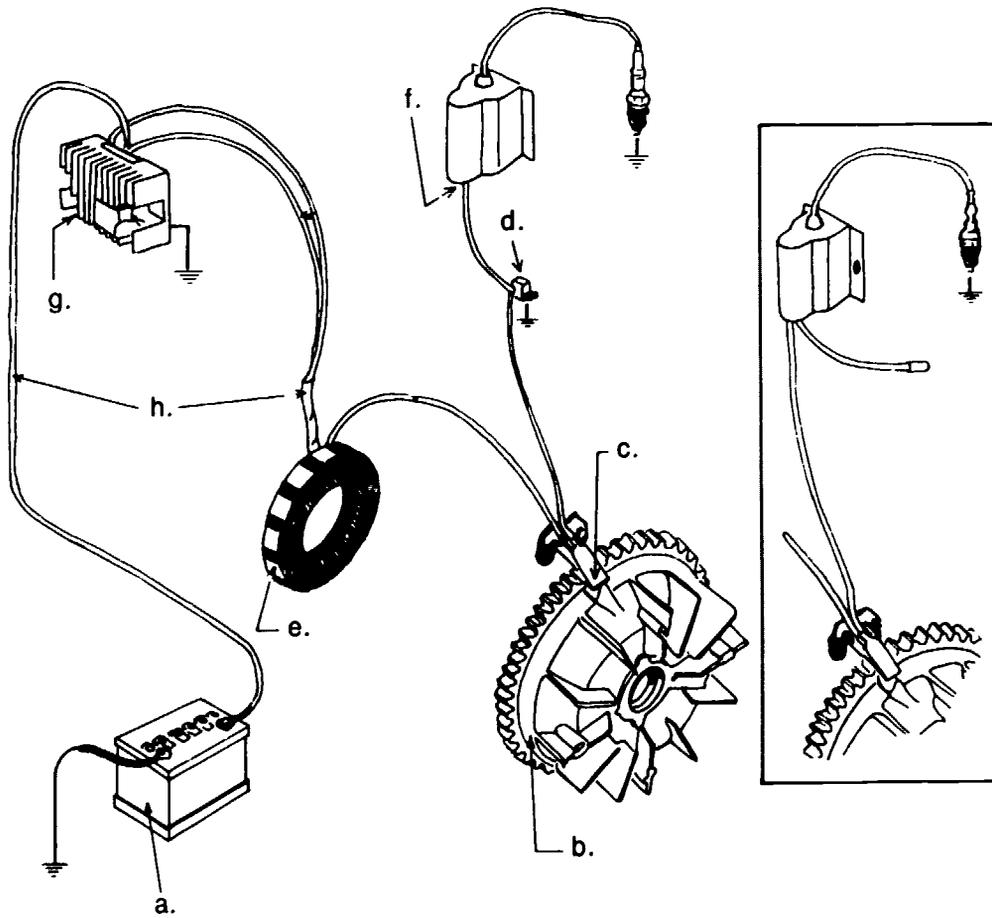
d. _____



TEST

6. Identify the components of a breakerless ignition system.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| a. _____ | e. _____ |
| b. _____ | f. _____ |
| c. _____ | g. _____ |
| d. _____ | h. _____ |



TEST

7. Match the components of the ignition system on the right with their correct purposes.

- | | | |
|---------|--|----------------------|
| _____a. | Source of electrical power | 1. Trigger coil |
| _____b. | Opens and closes the primary circuit from the battery or coil to the contact points | 2. Spark plug |
| _____c. | Transforms low voltage into high voltage necessary to jump the spark plug gap | 3. Coil |
| _____d. | Make and break the primary circuit to allow the coil to produce high voltage at the spark plug | 4. Resistor |
| _____e. | Stores extra current as the contact points open to prevent arcing and burning | 5. High voltage wire |
| _____f. | Opens the contact points | 6. Breaker cam |
| _____g. | Changes alternating (AC) current to direct (DC) current | 7. Battery |
| _____h. | Used in solid state ignition systems and operates like the condenser | 8. Diode rectifier |
| _____i. | Generates a small amount of current that is used to activate the current from the capacitor | 9. Contact points |
| _____j. | Reduces voltage in the primary circuit to protect the contact points | 10. Low voltage wire |
| _____k. | Provides a spark gap inside the engine cylinder to ignite the fuel-air mixture | 11. Ignition switch |
| _____l. | Carries low voltage from the battery or armature to the primary side of the ignition coil | 12. Capacitor |
| _____m. | Carries high voltage from the secondary side of the coil to the spark plug | 13. Condenser |

TEST

8. Distinguish between the operational steps of the ignition systems by placing an "X" under the appropriate system heading.

	Battery	Magneto	Solid State	
a.	_____	_____	_____	With the ignition switch on and the contact points closed, low voltage current flows from the battery through the primary windings of the coil and through the contact points to ground
b.	_____	_____	_____	With the ignition switch on or the contact points closed, low voltage current is induced by magnets through the primary windings of the coil and through the contact points to ground
c.	_____	_____	_____	With the ignition switch on, low voltage current from the flywheel magnet induces alternating current (AC) in charge coil
d.	_____	_____	_____	The flow of low voltage current through the primary windings of the coil causes a magnetic field buildup
e.	_____	_____	_____	The AC current passes through a rectifier and changes to direct current (DC), which travels to the capacitor (condenser) where it is stored
f.	_____	_____	_____	As the contact points open, current attempts to continue to flow across the point surfaces; the condenser attached to the points absorbs this flow of current
g.	_____	_____	_____	The flywheel magnets pass the trigger coil and induce a small electrical charge, which turns on the silicon controlled rectifier (SCR)
h.	_____	_____	_____	Stopping the flow of current causes the magnetic field of the coil to collapse across the secondary coil windings, causing a high voltage surge
i.	_____	_____	_____	The high voltage surge is directed from the secondary windings of the coil through the distributor cap and rotor and on to the spark plug to ground

TEST

- j. _____ _____ _____ The high voltage surge is directed from the secondary windings of the coil through the secondary wire on to the spark plug to ground
- k. _____ _____ _____ The instantaneous discharge of energy induces a very high density magnetic field around the primary winding of the coil, which cuts the secondary winding and thus creates sufficient energy to fire the spark plug

9. Demonstrate the ability to:
- a. Remove, service, and replace spark plugs (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Remove and replace contact points and condenser (Job Sheet #2).
 - c. Test the coil, condenser, armature, and flywheel magnets (Job Sheet #3).
 - d. Test and adjust a solid state ignition system (Job Sheet #4).
 - e. Perform a coil power test (Job Sheet #5).
 - f. Check ignition timing using a dial indicator (Job Sheet #6).
 - g. Test condenser for leakage or short (Job Sheet #7).

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

IGNITION SYSTEMS UNIT II-C

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. Produces high voltage current to ignite the fuel-air mixture in the engine cylinder
2.

a.	2
b.	4
c.	3
d.	1
3.

a.	P	g.	S
b.	P	h.	P
c.	S	i.	P
d.	P	j.	P
e.	S	k.	P
f.	S	l.	S
4.

a.	Flywheel with magnets
b.	Armature
c.	Switch stop
d.	Coil
e.	Contact points
f.	Condenser
g.	Spark plug
h.	High voltage wire
5.

a.	Flywheel with magnets
b.	Trigger coil
c.	Resistor
d.	Transistorized rectifier (solid state switch)
e.	Diode rectifier
f.	Ignition coil
g.	Low voltage wire
6.

a.	Battery
b.	Flywheel
c.	Trigger module
d.	Ignition switch
e.	Alternator-stator
f.	Ignition coil assembly
g.	Rectifier-regulator
h.	Low voltage wire
7.

a.	7	f.	6	k.	2
b.	11	g.	8	l.	10
c.	3	h.	12	m.	5
d.	9	i.	10		
e.	13	j.	4		

ANSWERS TO TEST

- 8.
 - a. **Battery**
 - b. **Magneto**
 - c. **Solid State**
 - d. **Battery, Magneto**
 - e. **Solid State**
 - f. **Battery, Magneto**
 - g. **Solid State**
 - h. **Battery, Magneto**
 - i. **Battery**
 - j. **Magneto**
 - k. **Solid State**

- 9. **Performance skills evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor**

CHARGING SYSTEMS UNIT III-C

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheets.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
2. Provide examples of alternators and generators if space permits, or show illustrations to class.
3. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet

- B. Suggested activities

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Charging System Components
 - 2. TM 2 — How AC Converts to DC
 - 3. TM 3 — Parts of the Alternator Charging System
- E. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Remove and Replace an Alternator
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Disassemble, Check, and Reassemble an Alternator
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Small Engines Volume 1 and 2*. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, 1974.
- B. Armstrong, Ivan. *Auto Mechanics, Volume 1*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Oklahoma State Department of Vocational and Technical Education, 1976.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

CHARGING SYSTEMS UNIT III-C

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Charging system — Recharges the battery and maintains a supply of electrical current to meet the operating needs of the engine and auxillary circuits
- B. Amp — Unit of measurement for electrical current
- C. Volt — Unit of electrical pressure or force that will move a current of one ampere through a resistance of one ohm
- D. Ohm — Standard unit for measuring resistance to flow of electrical current
- E. Diode (rectifier) — Device that will allow current through itself in one direction and will block current in the opposite direction
- F. Short circuit — Wire touching another wire and providing a shorter path for current to flow
- G. Open circuit — Circuit in which a wire is broken or disconnected
- H. Grounded circuit — Circuit in which a wire touches ground causing the current to flow to ground instead of through the circuit
- I. Armature — Series of wire conductors in the form of a loop rotating in a stationary magnetic field
- J. Commutator — Bars on end of armature drive shaft and connected to the ends of each wire conductor wound on armature
- K. Pole shoes — Permanent magnets that are fixed to the inside of the generator housing and set opposite each other to create a weak magnetic field
- L. Field circuit — One wire conductor wound around both poles many times and attached to the brush
- M. Regulator — Assembly which houses the cut-out relay, voltage regulator, and current regulator
- N. Arcing — Current attempting to cross between the commutator sections and the brush
- O. Polarity — Direction of current flow through the generator

(NOTE: Generator circuits need to be polarized after servicing.)

INFORMATION SHEET

- P. "A" circuit — Regulator circuit with supply voltage to the generator field, then through the regulator to ground
- Q. "B" circuit — Regulator is between the battery and generator field windings

II. Kinds of charging systems

(NOTE: Both circuits generate an alternating current, but differ in how they rectify the alternating current to direct current.)

- A. Direct current

(NOTE: Direct current charging systems are associated with generator type systems.)

- B. Alternating current

(NOTE: Alternating current charging systems are associated with alternator type systems.)

III. Charging system components and functions (Transparency 1)

- A. Battery

1. Starts the circuit by supplying spark to start engine
2. Helps out during peak operation when electrical loads are too much for generator or alternator

- B. Generator or alternator

1. Supplies electrical power to accessory circuits
2. Recharges battery

- C. Regulator

1. Opens and closes the charging circuit (cut-out relay)
2. Prevents overcharging of battery (voltage regulator)
3. Limits the generator's output to safe rates (current regulator)

- D. Ammeter — Measures the rate of current flow

IV. Operating stages of charging system

- A. Starting — Battery supplies all load current
- B. Peak operation — Battery helps generator supply current
- C. Normal operation — Generator supplies all current and recharges battery

INFORMATION SHEET

V. How a generator converts AC to DC (Transparency 2)

- A. Commutator is split in two parts creating a gap as the commutator passes the brushes

(NOTE: This is called the static neutral point where no voltage is created.)

- B. Past this point the other half of the commutator contacts the brushes reversing the current flow
- C. At the same time the rotating armature reverses its polarity converting AC to DC

VI. Parts of the alternator system (Transparency 3)

- A. Alternator coil (stator)
- B. Flywheel
- C. Ceramic ring
- D. Rectifier
- E. Battery

VII. Advantages of an alternator over a generator

- A. Produces higher output at low and idle engine speeds
- B. Provides simplicity in construction which requires less maintenance

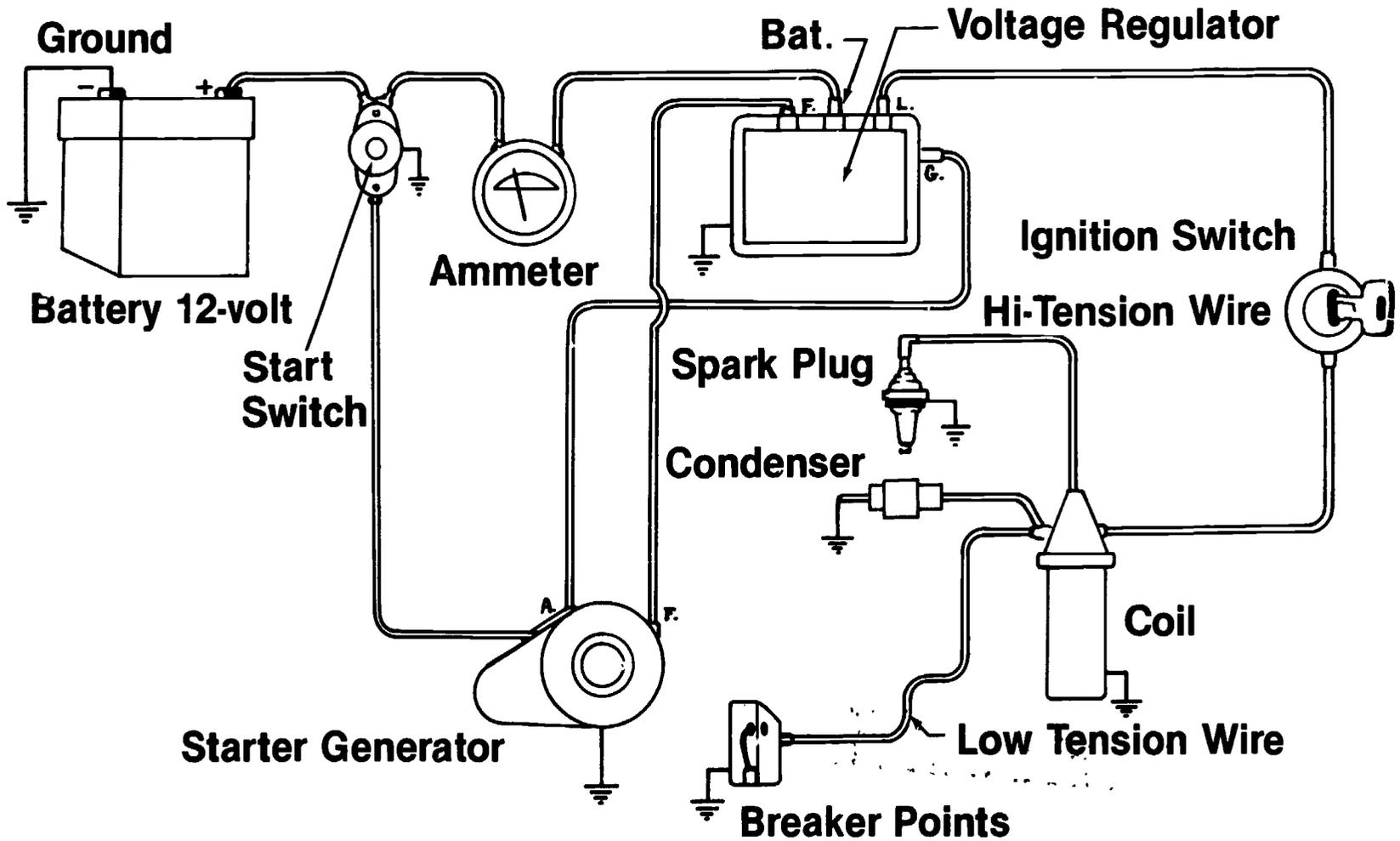
VIII. Reverse polarity

- A. Generator polarity is opposite that of the battery
- B. Battery is in series with the generator
- C. Generator builds up voltage and closes the cut-out relay points
- D. High voltage can create enough current and heat to weld the points together

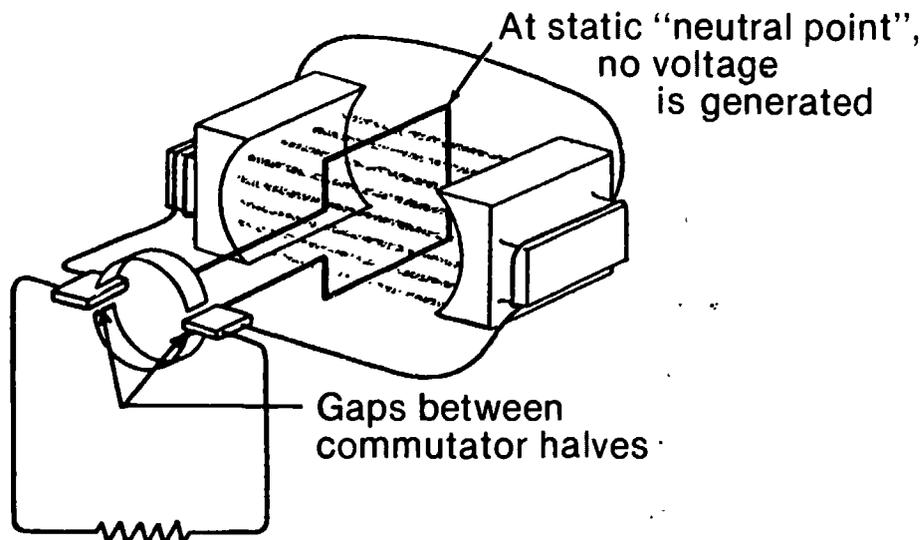
(CAUTION: After any service, polarize the DC generator.)

(NOTE: Pole shoe polarity is determined by the magnetism of the field coils the last time current passed through the coils; a slight current through the field coils when servicing can accidentally change pole polarity.)

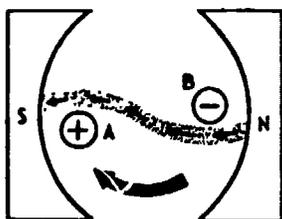
Charging System Components



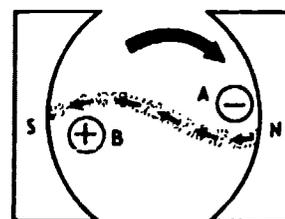
How AC Converts To DC



How Generator Converts AC To DC current



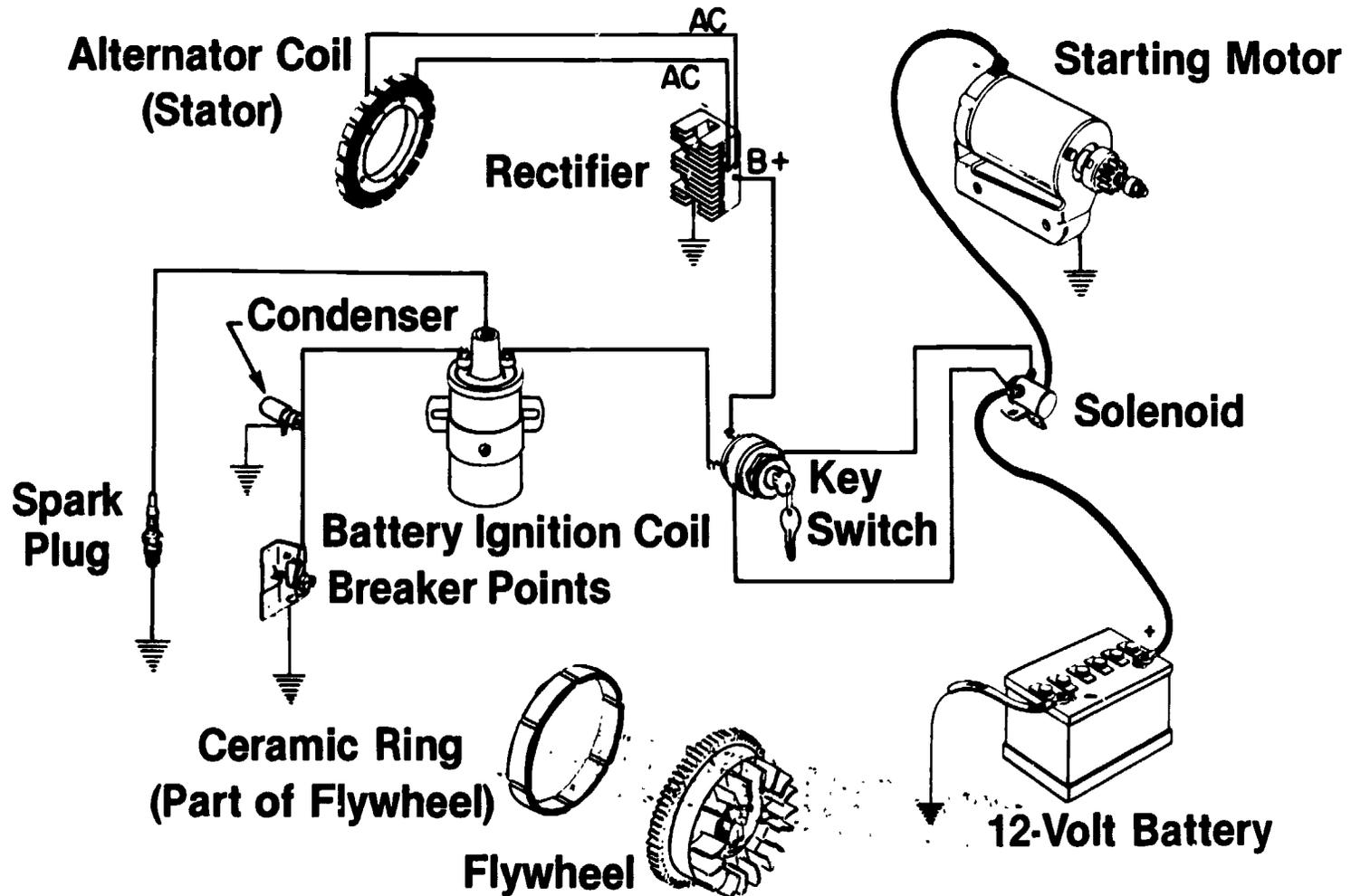
First Half of Revolution



Second Half of Revolution

How the Polarity of the Armature Changes During Each Revolution

Parts of the Alternator Charging System



CHARGING SYSTEMS UNIT III-C

JOB SHEET #1 — REMOVE AND REPLACE AN ALTERNATOR

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Flywheel removal tools
3. Shop towels
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Remove engine shroud or blower housing

2. Remove flywheel

(NOTE: Check magnets on flywheel for small metal chips and remove them.)

3. Check correct location of stator wires

4. Remove stator bolts and spacers

5. Remove rectifier bolt

6. Remove stator and rectifier as a unit

7. Replace rectifier

8. Replace stator

(NOTE: Hold stator toward screws to take up clearance in mounting bushing.)

9. Install flywheel

(NOTE: Check stator wire location so they do not rub the flywheel.)

10. Replace blower housing

11. Start engine and check alternator output

CHARGING SYSTEMS UNIT III-C

JOB SHEET #2 — DISASSEMBLE, CHECK AND REASSEMBLE AN ALTERNATOR

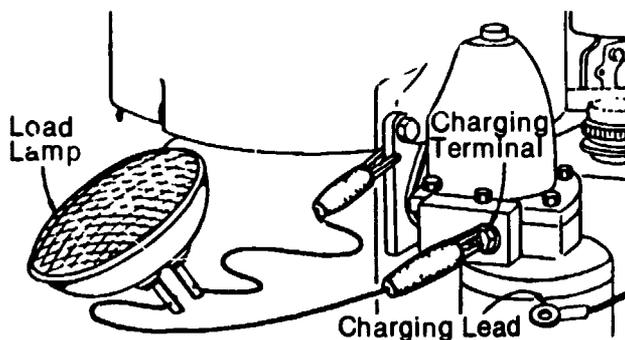
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Ammeter
3. Test lamp
4. Flywheel removal tools
5. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Run tests
 - a. Test output (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



- 1) Disconnect charging lead from charging terminal

(NOTE: Do not allow terminal on charging lead to touch engine or equipment.)

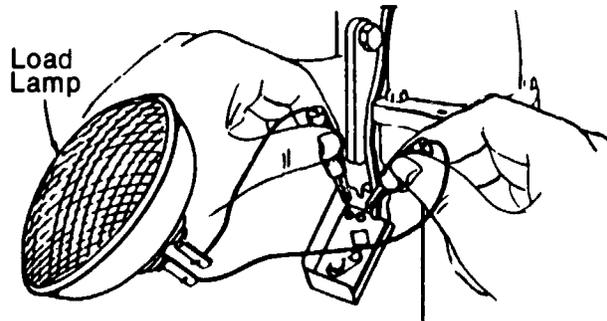
- 2) Clip 12-volt load lamp between charging terminal and ground
- 3) Start engine

(NOTE: If lamp lights, alternator is functioning; if lamp does not light, alternator is defective.)

JOB SHEET #2

b. Test stator (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



- 1) Disconnect charging lead from battery and rectifier
 - 2) Remove rectifier box mounting screw
 - 3) Rotate box to expose eyelets to which red and black stator leads are soldered
- (NOTE: Charging lead terminal must not touch engine.)
- 4) Start engine
 - 5) Touch load lamp leads to eyelets with engine running

(NOTE: If load lamp lights, the stator is satisfactory; if load lamp does not light, stator or flywheel is defective.)

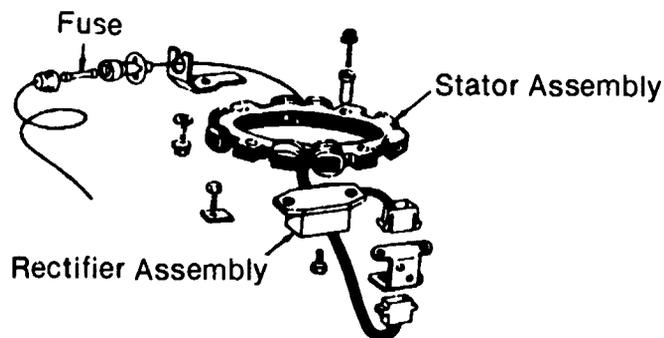
c. Check flywheel and stator

- 1) Remove blower housing and flywheel and check to be sure magnet ring is in place and has magnetism
- (NOTE: Replace flywheel if needed.)
- 2) Check charging lead to be sure there is a good connection to the positive (+) battery terminal
 - 3) If flywheel or charging lead are not defective, replace stator

JOB SHEET #2

- d. Replace defective stator (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3

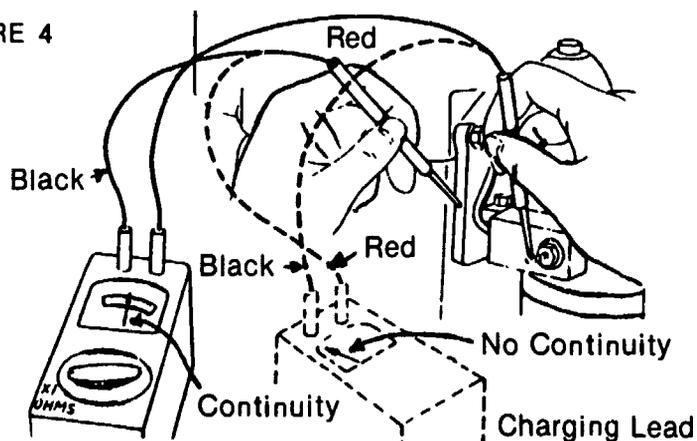


- 1) Remove flywheel
(NOTE: Be sure to note correct location of stator wires.)
- 2) Remove two stator mounting screws and bushings
- 3) Remove rectifier box from stator assembly
- 4) Install stator
- 5) Torque screws to correct specifications
- 6) Install rectifier box connecting leads correctly
- 7) Replace flywheel and blower housing and run engine to check output

2. Test system

- a. Test half-wave rectifier (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4



JOB SHEET #2

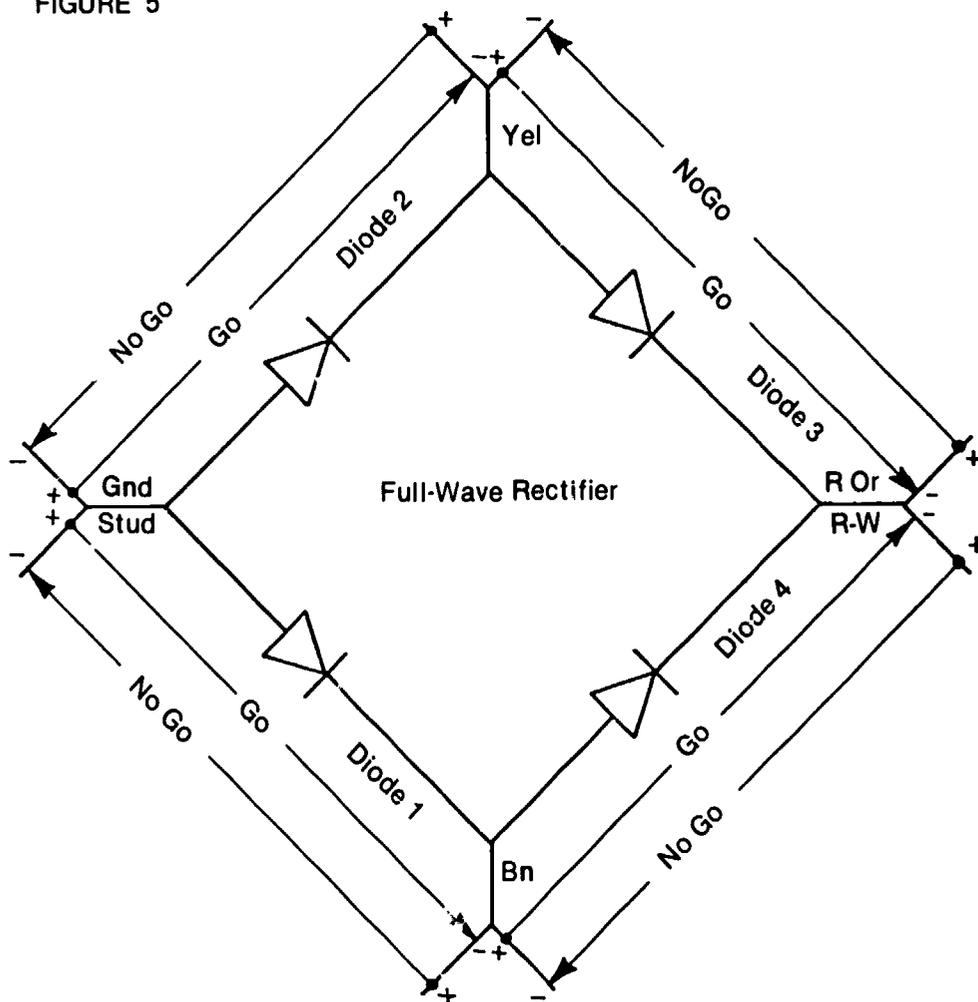
- 1) Do not run engine
- 2) Use a multimeter to test resistance from charging terminal to ground
- 3) Reverse test leads and recheck

(NOTE: One way there should be a meter reading and the other way there should not be a meter reading. The actual meter readings are not important. If the meter shows a reading both ways or neither way, then the rectifier is defective.)

- b. Bench test full-wave rectifier with ohmmeter

(NOTE: The bridge or full-wave rectifier consists of 4 diodes, and each one must be tested individually. See Figure 5.)

FIGURE 5



JOB SHEET #2

- 1) Connect the positive (+) lead of the ohmmeter to the ground stud and the negative (-) lead of the ohmmeter to the brown (common) terminal on diode #1

(NOTE: The meter should show a low resistance, meaning the current will flow ("GO") in that direction.)

- 2) Reverse the ohmmeter leads, negative (-) lead to the ground stud and positive (+) lead to the brown (common) terminal on diode #1

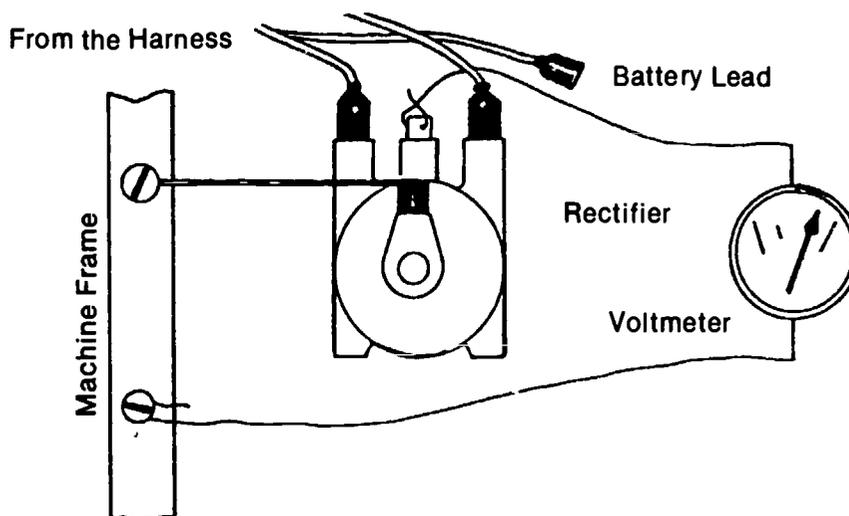
(NOTE: There should be a very high resistance reading, meaning current will not flow ("NO GO") in that direction; a low or high resistance reading in both directions indicates a faulty rectifier.)

- 3) Repeat the procedure for each of the remaining diodes

(NOTE: Since color coding varies with different makes and models, the appropriate service manual should be consulted to identify the rectifier terminals.)

- c. Test full-wave rectifier with voltmeter (Figure 6)

FIGURE 6



- 1) Disconnect the rectifier to battery lead at the rectifier terminal
- 2) Connect the voltmeter from the rectifier terminal to a good ground
- 3) Start the engine and increase the speed to approximately 3,000 RPM

(NOTE: The voltmeter should read about 7 volts for a 6-volt system and 14 volts for 12-volt system; a low reading indicates a faulty rectifier.)

JOB SHEET #2

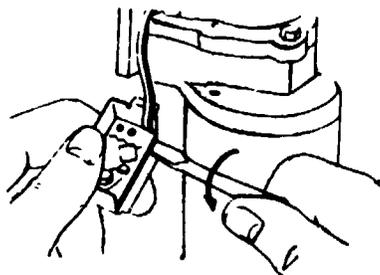
- d. Replace defective half-wave rectifier (Figure 7)
- 1) Remove rectifier from engine or starter motor
 - 2) Pry off fiber board exposing soldered connections between rectifier and stator leads (Figure 7)

FIGURE 7



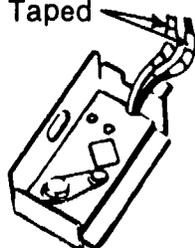
- 3) Cut stator leads close to eyelets (Figure 8)

FIGURE 8



- 4) Strip insulation back $\frac{3}{8}$ " on stator leads
- 5) Discard defective rectifier box
- 6) Solder on new rectifier leads to stator leads
- 7) Wrap solder and splices carefully with tape (Figure 9)

FIGURE 9
Leads Spliced and Taped



JOB SHEET #2

- 8) Fold leads into rectifier box and mount on starter or engine (Figures 10 and 11)

(NOTE: Wires should not rub on flywheel.)

FIGURE 10

Leads Folded in

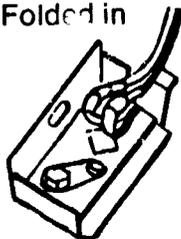
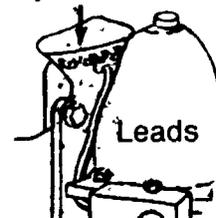


FIGURE 11

Flywheel



- 9) Install flywheel and blower housing
10) Check output

CHARGING SYSTEMS UNIT III-C

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|-----------------------|
| _____a. | Unit of measurement for electrical current | 1. Open circuit |
| _____b. | Unit of electrical pressure or force that will move a current of one ampere through a resistance of one ohm | 2. Arcing |
| _____c. | Standard unit for measuring resistance to flow of electrical current | 3. Ohm |
| _____d. | Device that will allow current through itself in one direction and will block current in the opposite direction | 4. "A" Circuit |
| _____e. | Wire touching another wire and providing a shorter path for current to flow | 5. Charging system |
| _____f. | Circuit in which a wire is broken or disconnected | 6. Armature |
| _____g. | Circuit in which a wire touches ground causing the current to flow to ground instead of through the circuit | 7. Grounded circuit |
| _____h. | Recharges the battery and maintains a supply of electrical current to meet the operating needs of the engine and auxiliary circuits | 8. Commutator |
| _____i. | Current attempting to cross between the commutator sections and the brush | 9. Short circuit |
| _____j. | Series of wire conductors in the form of a loop rotating in a stationary magnetic field | 10. Pole shoes |
| _____k. | Regulator is between the battery and generator field windings | 11. Diode (rectifier) |

TEST

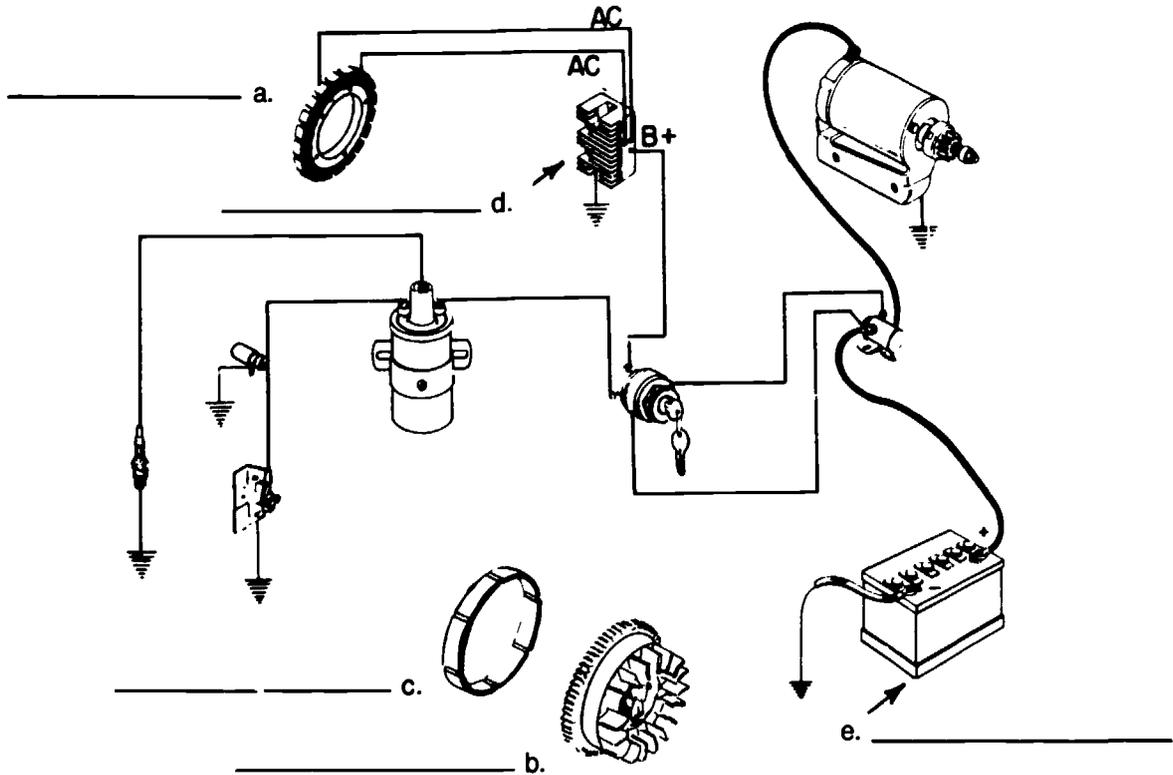
- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>____l. Permanent magnets that are fixed to the inside of the generator housing and set opposite each other to create a weak magnetic field</p> <p>____m. Assembly which houses the cut-out relay, voltage regulator, and current regulator</p> <p>____n. Direction of current flow through the generator</p> <p>____o. One wire conductor wound around both poles many times and attached to the brush</p> <p>____p. Bars on end of armature drive shaft and connected to the ends of each wire conductor wound in armature</p> <p>____q. Regulator circuit with supply voltage to the generator field, then through the regulator to ground</p> | <p>12. Field circuit</p> <p>13. Volt</p> <p>14. Polarity</p> <p>15. Amp</p> <p>16. "B" Circuit</p> <p>17. Regulator</p> |
|---|---|
2. List two kinds of charging systems.
- a. _____
- b. _____
3. Match the charging system components on the right with their correct functions.
- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>____a. Supplies electrical power to accessory circuits and recharges battery</p> <p>____b. Measures the rate of current flow</p> <p>____c. Opens and closes the charging circuit (cut-out relay), prevents overcharging of battery (voltage regulator), and limits the generator's output to safe rates (current regulator)</p> <p>____d. Starts the circuits by supplying spark to start engine and helps out during peak operation when electrical loads are too much for generator or alternator</p> | <p>1. Regulator</p> <p>2. Ammeter</p> <p>3. Battery</p> <p>4. Generator or alternator</p> |
|--|---|

TEST

4. Match the operating stages of the charging system on the right with their correct functions.
- | | | |
|---------|--|---------------------|
| _____a. | Battery helps generator supply current | 1. Starting |
| _____b. | Generator supplies all current and recharges battery | 2. Peak operation |
| _____c. | Battery supplies all load current | 3. Normal operation |
5. Complete the following list of statements concerning how a generator converts AC to DC by correctly filling in the blanks.
- a. Commutator is split in two parts creating a gap as the commutator passes the _____
- b. Past this point the other half of the commutator contacts the brushes _____ the current flow
- c. At the same time the rotating armature reverses its _____ converting AC to DC

TEST

6. Identify the parts of the alternator system.



7. List two advantages of an alternator over a generator.

- a. _____
- b. _____

8. Select true statements concerning reverse polarity by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ____a. Generator polarity is opposite that of the battery
- ____b. Battery is in series with the alternator
- ____c. Generator builds up voltage and closes the cut-out relay points
- ____d. High voltage can create enough current and heat to weld the points together

TEST

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

9. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Remove and replace an alternator (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Disassemble, check, and reassemble an alternator (Job Sheet #2).

CHARGING SYSTEMS UNIT III-C

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.

a.	15	g.	7	m.	17
b.	13	h.	5	n.	14
c.	3	i.	2	o.	12
d.	11	j.	6	p.	8
e.	9	k.	16	q.	4
f.	1	l.	10		

2.

a.	Direct current
b.	Alternating current

3.

a.	4
b.	2
c.	1
d.	3

4.

a.	2
b.	3
c.	1

5.

a.	Brushes
b.	Reversing
c.	Polarity

6.

a.	Alternator coil (stator)
b.	Flywheel
c.	Ceramic ring
d.	Rectifier
e.	Battery

7.

a.	Produces higher output at low and idle engine speeds
b.	Provides simplicity in construction which requires less maintenance

8. a,c,d

9. Performance skills evaluated according to the standards identified by the instructor

STARTING SYSTEMS UNIT IV-C

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Provide examples of different types of starters and starter drives.
2. Identify parts of a twelve-volt starter.
3. Make or obtain a cutaway of a solenoid.
4. Prepare a test board for solenoids to show double pole charging system and to show potential starter problems.
5. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
6. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES**CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT**

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Types of Starters
 - 2. TM 2 — Types of Starters (Continued)
- E. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Remove, Disassemble, Test, Service, and Reassemble a Starter
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Replace Starter Rewind Spring
 - 3. Job Sheet #3 — Service the Vertical Pull Starter
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. Armstrong, Ivan. *Auto Mechanics, Volume I*. Stillwater, Oklahoma. Oklahoma State Department of Vocational and Technical Education, 1976.
- B. *Small Engines, Volume II*. Third Edition. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, 1974.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.
- D. Herd, Amon. *Starters Service and Repair (For Briggs and Stratton Engines)*. Columbia, Missouri: Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri.

STARTING SYSTEMS UNIT IV-C

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Starter — Device which converts mechanical or electrical power into rotating motion for cranking engine
- B. Starter frame — Housing which connects and contains starter component parts
- C. Armature — Main shaft in starter, composed of commutator segments, windings, and bushing or bearing journals
- D. Brushes — Sliding contacts which transfer electrical energy to commutator
- E. Starter drive pinion — Gear that meshes with flywheel to crank engine
- F. Pole shoes — Ends of magnets in the field frame of a starting motor
- G. Field coils — Wire wrapped around pole pieces to increase the strength of the magnetic field when current is applied
- H. Safe interlock (neutral interlock) — Safety device which allows engine to be started in neutral only
- I. Solenoid — Electromagnetic device which produces a reciprocating motion for remote control of starting circuit

II. Types of small gas engine starters (Transparencies 1 and 2)

- A. Rope-wind
- B. Rope-rewind
- C. Vertical pull
- D. Electric (AC and DC)

III. Components of mechanical starting system

- A. Starter housing — Cover for the starter mechanism
- B. Recoil spring — Used to automatically rewind the starter rope after each starting attempt
- C. Pulley — Housing for pawls that lock to crankshaft adapter to crank engine

INFORMATION SHEET

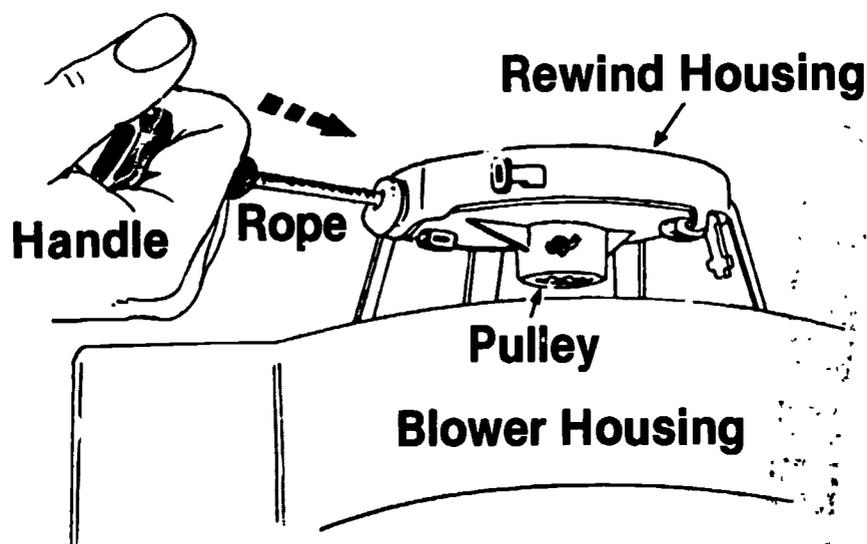
- D. Engaging pawl — Locks pulley to crankshaft adapter on starting pull of rope
- E. Pawl spring — Returns pawl to neutral position during rewind cycle

IV. Components of DC starting system

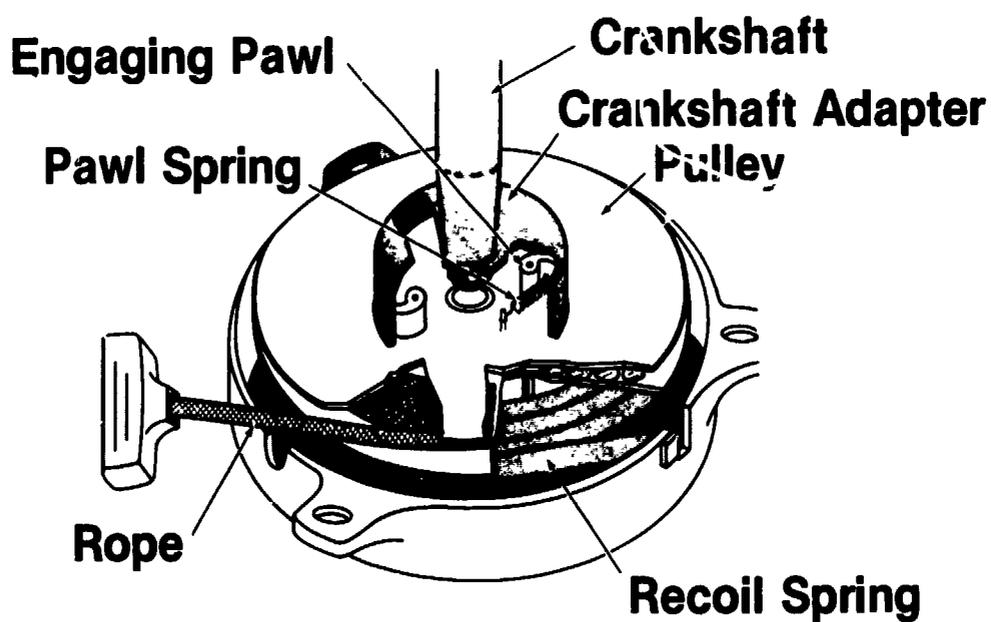
- A. Battery — Source of electrical power
- B. Key switch — Device which activates the starter motor switch
- C. Starter motor switch — Switch which closes the high amperage circuit from battery to starter
- D. Starter motor — Drives the flywheel to crank the engine
- E. Switch wire — Conductor that carries a low amount of current to energize the starter motor switch
- F. Battery cables — Conductors which carry large amounts of current to complete the starter circuit

Types of Starters

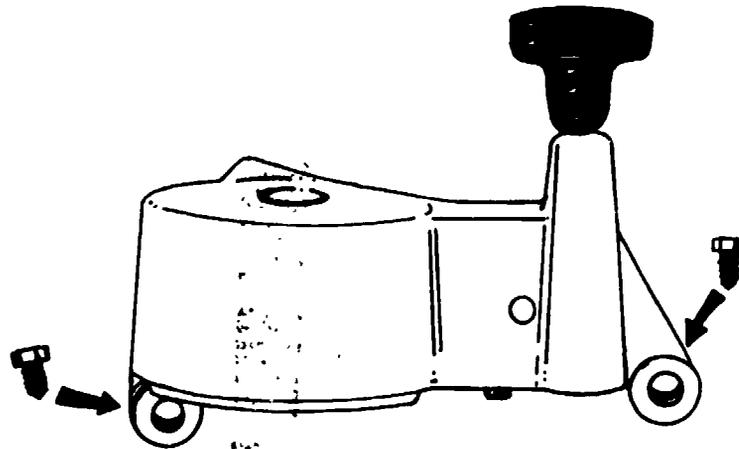
Rope Wind



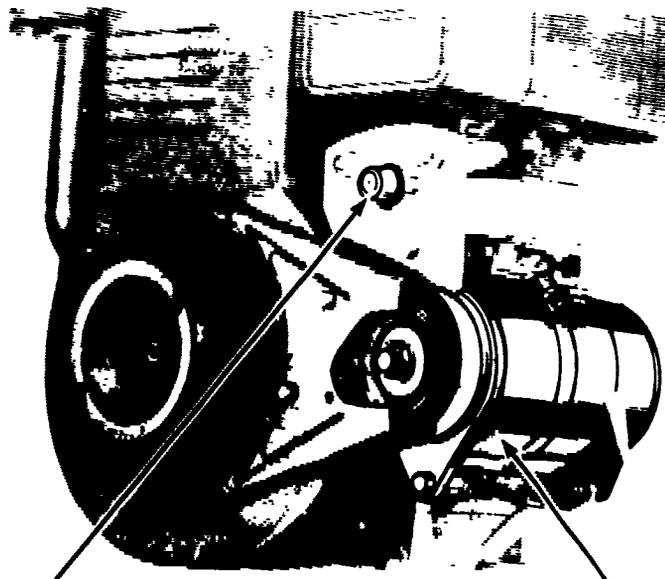
Rope Rewind



Types of Starters (Continued)



Vertical Pull



Starter Switch

**Electric Starter-Generator
Electric**

STARTING SYSTEMS UNIT IV-C

JOB SHEET #1 — REMOVE, DISASSEMBLE, TEST, SERVICE, REASSEMBLE, AND REPLACE A DC STARTER

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Armature grinder and test light
3. Solvent and parts brush or rag
4. Ignition wrench set
5. Awl
6. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Remove starter

- a. Disconnect battery ground cable
- b. Remove cables and electrical wires from starter

(CAUTION: Use two wrenches on terminals when removing top nut to prevent twisting terminal.)

(NOTE: Carefully identify location of wires with masking tape.)

- c. Remove starter mounting bolts as required
- d. Remove starter brackets and shields as required
- e. Remove starter from engine

2. Disassemble starter

- a. Clean outside case with solvent and brush or rag

(NOTE: Do not use excessive amounts or submerge starter in solvent. Solvent should not be allowed to enter the starter.)

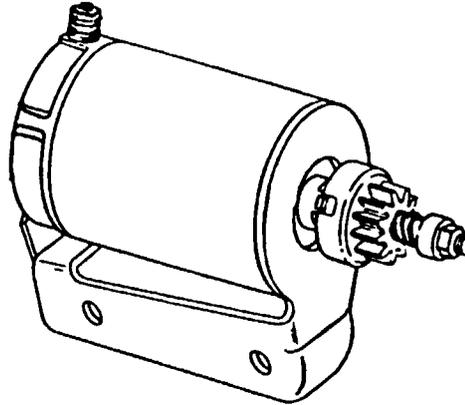
- b. Scribe mating surfaces for reassembly
- c. Remove thru bolts
- d. Remove end cap

JOB SHEET #1

- e. Lift spring and release brush from end cap
- f. Remove front plate with armature

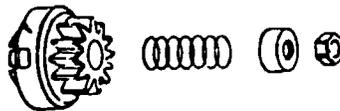
(NOTE: Some models may have starter mounting attached to front plate. See Figure 1.)

FIGURE 1



- g. Place armature in vise
- (NOTE: Be sure to use wooden blocks or jaw protectors on the vise to keep from damaging armature.)
- h. Disassemble drive assembly (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



- 1) Remove stop nut
- 2) Separate spring, washers, and drive pinion

(NOTE: Be sure to note location of thrust washers on armature shaft if used.)

3. Test and service

- a. Clean all starter components

(NOTE: Clean all parts by wiping with clean cloths. The armature, field coils, and starter drive assembly must not be washed in solvent.)

- b. Arrange all starter components for inspection
- c. Inspect starter bushings for looseness and replace as required

JOB SHEET #1

- d. Inspect starter brushes for wear

(NOTE: Brushes worn to half their original length or less should be replaced.)

- e. Inspect the starter drive

(NOTE: The starter drive pinion gear should turn freely in one direction and lock when turned slowly in the other direction.)

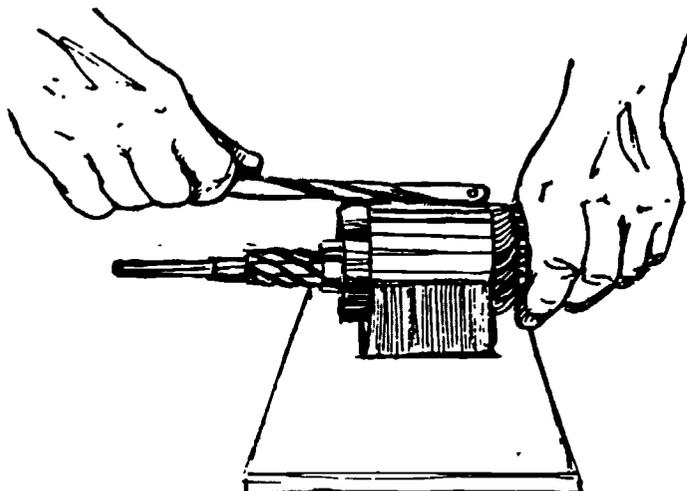
- f. Inspect armature commutator

(NOTE: If the armature commutator is rough or out-of-round it should be turned down using suitable equipment.)

- g. Test the armature for short circuits (Figure 3)

(NOTE: Place the armature on a growler and rotate the armature while holding a hacksaw blade over the armature core. If the blade vibrates, the armature is shorted and will require replacement.)

FIGURE 3

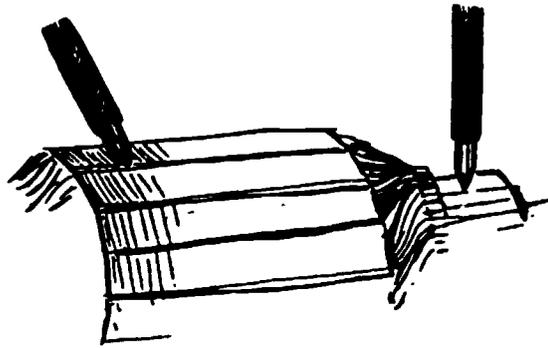


JOB SHEET #1

- h. Check armature for ground (Figure 4)

(NOTE: Place one lead of a test lamp on the armature core or shaft and the other on the commutator. If the lamp lights, the armature is grounded and will require replacement.)

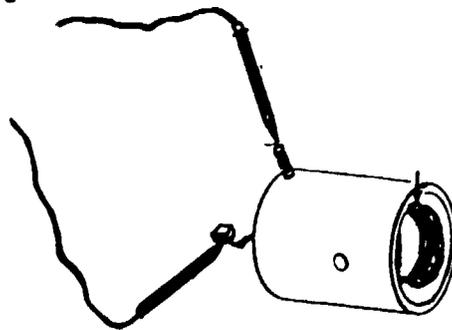
FIGURE 4



- i. Check field coil for open circuit (Figure 5)

(NOTE: Place one lead of the test lamp on the insulated brush and the other on the field connection tab. If the lamp does not light, the field coil is open and will require replacement.)

FIGURE 5



- j. Replace worn or damaged parts

JOB SHEET #1

4. Reassemble starter
 - a. Place front plate back on armature
(NOTE: Be sure and replace thrust washers if used.)
 - b. Replace drive assembly
(NOTE: Torque stop nut to manufacturer's specifications.)
 - c. Lift spring and reinstall brush in end cap
 - d. Place end cap on starter
 - e. Line up scribe marks
 - f. Install thru bolts
(NOTE: Torque to manufacturer's specifications.)

5. Replace starter
 - a. Clean starter mounting surfaces
 - b. Position starter in mounting position and start bolts
 - c. Tighten mounting bolts securely
 - d. Place all wire and cables on correct terminals
 - e. Tighten nuts securely
(NOTE: Double wrench as in removal, hold terminals securely, and do not overtighten top nuts.)
 - f. Replace all brackets and shields
 - g. Tighten all bolts and nuts securely
 - h. Replace battery ground cable
 - i. Start engine several times to check starter

STARTING SYSTEMS UNIT IV-C

JOB SHEET #2 — REPLACE STARTER REWIND SPRING

A. Tools and materials needed

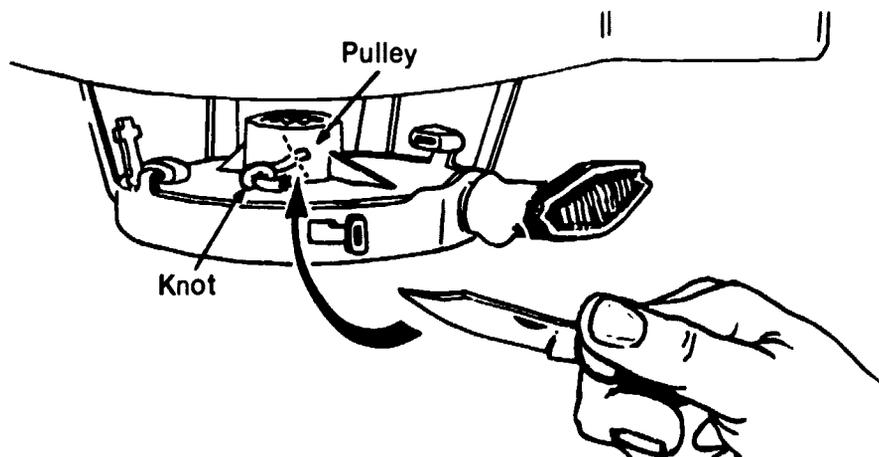
1. Hand tool assortment
2. Rope inserter
3. $\frac{3}{4}$ " square piece of square stock
4. New recoil spring
5. New starter rope
6. Small amount of grease
7. Cleaning solvent
8. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

(NOTE: Wear proper safety equipment.)

1. Remove shroud or blower housing from engine
2. Turn blower housing upside down (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



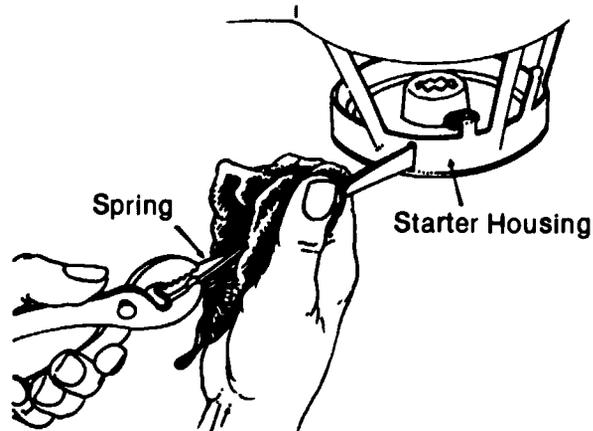
3. Cut knot at starter pulley and remove rope (Figure 1)

JOB SHEET #2

4. Grasp outer end of starter spring with pliers and pull spring out of housing as far as possible (Figure 2)

(NOTE: Clean the spring with shop towel as you remove.)

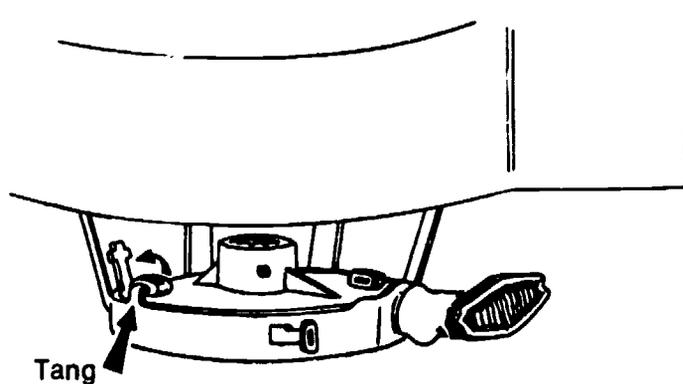
FIGURE 2



5. Bend one of the tangs up and lift out starter pulley turning spring $\frac{1}{4}$ turn to disconnect (Figure 3)

(CAUTION: Do not allow spring to fly out of housing as injury could result.)

FIGURE 3



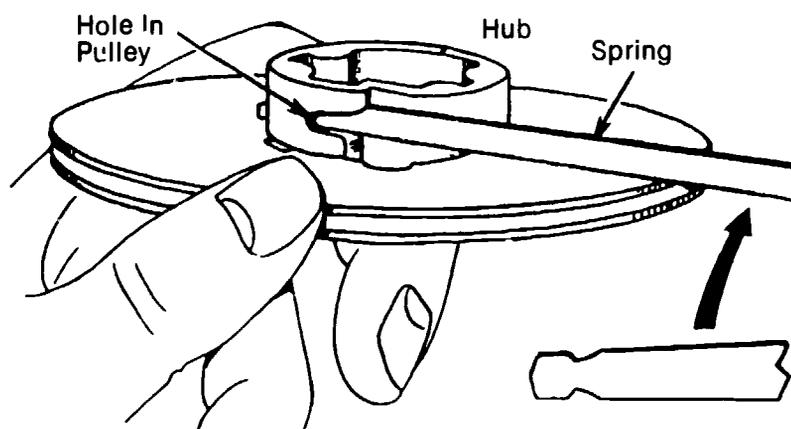
6. Clean starter housing pulley and spring in solvent and wipe dry
7. Straighten spring to allow easier installation and restore tension

(NOTE: Replace spring if it is damaged; replace nylon bumpers if worn.)

JOB SHEET #2

8. Insert other end of spring through slot in blower housing, and hook the end of spring into pulley hub (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4

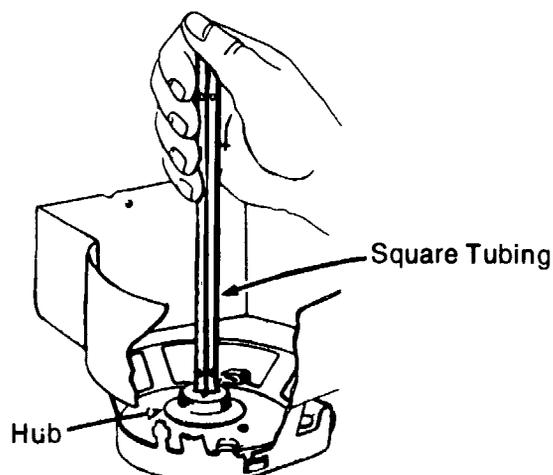


9. Place small amount of grease on pulley, set pulley into housing, and bend tang down

(NOTE: Make sure pulley is depressed fully into blower housing when measuring tang gap.)

10. Place $\frac{3}{4}$ " square tubing into center of pulley hub (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5

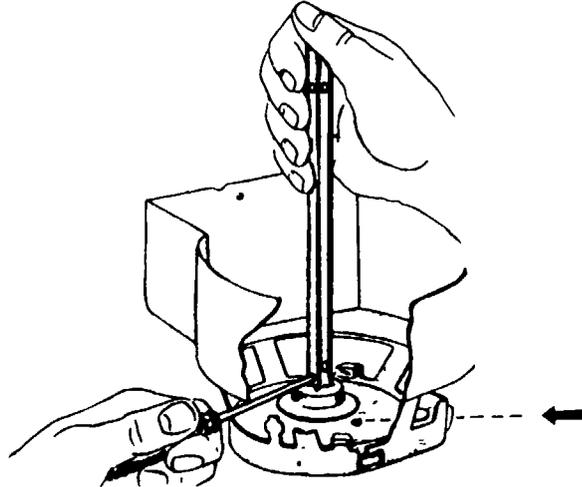


11. Wind pulley counterclockwise until spring is tight

JOB SHEET #2

12. Hold square tubing securely and back off the pulley one turn or until hole in pulley for rope and eyelet in blower housing are in alignment (Figure 6)

FIGURE 6

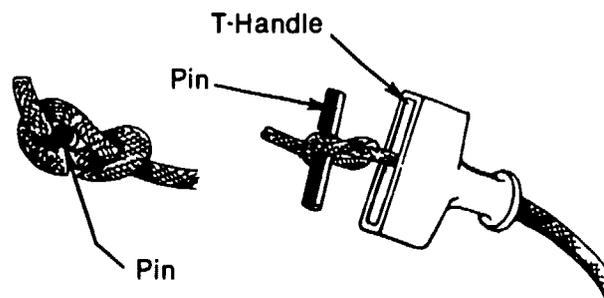


13. Replace starter rope with a new rope if it is frayed

(NOTE: Four feet of rope is needed for most starters and each end of new rope should be burnt with a match and wiped with a rag to prevent swelling and unraveling.)

14. Insert rope through T-handle and loosely tie a figure 8 knot; place the pin through the knot and pull it tightly into handle (Figure 7)

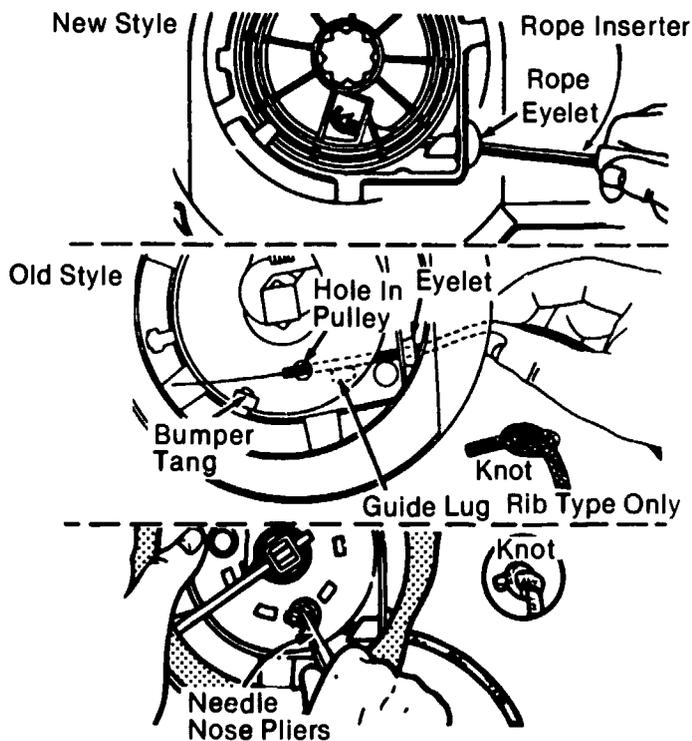
FIGURE 7



JOB SHEET #2

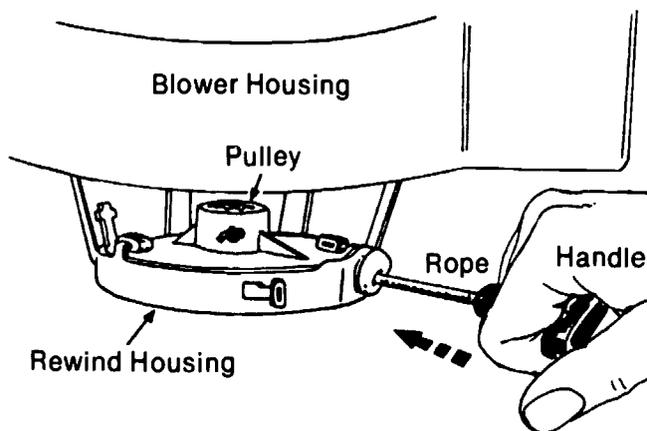
15. Use a rope inserter tool to thread rope through rope eyelet in housing and out pulley hole; tie a knot in rope and pull it tightly into knot cavity (Figure 8)

FIGURE 8



16. Remove square tubing to release spring tension and allow rope to slowly rewind onto pulley (Figure 9)

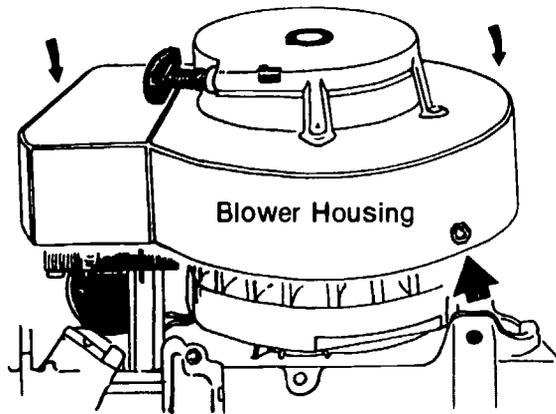
FIGURE 9



JOB SHEET #2

17. Install blower housing on engine (Figure 10)

FIGURE 10



18. Reconnect spark plug wire
19. Start engine several times to be sure starter is operating correctly
20. Clean work area and put tools away

STARTING SYSTEMS UNIT IV-C

JOB SHEET #3 — SERVICE THE VERTICAL PULL STARTER

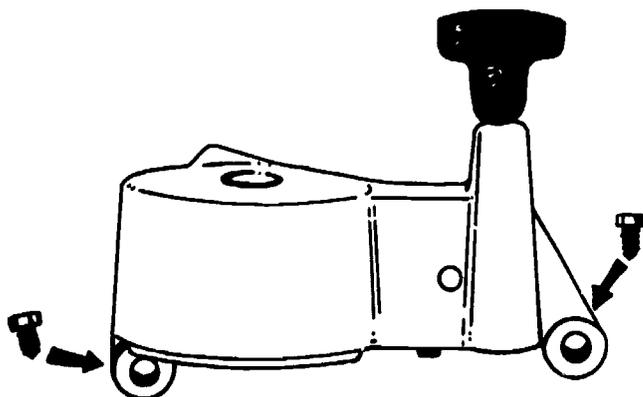
A. Tools and materials needed

1. New spring
2. New starter rope
3. Clean solvent
4. Safety glasses
5. Assortment of hand tools
6. Rope inserter tool
7. Safety gloves

B. Procedure

1. Read operator's manual
2. Wear proper safety equipment
3. Organize your work station
4. Disconnect spark plug wire
5. Remove starter from engine (Figure 1)

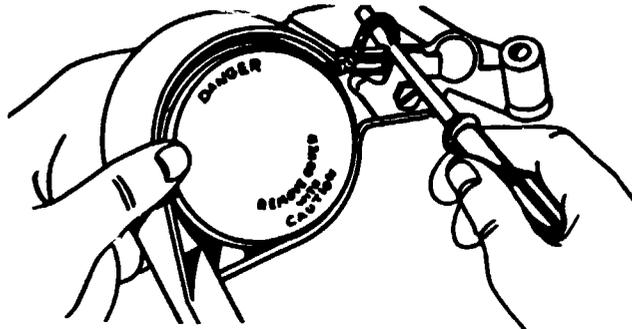
FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #3

6. Remove tension from rope and use a screwdriver to lift the rope up 10 to 12 inches (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



7. Wind the rope and pulley 2 to 3 turns counterclockwise to release spring tension (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3

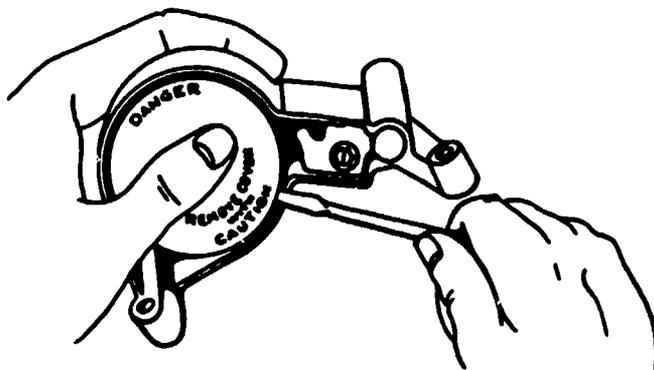


(CAUTION: Do not pull rope with pulley cover removed unless the spring is released.)

JOB SHEET #3

8. Remove cover with a screwdriver (Figure 4)

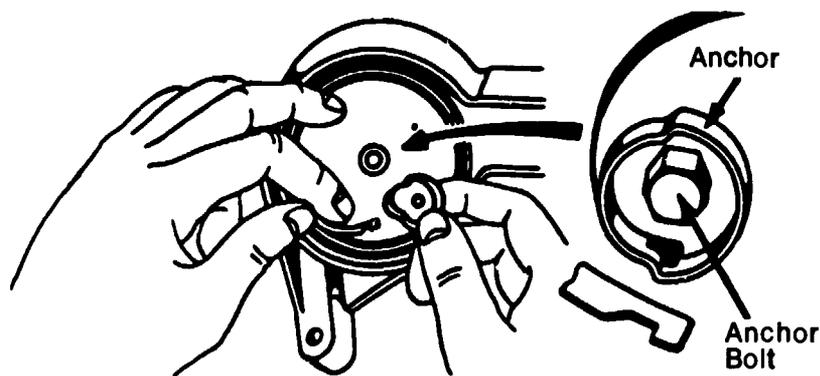
FIGURE 4



(CAUTION: Read warning on plastic cover and wear safety glasses.)

9. Remove anchor bolt and spring anchor to loosen pulley assembly from housing (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5

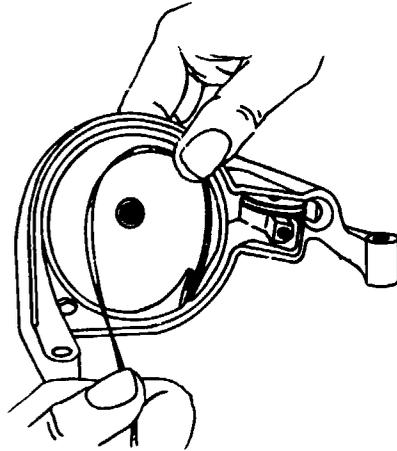


JOB SHEET #3

10. Carefully unwind spring, remove, and inspect for breakage (Figure 6)

(NOTE: If spring is not being removed, always replace pulley cover after removing the anchor bolt and spring anchor.)

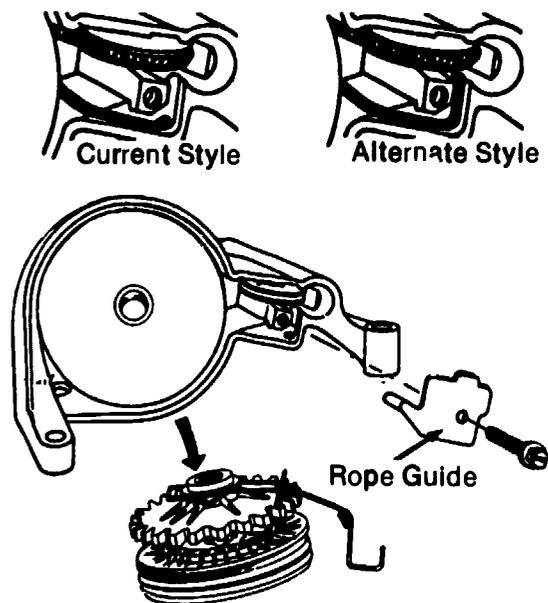
FIGURE 6



11. Remove rope guide (Figure 7)

(NOTE: Before removing pulley from housing, note position of the link for reassembly. Slowly remove pulley assembly from housing.)

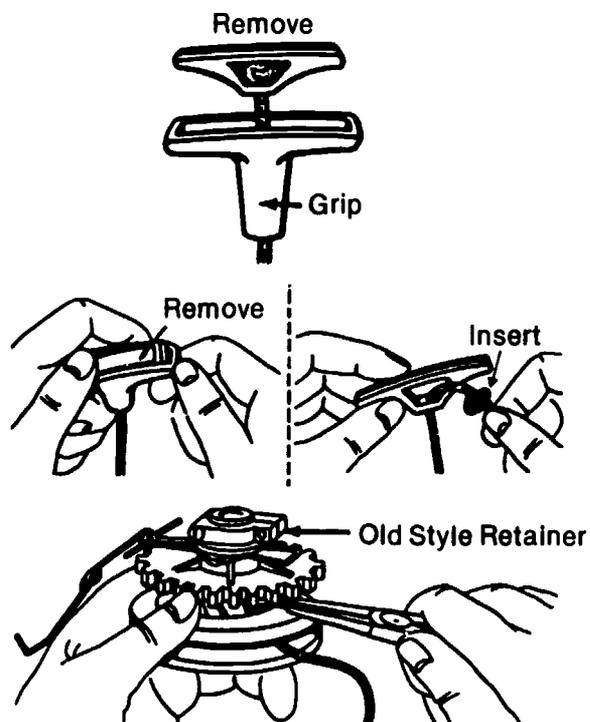
FIGURE 7



JOB SHEET #3

12. Remove insert from handle and untie knot (Figure 8)

FIGURE 8



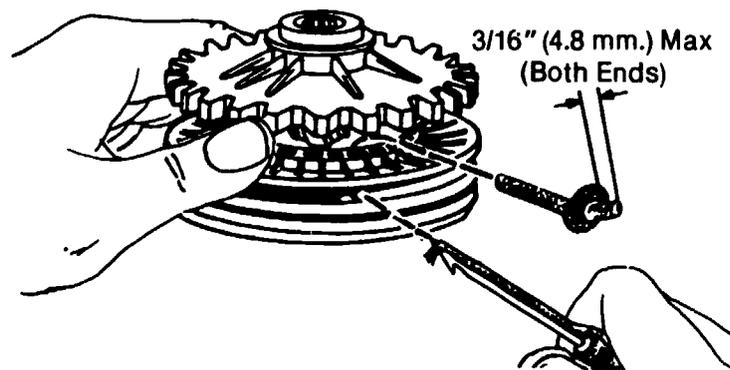
13. Unwind rope from pulley, grasp knotted end with needle nose pliers, and remove rope (Figure 8)
14. Clean all dirty or oily parts in solvent for reassembly

JOB SHEET #3

15. Insert new rope into the pulley, using the rope inserter tool and tie small knot, heat seal, and pull back into pulley (Figure 9)

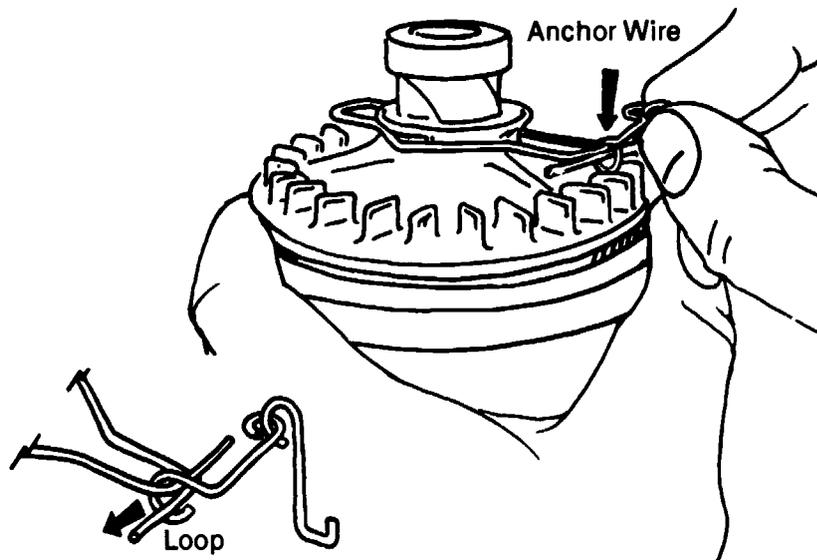
(NOTE: Make sure rope does not interfere with gear assembly. Forty-eight inches of Number 4 rope will be needed.)

FIGURE 9



16. When installing the break spring note the position of the loop on the anchor wire. The rounded portion should point toward the teeth of the gear (Figure 10)

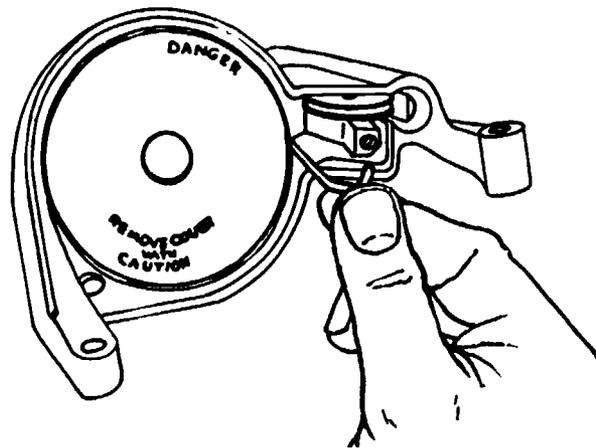
FIGURE 10



JOB SHEET #3

17. Holding the link, install pulley assembly into housing (Figure 11)

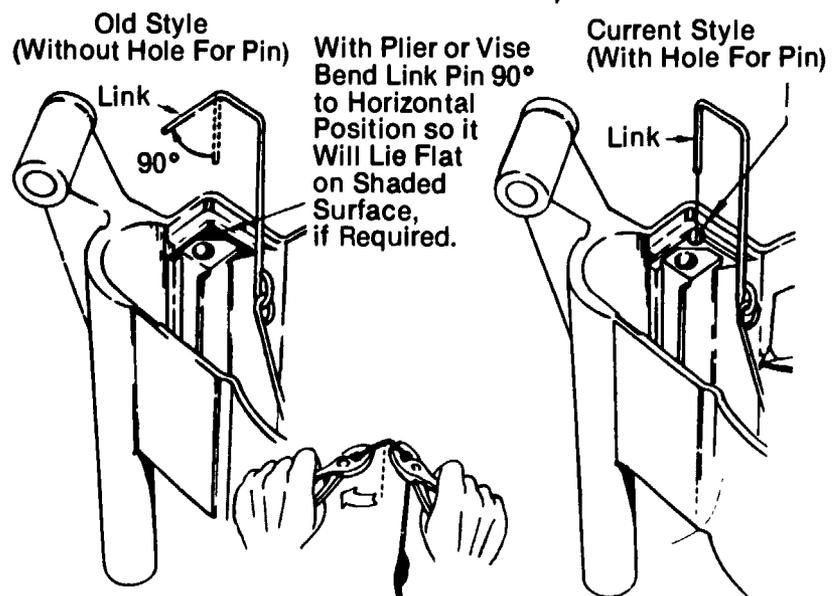
FIGURE 11



18. Using appropriate illustration, install link into housing (Figure 12)

(NOTE: Older link styles may be modified as illustrated.)

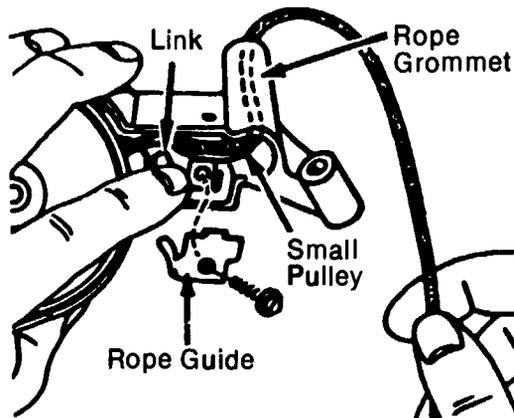
FIGURE 12



JOB SHEET #3

19. Lead rope over small pulley, through rope grommet, and install rope guide (Figure 13)

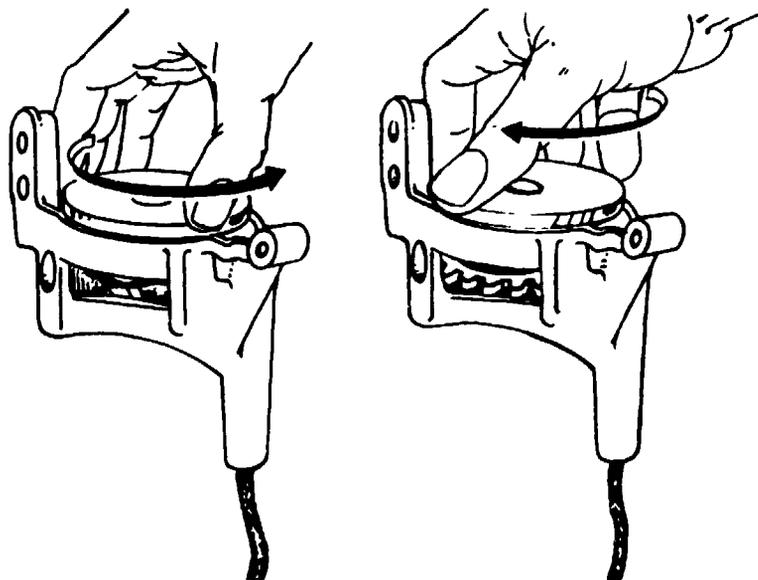
FIGURE 13



20. Check the link for proper friction by manually rotating pulley assembly (Figure 14)

(NOTE: The gear should move to both extremes of its travel; if not, replace the link assembly.)

FIGURE 14



JOB SHEET #3

21. Thread rope through grip and into insert. Tie a small tight knot and heat seal to prevent loosening (Figure 15)
22. Pull knot into pocket and snap insert into grip (Figure 16)

FIGURE 15

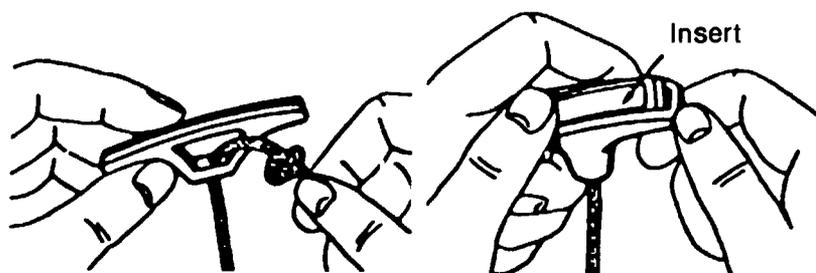
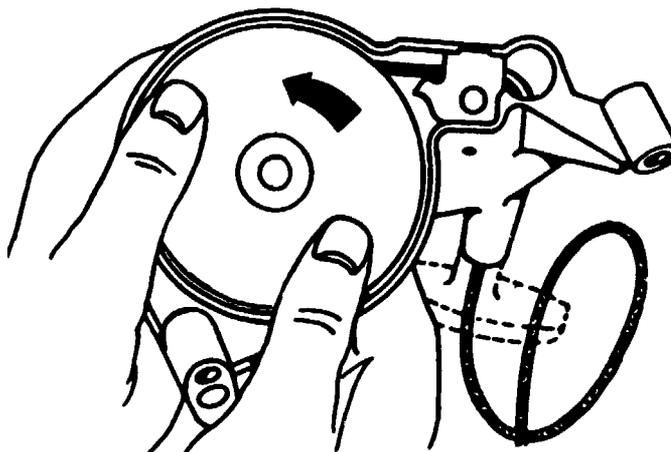


FIGURE 16



23. Wind pulley in a counterclockwise direction until rope is fully retrieved (Figure 17)

FIGURE 17

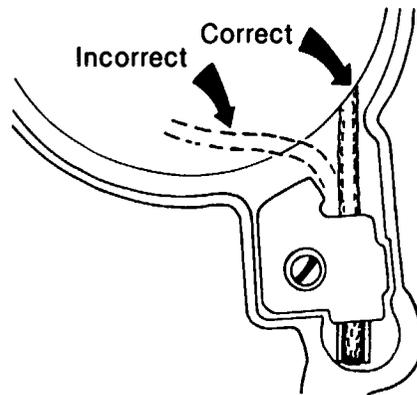


JOB SHEET #3

24. Check position of rope (Figure 18)

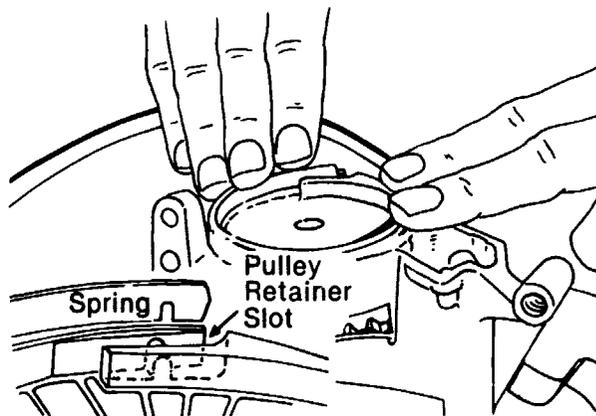
(NOTE: It should not be touching the rope guide.)

FIGURE 18



25. Secure starter in vice and oil the spring lightly (Figure 19)

FIGURE 19

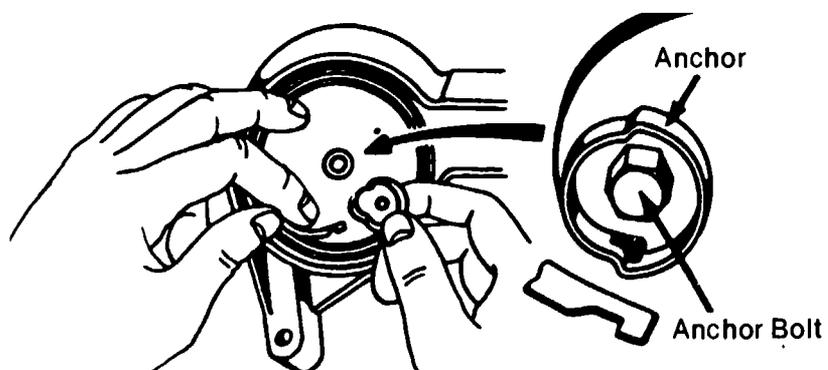


26. Install spring by hooking end in pulley retainer slot and wind spring into housing (Figure 19)

JOB SHEET #3

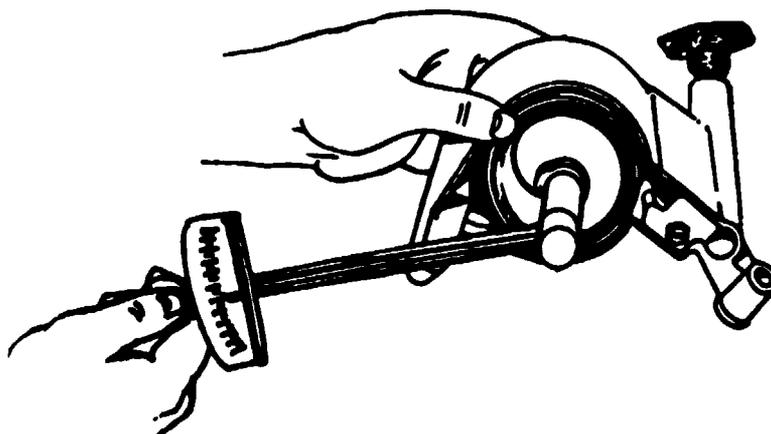
27. Hook end of spring to anchor and install bolt (Figure 20)

FIGURE 20



28. Torque to 75-90 inch-pounds and replace cover (Figure 21)

FIGURE 21

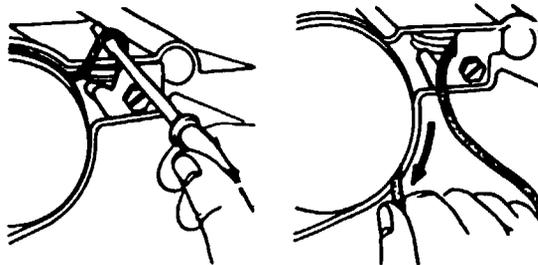


JOB SHEET #3

29. Wind rope in a **clockwise** direction two to three turns around pulley to secure proper spring tension (Figure 22)

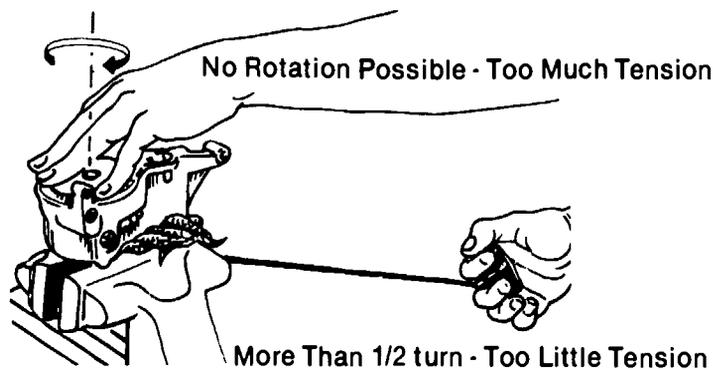
(NOTE: To wind starter spring, pull approximately one foot of rope out of pulley.)

FIGURE 22



30. Check spring tension (Figure 23)

FIGURE 23



- a. When rope will not fully retract, wrap rope around pulley one more turn in a **clockwise** direction.
- b. If there is too much spring tension, pull the rope out so that it is fully extended and hold lightly; rotate the pulley clockwise

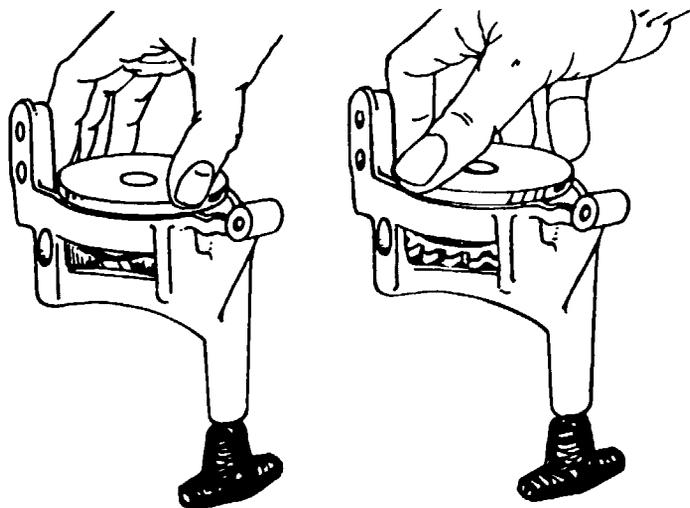
(NOTE: The pulley should rotate no more than $\frac{1}{2}$ turn. If pulley cannot be rotated, the spring is wound too tight. Unwind the rope one turn at a time until proper spring tension is obtained.)

JOB SHEET #3

31. Check starter for proper operation

(NOTE: The gear should move in and out.)

FIGURE 24



32. Install starter assembly on engine and check operation by pulling starter rope

(NOTE: Pulley gear should engage the flywheel.)

33. Reconnect the spark plug wire
34. Start engine several times to be sure starter is operating correctly
35. Clean your work area and put away tools

STARTING SYSTEMS UNIT IV-C

NAME _____

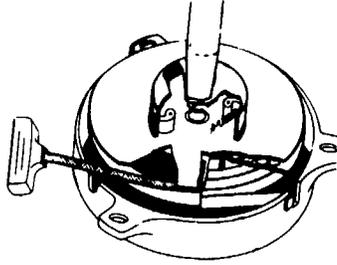
TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

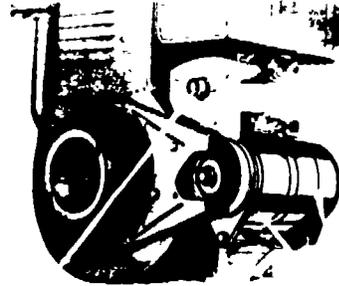
- | | | |
|---------|--|---------------------------------------|
| _____a. | Device which converts mechanical or electrical power into rotating motion for cranking engine | 1. Solenoid |
| _____b. | Housing which connects and contains starter component parts | 2. Brushes |
| _____c. | Main shaft in starter, composed of commutator segments, windings, and bushing or bearing journal | 3. Pole shoes |
| _____d. | Sliding contacts which transfer electrical energy to commutator | 4. Starter frame |
| _____e. | Gear that meshes with flywheel to crank engine | 5. Safe interlock (neutral interlock) |
| _____f. | Ends of magnets in the field frame of a starting motor | 6. Starter |
| _____g. | Wire wrapped around pole pieces to increase the strength of the magnetic field when current is applied | 7. Armature |
| _____h. | Safety device which allows engine to be started in neutral only | 8. Field coils |
| _____i. | Electromagnetic device which provides a reciprocating motion for remote control of starting circuit | 9. Starter drive pinion |

TEST

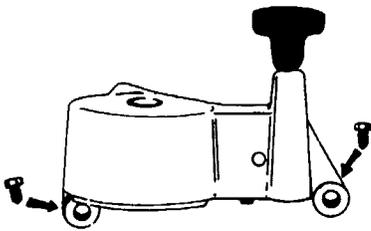
2. Identify the types of small gas engine starters.



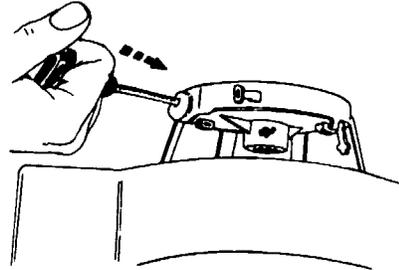
a. _____



b. _____



c. _____



d. _____

TEST

3. Match the components of the mechanical starting system on the right with their correct functions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|--------------------|
| _____a. | Returns pawl to neutral position during rewind cycle | 1. Starter housing |
| _____b. | Locks pulley to crankshaft adapter on starting pull of rope | 2. Recoil spring |
| _____c. | Housing for pawls that lock to crankshaft adapter | 3. Pawl spring |
| _____d. | Used to automatically rewind the starter rope after each starting attempt | 4. Engaging pawl |
| _____e. | Cover for the starter mechanism | 5. Pulley |

4. Match the components of the DC starting system on the right with their correct functions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|-------------------------|
| _____a. | Source of electrical power | 1. Starter motor |
| _____b. | Device which activates the starter motor switch | 2. Key switch |
| _____c. | Switch which closes the high amperage circuit from battery to starter | 3. Battery cables |
| _____d. | Drives the flywheel to crank the engine | 4. Battery |
| _____e. | Conductor that carries a low amount of current to energize the starter motor switch | 5. Switch wire |
| _____f. | Conductors which carry large amounts of current to complete the starter circuit | 6. Starter motor switch |

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

5. Demonstrate the ability to:
- Remove, disassemble, test, service, reassemble, and replace a starter (Job Sheet #1).
 - Replace starter rewind spring (Job Sheet #2).
 - Service the vertical pull starter (Job Sheet #3).

STARTING SYSTEMS UNIT IV-C

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.

a.	6	f.	3
b.	4	g.	8
c.	7	h.	5
d.	2	i.	1
e.	9		

2.

a.	Rope-rewind
b.	Electric (AC and DC)
c.	Vertical pull
d.	Rope-wind

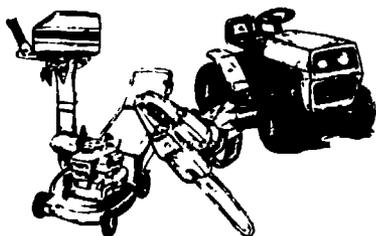
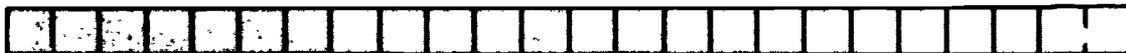
3.

a.	3
b.	4
c.	5
d.	2
e.	1

4.

a.	4
b.	2
c.	6
d.	1
e.	5
f.	3

5. Performance skills evaluated according to the standards identified by the instructor



Parts Management Unit I-D



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to price, stock, and inventory small engine parts. The student should also be able to use a parts catalog. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment and job sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to parts management with their correct definitions.
2. Select types of information found in the parts catalog.
3. List common parts by their abbreviations.
4. Complete a list of steps in using a parts catalog.
5. Select true statements concerning how to price parts correctly.
6. Complete a list of statements concerning the microfiche system and how to use it.
7. Select advantages of using computers in inventory control and stocking.
8. List advantages of good inventory control.
9. Select guidelines for taking a physical inventory.
10. Complete a service order (Assignment Sheet #1).
11. Demonstrate the ability to take a physical inventory of small engine parts (Job Sheet #1).

PARTS MANAGEMENT UNIT I-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.
- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.
- E. Provide students with information sheet.
- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with assignment and job sheets.
- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Invite a small engine repair shop owner to class to discuss parts storage and the inventory system.
2. Designate an area of shop as parts center and have students practice restocking procedures.
3. Furnish students with parts catalogs and have them practice looking up part numbers and prices. Have them make price comparisons between brands such as Champion vs. AC sparkplugs.
4. Discuss ways to order parts.

(NOTE: Stress the importance of phone orders when parts are needed quickly.)

5. Demonstrate proper use of the parts catalog.
6. Furnish students with an engine and/or appropriate information to complete Assignment Sheet #1. Repair information can be given to students, or instructor may prefer to have students check engine and determine parts to be replaced and work to be performed.
7. Demonstrate the proper procedure for taking a physical inventory.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

8. Order training films from local NAPA dealer warehouse which deals with inventory control and show to students.
 9. Take students to a parts warehouse which uses a computer for ordering parts and for inventory control. Or, invite a computer sales representative to class to discuss practical applications of a computer in a small engine shop.
 10. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.
- I. Give test.
 - J. Evaluate test.
 - K. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 1. TM 1 — Master Parts Price List
 2. TM 2 — Abbreviations
 3. TM 3 — Standard Package
 4. TM 4 — Microfiche System
 5. TM 5 — Inventory Control Sheet
- E. Assignment Sheet #1 — Complete a Service Order
- F. Job Sheet #1 — Take a Physical Inventory
- G. Test
- H. Answers to test

REFERENCE USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

Fuqua, Lou and Debbie. *Parts Specialist*. Stillwater, OK: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1982.

PARTS MANAGEMENT UNIT I-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Master parts catalog — Provides a means of determining the correct part number for pricing and ordering purposes
- B. Footnote — A note of reference, explanation, or comment placed below the text on a given page; usually indicated by a small number or asterisk
- C. Illustration lists — Exploded views of the parts with a reference number
- D. Inventory — Parts and supplies on hand for sale to customers
- E. Inventory control — Methods of keeping record of the quantity and type of merchandise on hand
- F. Perpetual inventory — Record kept of each item showing the amount of merchandise put in stock, withdrawn, and on hand at any given time without the necessity of taking a physical count

II. Types of information found in the parts catalog

- A. Model series illustrated parts and price list (Transparency 1)
- B. Engines by type number and model
- C. List of abbreviations (Transparency 2)
- D. Standard package in ordering parts (Transparency 3)

III. Common parts and their abbreviations (Transparency 2)

Part	Abbreviation	Part	Abbreviation
Alternator	Alt	Magneto	Mag
Armature	Arma	Motor	Mtr
Bearing	Brg	Point	Pt
Carburetor	Carb	Regulator	Reg
Condenser	Cond	Retainer	Ret
Crankcase	Crkcse	Spring	Spg
Cylinder	Cyl	Starter	Str
Engine	Eng	Switch	Sw
Generator	Gen	Terminal	Term
Governor	Gov	Thermostat	Therm
Ignition	Ign	Valve	Vlv

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Basic steps in using a parts catalog

- A. Refer to engine model, type, and code number which may be found on the blower housing of the engine

(NOTE: Pertinent information may also be found in manufacturer's service manual.)

- B. Refer to illustrated parts section; the number on the illustration is the reference number

- C. After the reference number has been identified, refer to the numerical parts list where reference and master parts numbers are listed

(NOTE: The master part is used on all type numbers except those type numbers under "NOTE.")

- D. If a "Note" appears below the master part number, this means this part differs from the master part for certain types; if the number is listed under "Note," order the part referred to

V. How to price parts correctly

- A. Manufacturers' price sheets come in many forms

1. Some have list price, dealer price, and jobber price all together on one sheet

Example:

SUGGESTED PRICES			
PART NO.	LIST PRICE	DEALER PRICE	JOBBER PRICE
A-239	16.50	14.50	12.50
C-416	3.19	2.90	2.79
J-118	69.10	64.29	60.05

INFORMATION SHEET

2. Some have different colored pages for each type of price list

Example:

Blue Sheet SUGGESTED JOBBER NET PRICES		Green Sheet SUGGESTED DEALER PRICES	
Catalog Number	Jobber Price	Catalog Number	Jobber Price
2002	11.50	2002	13.50
2003	12.50	2003	14.50
2004	13.50	2004	15.50
2005	14.50	2005	16.50
2006	15.50	2006	17.50
2007	16.50	2007	18.50
2008	17.50	2008	19.50
2009	18.50	2009	20.50

3. These lists quote different prices depending on the classification of the customer
4. It is very important to learn your company's discount procedures so you will charge customers from the appropriate price sheet

(NOTE: Typical classifications are: consumers; fleet accounts; dealers; independent garages; industrial accounts; jobbers; government agencies.)

- B. Use your price sheet every time you make a sale

(NOTE: Do not quote a price from memory.)

- C. Remember, price sheets are CONFIDENTIAL, and some employers do not allow you to quote other than list prices over the phone
- D. The "effective date" of a price sheet is important to notice because they must be kept current

VI. The microfiche system and how to use it (Transparency 4)

(NOTE: Many parts dealers record their catalog pages on microfilm and use microfiche readers; this eliminates much of the space needed for catalog racks.)

- A. Catalog pages are reduced and put in rows of microimages on microfiche cards
- B. Since these images are too small to read with the naked eye, microfiche readers are used to magnify the images and project them onto a viewing screen

INFORMATION SHEET

- C. The microfiche cards then are labeled according to year, model, and types of parts shown on each card
- D. When a customer gives you the necessary information to look up a part, you simply locate the corresponding card and place it in the reader
- E. Find appropriate grouping and page for part needed
- F. Choose correct part number

(NOTE: The same information is given in catalogs and on microfiche cards; the advantage of microfilm is the tremendous amount of material that can be condensed onto one card; for example, a catalog consisting of 1,000 pages or more could easily be contained on one 4" x 6" card.)

VII. Advantages of using computers in inventory control and stocking (Transparency 5)

- A. Quickly produces an order printout for daily or weekly purchases from a supplier
- B. Produces a clearly printed invoice for the customer
- C. Automatically removes items sold from inventory
- D. Saves time in the posting of items on inventory cards
- E. Can be programmed to set minimums and maximums
- F. Checks stock and identifies superseded items
- G. An "on line" computer can order merchandise automatically
- H. Can check suppliers stock automatically
- I. Can check backorder items

(NOTE: The computer helps in many other areas of business operations, but is only as accurate as the person operating it.)

VIII. Advantages of good inventory control

- A. Keeps supplies and parts up-to-date
- B. Keeps track of damaged stock
- C. Controls improperly binned stock
- D. Keeps customer satisfaction up
- E. Controls understocking or overstocking
- F. Shows movement and turnover of stock

INFORMATION SHEET

IX. Guidelines for taking a physical inventory

- A. Merchandise should be arranged by shelf or section, or the order in which the merchandise will be recorded on the inventory sheet
- B. When filling out the description column use a wavy line to indicate the item is the same as the item on the previous line; do not use ditto ("") marks on this column
- C. Do not erase; cross out, using a pen or pencil for corrections
- D. Write legibly because someone must read what you have written

(NOTE: Write dollars and cents accurately, making certain to keep the dollar amount in the dollar column and the cents in their column. Also write numbers such as 1, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9 as these numbers can be confused with one another.)

- E. Do not leave spaces blank in any of the columns when recording stock items
- F. Do not leave any lines blank
- G. Count merchandise from the top shelf first moving from left to right then down
- H. Quantities of an item should be listed per item with the price entered per item, and then extended and added to the total

Master Parts Price List

MASTER PARTS PRICE LIST					
Part No.	List Price	Description	Dispo. Code	Stkg. Code	Std. Pkg.
22856	1.30	Lock-Rod Screw		5	
22859	.55	Retainer-Coil		4	
22880		Use 62899	C		
22890	7.55	Housing-Blower		5	
22906	.95	Lock-Nut		4	
22907	1.75	Support-Tank		3	
22918	3.55	Dipper-Conn Rod		5	
22927		Use 220805	A		
22928	2.00	Clp-Arm Spring		4	
22944	.65	Lock-Rod Screw		5	
22946	1.20	Lock-Rod Screw		4	
22947	1.10	Lock-Rod Screw		5	
22951	3.05	Shield-Cylinder		5	
22963	2@ .30	Washer-Cyl Head		3	20
23056	.85	Key-Dr Pulley		5	
23059	3.70	Lever-Shut Off		5	
23108	.80	Bushing-Shaft		3	10
23114	.55	Pin-Float Hinge		4	
23117	.80	Retainer-Valve		4	
23118	.75	Nut-Packing		4	
23123	.70	Screw-Choke Lev		3	10
23125		Use 93043	A		
23184	1.50	Retainer-Spring		2	10
23187	.65	Pin-Vlv Spg Ret		4	

Abbreviations

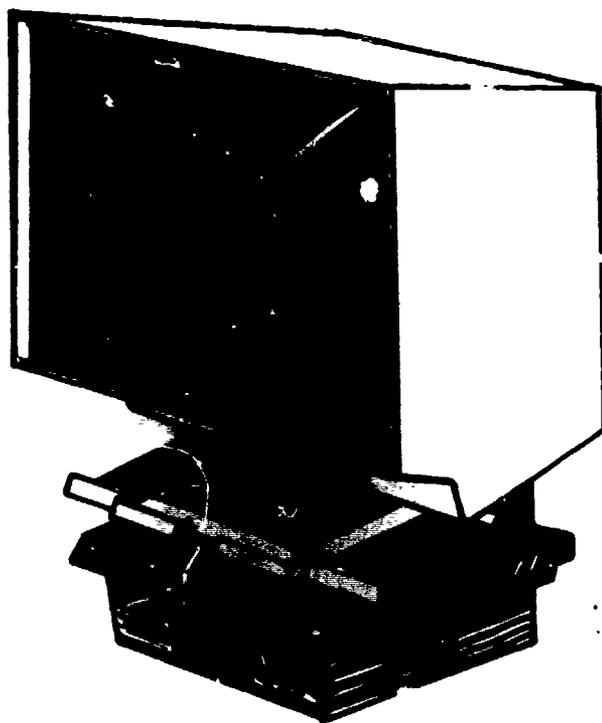
adj	adjusting	el	elbow	pn	plain
adv	advance	elec	electric	pl	plate
alt	alternator	eng	engine	pt	point
arma	armature	ex	exhaust	pull	pulley
assy	assembly	ext	extension		
aux	auxiliary			rec	receptacle
		fill	fillister	rect	rectifier
brg	bearing	flex	flexible	reg	regulator
blo	blower			rep	repair
brkt	bracket	gen	generator	ret	retainer
brkr	breaker	gov	governor	rew	rewind
brea	breather			roto	rotocoil
bshg	bushing	hd	head	rd	round
		hex	hexagon		
carb	carburetor	hsg	housing	sp	spark
cl	cleaner			spg	spring
comb	combination	ign	ignition	std	standard
comp	compression	inst	instrument	str	starter
cond	condenser	insul	insulator	st	stop
conn	connecting	int	intake	sup	support
cntwgt	counterweight			sw	switch
cov	cover	lev	lever		
crk	crank			tap	tapping
crkcse	crankcase	mag	magneto	term	terminal
crkstr	crankstarter	man	manual	therm	thermostat
cyl	cylinder	mani	manifold	thr	throttle
		mech	mechanical		
defl	deflector	mtr	motor	vlv	valve
diaph	diaphragm	mtg	mounting	volt	voltage
dr	drive	muff	muffler		

Standard Package

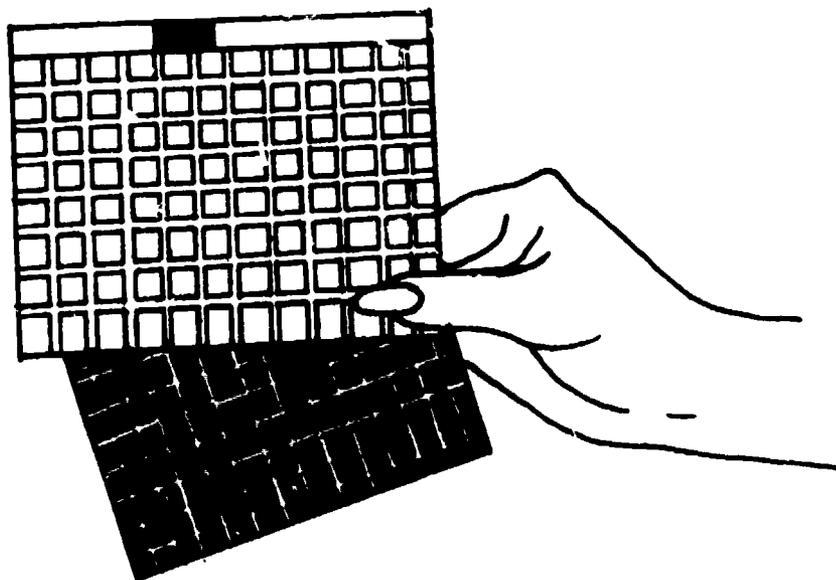
(NOTE: All parts are packaged singly, unless otherwise indicated in the "Price" column (example — 2 @ .30). Many parts are also offered in multiple package quantities, as shown in the "Standard Package" column.)

Part No.	List Price	Description	Dispo. Code	Stkg. Code	Pieces in Std. Pkg.
99176	3.15	Seal-Oil		4	
63770	2@ .30	Ball-Str Clutch		1	20
93911	.40	Spacer, Tank		2	10
290290	9.80	Ring Set-Std		2	10-100
270069	.40	Gasket, Crkcse		1	10-100-400

Microfiche System



Microfiche Reader



Microfiche Cards

Inventory Control Sheet

LINE	PART NUMBER	\$ CORE #	PRICE	NEW ON	B	U	ORD	ST	SALES	LST	BUY										
		COD	COST	EXTENTION	ORD	ORD	O	QOH	M	PNT	PK	WT	DESCRIPTION	TD	CURR	L/PD	YTD	L/YR	TR	SLS	OUT
			0.10																		
	391086	L	1.17					-1					OIL SEAL	1	1	0	1				
	391323	L																			
	391483	L	.87					-13					OIL SEAL	13	13	0	13				
	397145	L	1.92										GASKET			0					
RECORD COUNT 221																					
END OF REPORT																					

PARTS MANAGEMENT UNIT I-D

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1 — COMPLETE A SERVICE ORDER

Directions: When preparing a service order, it is important to complete the form accurately. Using the information provided below, complete the service order on the following page.

Owner Information

Name: Joe Customer
 Address: 1010 W. 15th St.
 YourTown, YourState
 Phone: 505-555-1111
 Plan of Payment: Cash

Engine Information

(NOTE: Ask your instructor to provide either an engine or the appropriate information to complete this part of the assignment.)

Model No. _____
 Serial No. _____
 Type Equipment _____
 Manufacturer _____
 Date Purchased _____
 Warranty Claim No. _____

Repair Information

Repair Person (Your Name)
 Date Repaired (Today's Date)
 Parts Replaced/Cost _____

Cost of Labor (NOTE: Figure the number of hours it took to complete work and multiply this by current hourly rate in your area.) _____

PARTS MANAGEMENT UNIT I-D

JOB SHEET #1 — TAKE A PHYSICAL INVENTORY

- A. Materials needed
1. Inventory sheet
 2. Pencil
 3. Bins stocked with parts
 4. Clipboard
- B. Procedure
1. Prepare for inventory
 - a. Pick a partner
 - b. Clean bins
 - c. Open boxes neatly and orderly for easy counting
 - d. Identify and tag miscellaneous parts
 2. Count and record inventory
 - a. Fill out heading on inventory sheet
 - b. Have caller start at top, far left, corner of bin
 - c. Move to the right and down recording every item on the shelves
 - d. Price and extend costs as you go
 - e. Total inventory sheets
 - f. After completing these steps, hand your inventory to your instructor for evaluation

PARTS MANAGEMENT UNIT I-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|---------|--|-------------------------|
| _____a. | Provides a means of determining the correct part number for pricing and ordering purposes | 1. Inventory |
| _____b. | A note of reference, explanation, or comment placed below the text on a given page; usually indicated by a small number or asterisk | 2. Footnote |
| _____c. | Exploded views of the parts with a reference number | 3. Perpetual inventory |
| _____d. | Parts and supplies on hand for sale to customers | 4. Master parts catalog |
| _____e. | Methods of keeping record of the quantity and type of merchandise on hand | 5. Illustration lists |
| _____f. | Record kept of each item showing the amount of merchandise put in stock, withdrawn, and on hand at any given time without the necessity of taking a physical count | 6. Inventory control |

2. Select types of information found in the parts catalog by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- _____a. Model series illustrated parts and price list
- _____b. Methods of keeping parts inventory
- _____c. Engines by type number and model
- _____d. List of abbreviations
- _____e. Standard package in ordering parts
- _____f. Competitor's price lists

TEST

3. List common parts by their abbreviations in the spaces provided.
- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| a. Alternator _____ | g. Motor _____ |
| b. Bearing _____ | h. Point _____ |
| c. Crankcase _____ | i. Retainer _____ |
| d. Cylinder _____ | j. Starter _____ |
| e. Governor _____ | k. Terminal _____ |
| f. Ignition _____ | l. Valve _____ |
4. Complete the following list of steps in using a parts catalog by correctly filling in the blanks.
- a. Refer to engine model, type, and code number which may be found on the _____ of the engine
 - b. Refer to illustrated parts section; the number on the illustration is the _____ number
 - c. After the reference number has been identified, refer to the _____ parts list where reference and master parts numbers are listed
 - d. If a "Note" appears below the master part number, this means this part _____ from the master part for certain types; if the number is listed under "Note," order the part referred to
5. Select true statements concerning how to price parts correctly by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- _____ a. Some manufacturers' price sheets have list price, dealer price, and jobber price all together on one sheet
 - _____ b. Each type of price list is a different color
 - _____ c. Price lists quote different prices depending on the classification of the customer
 - _____ d. It is very important to learn your company's discount procedures so you will charge customers from the appropriate price sheet
 - _____ e. It is OK to quote a price once you have the price list memorized
 - _____ f. Price sheets are CONFIDENTIAL and some employers do not allow you to quote other than list prices over the telephone
 - _____ g. The "effective date" of a price sheet is important to notice because they must be kept current

TEST

6. Complete the following list of statements concerning the microfiche system and how to use it by correctly filling in the blanks.
- a. Catalog pages are reduced and put in rows of _____ on microfiche cards
 - b. Since these images are too small to read with the naked eye, _____ are used to magnify the images and project them onto a viewing screen
 - c. The microfiche cards then are labeled according to _____, model, and types of parts shown on each card
 - d. When a _____ gives you the necessary information to look up a part, you simply locate the corresponding card and place it in the reader
 - e. Find appropriate _____ and page for part needed
 - f. Choose correct _____ number
7. Select advantages of using computers in inventory control and stocking by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- ____a. Quickly produces an order printout for daily or weekly purchases from a supplier
 - ____b. Produces a clearly printed invoice for the customer
 - ____c. Automatically removes items sold from inventory
 - ____d. Saves time in the posting of items on inventory cards
 - ____e. Can be programmed to run the parts department
 - ____f. Checks stock and identifies superseded items
 - ____g. An "on line" computer can order merchandise automatically
 - ____h. Can check suppliers stock automatically
 - ____i. Can check backorder items
8. List four advantages of good inventory control.
- a. _____
 - b. _____
 - c. _____
 - d. _____

TEST

9. Select guidelines for taking a physical inventory by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- _____a. Merchandise should be arranged by shelf or section, or the order in which the merchandise will be recorded on the inventory sheet
 - _____b. When filling out the description column use a dotted line to indicate the item is the same as the item on the previous line; do not use ditto (") marks on this column
 - _____c. Erase for corrections
 - _____d. Write legibly because someone must read what you have written
 - _____e. Do not leave spaces blank in any of the columns when recording stock items
 - _____f. Do not leave any lines blank
 - _____g. Count merchandise from the bottom shelf first moving from left to right then up
 - _____h. Quantities of an item should be listed per item with the price entered per item, and then extended and added to the total

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

10. Complete a service order (Assignment Sheet #1).
11. Demonstrate the ability to take a physical inventory of small engine parts (Job Sheet #1).

PARTS MANAGEMENT UNIT I-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.
 - a. 4
 - b. 2
 - c. 5
 - d. 1
 - e. 6
 - f. 3

2. a,c,d,e

3.

a. Alt	g. Mtr
b. Brg	h. Pt
c. Crkcse	i. Ret
d. Cyl	j. Str
e. Gov	k. Term
f. Ign	l. Vlv

4.
 - a. Blower housing
 - b. Reference
 - c. Numerical
 - d. Differs

5. a,c,d,f,g

6.
 - a. Microimages
 - b. Microfiche readers
 - c. Year
 - d. Customer
 - e. Grouping
 - f. Part

7. a,b,c,d,f,g,h,i

8. Any four of the following:
 - a. Keeps supplies and parts up-to-date
 - b. Keeps track of damaged stock
 - c. Controls improperly binned stock
 - d. Keeps customer satisfaction up
 - e. Controls understocking or overstocking
 - f. Shows movement and turnover of stock

9. a,d,e,f,h

10. Evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor

11. Performance skills evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor

OBJECTIVE SHEET

12. Complete a list of statements concerning the selection and use of oils for best engine performance.
13. Select true statements concerning two cycle oil selection and use.
14. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Change engine oil and filter (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Service crankcase breather (Job Sheet #2)

LUBRICATION SYSTEMS UNIT II-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Invite an industry representative to talk on lubricants.
2. Identify problems by inspecting damaged engine blocks.
3. Run an old engine without oil and have students check engine for damage.
4. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
5. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Dipper Lubrication System
 - 2. TM 2 — Slinger Lubrication System
 - 3. TM 3 — Dipper, Pump, and Constant-Level Sump
 - 4. TM 4 — Crankcase Breather
 - 5. TM 5 — Crankcase Breather Vented to Carburetor
 - 6. TM 6 — Crankcase Breather Principles (4-Cycle Engine)
 - 7. TM 7 — A Typical Crankcase Breather
 - 8. TM 8 — Comparison of Crankcase Oils (Viscosity-Grades)
 - 9. TM 9 — API Classification System
- E. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Change Engine Oil and Filter
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Service Crankcase Breather
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Fundamentals of Service: Fuels, Lubricants, and Coolants*. Moline, Illinois: Deere and Company, 1979.
- B. *Fuels and Lubricants*. Fifth Edition. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials, 1983.
- C. Herd, Amon. *Lubricating Small Engines*. Columbia, Missouri: Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Columbia.
- D. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

LUBRICATION SYSTEMS UNIT II-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Additives — Certain chemicals added to oil to provide extra performance
- B. Multi-grade oils — Oils compounded to behave as light oils at cold temperatures and heavy oils at warm temperatures
- C. SAE — Society of Automotive Engineers
- D. API — American Petroleum Institute
- E. Friction — Resistance to movement between two objects placed in contact with one another
- F. "W" oils — Types of oils that are suitable for winter service

(NOTE: Type "W" viscosities are determined at 0°F or -18°C.)
- G. Sludge — Heavy, thick residue found in the bottom of an oil pan caused by oil deterioration or oil contamination
- H. Blow-by — Gases under pressure leaking by the piston rings during combustion and the power stroke
- I. Dipper — Device fastened to connecting rod as a means of splashing oil
- J. Slinger — Device rotated by the camshafts for splashing oil
- K. Oil gally (passage) — Passageways in the engine used to carry oil from one area to another
- L. Pressure relief valve — Valve in the lubrication system designed to limit maximum oil pressure
- M. Oil pickup — Device allowing the oil pump to pick up oil which is free from sediment in the oil pan
- N. Oil pan (sump) — Cover on the bottom of the engine block providing a reservoir for the engine oil
- O. Oil filter — Device used to remove abrasive particles from the oil
- P. Viscosity — A measure of the fluidity of an oil at a given temperature

INFORMATION SHEET

II. Types of lubrication systems (Transparencies 1, 2 and 3)

(NOTE: Some engines use both systems.)

- A. Splash system
 - 1. Dipper type
 - 2. Slinger types
- B. Pump system
 - 1. Barrel and plunger type
 - 2. Gear and rotor type

III. Purposes of crankcase breather (Transparencies 4, 5, and 6)

- A. Allows blow-by to escape
- B. Limits corrosion of engine parts
- C. Prevents oil leaks at seals and gaskets by relieving crankcase pressure
- D. Allows entrance of fresh air

IV. Components of the crankcase breather and their purposes (Transparency 7)

- A. Cover (valve) — Prevents entrance of excessive amounts of dirt
- B. Filter — Prevents dirt and abrasives from entering air
- C. Baffle — Keeps excessive oil from splashing onto filter
- D. Reed — Limits amount of fresh air entering crankcase and allows blow-by to leave engine

V. Functions of engine oil

- A. Reduces friction and wear
- B. Cools moving parts
- C. Helps seal cylinders
- D. Keeps parts clean
- E. Cushions moving parts

INFORMATION SHEET

VI. Characteristics of good engine oil

- A. Keeps a protective film on moving parts
- B. Resists breakdown at high temperatures
- C. Resists corrosion and rusting
- D. Prevents carbon build-up
- E. Prevents sludge formation
- F. Flows easily at low temperatures
- G. Resists foaming
- H. Resists breakdown after long use

VII. SAE viscosity number (Transparencies 8 and 9)

(NOTE: SAE is the viscosity established by Society of Automotive Engineers.)

- A. Oils vary in viscosity as temperatures change

(NOTE: Oil becomes more fluid as temperatures increase and less fluid as temperatures decrease.)

- B. Lighter oils for winter use are specified at 0°F and carry a 5w, 10w or 20w symbol

(NOTE: Specifications are determined by time of flow through an instrument, such as a Saybolt viscometer, in seconds.)

- C. Heavier oils are specified at 210°F and carry a 20, 30, 40, or 50 viscosity number

(NOTE: Compounded oils called multi-grade behave as light oils in cold temperatures and heavier oils at high temperatures, for example 10w-40 can replace four single grade oils.)

VIII. API oil classification system (Transparency 9)

- A. Standardized specifications for oil qualities between the engine manufacturer, the petroleum industry, and the customer
- B. Four service classifications found on oil cans include
 - 1. SC — Oil meeting the 1964-1967 warranty requirements of automobile manufacturers

INFORMATION SHEET

2. SD — Oil meeting the 1968-1971 warranty requirements
3. SE — Oil meeting the 1972-1979 warranty requirements
4. SF — Oil meeting the 1980 warranty requirements

IX. Oil contaminants

- A. Foreign particles
- B. Water
- C. Antifreeze
- D. Fuel
- E. Oxidation
- F. Acids

X. Oil additives and their functions

(NOTE: Most oils already have these additives.)

- A. Anti-corrosion — Helps prevent failure of alloy bearings from corrosive acids caused by combustion
- B. Oxidation inhibitor — Prevents acid, varnish, and sludge formations
(NOTE: Oxidation causes oil to thicken.)
- C. Anti-rust — Prevents rusting of metal parts during storage or downtime
- D. Viscosity index improver — Helps oil give top lubricating protection at both high and low temperatures
- E. Pour point depressant — Prevents wax crystals from congealing in cold weather and forming clumps
- F. Extreme pressure — Assures lubrication where extreme pressures between close tolerances are encountered
- G. Detergent-dispersant — Helps keep metal surfaces clean and prevents deposit formation
- H. Foam inhibitor — Helps prevent air bubbles which would restrict lubrication

(NOTE: Fast circulation causes oil to foam.)

INFORMATION SHEET

XI. Factual statements about oil

- A. Oil becomes unfit for further use as it absorbs contaminants and as additives are depleted
- B. Multi-viscosity oils are not always preferred
- C. Black oil does not mean time for an oil change
- D. Buy quality oil filters as recommended by machine operator's manual
- E. Oil oxidation results in thicker oil
- F. Using a light oil until consumption increases, and then switching to a heavier oil, is not a good practice
- G. Following operator's manual recommendations is critical to insure good performance

XII. Selection and use of oils for best engine performance

- A. Use brands which meet engine manufacturer's specifications
- B. Drain and change at recommended intervals
- C. Select oils which have been performance tested
- D. Never mix oils of various specifications
- E. Bring engine up to normal operating temperature each time it is used
- F. Use clean oil containers and keep covered, sealed, and protected to prevent contamination
- G. Replace or clean filters before they become plugged

XIII. Two cycle oil selection and use

- A. Selection
 - 1. Select only manufacturer's recommended rating

(NOTE: Pumps on oil injection systems are designed for the weight oil recommended by the manufacturer. Using wrong rating can affect lubrication.)

INFORMATION SHEET

2. Select only oil recommended for use in either air cooled or water cooled two cycle engines

(NOTE: The use of standard detergent oils can cause carbon build up in cylinder head and around moving parts.)

B. Use

(NOTE: There are no SAE standards for two cycle oils. Currently four cycle standards are being used.)

1. Use oil-fuel mixture recommended by manufacturer

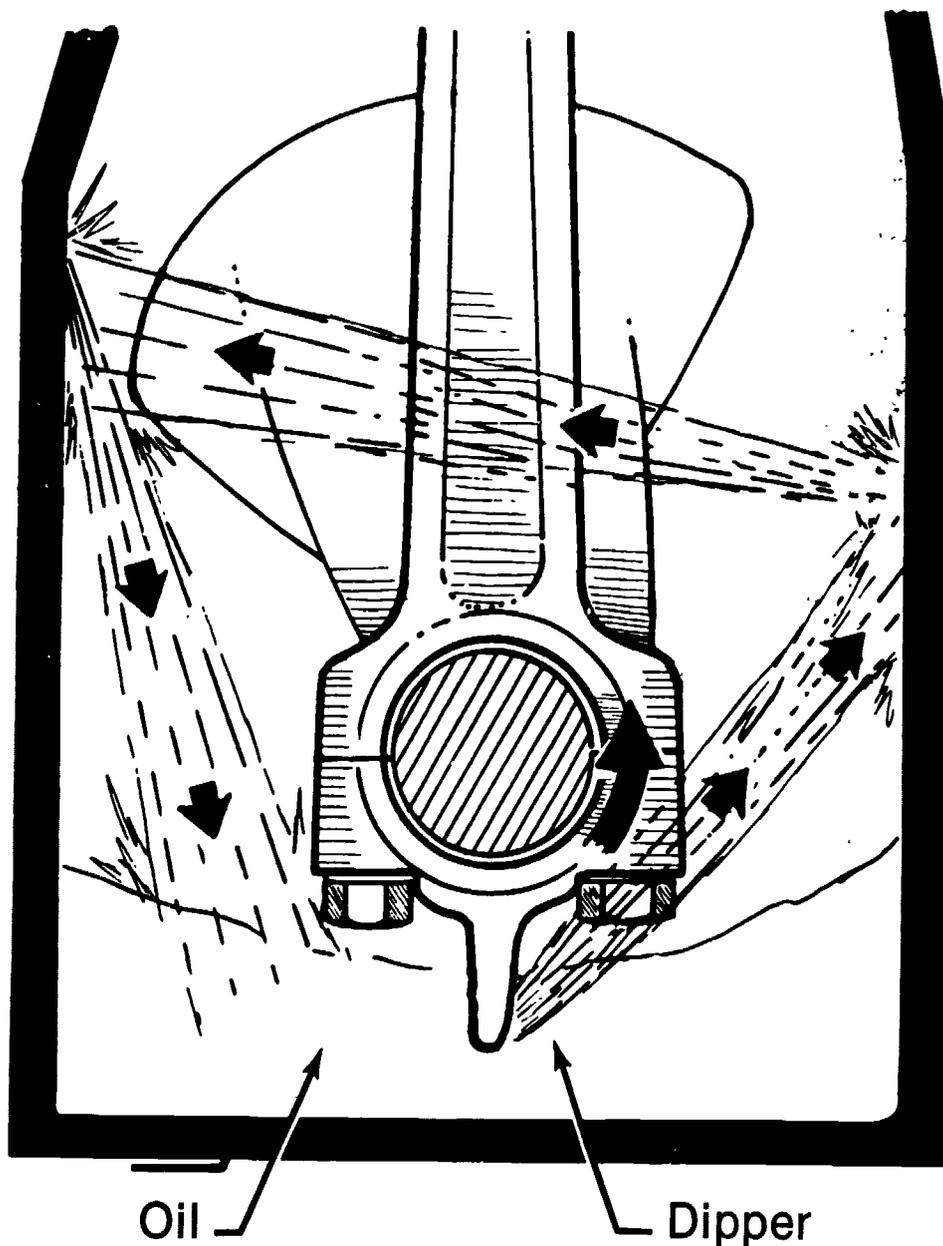
(NOTE: Just because an oil is rated for a 50-1 mixture doesn't mean your engine is.)

2. Use oils that meet or exceed manufacturer's recommendations

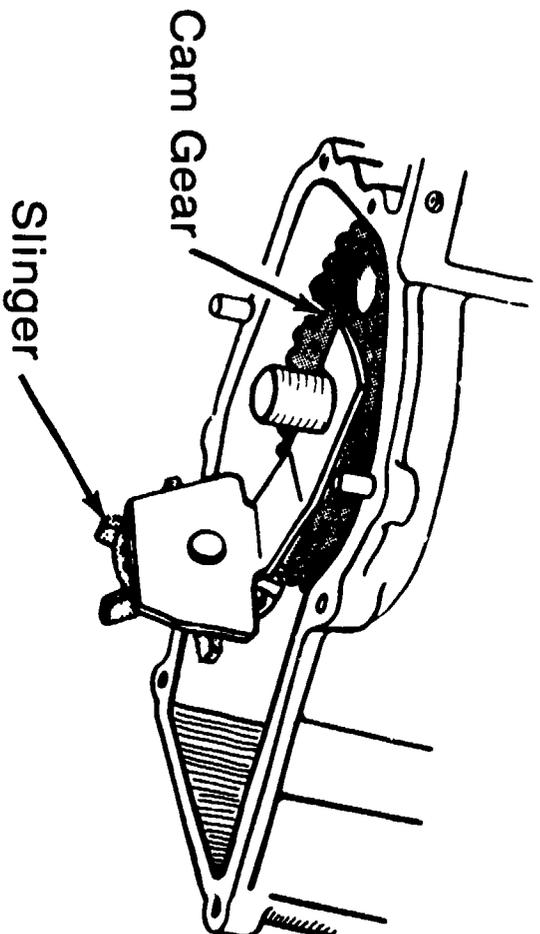
(NOTE: A good quality oil may seem expensive when compared to a more economical brand, but it is inexpensive when compared to an overhaul.)

3. Never mix synthetic oils with mineral oils

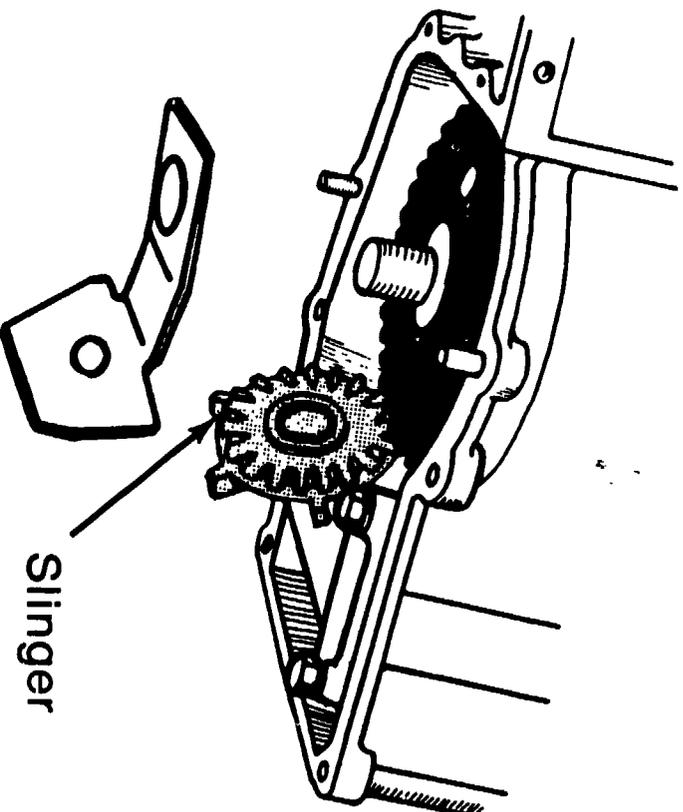
Dipper Lubrication System



Slinger Lubrication System

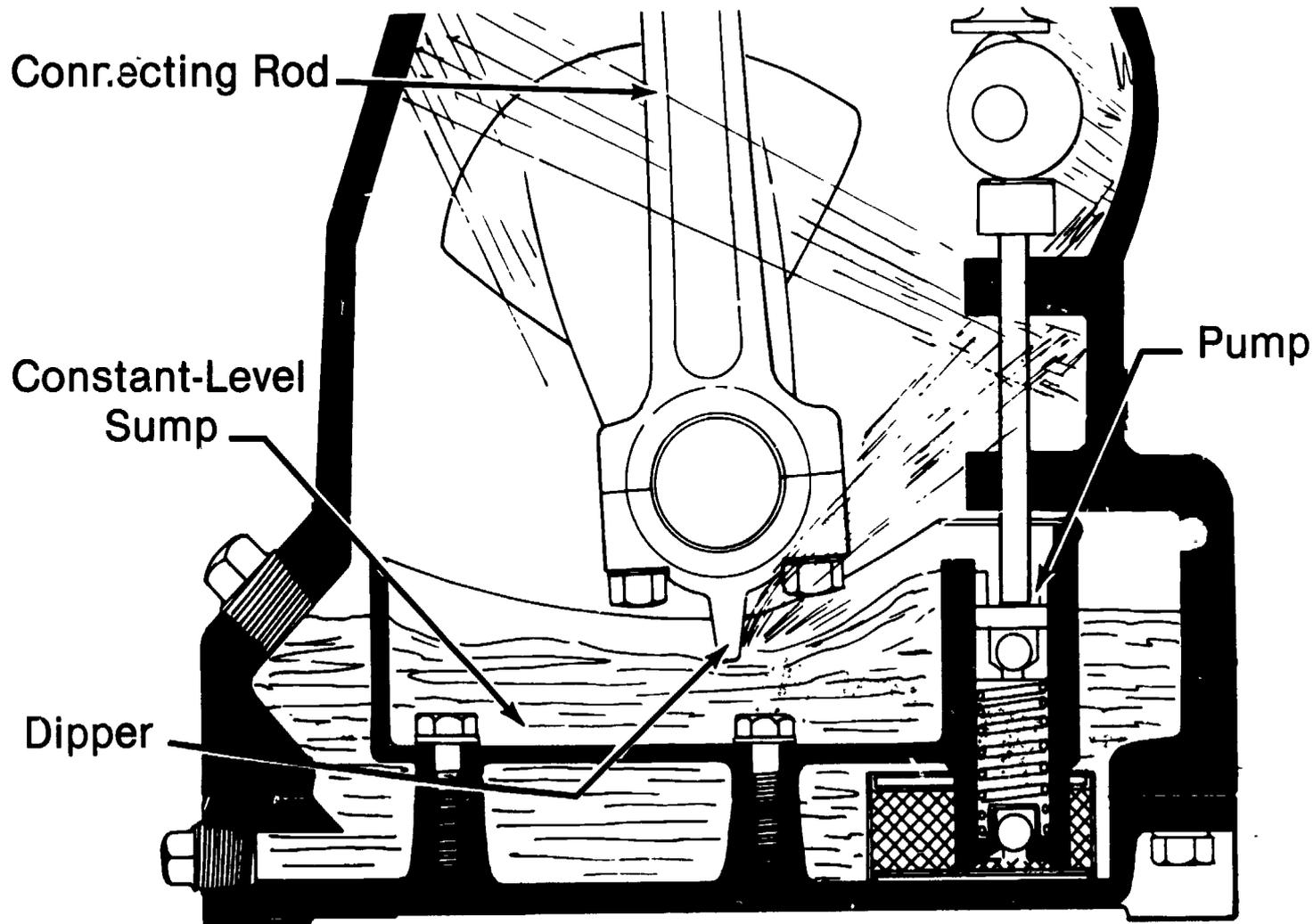


439



438

Dipper, Pump, and Constant-Level Sump

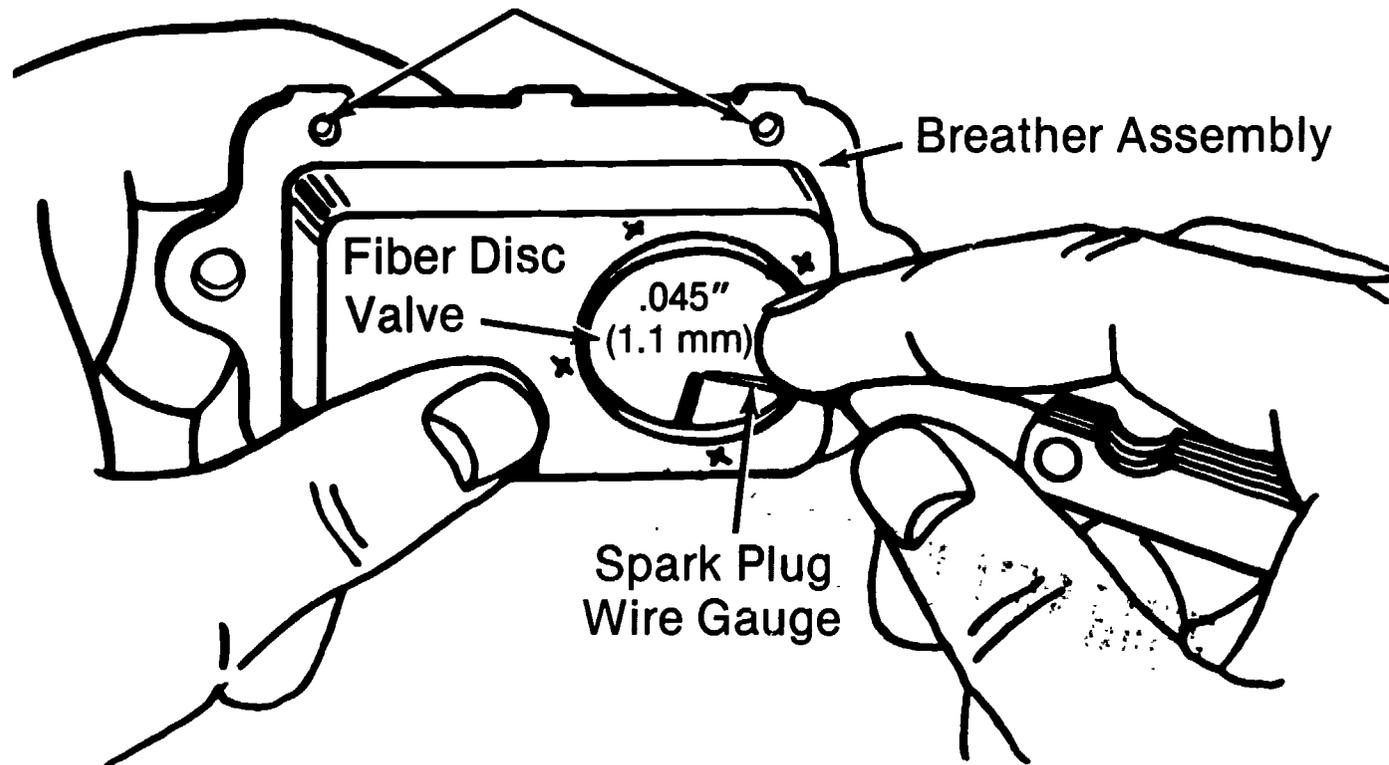


490

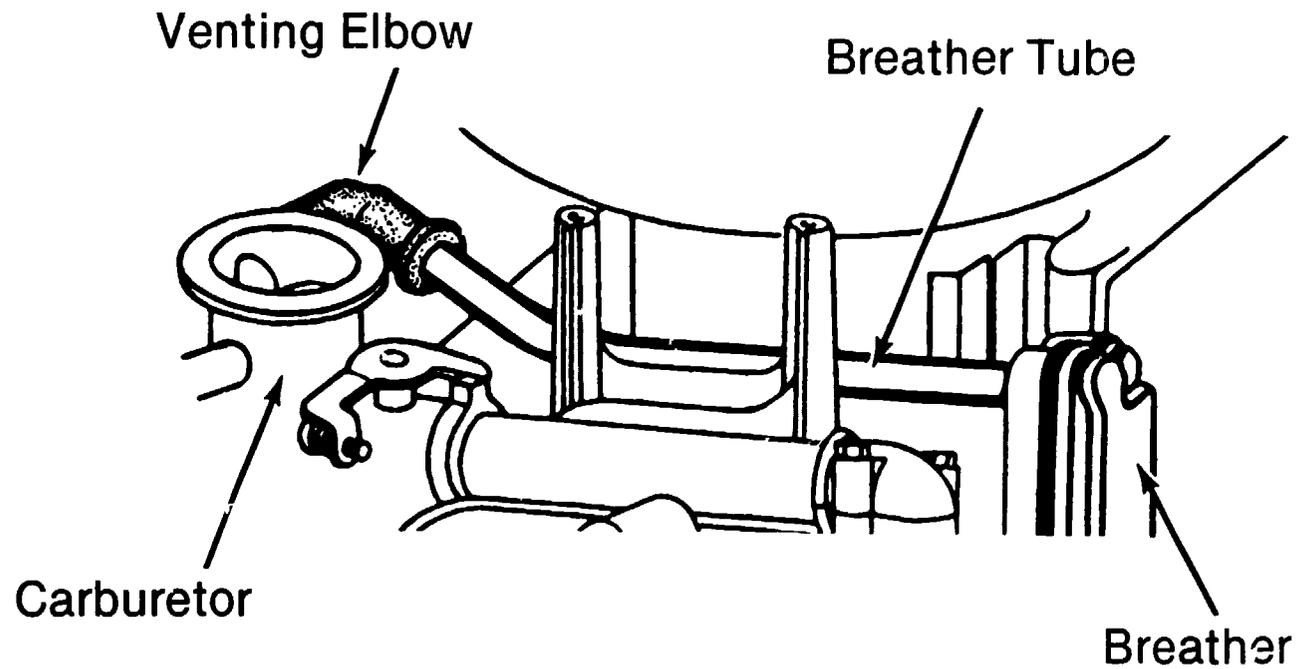
491

Crankcase Breather

Holes Must Be Open

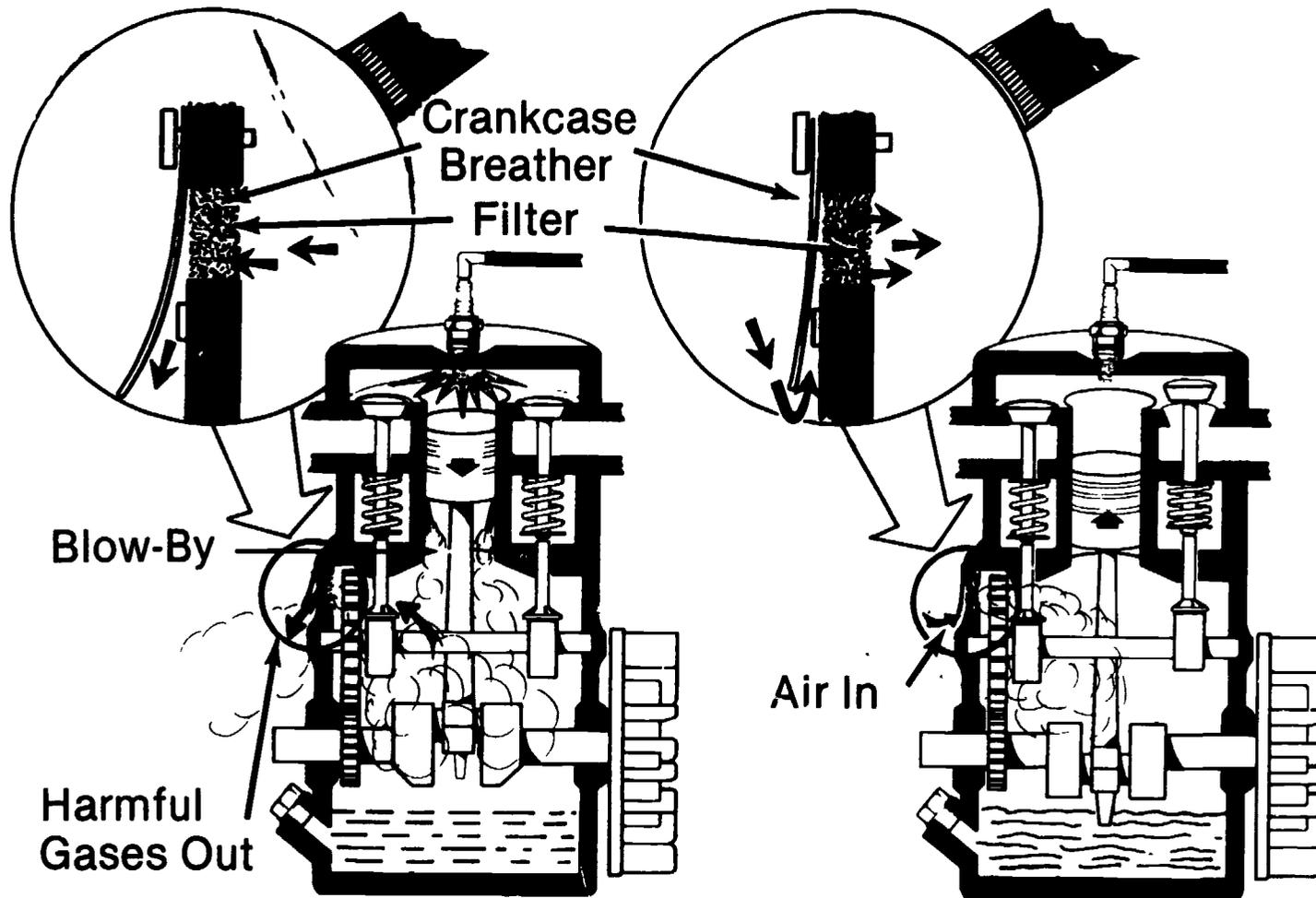


Crankcase Breather Vented To Carburetor

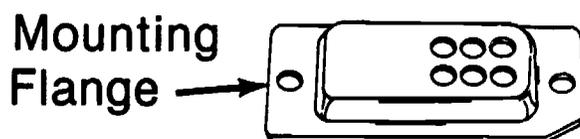
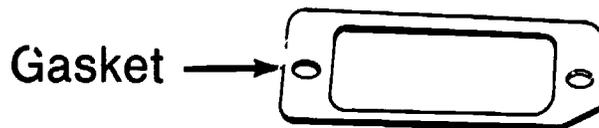
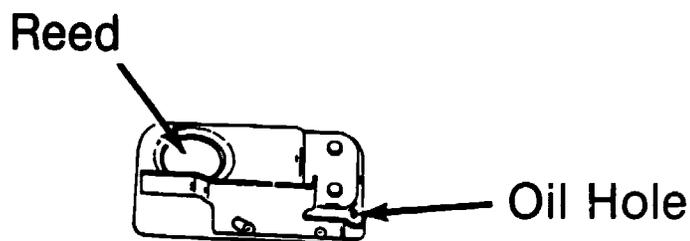
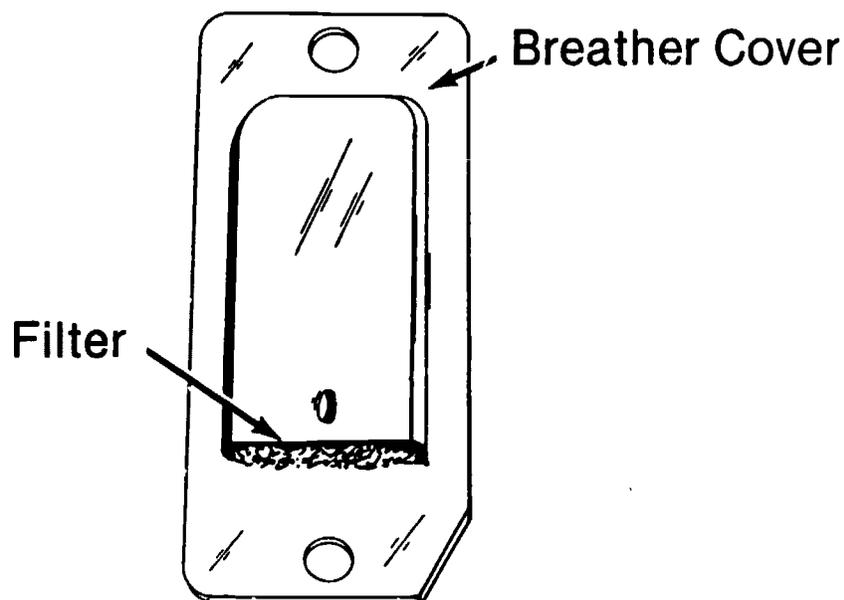


Crankcase Breather Principles

(4 Cycle Engine)

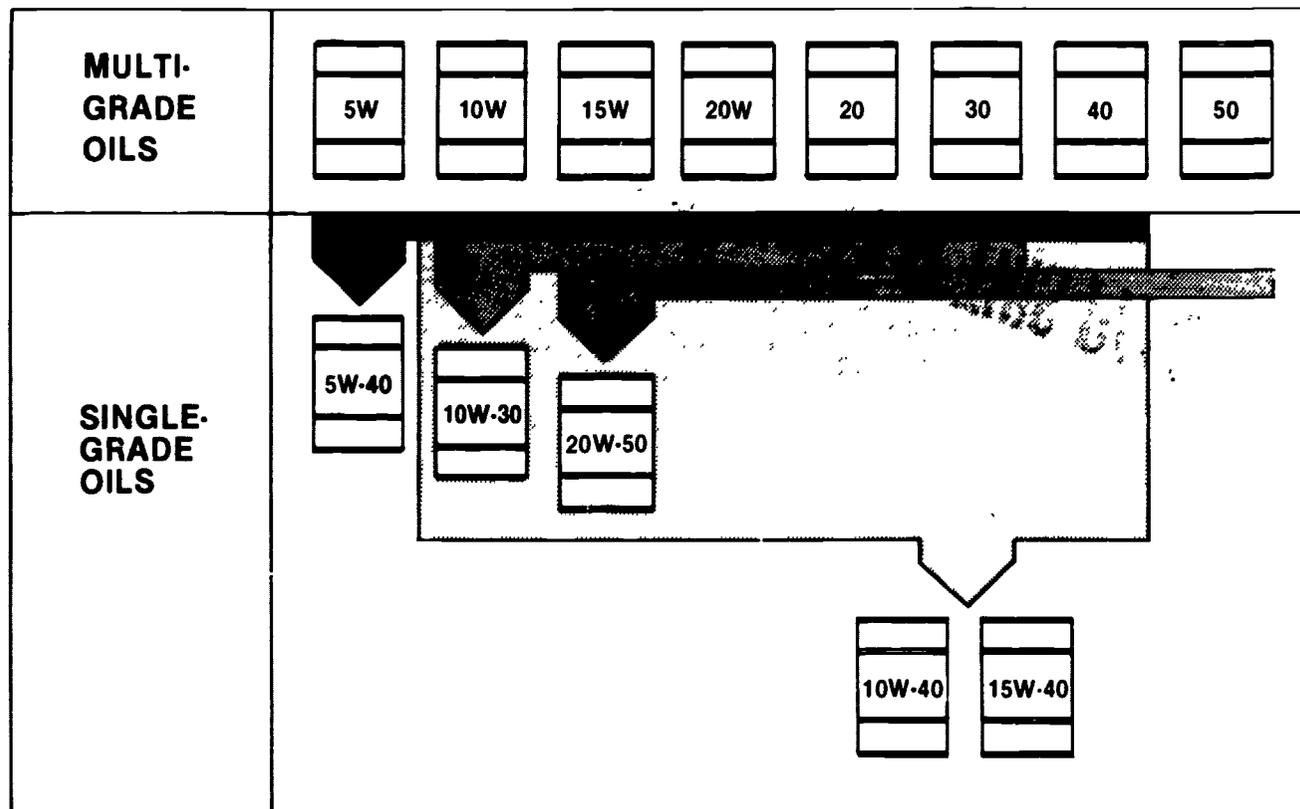


A Typical Crankcase Breather



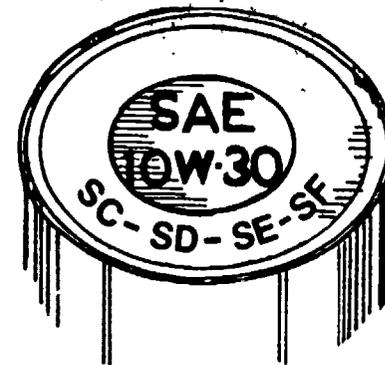
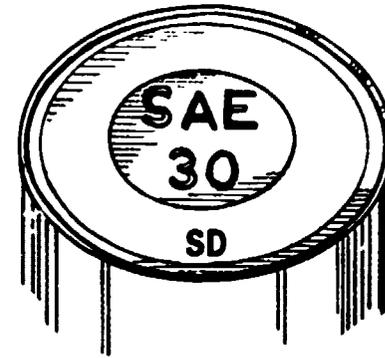
Comparison of Crankcase Oils

(Viscosity-Grades)



API Classification System

(NOTE: Check operator's manual for recommended oil classification. Use a high quality detergent oil classified "For Service SC, SD, SE, or SF." Classification markings are on the oil can.)



LUBRICATION SYSTEMS UNIT II-D

JOB SHEET #1 — CHANGE ENGINE OIL AND FILTER

A. Tools and materials needed

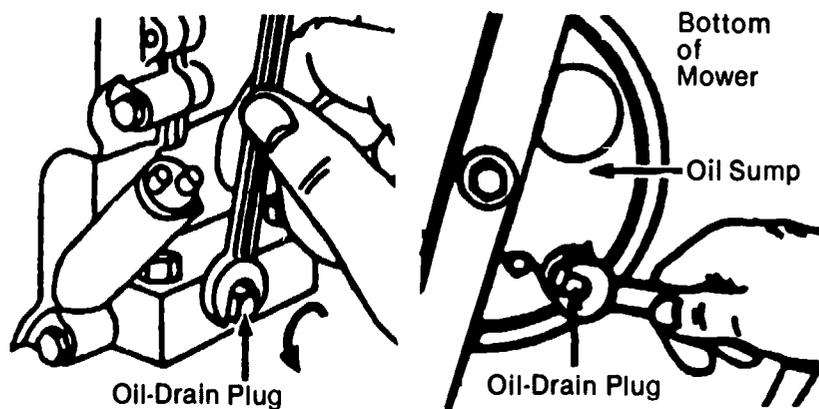
1. Drain pan
2. Wrench to fit drain plug
3. Oil can spout
4. Shop towels
5. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Start engine and run to operating temperature
2. Disconnect spark plug wire and ground
3. Place drain pan under drain plug
4. Remove drain plug (Figure 1)

(NOTE: Oil should be drained when hot.)

FIGURE 1



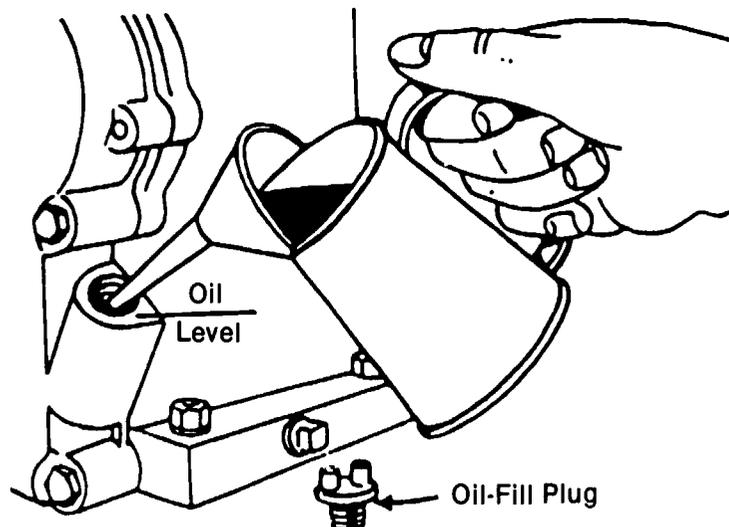
5. Observe color and condition of oil

(NOTE: Water and other contaminants might indicate problems in other areas.)

JOB SHEET #1

6. Allow oil plenty of time to drain completely
7. Change oil filter if required
8. Replace drain plug
(NOTE: Start with fingers and tighten adequately with wrench.)
9. Refill crankcase to recommended level with the proper engine oil (Figure 2)
(NOTE: Be sure filler can and spout are clean.)

FIGURE 2



10. Clean and replace oil filler cap
11. Start engine and operate for a few minutes
12. Check for oil leaks
13. Shut off engine
14. Check oil level
(NOTE: Add oil if needed. Do not overfill.)
15. Have instructor check work
16. Clean up work area and replace tools in proper area

LUBRICATION SYSTEMS UNIT II-D

JOB SHEET #2 — SERVICE CRANKCASE BREATHER

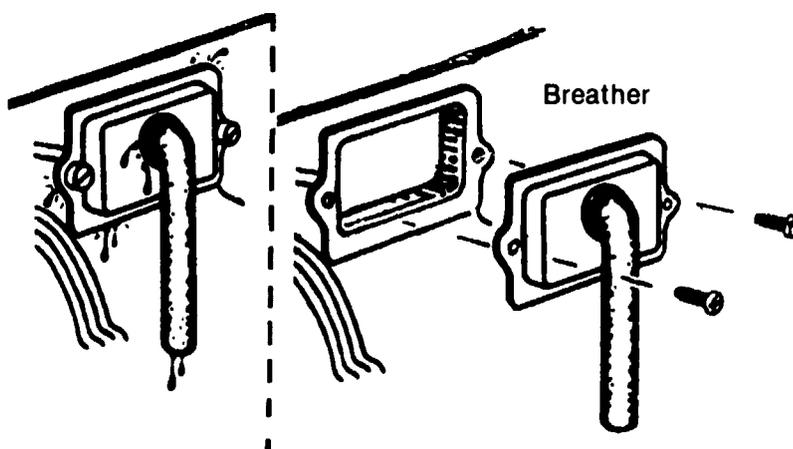
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Clean towels
3. Solvent
4. Container for cleaning parts
5. New gasket
6. Feeler gauge
7. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Disconnect spark plug wire and ground
2. Check breather for proper operation
3. Remove crankcase breather (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1

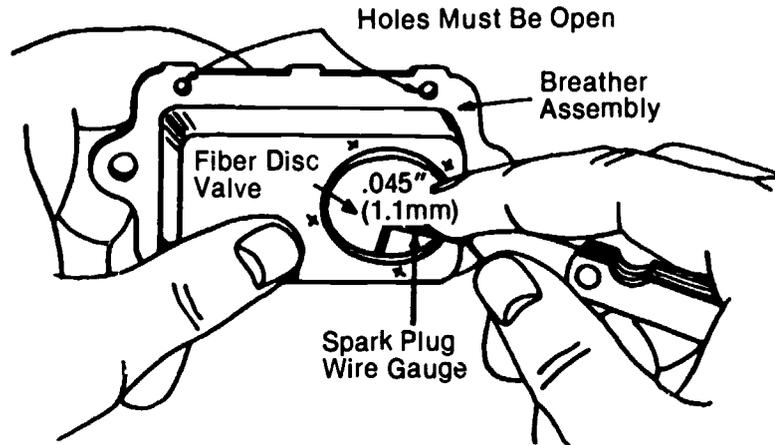


JOB SHEET #2

4. Check breather for proper clearance. If a .045 wire gauge will enter the space between fiber disc valve and body, a new breather should be installed (Figure 2)

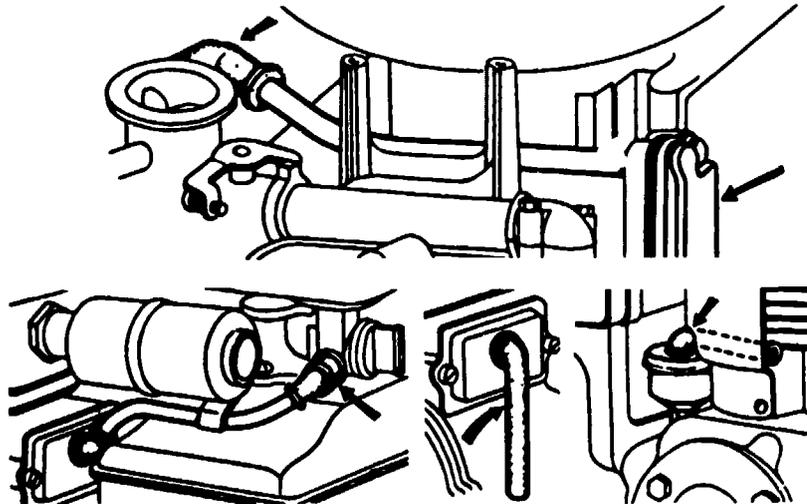
(NOTE: Do not apply force when checking with wire gauge.)

FIGURE 2



5. Inspect venting elbows for loose fit and damaged tubes; replace if necessary (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



6. Clean parts in solvent
7. Dry breather with compressed air
8. Install breather using a new gasket

JOB SHEET #2

9. Run engine for a few minutes
10. Check breather for oil leaks
11. Stop engine
12. Have instructor check work
13. Clean work area and return tools to their proper place

LUBRICATION SYSTEMS

UNIT II-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|---------|--|--------------------------|
| _____a. | Certain chemicals added to oil to provide extra performance | 1. SAE |
| _____b. | Oils compounded to behave as light oils at cold temperatures and heavy oils at warm temperatures | 2. Viscosity |
| _____c. | Society of Automotive Engineers | 3. API |
| _____d. | American Petroleum Institute | 4. Multi-grade oil |
| _____e. | A measure of the fluidity of an oil at a given temperature | 5. Additives |
| _____f. | Device rotated by the camshafts for splashing oil | 6. Oil pan (sump) |
| _____g. | Cover on the bottom of the engine block providing a reservoir for the engine oil | 7. Oil filter |
| _____h. | Passageways in the engine used to carry oil from one area to another | 8. Slinger |
| _____i. | Device allowing the oil pump to pick up oil which is free from sediment in the oil pan | 9. Pressure relief valve |
| _____j. | Device used to remove abrasive particles from the oil | 10. Oil gally (passage) |
| _____k. | Device fastened to connecting rod as a means of splashing oil | 11. Dipper |
| _____l. | Valve in the lubrication system designed to limit maximum oil pressure | 12. Oil pickup |
| _____m. | Gases under pressure leaking by the piston rings during combustion and the power stroke | 13. "W" oils |
| | | 14. Friction |
| | | 15. Blow-by |
| | | 16. Sludge |

TEST

- ____n. Types of oils that are suitable for winter service
- ____o. Heavy, thick residue found in the bottom of an oil pan caused by oil deterioration or oil contamination
- ____p. Resistance to movement between two objects placed in contact with one another
2. Distinguish between two types of lubrication systems by placing an "X" next to the types of splash system.
- ____a. Barrel and plunger type; gear and rotor type
- ____b. Dipper type, slinger type
3. Select purposes of the crankcase breather by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- ____a. Cools engine parts
- ____b. Allows blow-by to escape
- ____c. Limits corrosion of engine parts
- ____d. Prevents oil leaks at seals and gaskets by relieving crankcase pressure
- ____e. Prevents entrance of fresh air
4. Match components of the crankcase breather on the right with their correct purposes.
- | | |
|---|------------------|
| ____a. Keeps excessive oil from splashing onto filter | 1. Cover (valve) |
| ____b. Prevents entrance of excessive amounts of dirt | 2. Filter |
| ____c. Limits amount of fresh air entering crankcase and allows blow-by to leave engine | 3. Baffle |
| ____d. Prevents dirt and abrasives from entering air | 4. Reed |
5. Complete the following list of functions of engine oil by correctly filling in the blanks.
- a. Reduces _____ and tear
- b. _____ moving parts
- c. Helps seal _____
- d. Keeps parts _____

TEST

6. Select characteristics of a good engine oil by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.
- _____ a. Keeps a protective film on moving parts
 - _____ b. Resists breakdown at high temperatures
 - _____ c. Resists corrosion and rusting
 - _____ d. Prevents carbon build-up
 - _____ e. Prevents sludge formation
 - _____ f. Flows easily at low temperature
 - _____ g. Flows easily at high temperatures
 - _____ h. Resists foaming
 - _____ i. Resists breakdown after long use
7. Complete the following list of statements concerning the SAE viscosity number by correctly filling in the blanks.
- a. Oils vary in viscosity as _____ change
 - b. Lighter oils for winter use are specified at _____ °F and carry a 5w, 10w, or 20w symbol
 - c. Heavier oils are specified at _____ °F and carry a 20, 30, 40 or 50 viscosity number
8. Complete the following list of statements concerning the API oil classification system by circling the correct words.
- a. Standardized specifications for oil qualities between the engine manufacturer, the petroleum industry, and the **(dealer, customer)**
 - b. Four service classifications found on oil cans include
 - 1) **(SC, SD)** — Oil meeting the 1964-67 warranty requirements of automobile manufacturing
 - 2) **(SC, SD)** — Oil meeting the 1968-1971 warranty requirements
 - 3) SE — Oil meeting the **(1972-1979, 1980)** warranty requirements
 - 4) SF — Oil meeting the **(1980, 1972-1979)** warranty requirements

TEST

9. List four oil contaminants.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____

10. Match the oil additives on the right with their correct functions.

- | | | |
|----------|--|-----------------------------|
| _____ a. | Helps prevent failure of alloy bearings from corrosive acids caused by combustion | 1. Anti-rust |
| _____ b. | Prevents acid, varnish, and sludge formations | 2. Oxidation inhibitor |
| _____ c. | Prevents rusting of metal parts during storage or downtime | 3. Anti-corrosion |
| _____ d. | Helps oil give top lubricating protection at both high and low temperatures | 4. Viscosity index improver |
| _____ e. | Prevents wax crystals from congealing in cold weather and forming clumps | 5. Pour point depressant |
| _____ f. | Assures lubrication where extreme pressures between close tolerances are encountered | 6. Extreme pressure |
| _____ g. | Helps keep metal surfaces clean and prevents deposit formation | 7. Foam inhibitor |
| _____ h. | Helps prevent air bubbles which would restrict lubrication | 8. Detergent-dispersant |

11. Select factual statements about oil by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- _____ a. Oil becomes unfit for further use as it absorbs contaminants and as additives are depleted
- _____ b. Multi-viscosity oils are not always preferred
- _____ c. Black oil does not mean time for an oil change
- _____ d. Buy quality oil filters as recommended by machine operator's manual
- _____ e. Oil oxidation results in thicker oil

TEST

- _____f. Using a light oil until consumption increases, and then switching to a heavier oil, is not a good practice
- _____g. Following operator's manual recommendations is critical to insure good performance

12. Complete the following list of statements concerning the selection and use of oils for best engine performance by correctly filling in the blanks.

- a. Use brands which meet engine _____ specifications
- b. _____ and change at recommended intervals
- c. Select oils which have been _____
- d. Never mix oils of various _____
- e. Bring engine up to normal operating _____ each time it is used
- f. Use clean oil containers and keep covered, sealed, and protected to prevent _____
- g. Replace or clean filters before they become _____

13. Select true statements concerning two cycle oil selection and use by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- a. Selection
 - _____1) Select only manufacturer's recommended rating
 - _____2) Select only oil recommended for use in either air cooled or water cooled two cycle engines
- b. Use
 - _____1) Use oil-fuel mixture recommended by manufacturer
 - _____2) Use oils that are **close to** manufacturer's recommendations
 - _____3) Never mix synthetic oils with mineral oils

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

14. Demonstrate the ability to:
- a. Change engine oil and filter (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Service crankcase breather (Job Sheet #2).

LUBRICATION SYSTEMS UNIT II-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.

a.	5	i.	12
b.	4	j.	7
c.	1	k.	11
d.	3	l.	9
e.	2	m.	15
f.	8	n.	13
g.	6	o.	16
h.	10	p.	14
2. b
3. b,c,d
4.

a.	3
b.	1
c.	4
d.	2
5.

a.	Friction
b.	Cools or cushions
c.	Cylinders
d.	Clean
6. a,b,c,d,e,f,h,i
7.

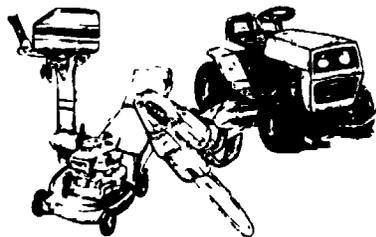
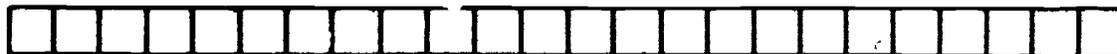
a.	Temperatures
b.	0°F
c.	210°F
8.

a.	Customer
b.	1) SC
	2) SD
	3) 1972-1979
	4) 1980
9. Any six of the following:

a.	Foreign particles
b.	Water
c.	Antifreeze
d.	Fuel
e.	Oxidation
f.	Acids

ANSWERS TO TEST

10. a. 3 e. 5
 b. 2 f. 6
 c. 1 g. 8
 d. 4 h. 7
11. All are correct
12. a. Manufacturer's
 b. Drain
 c. Performance tested
 d. Specifications
 e. Temperature
 f. Contamination
 g. Plugged
13. a. 1,2
 b. 1,3
14. Performance skills evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor



Cooling Systems Unit III-D



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to remove, clean, and replace air cooling parts. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedure outlined in the job sheet and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to cooling systems with their correct definitions.
2. List three functions of the cooling system.
3. Identify components of the cooling system.
4. Match components of the cooling system with their correct functions.
5. List two causes of overheating.
6. Demonstrate the ability to remove, clean, and replace air cooling parts (Job Sheet #1).

COOLING SYSTEMS UNIT III-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparency.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparency to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheet prior to the demonstration of the procedure.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Demonstrate types of cooling systems found on engine.
2. Identify components on live engines, then test students on their ability to identify them.
3. Take students on a field trip to a radiator shop.
4. Measure air temperature off top of radiator to show how cooling system works.
5. Demonstrate and discuss the procedure outlined in the job sheet.
6. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES**CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT**

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency Master 1 — Parts of a Cooling System
- E. Job Sheet #1 — Remove, Clean, and Replace Air Cooling Parts
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Small Engines, Volume I.* Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials.
- B. Roth, Alfred C. *Small Gas Engines.* South Holland, Illinois: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1975.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair.* Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

COOLING SYSTEMS UNIT III-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Conduction — Heat transfer through a solid material
- B. Convection — Heat transfer through movement of a gas
(NOTE: In cooling systems, transfer is through air.)
- C. Shroud — Cover over blower (flywheel) that directs air to the engine fins
- D. Baffle — Cover over the finned area of the engine to hold the air around the fins
- E. Fin — Protrusions cast on the head and cylinder to provide increased surface for additional cooling area
- F. Cooling system — Components designed to keep the engine at its most efficient operating temperature during engine operation

II. Functions of the cooling system

- A. Removes surplus or unwanted heat
- B. Maintains efficient operating temperature under all operating conditions
- C. Brings an engine, when started, up to operating temperature as soon as possible

III. Components of the cooling system (Transparency 1)

- A. Flywheel
- B. Filter screen
- C. Blower shroud
- D. Cylinder head baffle
- E. Cylinder baffle
- F. Air deflector

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Components of the cooling system and their functions

- A. Flywheel — Device used to move a large volume of air to the engine
- B. Filter screen — Covering on outside of flywheel to filter out large materials in the air stream

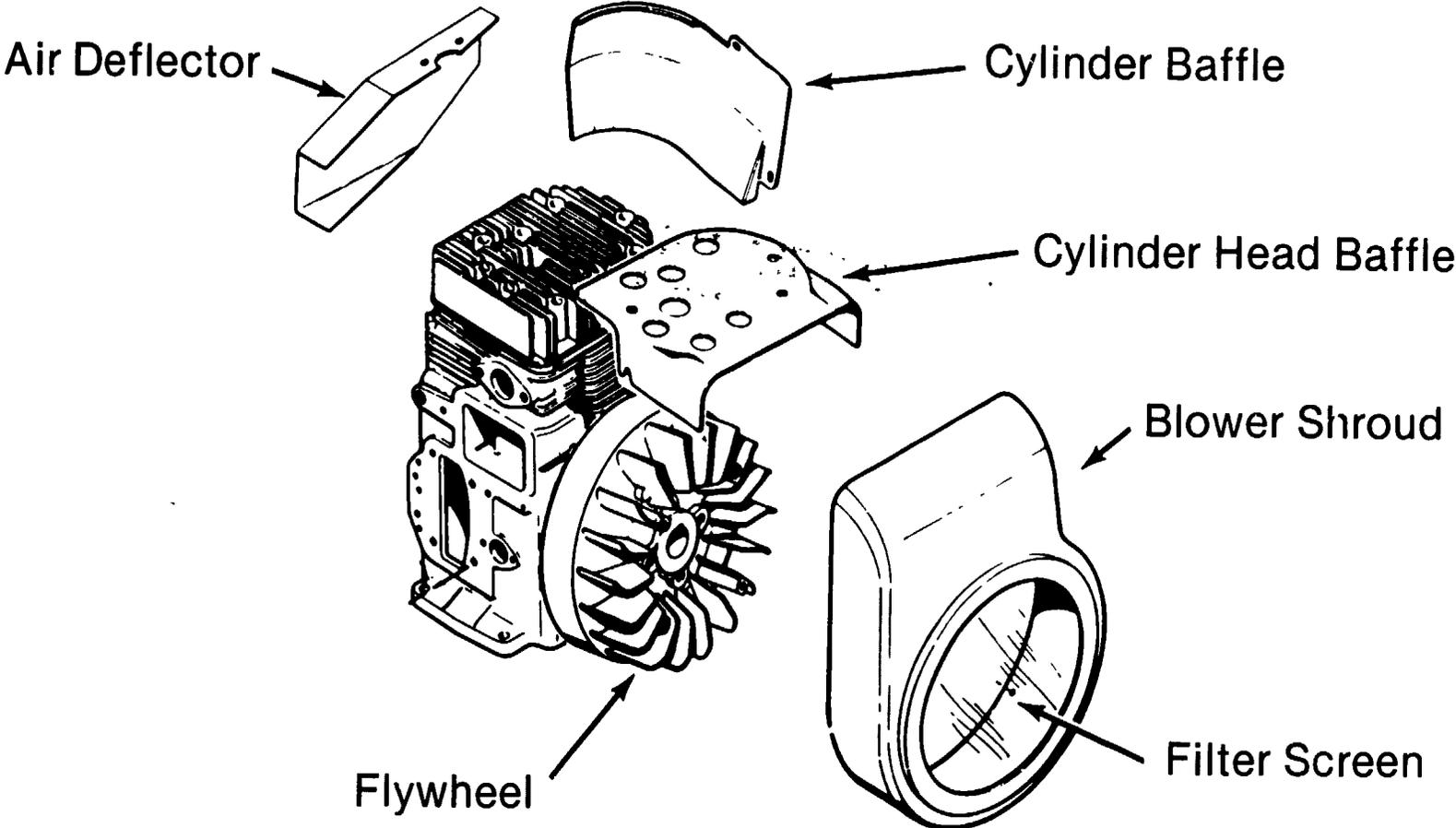
(NOTE: These are such materials as leaves and grass.)

- C. Shroud and baffles -- Covers flywheel and directs air over the engine fins to promote cooling
- D. Air deflector — Routes the air to cool the engine

V. Causes of overheating

- A. Improper timing
- B. Grime, grease, or oil on the outside of the engine

Parts of a Cooling System



COOLING SYSTEMS UNIT III-D

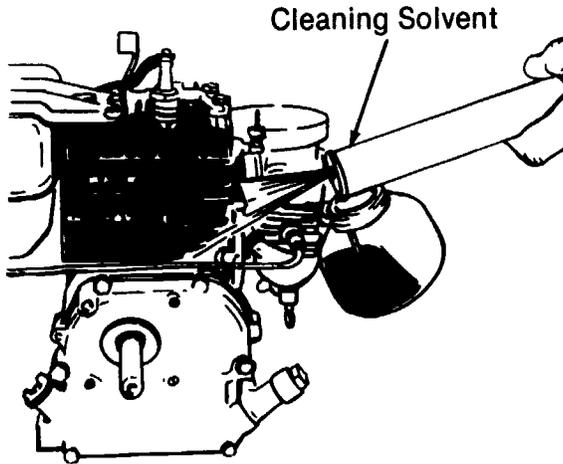
JOB SHEET #1 — REMOVE, CLEAN, AND REPLACE AIR COOLING PARTS

- A. Tools and materials needed
1. Hand tool assortment
 2. Wire brush
 3. Parts scraper
 4. Wooden scraper
 5. Cleaning solvent
 6. Parts cleaning brush
 7. Small hand sprayer
 8. Safety glasses
 9. Water hose
 10. Compressed air
- B. Procedure
1. Remove blower shroud
 2. Remove baffles
 3. Pour solvent into sprayer

JOB SHEET #1

4. Spray solvent over dirty fins and block areas (Figure 1)

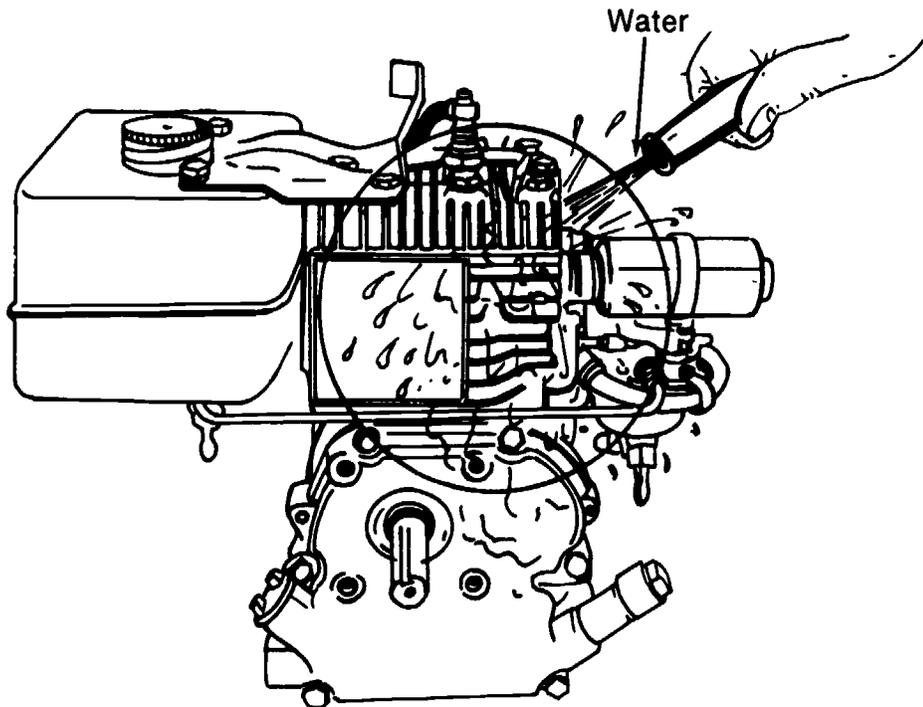
FIGURE 1



(NOTE: Let solvent soak long enough to loosen caked or dried dirt or grease.)

5. Wash engine with clear water (Figure 2)

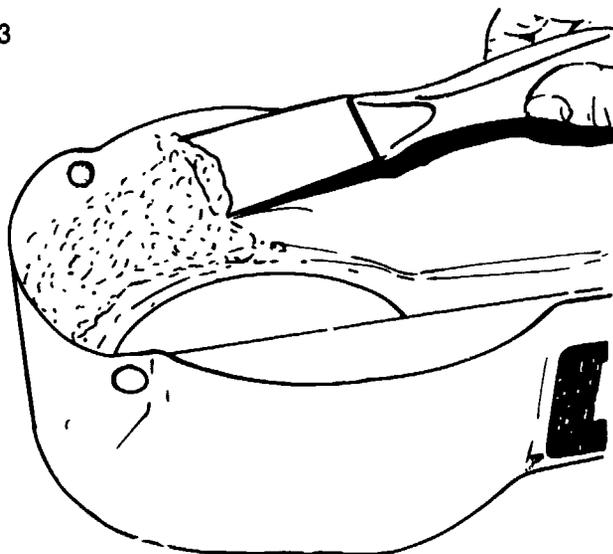
FIGURE 2



JOB SHEET #1

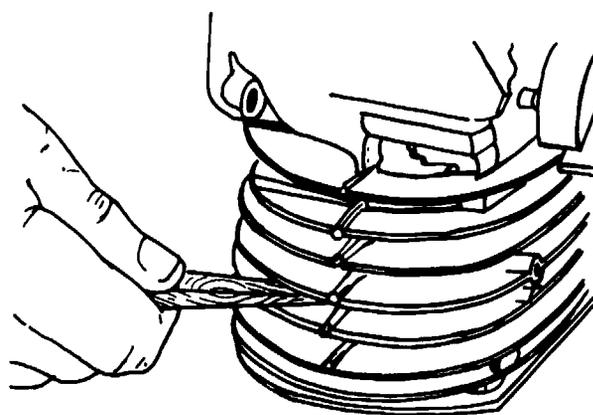
6. Scrape areas that have hard to remove accumulations of dirt or grease (Figures 3 and 4)

FIGURE 3



(NOTE: Use wooden scrapers on aluminum areas like newer engine blocks and fins.)

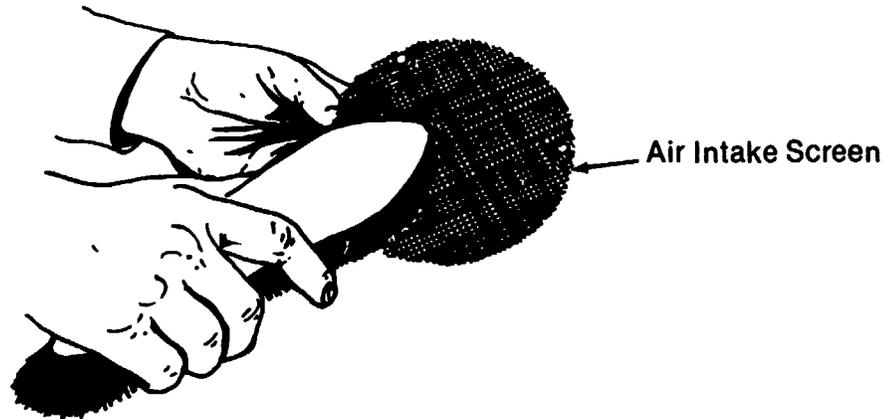
FIGURE 4



JOB SHEET #1

7. Clean flywheel fins
(NOTE: Replace if necessary.)
8. Clean air intake screen with parts cleaning brush (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5



9. Dry engine with compressed air
10. Inspect all baffles, shroud, and screen for damage
11. Reassemble cooling system
(NOTE: Do not alter the shroud.)
12. Have instructor evaluate your work

525

COOLING SYSTEMS UNIT III-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

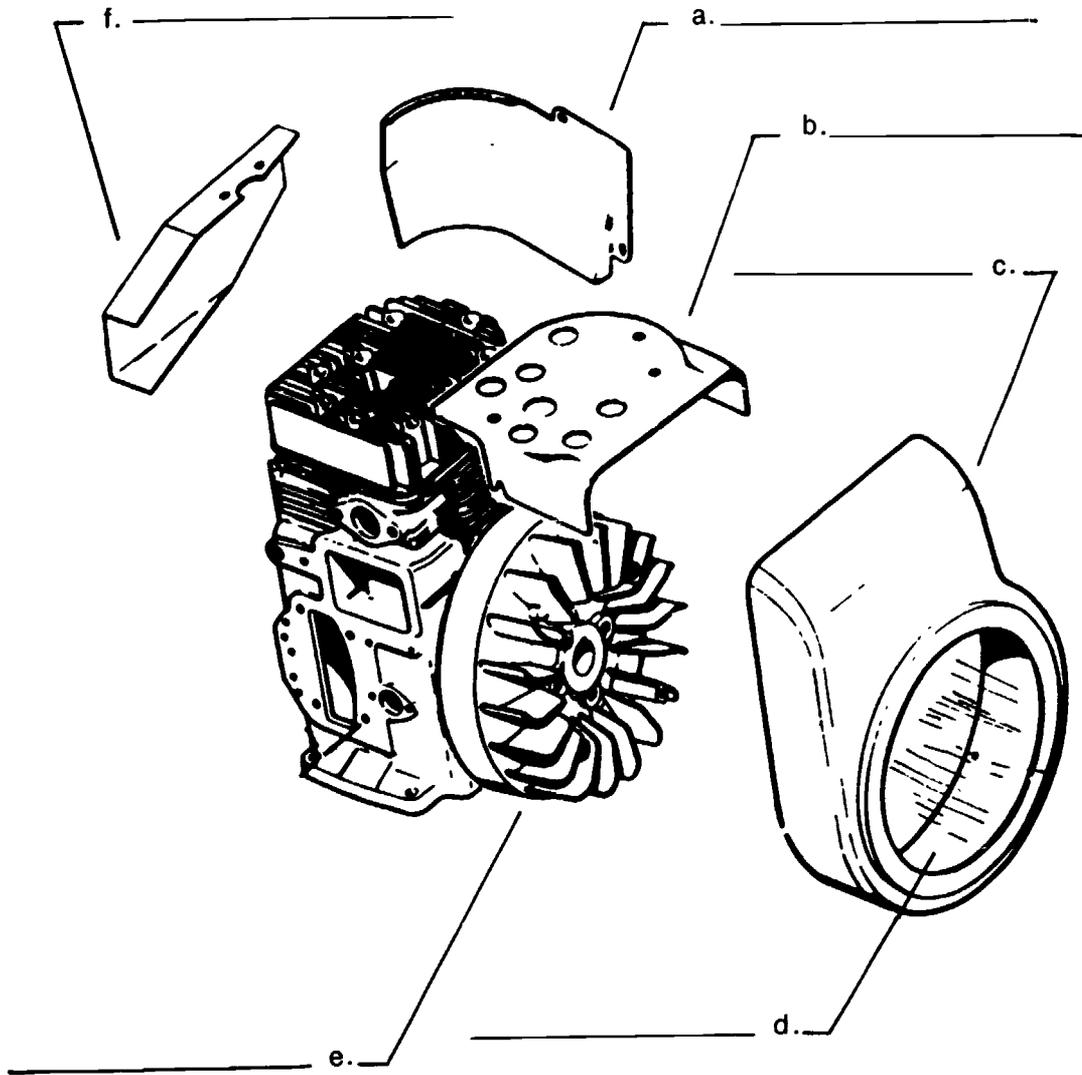
- | | | |
|---------|--|-------------------|
| _____a. | Heat transfer through a solid material | 1. Fin |
| _____b. | Cover over the finned area of the engine to hold the air around the fins | 2. Baffle |
| _____c. | Protrusions cast on the head and cylinder to provide increased surface for additional cooling area | 3. Conduction |
| _____d. | Cover over blower (flywheel) that directs air to the engine fins | 4. Convection |
| _____e. | Heat transfer through movement of a gas | 5. Cooling system |
| _____f. | Components designed to keep the engine at its most efficient operating temperature during engine operation | 6. Shroud |

2. List three functions of the cooling system.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____

TEST

3. Identify the components of the cooling system.



TEST

4. Match the components of the cooling system on the right with their correct functions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|-----------------------|
| _____a. | Device used to move a large volume of air to the engine | 1. Shroud and baffles |
| _____b. | Covering on outside of flywheel to filter out large materials in the air stream | 2. Air deflector |
| _____c. | Covers flywheel and directs air over the engine fins to promote cooling | 3. Flywheel |
| _____d. | Routes the air to cool the engine | 4. Filter screen |

5. List two causes of overheating.

- a. _____
- b. _____

(NOTE: If the following activity has not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when it should be completed.)

6. Demonstrate the ability to remove, clean, and replace air cooling parts (Job Sheet #1).

COOLING SYSTEMS UNIT III-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.
 - a. 3
 - b. 2
 - c. 1
 - d. 6
 - e. 4
 - f. 5

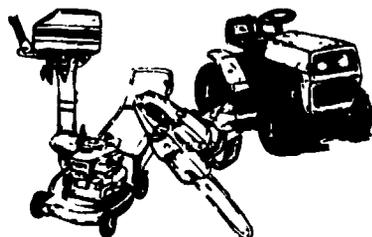
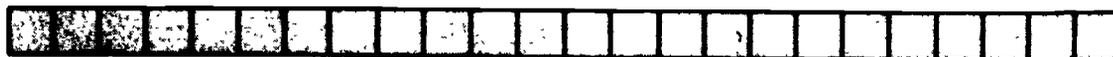
2.
 - a. Removes surplus or unwanted heat
 - b. Maintains efficient operating temperature under all operating conditions
 - c. Brings an engine, when started, up to operating temperatures as soon as possible

3.
 - a. Cylinder baffle
 - b. Cylinder head baffle
 - c. Blower shroud
 - d. Filter screen
 - e. Flywheel
 - f. Air deflector

4.
 - a. 3
 - b. 4
 - c. 1
 - d. 2

5.
 - a. Improper timing
 - b. Grime, grease, or oil on the outside of the engine

6. Performance skills evaluated according to the standards identified by the instructor



Fuel Systems Unit IV-D



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to remove, replace, and service a carburetor and a fuel pump and service an air cleaner. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the job sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to the fuel system with their correct definitions.
2. State the purpose of the fuel system.
3. List the three basic types of small engine fuel supply systems.
4. Match components of the fuel system with their correct functions.
5. List the two types of carburetors.
6. Select types of fuel filters.
7. Distinguish between types of fuel pump action.
8. Identify three types of air cleaners.
9. Identify parts of the float-type carburetor.
10. Identify parts of the diaphragm-type carburetor.

OBJECTIVE SHEET

11. Match the carburetor systems with their correct uses.
12. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Service an air cleaner (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Remove and replace a float-type carburetor (Job Sheet #2).
 - c. Service a float-type carburetor (Job Sheet #3).
 - d. Remove, service, and replace a diaphragm-type carburetor (Job Sheet #4).
 - e. Remove and replace a fuel pump (Job Sheet #5).
 - f. Test and service a fuel pump (Job Sheet #6).
 - g. Service sediment bowl fuel strainer (Job Sheet #7).

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Show worn or damaged carburetor parts.
2. Collect gasoline samples in baby food jars from various stations and compare quality. Look for residue at bottom of jars.
3. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
4. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES**CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT**

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Fuel Supply Systems
 - 2. TM 2 — Fuel Filter — (Filter Attached to End of Flexible Fuel Hose)
 - 3. TM 3 — Fuel Filter — (Glass Sediment Bowl and Screen)
 - 4. TM 4 — Fuel Filter — (Screen In Tank)
 - 5. TM 5 — Fuel Filter — (In-Line)
 - 6. TM 6 — Fuel Pump
 - 7. TM 7 — Operation of Fuel Pump
 - 8. TM 8 — Types of Air Cleaners
 - 9. TM 9 — Parts of a Float Carburetor
 - 10. TM 10 — Parts of a Diaphragm Carburetor
 - 11. TM 11 — The Float System
 - 12. TM 12 — Float-Type Carburetor
 - 13. TM 13 — Carburetor Choke Valve
 - 14. TM 14 — The Choke System
 - 15. TM 15 — The High Speed System
 - 16. TM 16 — The Idle System
 - 17. TM 17 — Bulb-Type Primer
- E. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Service an Air Cleaner
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Remove and Replace a Float-Type Carburetor
 - 3. Job Sheet #3 — Service a Float-Type Carburetor

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

4. Job Sheet #4 — Remove, Service, and Replace a Diaphragm-Type Carburetor
 5. Job Sheet #5 — Remove and Replace a Fuel Pump
 6. Job Sheet #6 — Test and Service a Fuel Pump
 7. Job Sheet #7 — Service Sediment Bowl Fuel Strainer
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. Roth, Alfred C. *Small Gas Engines*. South Holland, Illinois: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1975.
- B. Handrix, Laborn. *Cement Masonry*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Curriculum and Instructional Materials Center/State Department of Vocational and Technical Education and Associated General Contractors, 1974.
- C. Herd, Amon. *Carburetor Service and Repair*. Columbia, Missouri: Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri-Columbia.
- D. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Venturi — Restriction in the carburetor which makes the air speed up, causing a high vacuum
- B. Airfoil — Tube in a stream of air inside the venturi which creates an air pattern with low pressure on one side
- C. Atomization — Breaking of a liquid into tiny particles or globules to aid vapor formation
- D. Metering — Correct proportion of fuel and air needed for good combustion
- E. Vaporization — Transferring a substance into a gaseous state

II. Purpose of the fuel system — The fuel system supplies a combustible mixture of air and fuel vapor to the engine cylinder(s)

III. Basic types of small engine fuel supply systems (Transparency 1)

- A. Gravity feed
- B. Suction feed
- C. Pump feed

IV. Components of the fuel system

- A. Fuel tank — Acts as reservoir to store fuel for engine use
- B. Fuel filter — Prevents dirt or foreign matter from entering the carburetor
- C. Carburetor — Mixes fuel and air in the proper proportion for a combustible mixture
- D. Fuel pump — Pumps fuel from the fuel tank to the carburetor
- E. Fuel line — Carries fuel from the fuel tank to the carburetor
- F. Air cleaner — Filters grit and dust from the air entering the carburetor
- G. Pump diaphragm — Sheet of metal or other material that is sufficiently flexible to permit vibration

(NOTE: The diaphragm is housed in the pump.)

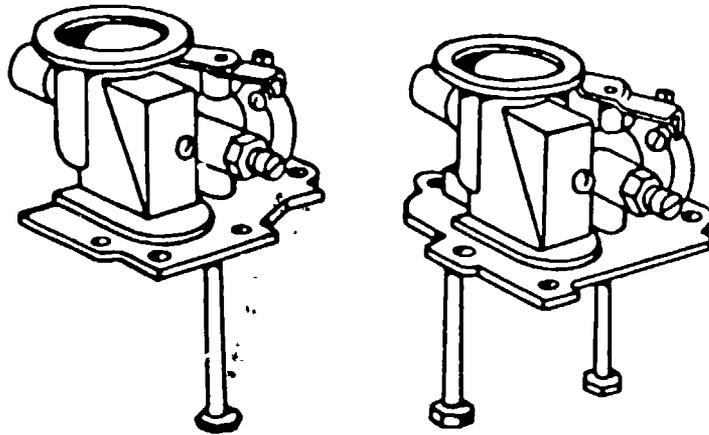
INFORMATION SHEET

- V. Types of carburetors**
- A. Float
 - B. Diaphragm
- VI. Types of fuel filters (Transparencies 2, 3, 4 and 5)**
- A. Glass sediment bowl and screen
 - B. Screen in fuel tank
 - C. Filter attached to the end of flexible fuel hose (in tank)
 - D. In-Line filter
- VII. Fuel pump action (Transparencies 6 and 7)**
- A. Inlet stroke
 - 1. Diaphragm flexes downward, forming a vacuum
 - 2. Inlet check valve opens
 - 3. Fuel is drawn into pump
 - B. Outlet stroke
 - 1. Diaphragm pushed upward by return spring
 - 2. Inlet valve forced shut
 - 3. Outlet valve forced open
 - 4. Fuel is forced out of pump
- VIII. Types of air cleaners (Transparency 8)**
- A. Oil bath
 - B. Paper element
 - C. Polyurethane
- (NOTE: Some systems use a dual element filter.)
- IX. Parts of the float-type carburetor (Transparency 9)**
- A. Fuel Inlet
 - B. Float needle seat
 - C. Float needle

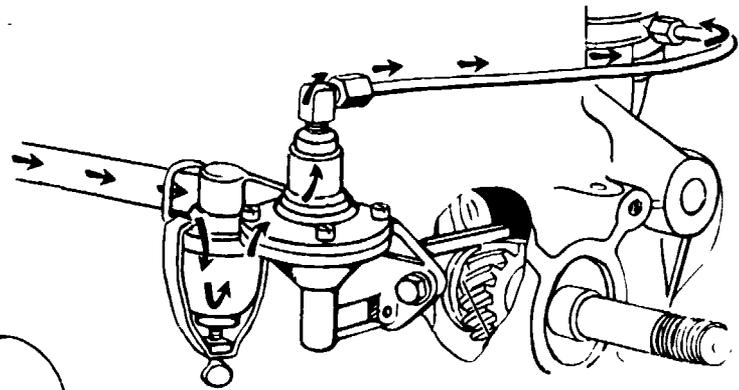
INFORMATION SHEET

- D. Nozzle
 - E. Packing nut
 - F. Needle valve
 - G. Float
 - H. Throttle valve
 - I. Idle valve
 - J. Venturi
 - K. Choke valve
- X. Parts of the diaphragm-type carburetor (Transparency 10)**
- A. Needle valve
 - B. Speed adjusting screw
 - C. Idle adjusting screw
 - D. Choke
 - E. Pump cover
 - F. Fuel pipes
 - G. Spring and cap
 - H. Diaphragm
- XI. Carburetor systems (Transparencies 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16 and 17)**
- A. Float — Maintains a given depth of fuel in the float chamber
 - B. Choke — Provides a richer mixture for cold engine starting and operation
 - C. High speed — Used when the engine is called upon to supply power for full, partial, or no-load at various operating speeds
 - D. Idle speed — Provides fuel delivery during closed or nearly closed throttle operation
 - E. Throttle — Regulates the amount of air/fuel mix allowed to enter the engine

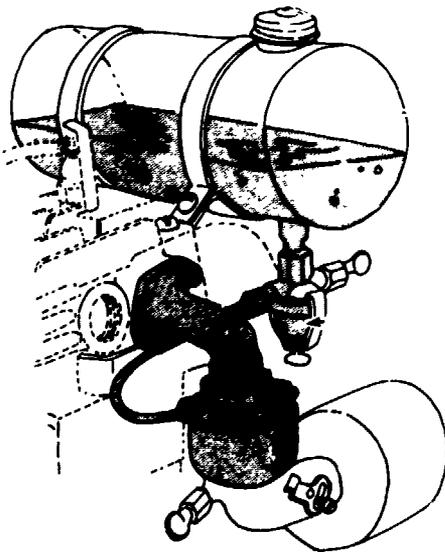
Fuel Supply Systems



Suction Feed System

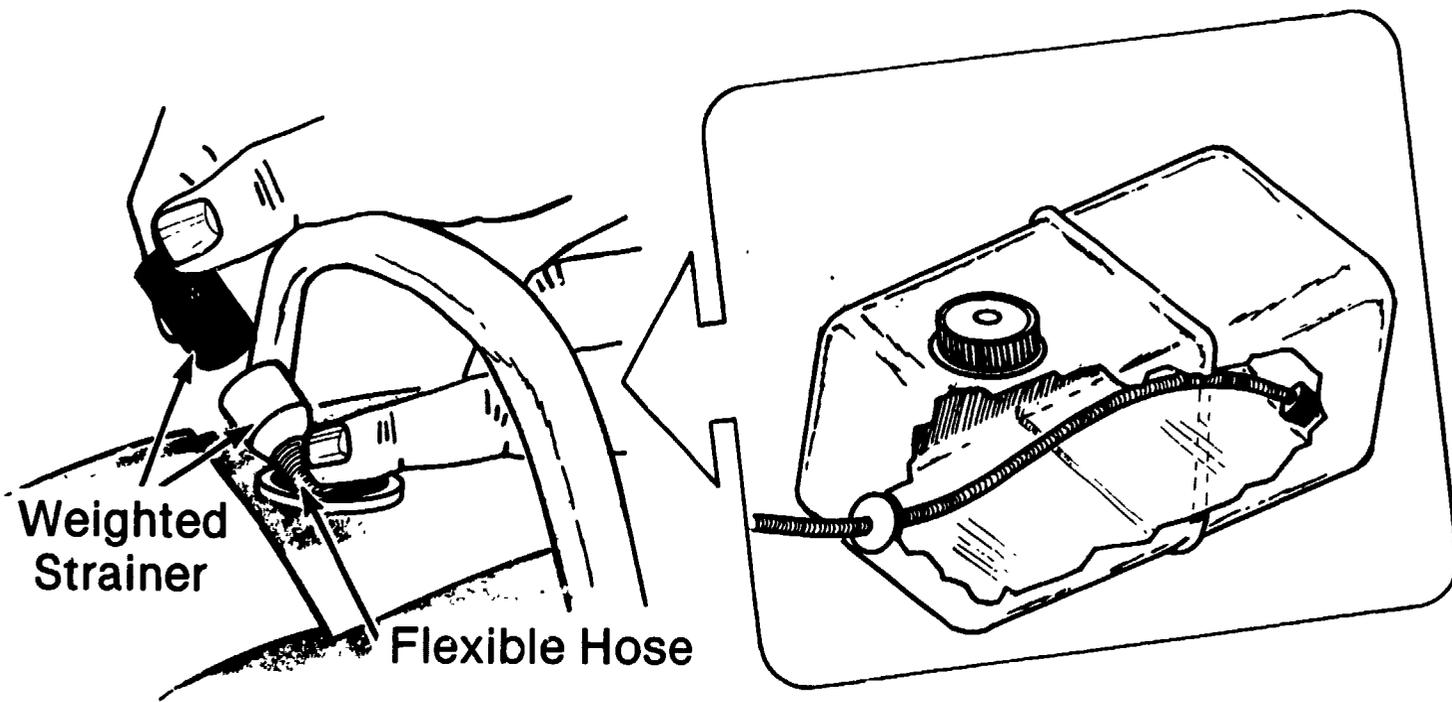


Pump Feed System



Gravity Feed System

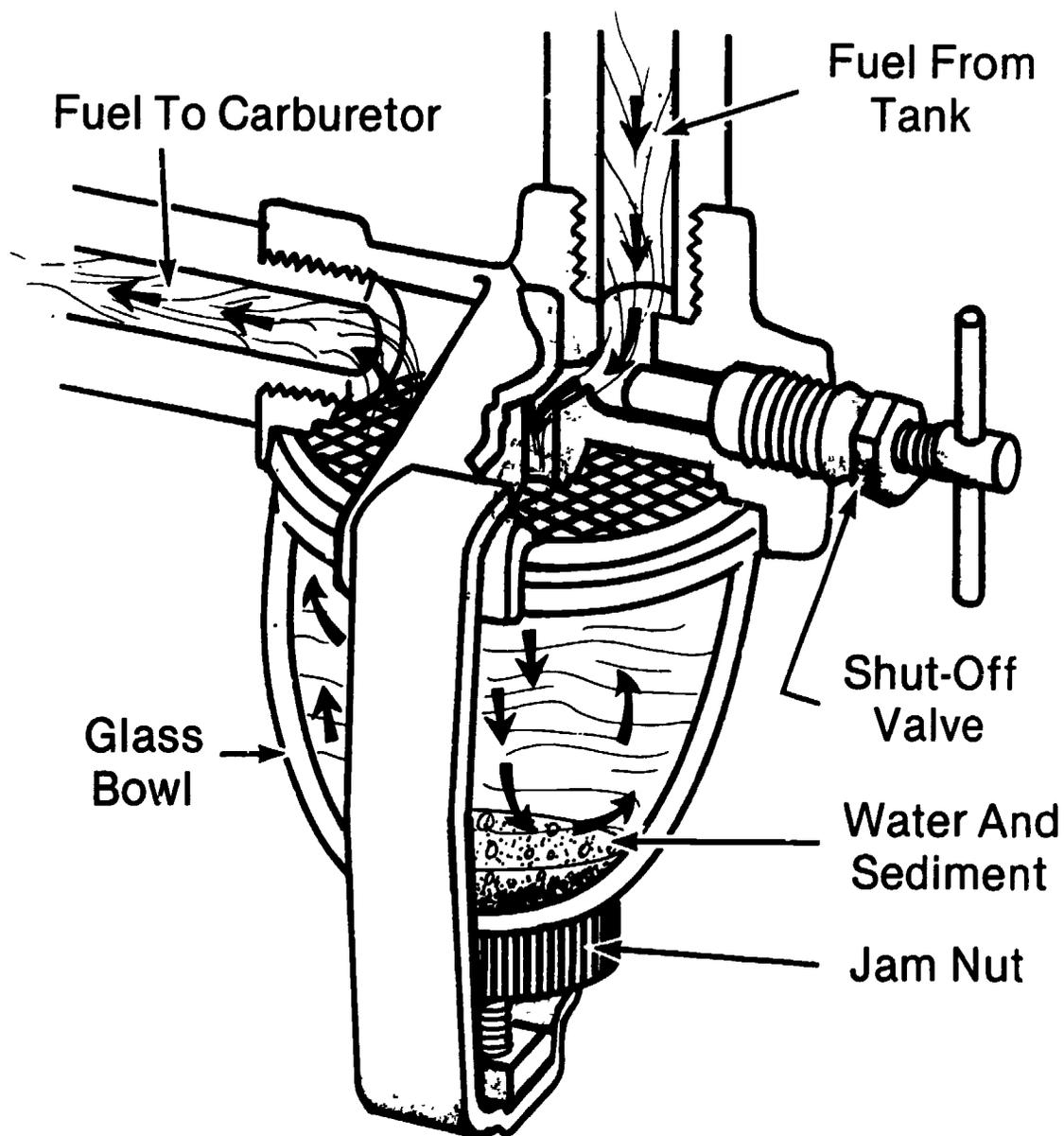
Fuel Filter



Filter attached to end of flexible fuel hose.

Fuel Filter

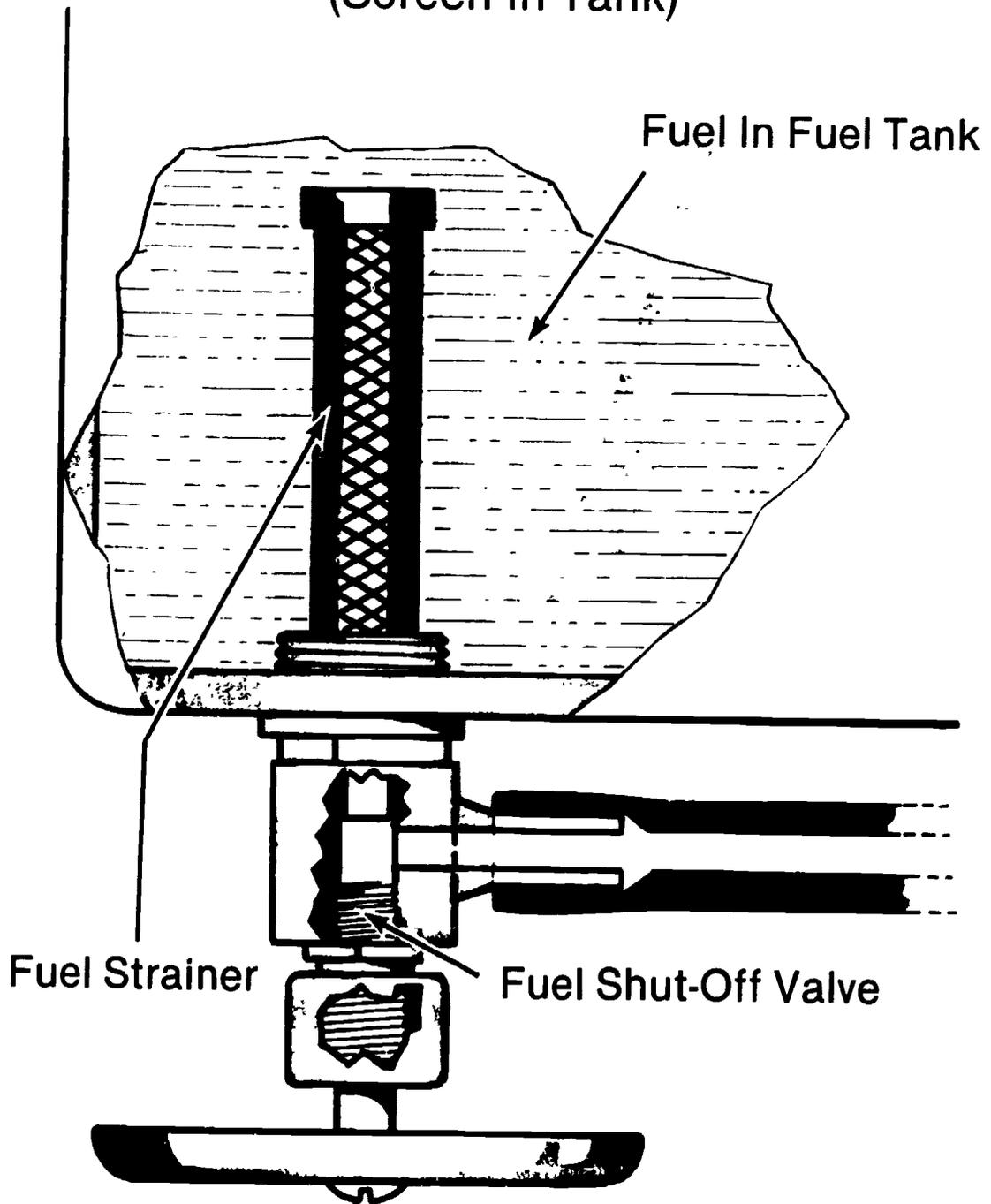
(Glass Sediment Bowl And Screen)



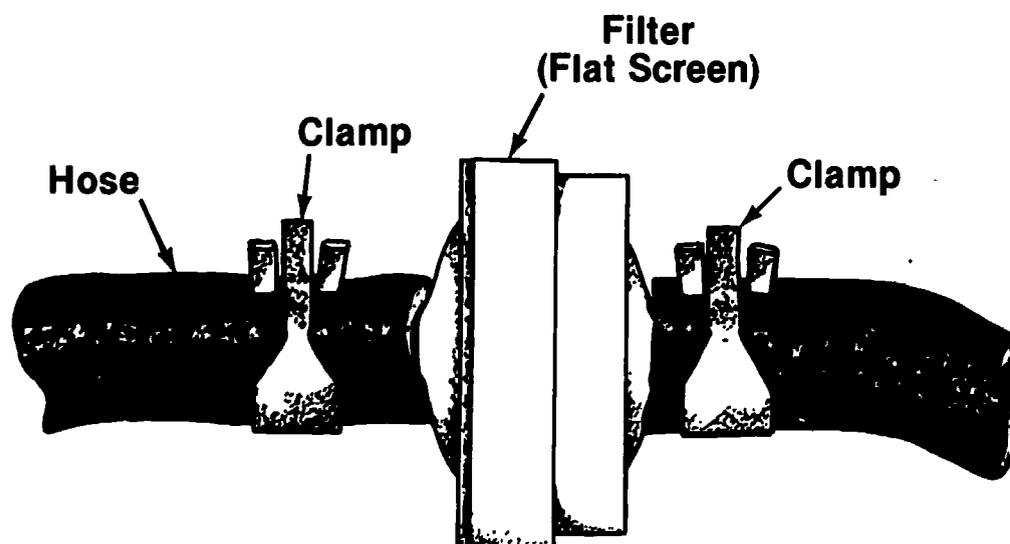
541

Fuel Filter

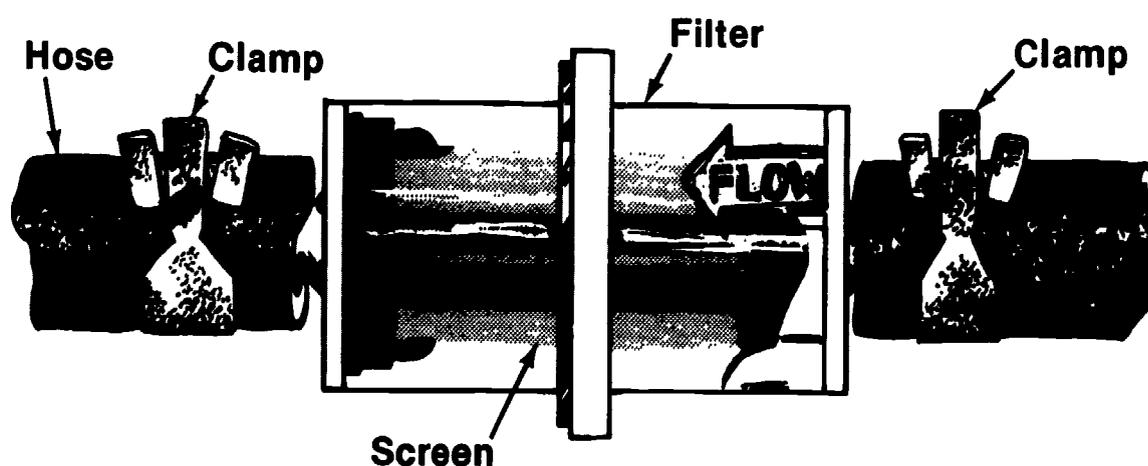
(Screen In Tank)



Fuel Filter (In-Line)

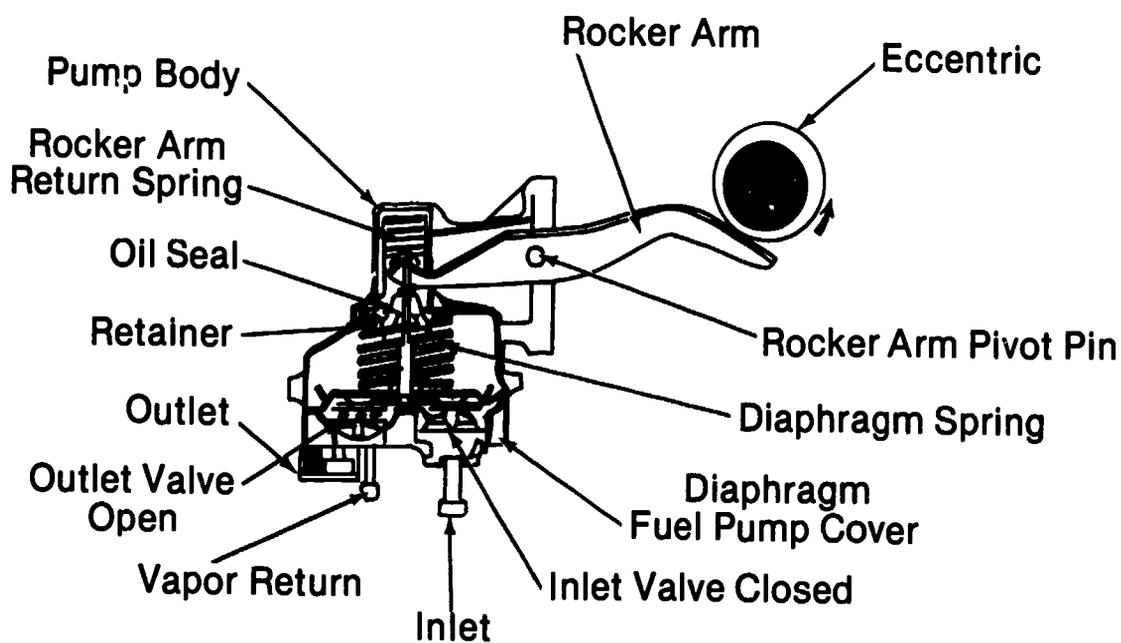
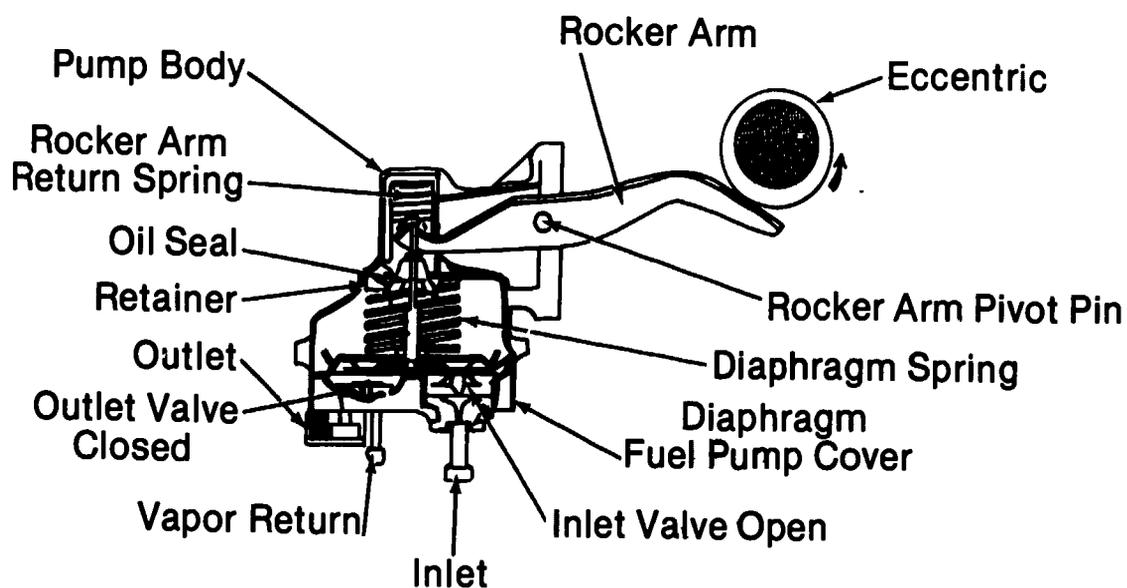


(NOTE: This is a diagram of a Briggs and Stratton in-line filter.)

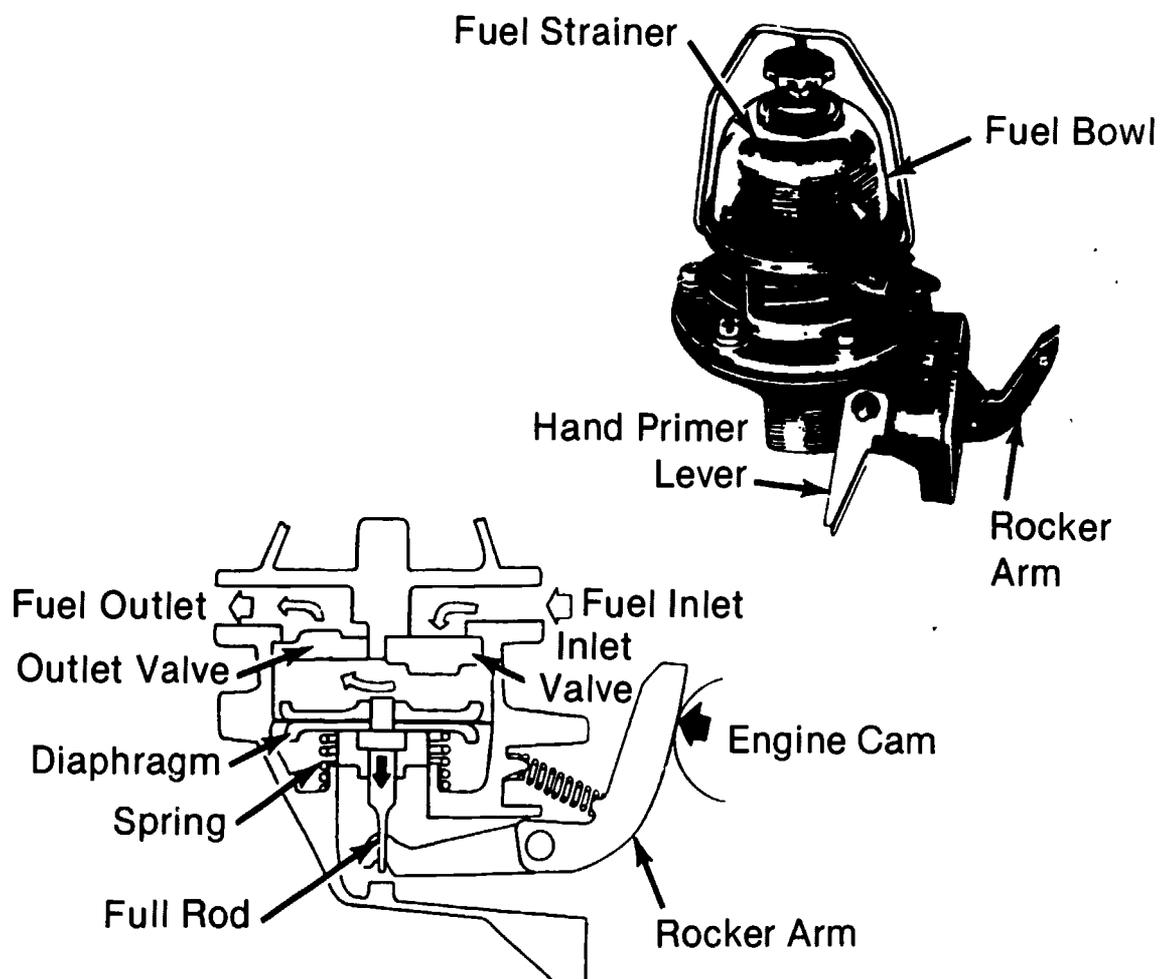


(NOTE: This is a diagram of a Whelbro in-line filter.)

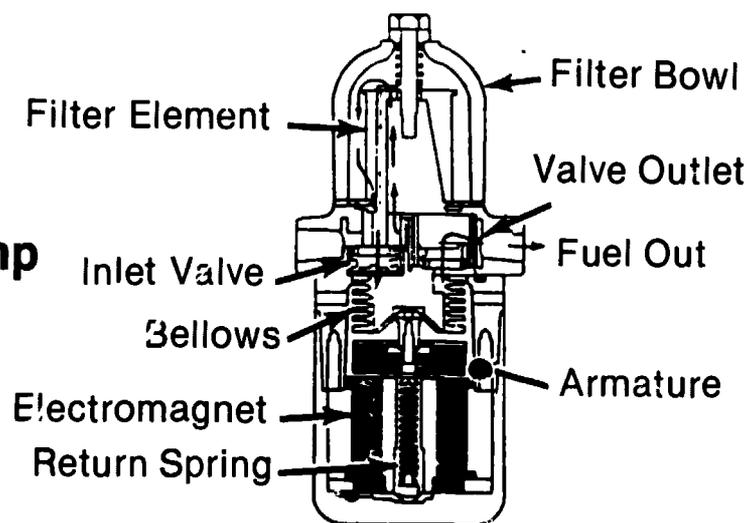
Fuel Pump



Operation of Fuel Pump

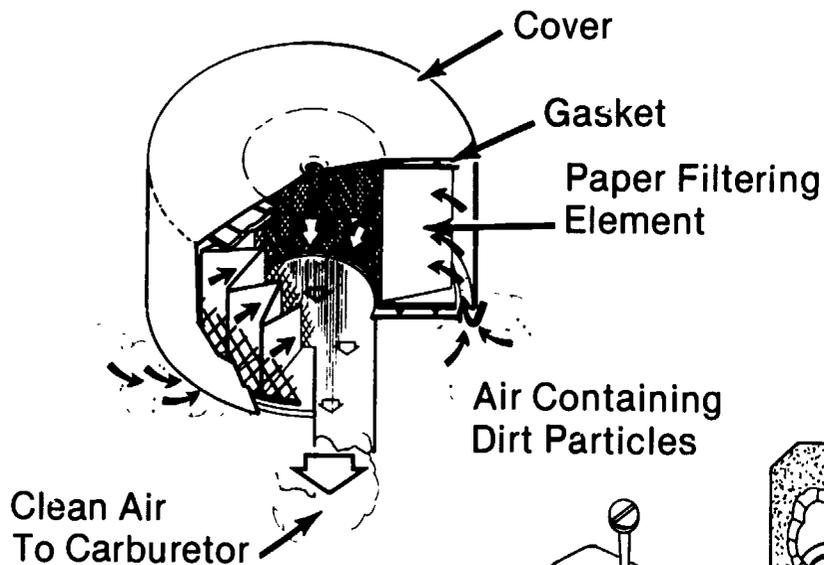


Cutaway View of Electric Fuel Pump

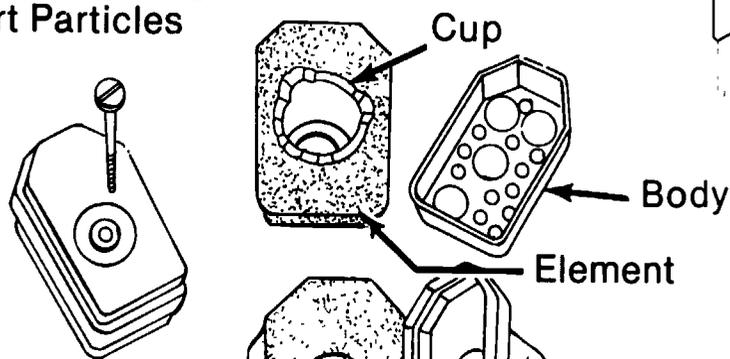
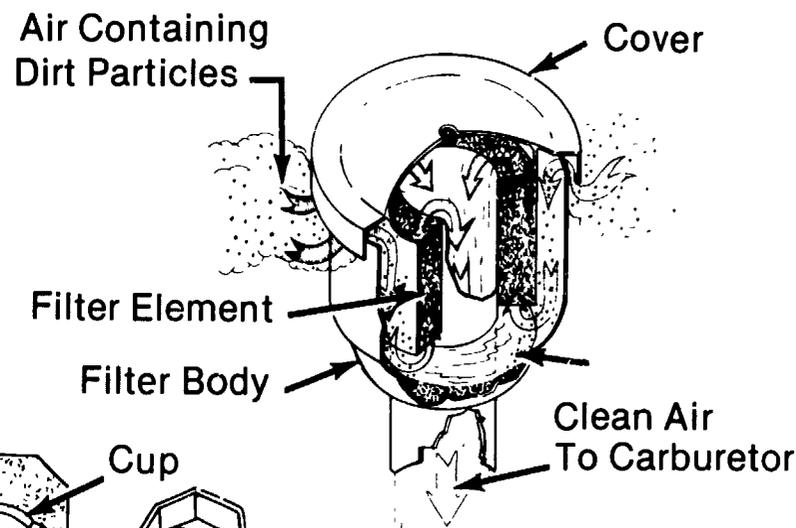


Types of Air Cleaners

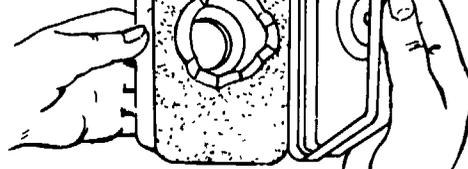
Dry-Filter Air Cleaner



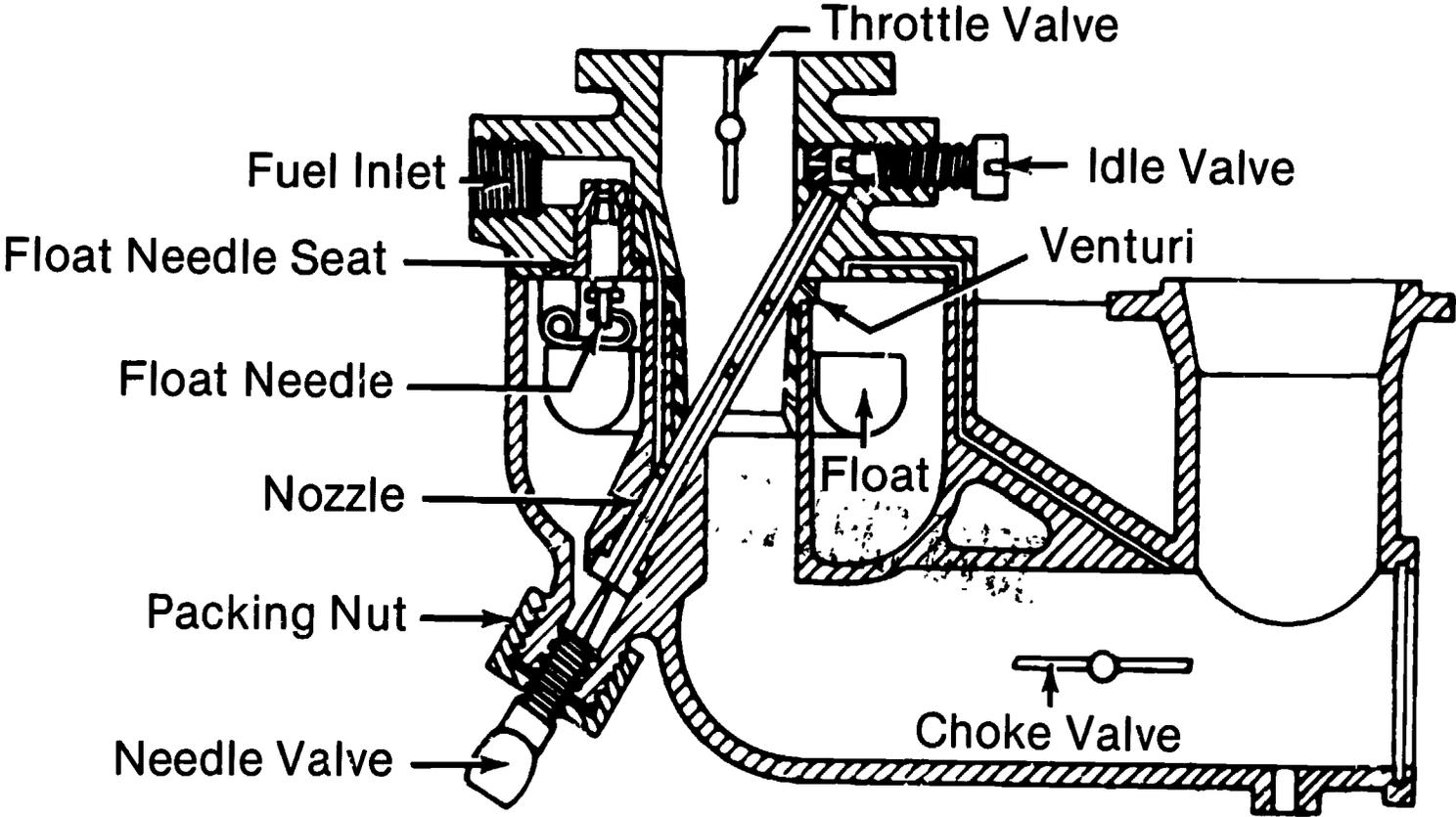
Oil-Bath Air Cleaner



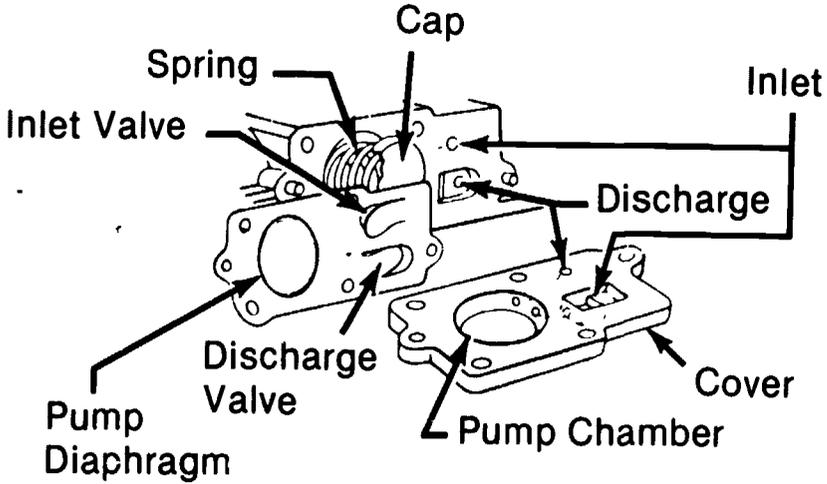
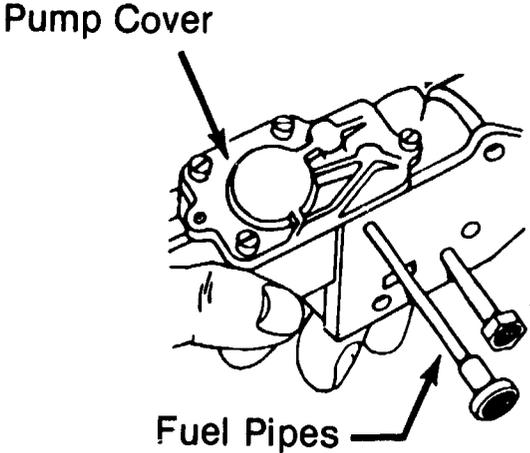
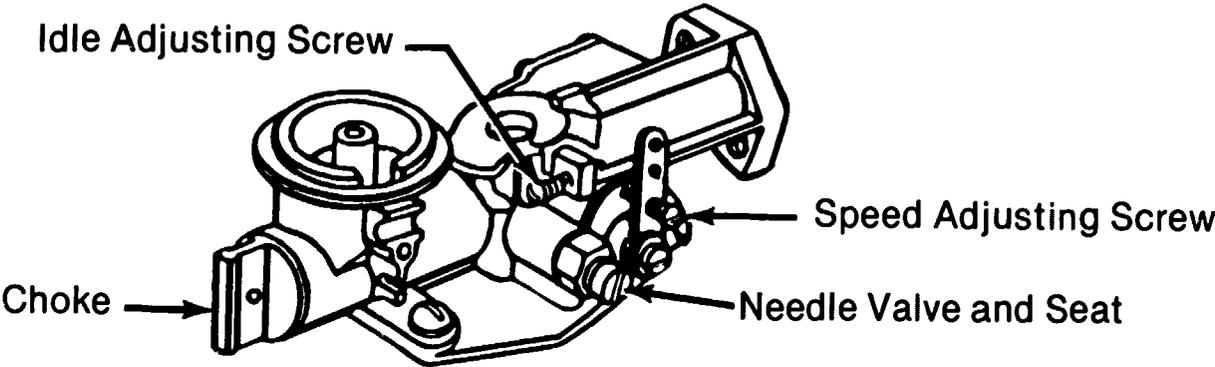
Polyurethane Air Cleaner



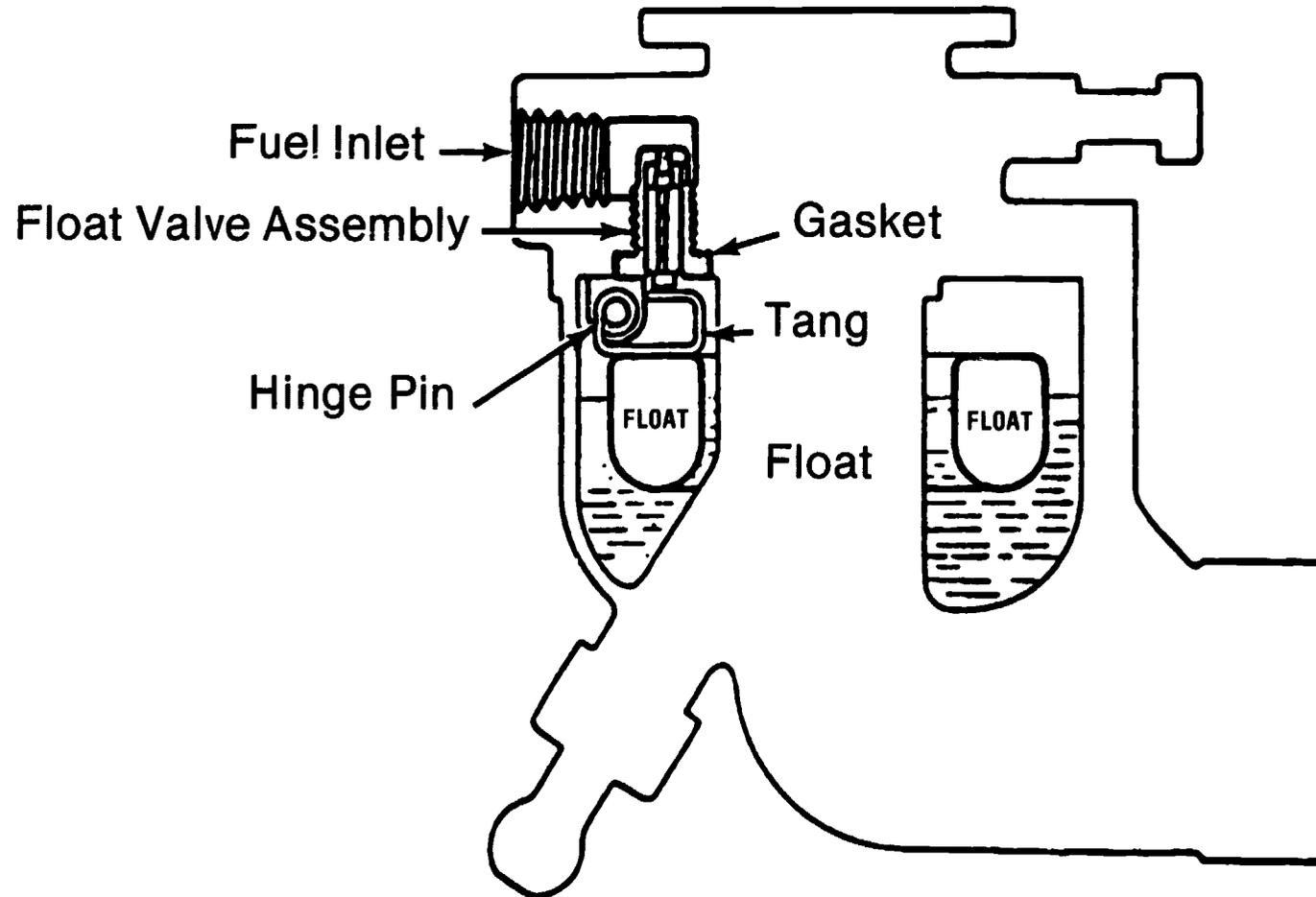
Parts of a Float Carburetor



Parts of a Diaphragm Carburetor



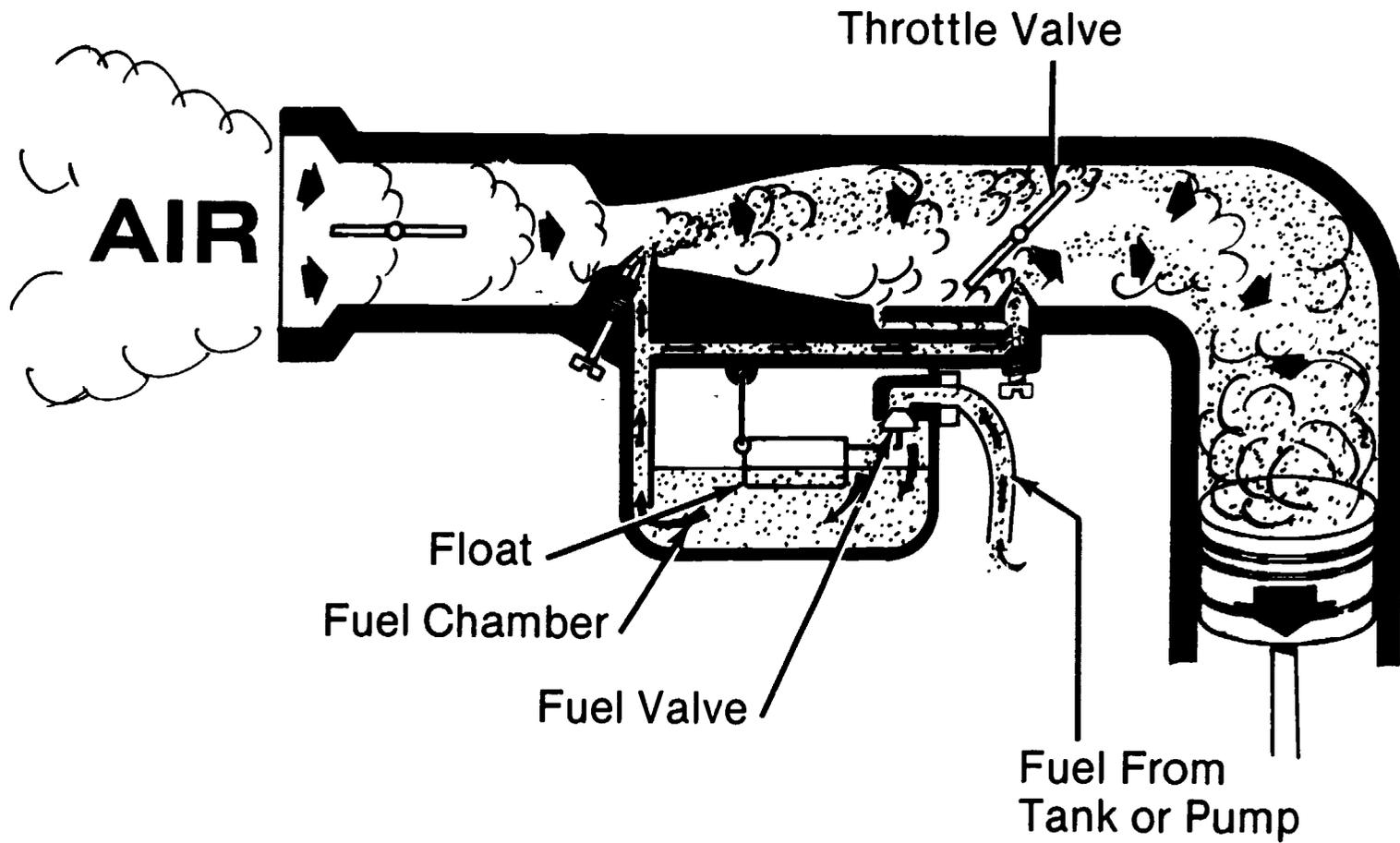
The Float System



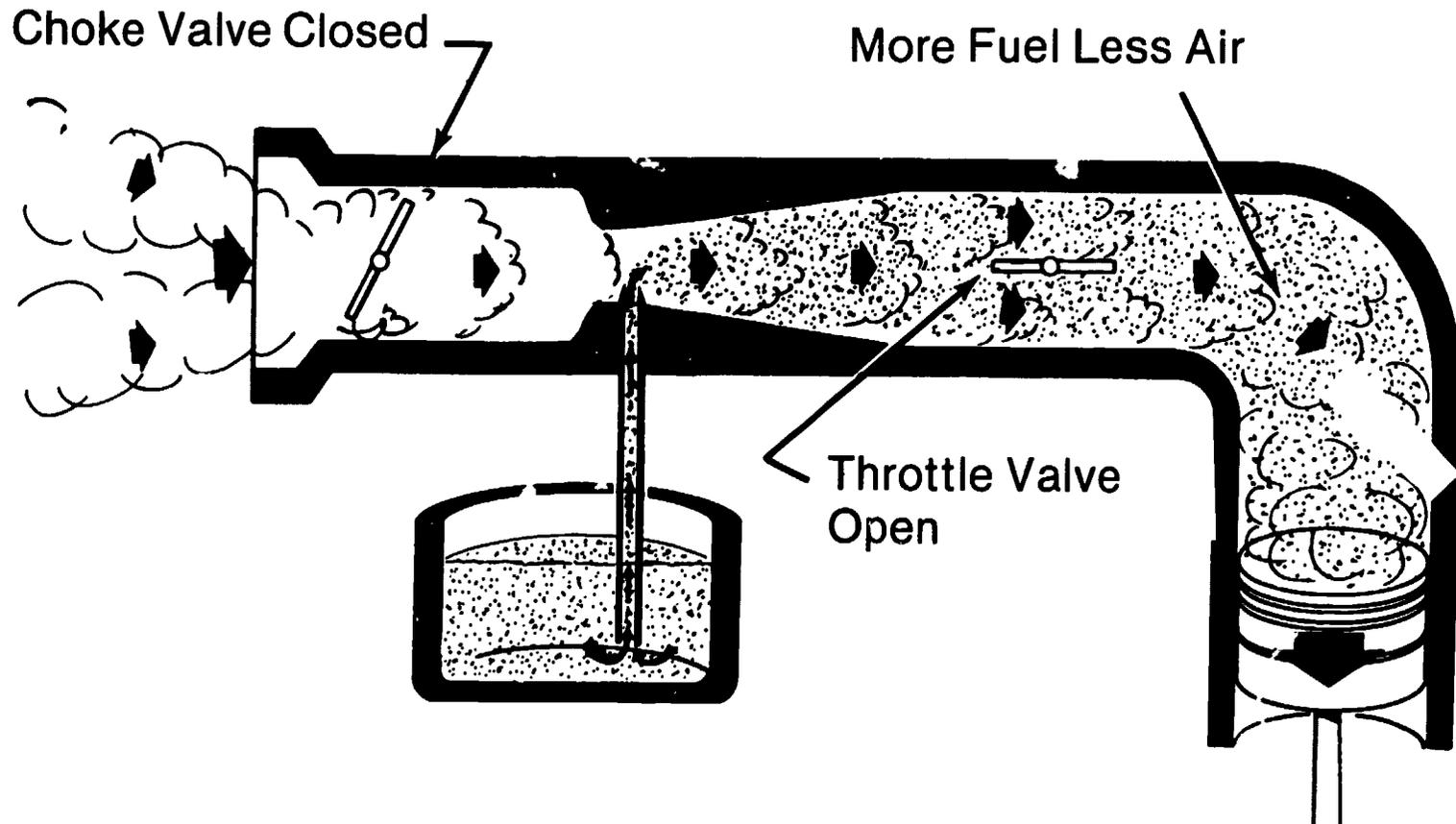
552

553

Float-Type Carburetor



Carburetor Choke Valve

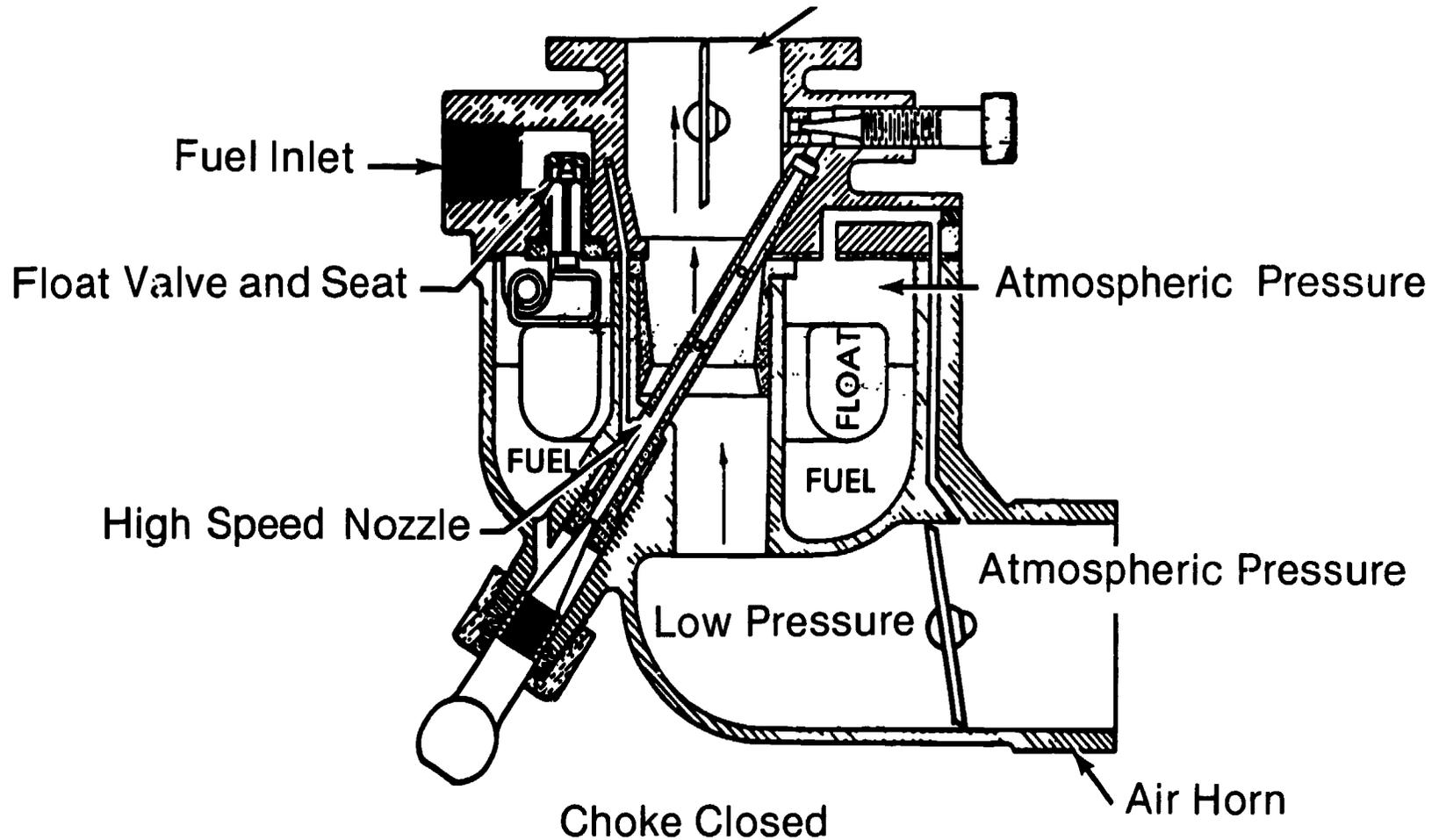


556

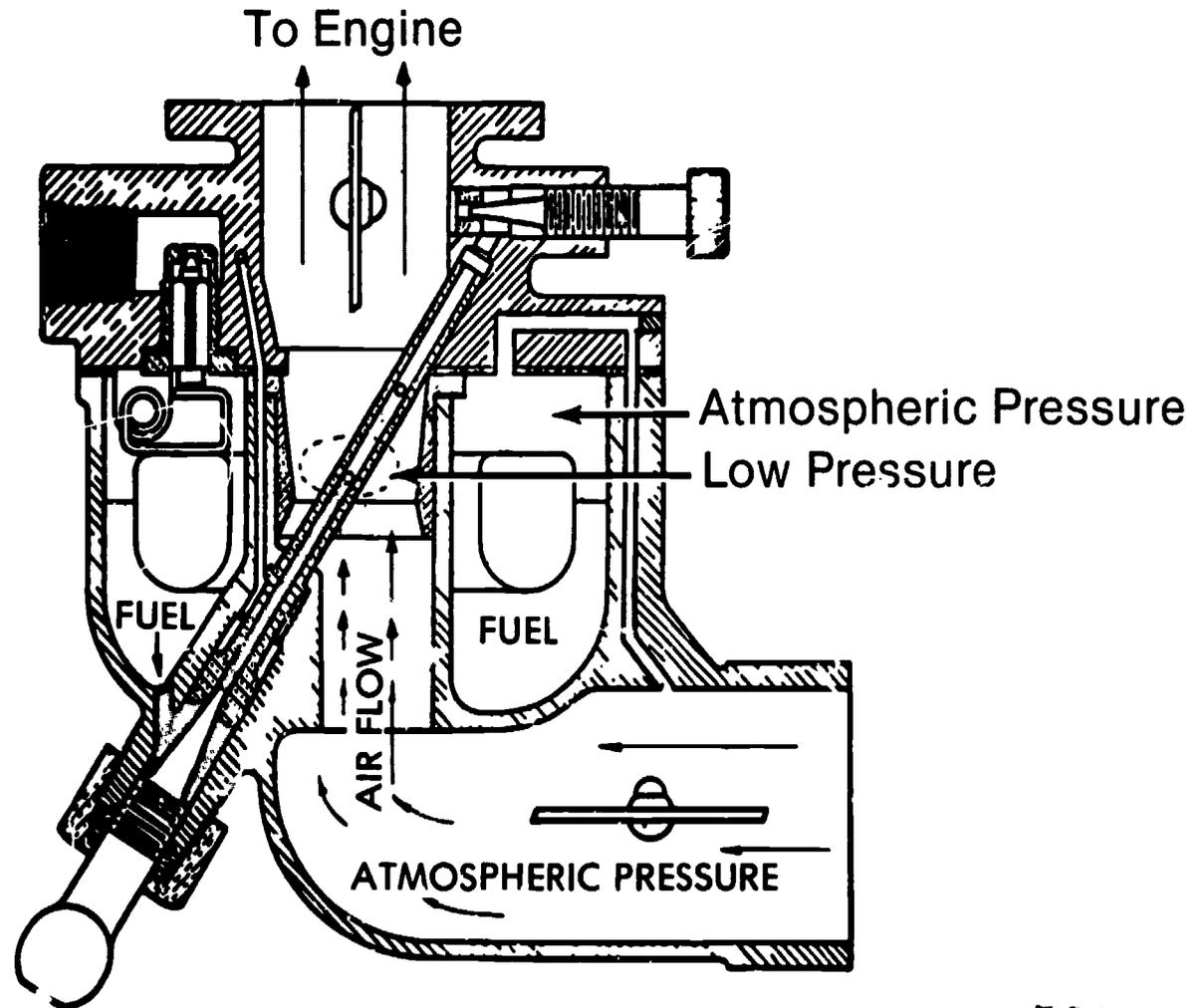
557

The Choke System

Very Low Pressure When Choke Is Closed



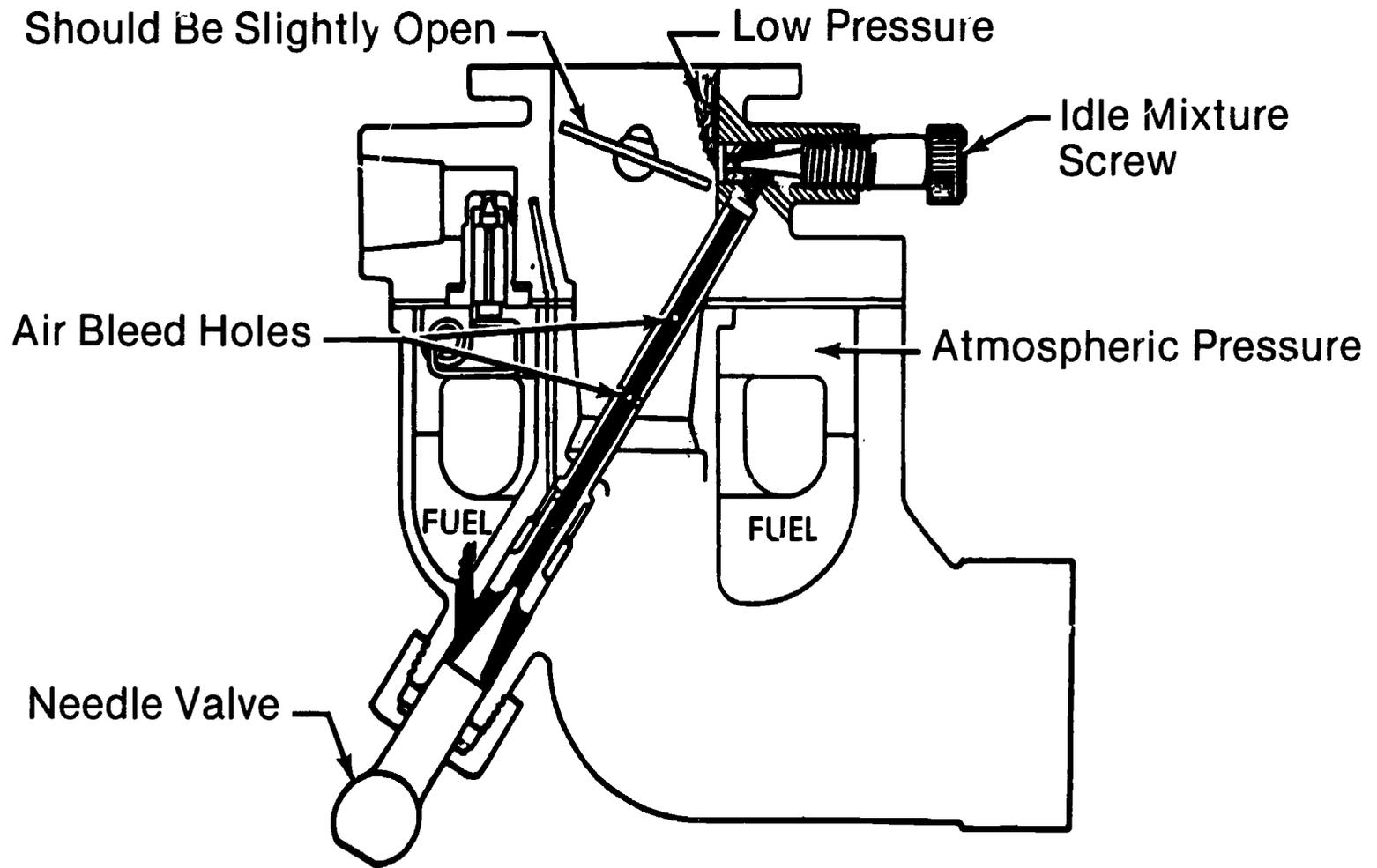
The High Speed System



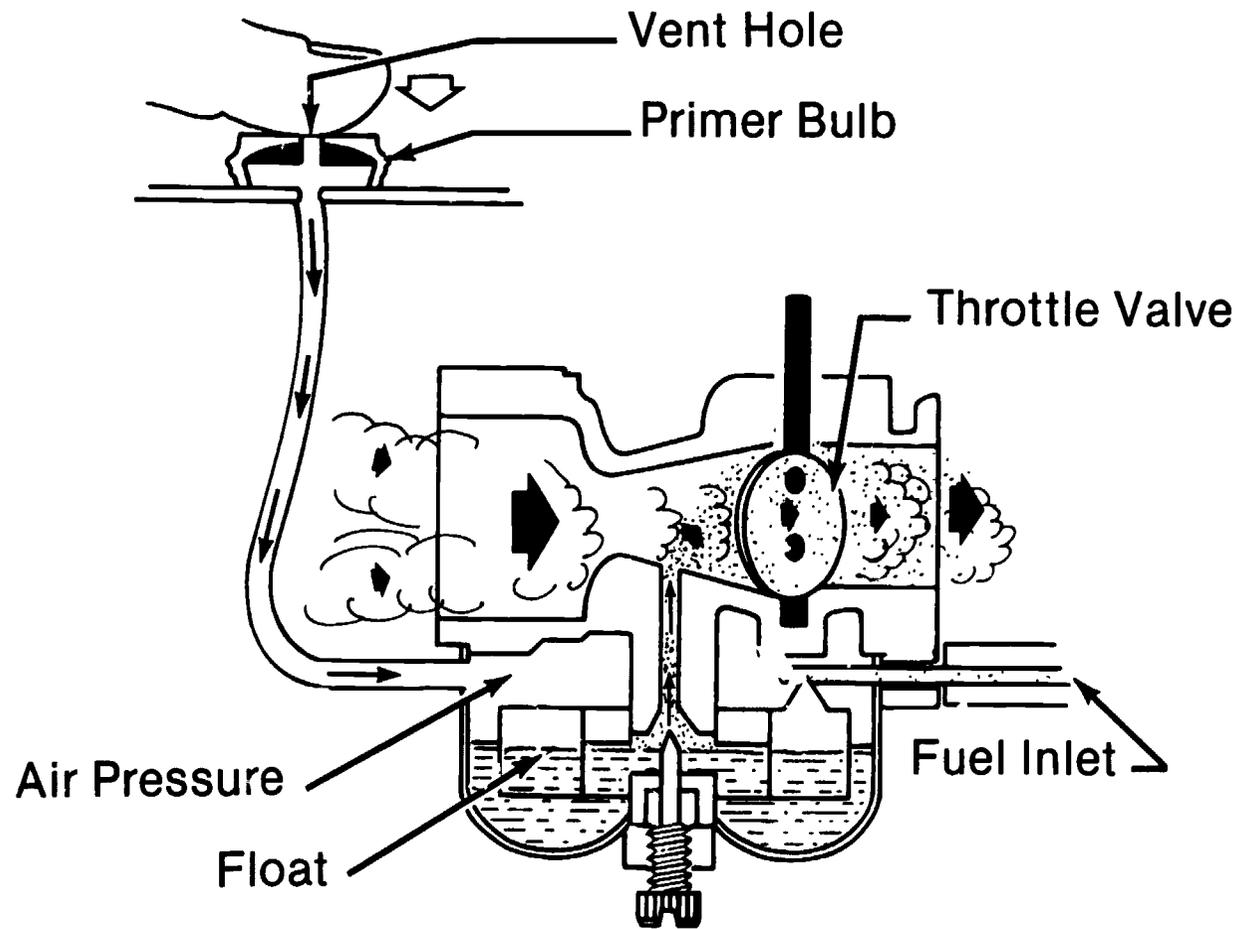
560

561

The Idle System



Bulb-Type Primer



FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

JOB SHEET #1 — SERVICE AN AIR CLEANER

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Compressed air
2. Container of solvent and cleaning brush
3. Shop towels
4. Screwdriver
5. Clean engine oil
6. Safety glasses

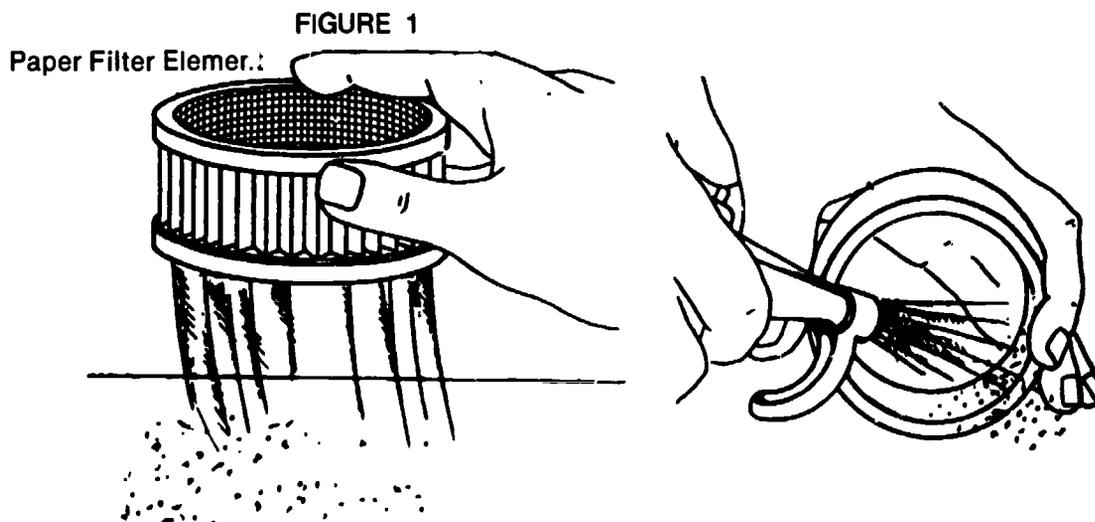
B. Procedure

1. Disconnect and ground spark plug wire
2. Remove air cleaner fasteners
3. Remove air cleaner and air cleaner cover
4. Determine the type of air cleaner element
5. Service air cleaner according to type

a. Service paper air cleaner element

(NOTE: Paper air cleaner elements should be replaced at specified intervals.)

- 1) Clean by tapping lightly on a flat surface or by directing a controlled stream of compressed air through the element opposite normal air flow (Figure 1)



JOB SHEET #1

- 2) Before reinstalling, check the element against the light to make sure there are no holes or ruptures present

(NOTE: Light should be visible. If not, discard element.)

- 3) Check bottom and top gasket surfaces of the paper element for damage
- 4) Install right side up when indicated

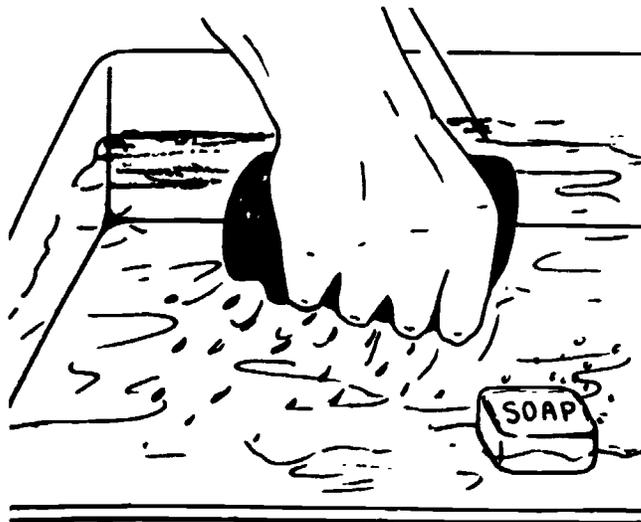
b. Service polyurethane element

- 1) Remove the polyurethane element from the support screen
- 2) Wash it thoroughly (Figure 2)

(NOTE: the element can be washed in solvent or soap and water.)

(CAUTION: Never use gasoline to clean element.)

FIGURE 2

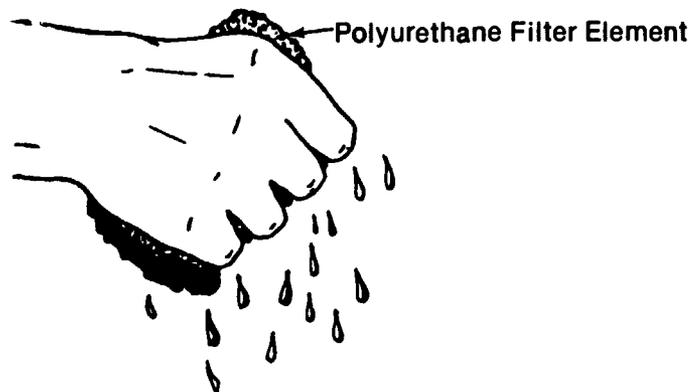


- 3) Squeeze out the solvent or soap and water
(NOTE: Do not wring, as the element might tear.)
- 4) Reoil the filter element with clean engine oil

JOB SHEET #1

- 5) Squeeze the excess oil from the filter element (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



- 6) Replace element on support screen

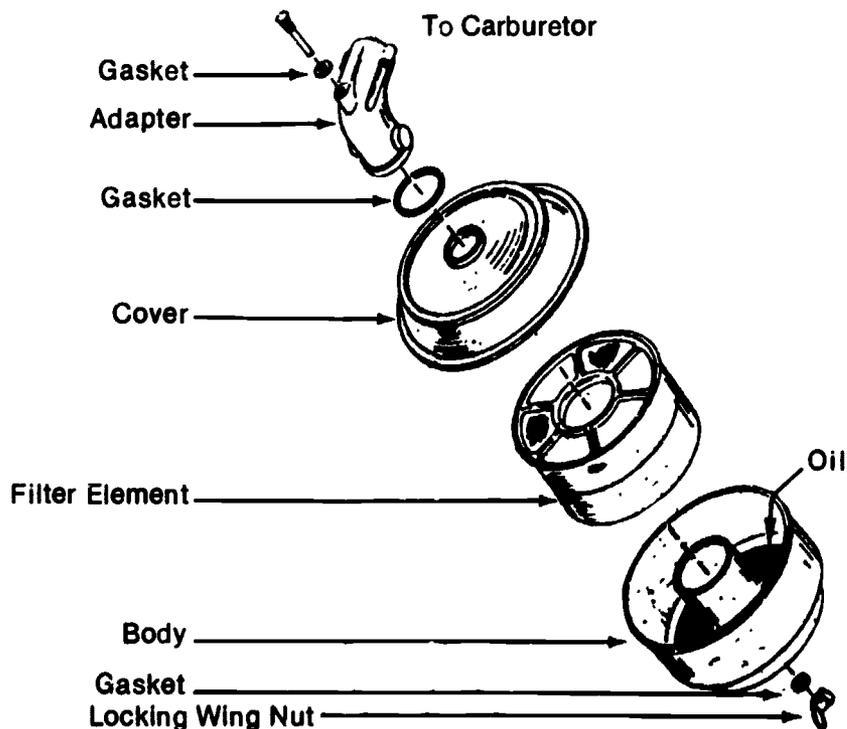
(NOTE: Make sure the element is placed on the support screen to form a sound seal for both top and bottom contact edges.)

c. Service oil bath air cleaner

- 1) Remove wing nut and separate parts for cleaning (Figure 4)

(NOTE: Dispose of old oil properly.)

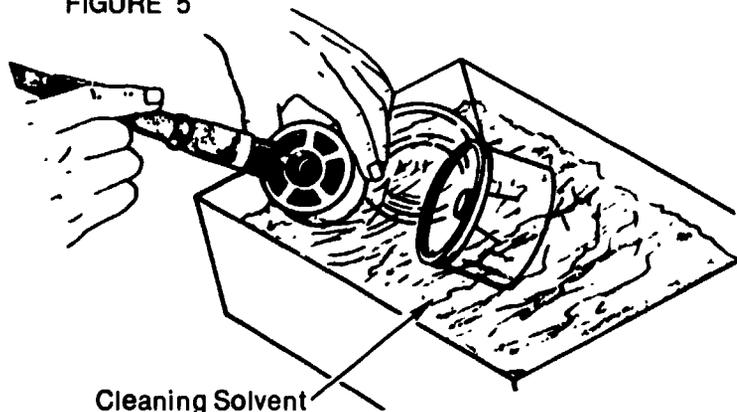
FIGURE 4



JOB SHEET #1

- 2) Rinse air strainer and parts in clean solvent (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5



- 3) Shake excessive solvent out of the air strainer
- (CAUTION: Wear eye protection, as the solvent is harmful to the eyes.)**
- 4) Saturate the air strainer gauze with light oil and allow excess to drip off
- 5) Wash dirt and grit out of lower cup with clean solvent
- 6) Fill lower cup to correct level with fresh engine oil of correct type for engine
- 7) Place units together and install wing nut
- (NOTE: Make sure gasket is in place between the air strainer and lower cup.)**
- 8) Tighten wing nut securely
6. Clean the filter body and cover before replacing
7. Make certain the air cleaner to carburetor gasket is in good condition and in place; replace if necessary
8. Replace the air cleaner body
- (NOTE: Make sure the air cleaner faces in the correct direction. If a locating tang or lug is present, make sure it engages properly.)**
9. Tighten the air cleaner wing nut or bolt securely
- (NOTE: Avoid overtightening as this can cause carburetor warpage or improper operation of the choke.)**
10. Install any hoses to air cleaner as required

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

JOB SHEET #2 — REMOVE AND REPLACE A FLOAT-TYPE CARBURETOR

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Tubing wrenches
3. Torque wrench
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Disconnect and ground spark plug wire
2. Remove the air cleaner
3. Disconnect the fuel line

(NOTE: Use a backup wrench to avoid twisting the fuel line. Use a container to catch gas drippings.)

4. Disconnect the throttle linkage
5. Disconnect the choke control cable if one is used
6. Remove the ignition ground wire if one is used
7. Remove the nuts or bolts that hold the carburetor
8. Remove the carburetor

(NOTE: Some throttle linkages can only be removed at this time; be careful not to bend them and identify their correct mounting location.)

9. Remove the old carburetor to manifold gasket
10. Clean the gasket mounting surface

(NOTE: Plug the manifold opening to prevent foreign material from entering engine.)

11. Install the new manifold to carburetor gasket

JOB SHEET #2

12. Place the carburetor in the correct position and start fasteners

(NOTE: Some carburetors need to have the throttle linkage connected at this time; mount the linkage in correct locations.)
13. Tighten and torque carburetor fasteners
14. Replace throttle linkage if not connected before
15. Connect the choke linkage
16. Connect the ignition ground wire in the correct position
17. Connect the fuel line to the carburetor

(NOTE: Use caution to avoid cross threading.)
18. Tighten the fuel line securely

(NOTE: Use a backup wrench to avoid fuel line twisting.)
19. Check to make sure all connections and accessories are secure
20. Start the engine and check for leaks

(CAUTION: A loose connection or unsecured fuel line can come loose, break, or leak. If this happens, fuel will leak and if ignited this fuel will cause a dangerous fire. Be correct in your work.)
21. Make idle air mixture and idle speed adjustments as required by engine manual

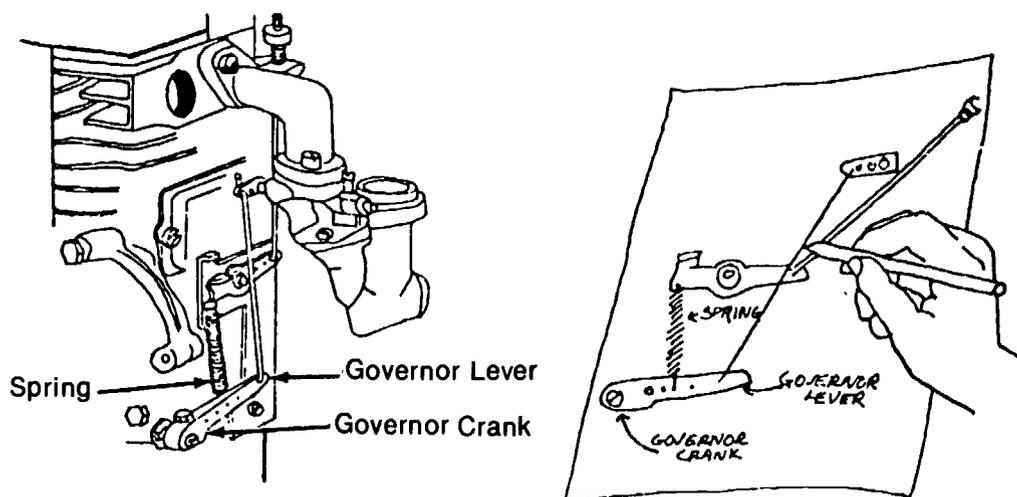
FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

JOB SHEET #3 — SERVICE A FLOAT-TYPE CARBURETOR

- A. Tools and materials needed
1. Hand tool assortment
 2. Suitable carburetor cleaning fluid
 3. Parts cleaning basket
 4. Safety glasses
- B. Procedure
1. Disconnect and ground spark plug wire
 2. Close fuel shut-off valve
 3. Disconnect fuel line
 4. Disconnect throttle and choke cable
 5. Disconnect governor linkage

(NOTE: It is recommended that you make a sketch of the linkages and their positions to aid reassembly. See Figure 1.)

FIGURE 1

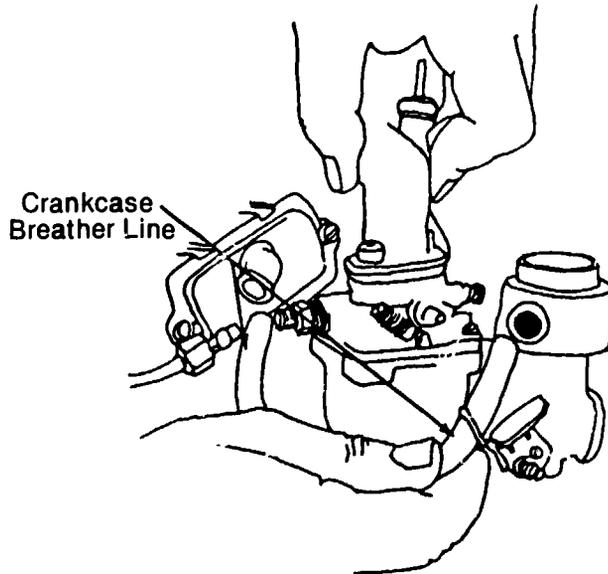


JOB SHEET #3

6. Remove the carburetor

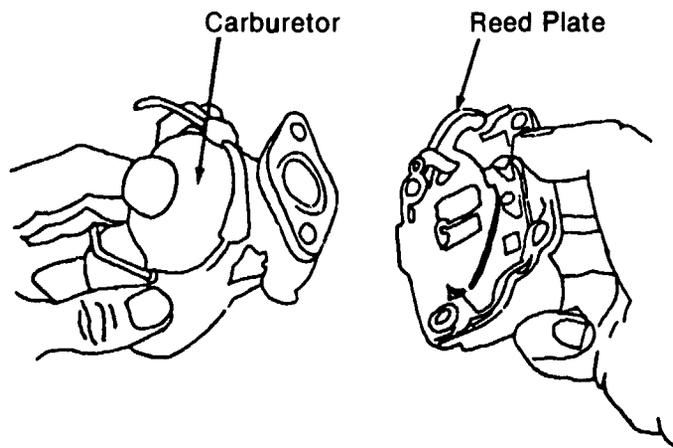
(NOTE: Some models have a breather return hose to disconnect. See Figure 2.)

FIGURE 2



7. Remove the intake valve plate from the carburetor on some two-cycle engines (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3

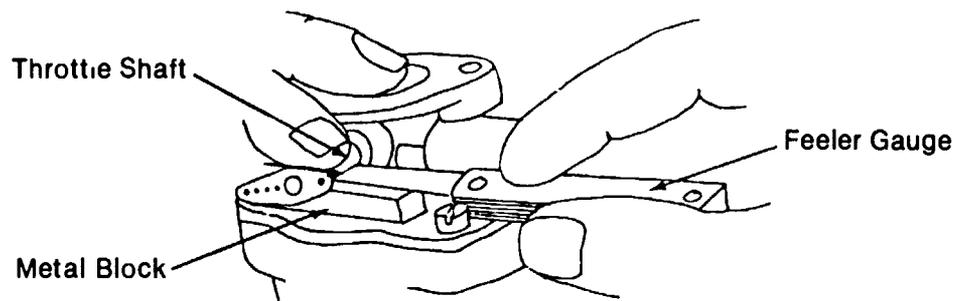


JOB SHEET #3

8. Check throttle shaft bushing for wear (Figure 4)

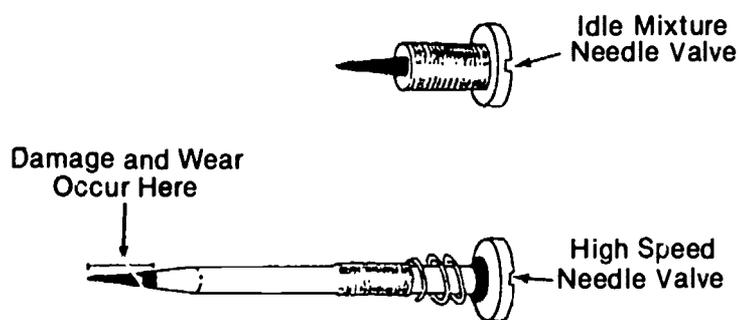
(NOTE: Check engine manufacturer's specifications.)

FIGURE 4



9. Remove and check the condition of the high speed and idle speed needle valves (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5

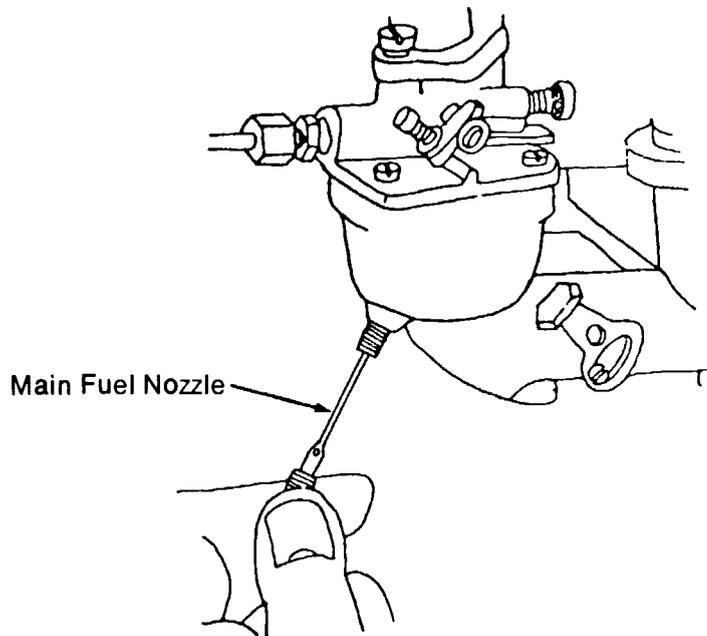


JOB SHEET #3

10. Remove the float bowl

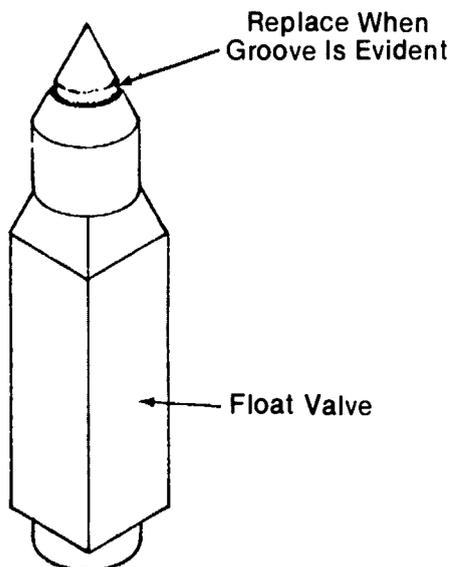
(NOTE: On two piece carburetors remove the main fuel nozzle before removing float bowl. See Figure 6.)

FIGURE 6



11. Remove float hinge pin and remove float
12. Remove float valve and inspect for wear; replace if a groove is worn in the tapered point of the valve (Figure 7)

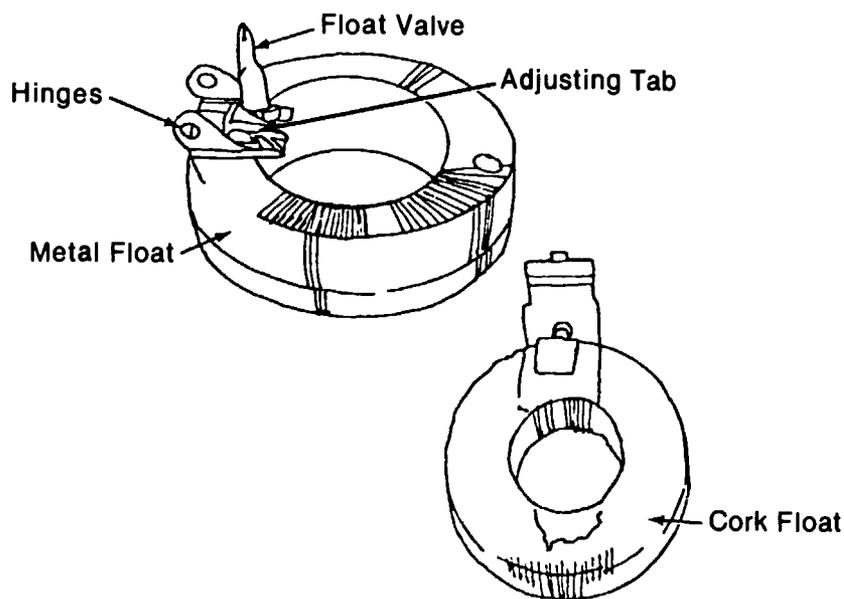
FIGURE 7



JOB SHEET #3

13. Inspect the floats for
 - a. Worn hinges
 - b. Fuel in metal floats; replace if you feel a liquid inside the float
 - c. Good varnish coating on cork floats; replace the float if the varnish is peeling or has been punched (Figure 8)

FIGURE 8

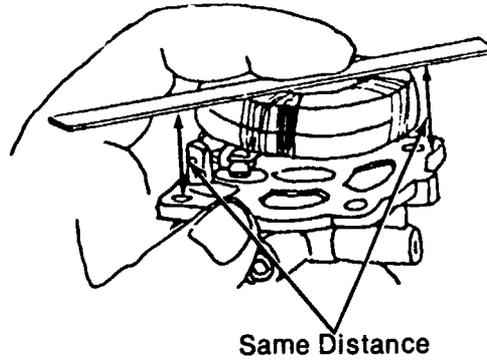


14. Remove all gaskets and/or rubber parts on the carburetor
15. Place all the carburetor parts except the gaskets, float, and rubber parts in a cleaner basket
16. Place the basket in the carburetor cleaner and gently move it up and down to circulate the cleaner through the parts; then let it set for no more than thirty minutes
17. Remove the basket from the cleaner
18. Rinse the parts and basket thoroughly with water
19. Dry the parts, one at a time, with compressed air
(NOTE: Be sure to blow out all passage in the carburetor body.)
20. Replace float valve and float in the carburetor body

JOB SHEET #3

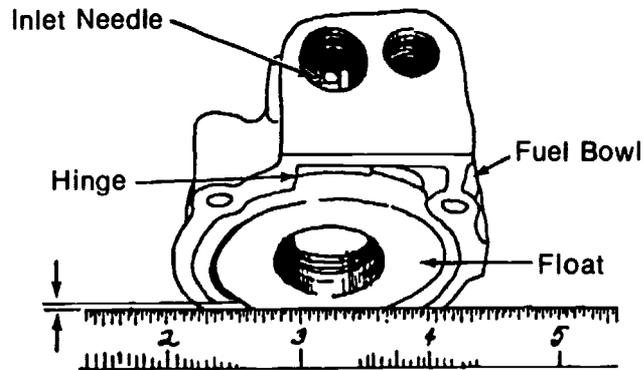
21. Adjust the float level by bending the tab and measuring correct height with a steel ruler (Figure 9)

FIGURE 9



22. Check distance from carburetor to float top for proper height and equal distance on horizontal float (Figure 10)

FIGURE 10



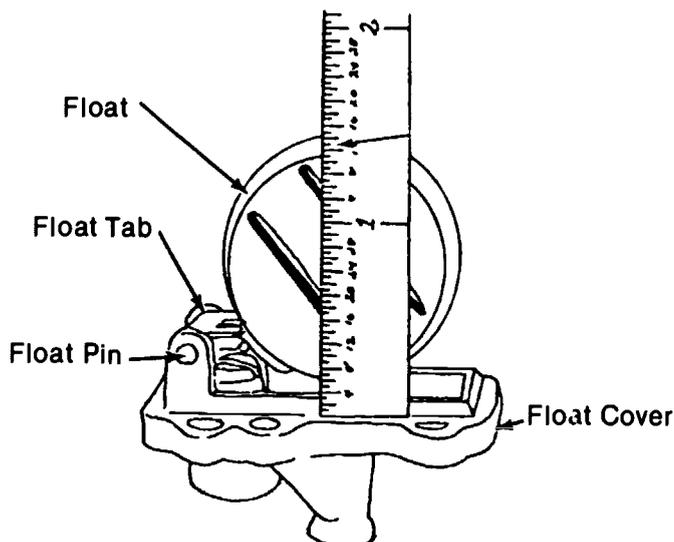
5.11

JOB SHEET #3

23. Check distance on a vertical float from carburetor top to top of float

(NOTE: Float should be true vertical to the carburetor top to prevent interference with float bowl walls. See Figure 11.)

FIGURE 11



24. Check bottom of float for proper clearance in relation to float bowl
25. Install new float bowl gasket and attach bowl to carburetor top
26. Install idle mixture valve and screw it down until it is lightly seated; then back it out approximately two turns
- (NOTE: Install the main fuel nozzle on the two-piece carburetor.)
27. Install the high speed valve and screw it down until it is lightly seated; then back it out approximately two turns
- (NOTE: Steps Y and Z are preliminary adjustments only and will be completed with the engine running.)
28. Check for free operation of the throttle and choke valve
29. Install the carburetor on the engine
30. Reconnect the governor linkage according to the diagram sketched earlier
31. Reconnect throttle and choke linkage

JOB SHEET #3

32. Reconnect fuel line
33. Open fuel shut-off valve and watch float bowl area of the carburetor for fuel leaks

(NOTE: Occasionally the float valve will get contamination in it that will keep it from shutting off. In this case, a few *light* taps on the valve area may release the contamination and solve the problem.)
34. Start the engine and operate until it is at normal operating temperature
35. Adjust idle speed
36. Adjust the idle mixture valve to the highest and smoothest rpm at idle speed

(NOTE: It may be necessary to reset the idle speed again.)
37. Accelerate the engine up to governor controlled rpm and adjust high speed valve to highest and smoothest rpm

579

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

JOB SHEET #4 — REMOVE, SERVICE, AND REPLACE A DIAPHRAGM CARBURETOR

(NOTE: Illustrations for this job sheet courtesy of Briggs and Stratton Corporation.)

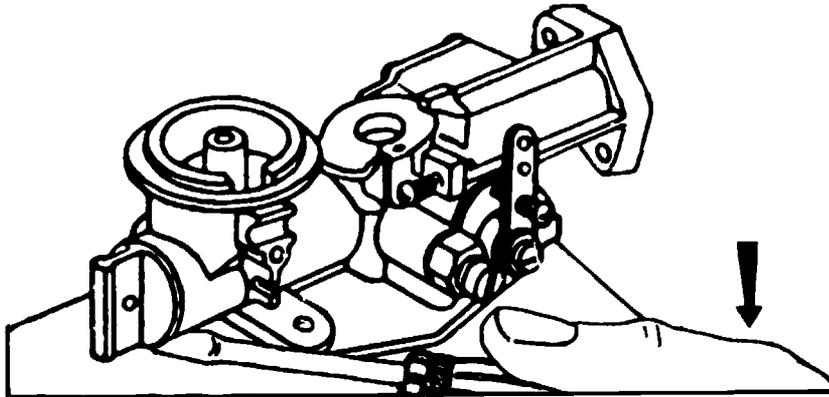
- A. Tools and materials needed
1. Hand tool assortment
 2. Special carburetor screwdrivers
 3. Carburetor cleaning fluid
 4. Parts cleaning basket
 5. Carburetor repair kit
 6. Diaphragm
 7. Shop towels
 8. Safety glasses
- B. Procedure
1. Read operator's manual
 2. Organize your work station
 3. Wear proper safety equipment
 4. Disconnect and ground spark plug wire
 5. Remove air cleaner
 6. Inspect carburetor and fuel tank for leakage
 7. Remove remote control
 8. Remove the carburetor and tank assembly

JOB SHEET #4

9. Remove screws from carburetor (Figure 1)

(NOTE: Use a screwdriver to loosen carburetor from tank. See Figure 1.)

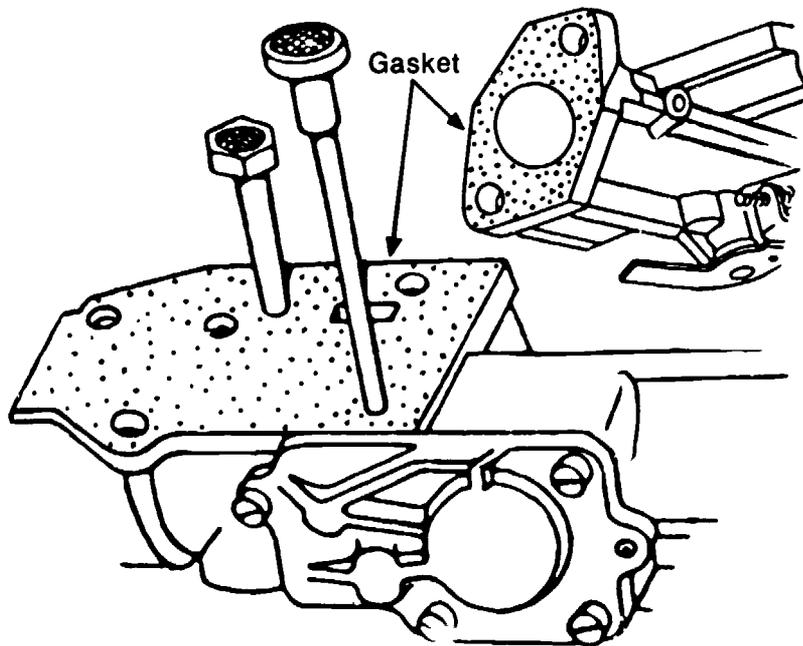
FIGURE 1



10. Slowly remove carburetor from fuel tank
11. Inspect gasket surface of carburetor (Figure 2)

(NOTE: Always replace with new gasket.)

FIGURE 2



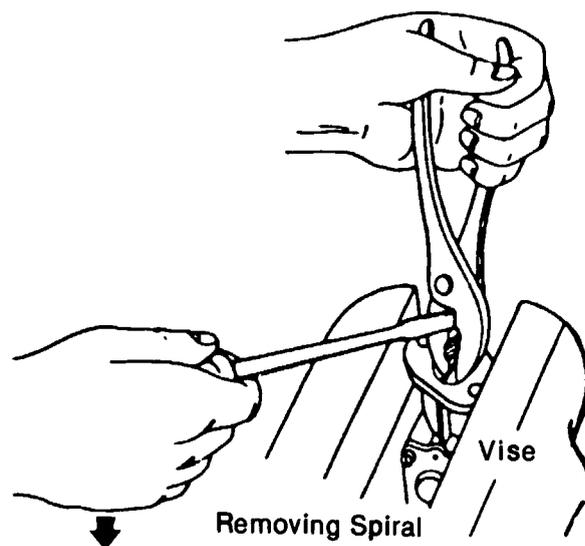
JOB SHEET #4

12. Replace worn throttle if needed

(NOTE: Do not remove throttle if it does not need to be replaced.)

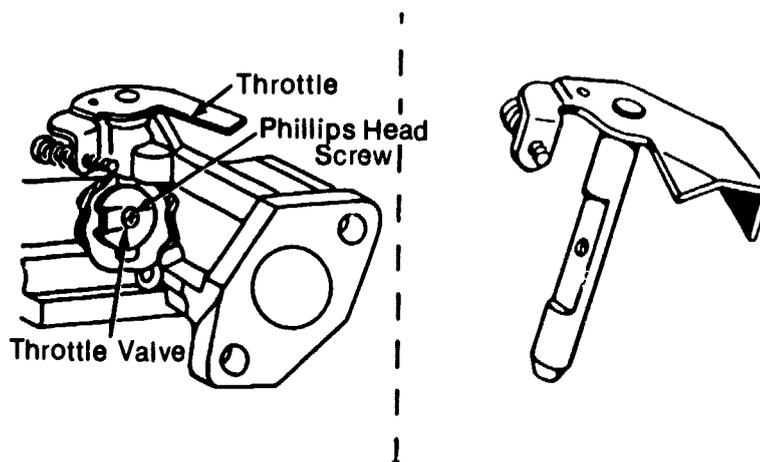
- a. Remove spiral (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



- b. Use a phillips screwdriver to remove the throttle valve and screw (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4

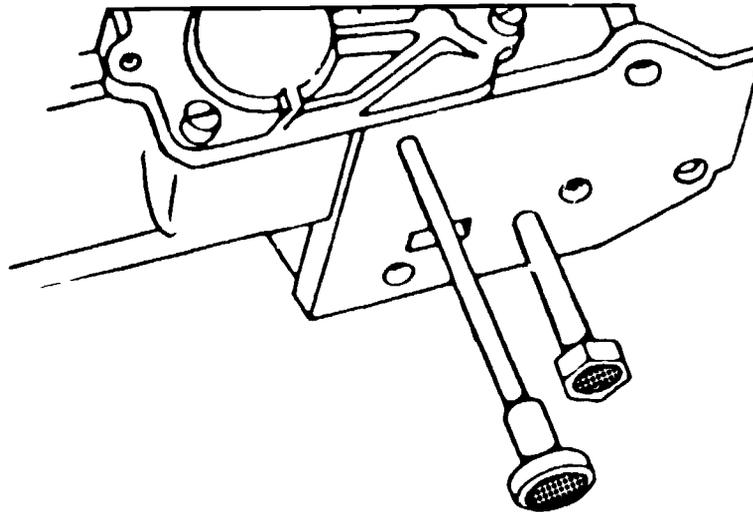


JOB SHEET #4

13. Inspect the screens for gum deposits and dirt without removing the fuel pipes from carburetor body (Figure 5)

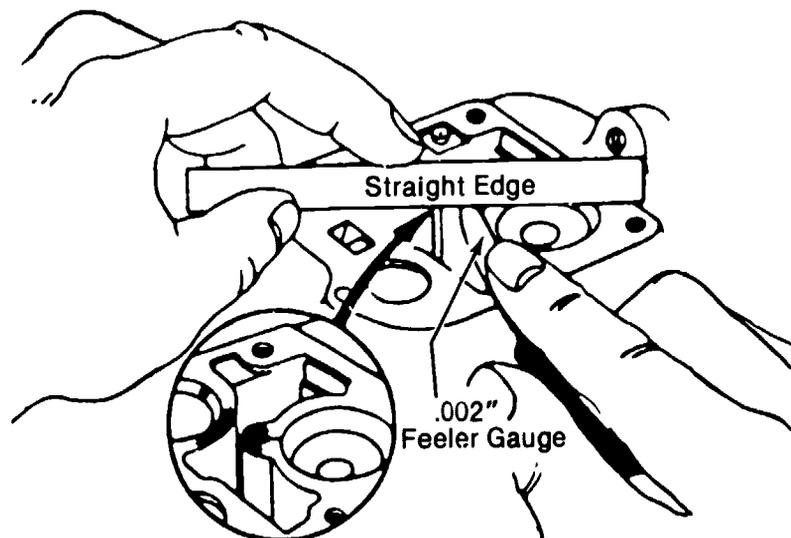
(NOTE: Remove pipes only if they are being replaced.)

FIGURE 5



14. Clean the screens with a solvent and air dry
15. If fuel pipes must be replaced, use a socket wrench to loosen and remove
(NOTE: When removing the fuel pipes, support pipe shaft near the carburetor body to prevent breakage. When inserting new pipes do not over-torque.)
16. Inspect top surface of fuel tank for flatness (Figure 6)
(NOTE: A .002" feeler gauge should not fit between the straight edge and machined surface. Tank should be replaced if gauge will fit.)

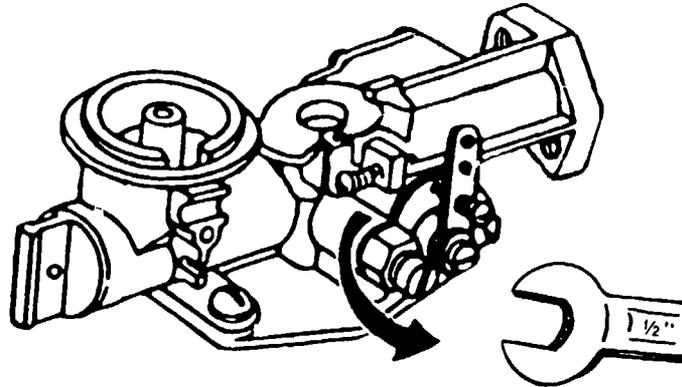
FIGURE 6



JOB SHEET #4

17. Loosen nut to remove needle valve and inspect needle for damage (Figure 7)

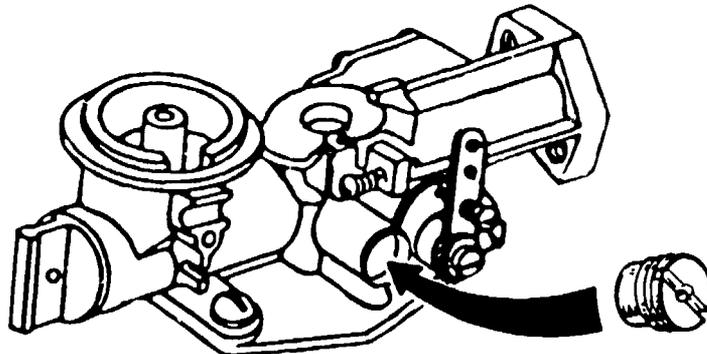
FIGURE 7



18. Remove brass seat and inspect for damage (Figure 8)

FIGURE 8

(NOTE: The needle valve kit includes both the needle and the seat. If either is damaged, both must be replaced.)

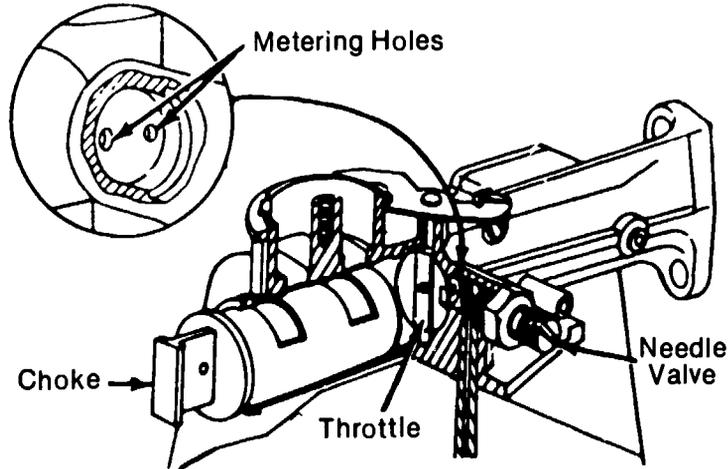


JOB SHEET #4

19. Inspect metering holes and air passages in the carburetor for dirt or obstructions (Figure 9)

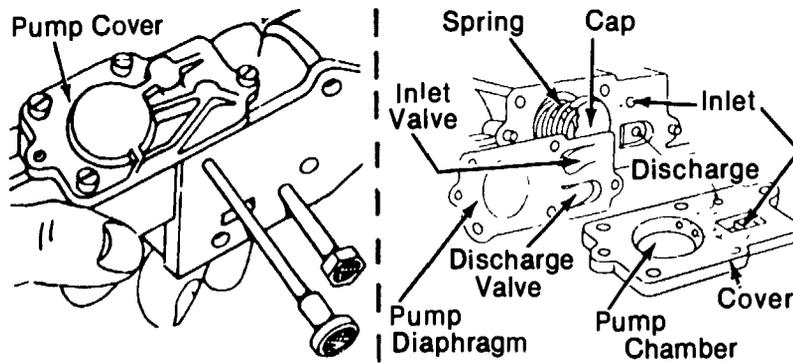
(NOTE: Use compressed air, not sharp objects, to clean out passages.)

FIGURE 9



20. Remove screws from fuel pump cover and remove diaphragm, spring, and cap (Figure 10)

FIGURE 10



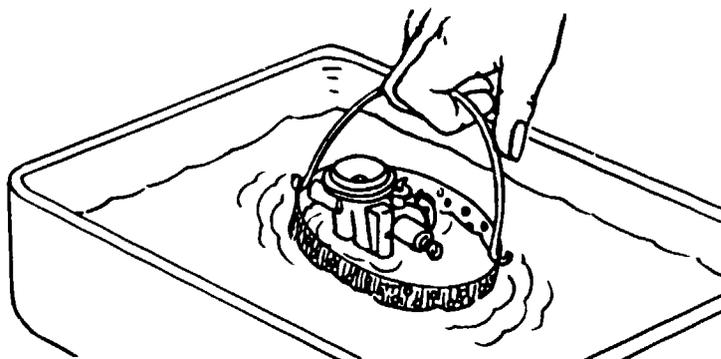
21. Inspect diaphragm for cracks and punctures

JOB SHEET #4

22. Clean gummy or dirty fuel tanks, lines, and carburetors in a carburetor cleaner (Figure 11)

(NOTE: Do not soak diaphragm, gaskets, or nylon parts in the carburetor cleaner.)

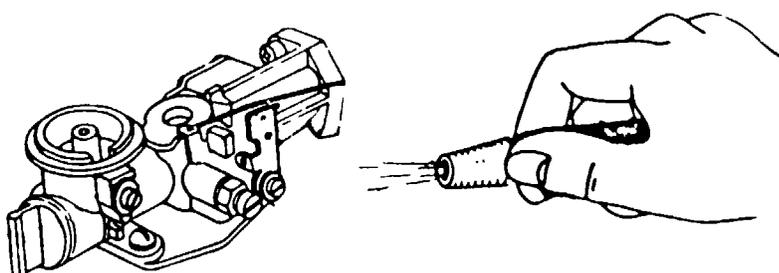
FIGURE 11



23. Use compressed air to clean carburetor parts (Figure 12)

(NOTE: Do not use a cloth rag, as lint could become trapped in carburetor parts.)

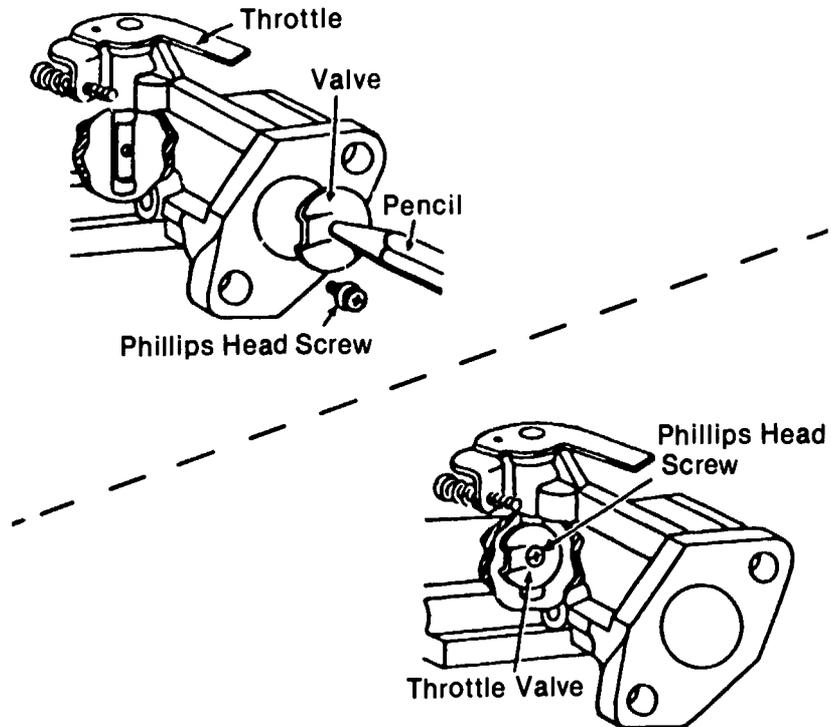
FIGURE 12



JOB SHEET #4

24. Install throttle in carburetor; guide the throttle valve in place and tighten screw securely (Figure 13)

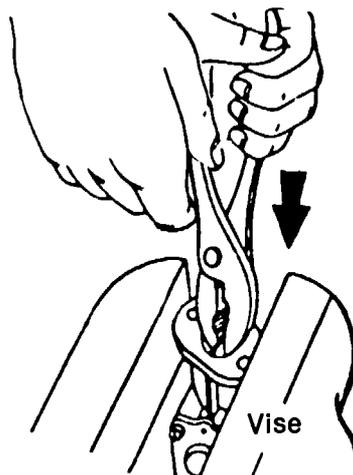
FIGURE 13



25. Install spiral in carburetor, use a vise to hold carburetor and slowly twist spiral in carburetor (Figure 14)

(NOTE: Top of spiral must be flush or $\frac{1}{32}$ " below carburetor flange.)

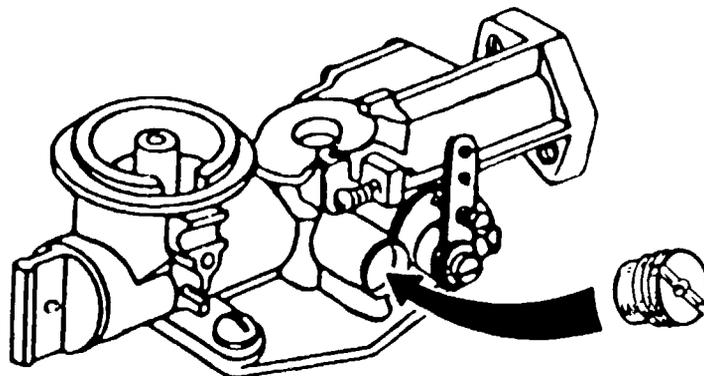
FIGURE 14



JOB SHEET #4

26. Install needle valve seat in carburetor and tighten securely (Figure 15)

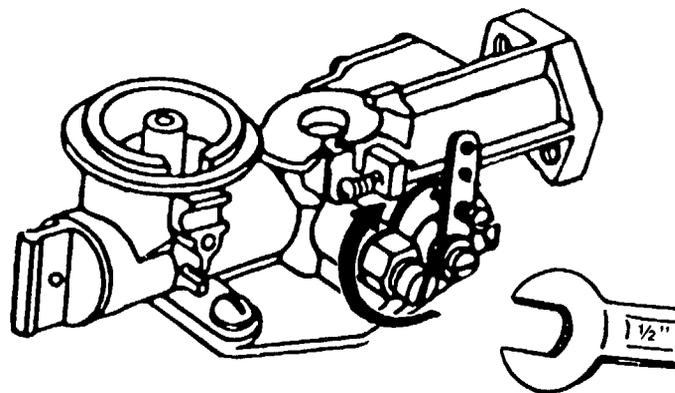
FIGURE 15



27. Insert needle valve into seat and tighten nut securely; turn the needle valve clockwise to close it, then open $1 \frac{1}{2}$ turns (Figure 16)

(NOTE: Before installing, screw the needle out until it is flush with the threads to prevent damage to the new needle and seat.)

FIGURE 16

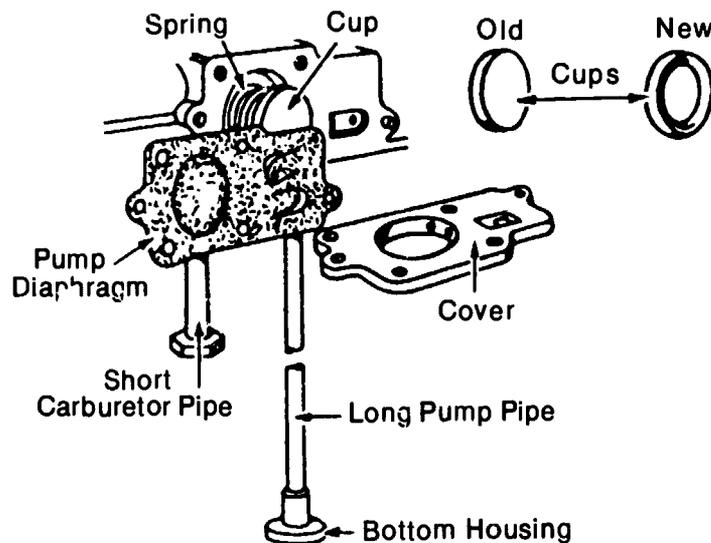


JOB SHEET #4

28. Reassemble pump, placing spring and cup in carburetor body
 - a. Insert diaphragm and cover
 - b. Tighten the screws in a staggered sequence to insure a good seal (Figure 17)

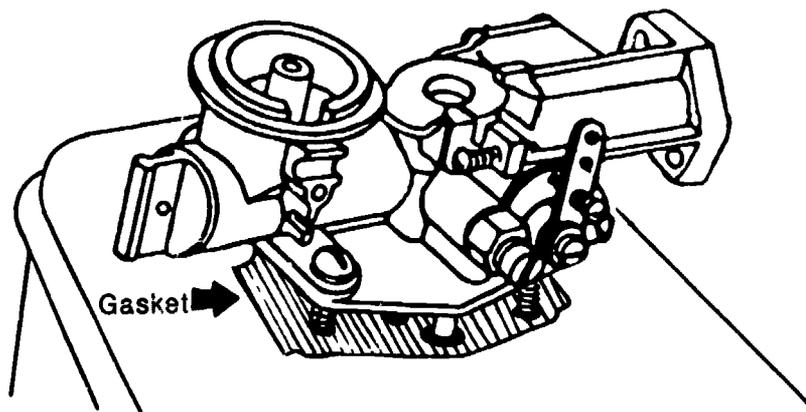
(NOTE: Always install a new diaphragm when servicing carburetor.)

FIGURE 17



29. Place gasket on fuel tank; install carburetor onto fuel tank and tighten screws securely (Figure 18)

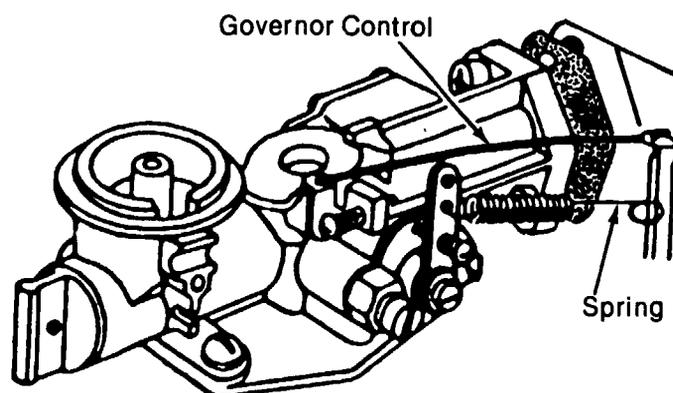
FIGURE 18



JOB SHEET #4

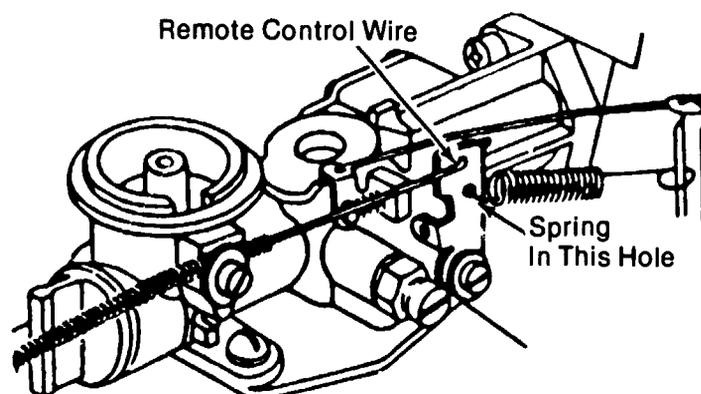
30. Place gasket on carburetor (Figure 19)
 - a. While holding carburetor in place, hook up governor control and spring
 - b. Thread screws into engine and tighten securely

FIGURE 19



31. On models equipped with a stop switch, install the ground wire
32. Install remote control assembly (Figure 20)

FIGURE 20

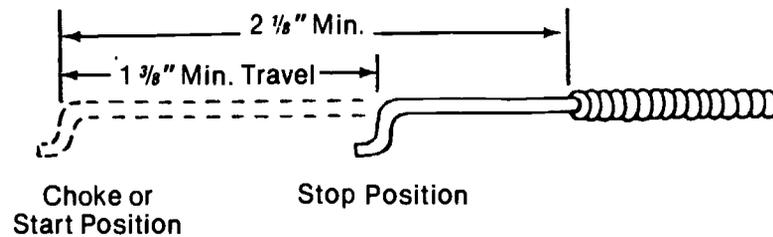


JOB SHEET #4

33. Adjust remote control to "stop" position and tighten mounting screws (Figure 21)

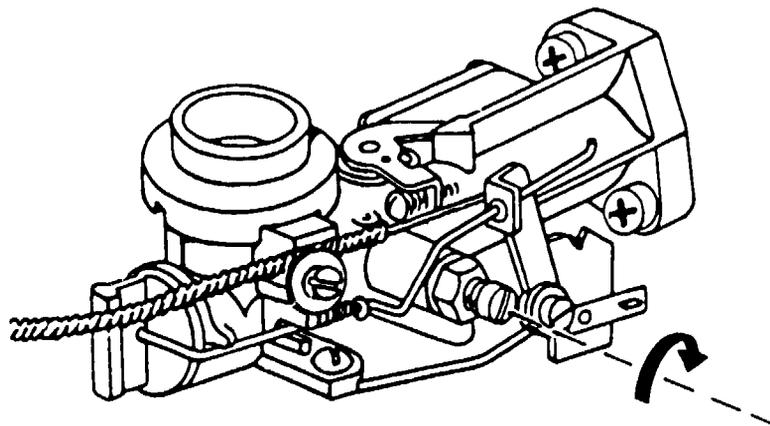
(NOTE: The control wire should have a minimum travel of $1 \frac{3}{8}$ ".)

FIGURE 21



34. Reconnect the spark plug wire
35. Install air cleaner
36. Start engine and warm up to operating temperature
- (NOTE: Tank should be completely full of gas.)
37. Place governor speed control in "fast" position and make the following adjustment to obtain the proper fuel mixture
- Turn needle valve in, clockwise, until engine begins to miss (lean mixture) (Figure 22)

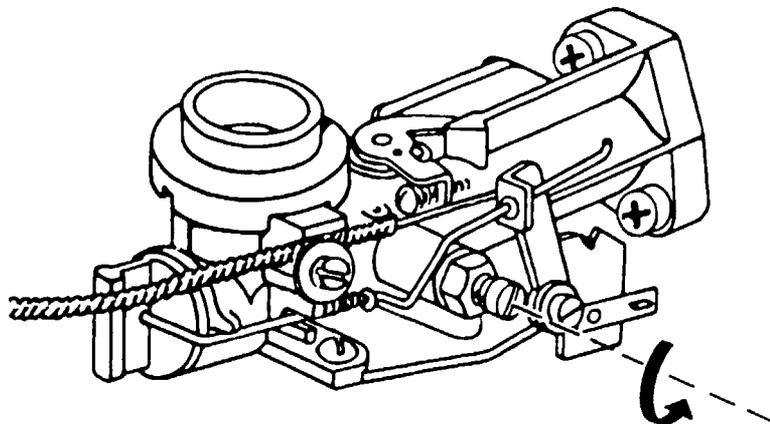
FIGURE 22



JOB SHEET #4

- b. Slowly turn needle valve out, counterclockwise, until engine runs unevenly (rich mixture) (Figure 23)

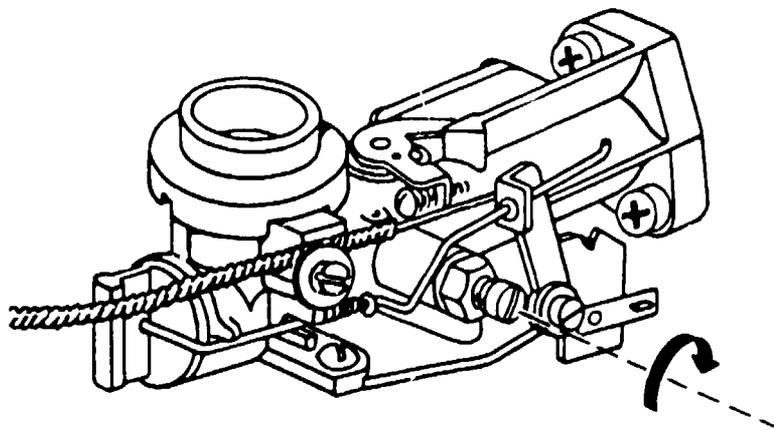
FIGURE 23



- c. Turn needle clockwise to a smooth operating point between rich and lean mixture (Figure 24)

(NOTE: When engine does not accelerate properly, the carburetor should be readjusted to a slightly richer mixture.)

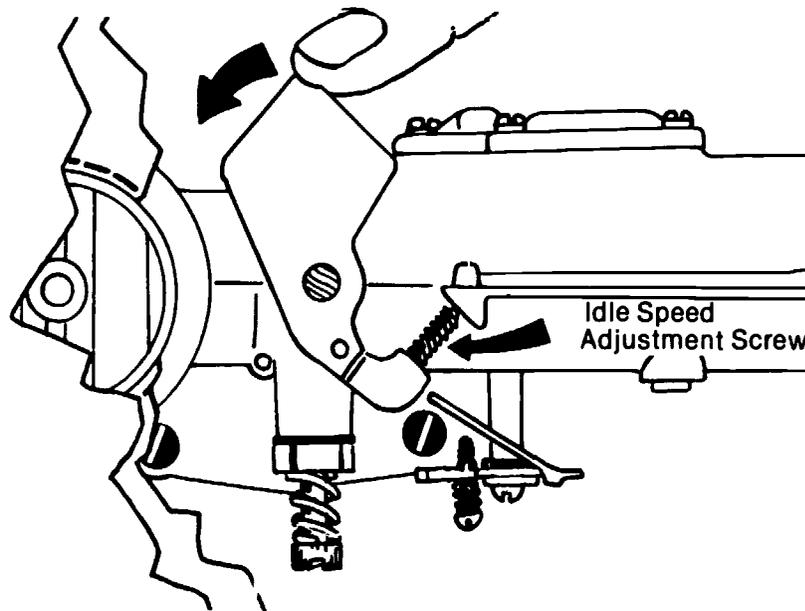
FIGURE 24



JOB SHEET #4

38. Adjust idle speed (Figure 25)
- Rotate throttle counterclockwise and hold against the stop
 - Adjust idle speed adjustment screw to 1750 rpm
- (NOTE: The idle speed should be set with a tachometer.)

FIGURE 25



39. Clean work area and return tools to their proper places.

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

JOB SHEET #5 -- REMOVE AND REPLACE A FUEL PUMP

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Torque wrench
3. Shop towels
4. Gasket sealer
5. Safety glasses

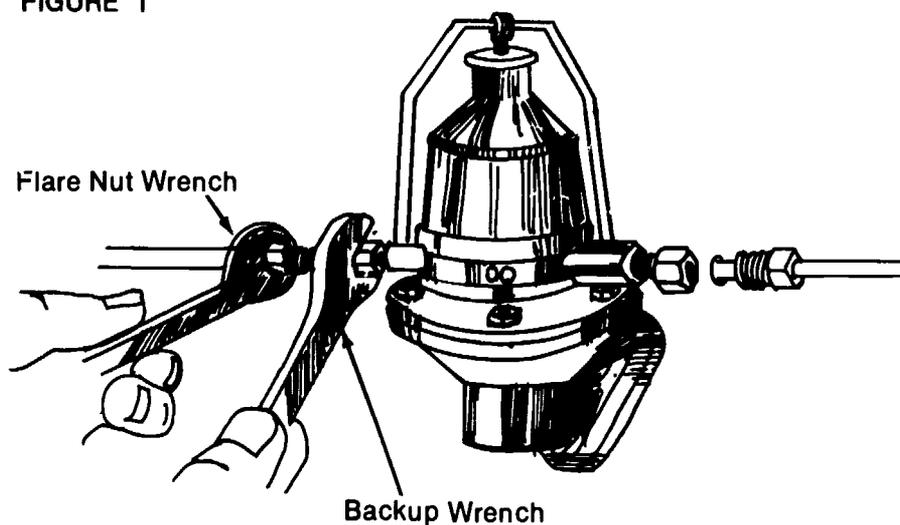
B. Procedure

1. Disconnect and ground spark plug wire
2. Shut off fuel at tank
3. Disconnect fuel lines from fuel pump

(NOTE: Use a backup wrench and a tubing wrench if available to avoid twisting the line. See Figure 1.)

(CAUTION: Do not allow fuel to drop as this will cause a danger of fire.)

FIGURE 1



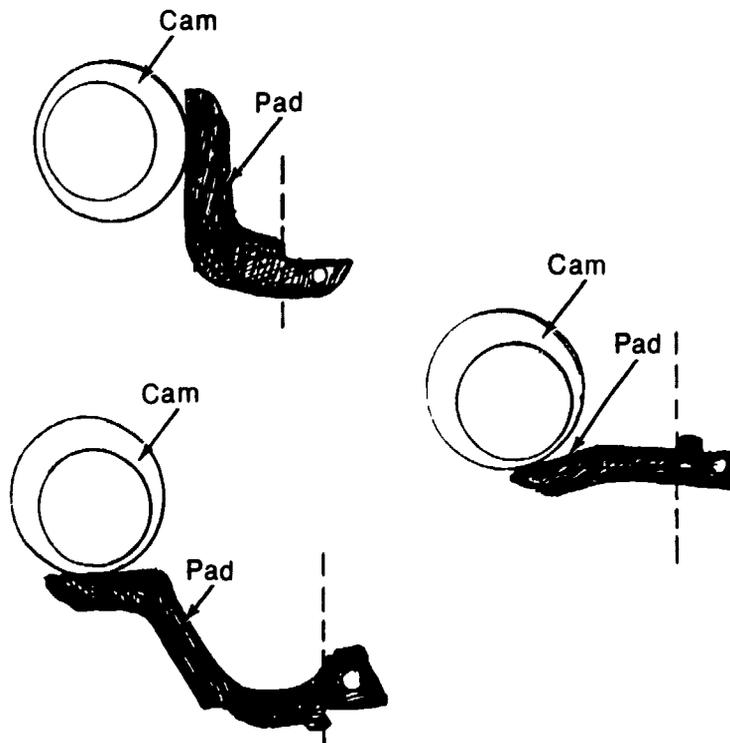
JOB SHEET #5

4. Remove fuel pump

(NOTE: Check location of fuel pump arm so it can be returned to same location.)

5. Clean fuel pump mounting surface on engine
6. Coat the mounting surfaces of the fuel pump and engine with gasket sealer
7. Install a new mounting gasket on the pump
8. Install pump with arm in same location as when pump was removed (Figure 2)

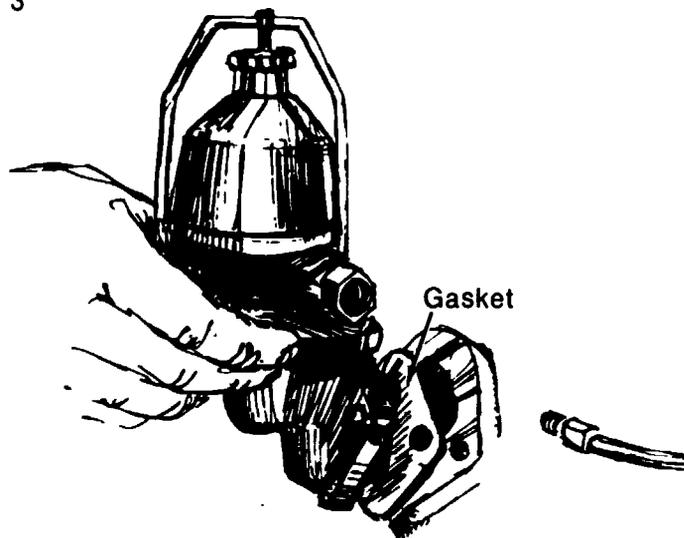
FIGURE 2



JOB SHEET #5

9. Push pump inward until the mounting flange is against the mounting pad (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



10. Install fasteners and torque to specifications
(NOTE: Do not force pump by using force of fasteners to pull it in.)
11. Attach the fuel lines
(NOTE: Be sure threads are in alignment and finger start to prevent cross threading.)
12. Tighten fuel lines securely
(NOTE: Use two wrenches to prevent damage to fuel lines and fittings.)
13. Turn on fuel at tank
14. Start engine and check for leaks; if a leak appears, stop engine immediately and repair
15. Clean up work area and return all tools
16. Have instructor inspect your work

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

JOB SHEET #6 — TEST AND SERVICE A FUEL PUMP

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Container to catch fuel in
3. Shop towels
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Disconnect and ground spark plug wire

2. Disconnect fuel line at carburetor

(NOTE: Use two tubing wrenches to prevent damaging fittings and fuel lines.)

3. Hold a small container under the fuel line to catch fuel

4. Crank the engine

5. Fuel should flow out strongly and in regular squirts

(NOTE: If fuel flow is weak or erratic, check the fuel lines or fuel filter. If clear, the fuel pump should be replaced.)

6. Remove pump from engine

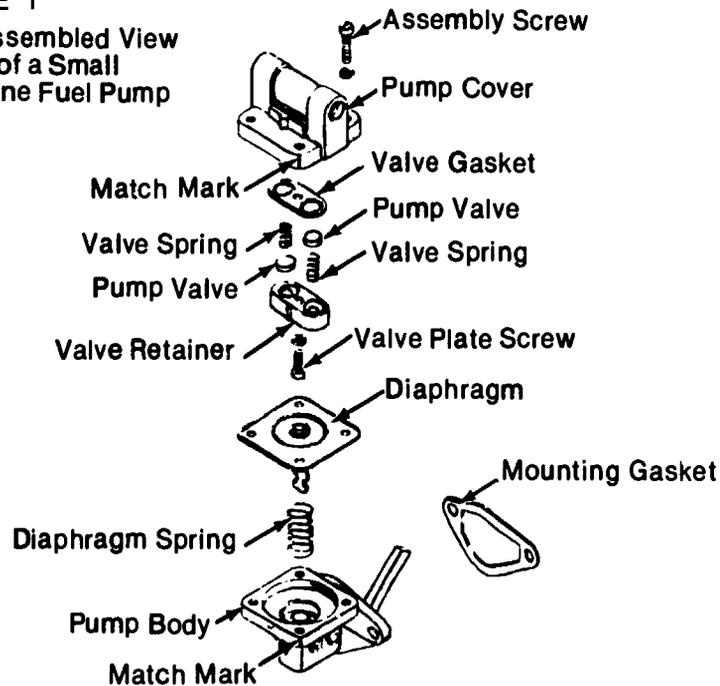
(NOTE: Most fuel pumps are serviced by complete replacement.)

JOB SHEET #6

- Using the correct repair kit and following manufacturer's repair information, rebuild the fuel pump (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1

Disassembled View
of a Small
Engine Fuel Pump



- Mark the pump cover and body with a file; this prevents reversing the cover as it goes on the body
- Replace pump
- Clean up work area and replace tools in proper place
- Have instructor check work

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

JOB SHEET #7 — SERVICE SEDIMENT BOWL FUEL STRAINER

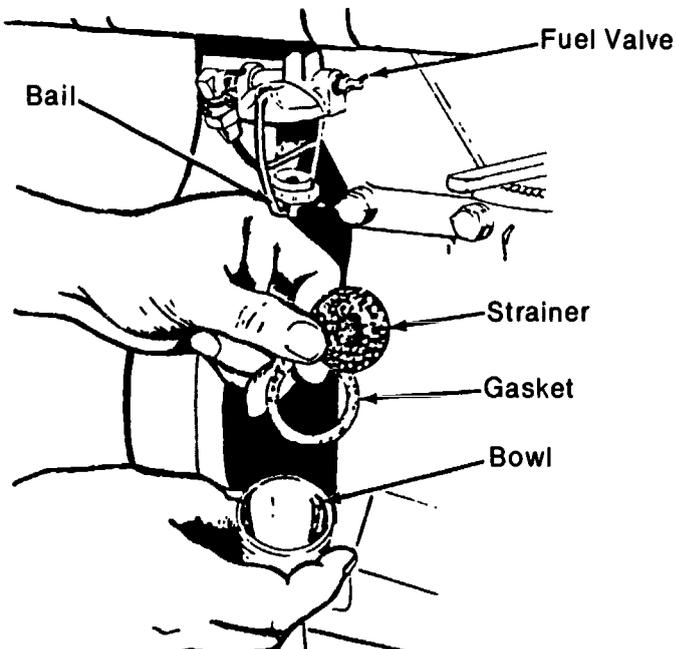
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Solvents
3. Pan for cleaning parts
4. Cleaning rags
5. New gasket for glass bowl
6. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Disconnect and ground spark plug wire
2. Close fuel shut-off valve
3. Loosen jam nut and swing the wire bail to one side (Figure 1)
4. Remove bowl with a twisting motion (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1

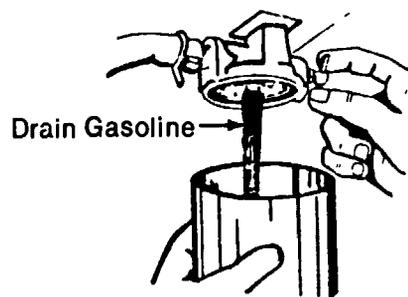


JOB SHEET #7

5. Remove gasket (Figure 1)
6. Remove strainer (filter) screen (Figure 1)
7. Wash the screen or filter element
8. Clean and then dry sediment bowl
9. Open fuel valve and drain out approximately a cup of fuel (Figure 2)

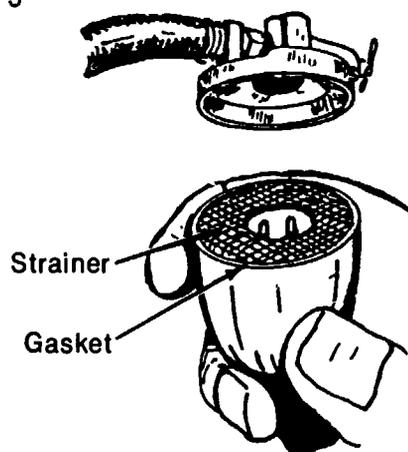
(NOTE: Collect fuel in can to avoid a fire hazard.)

FIGURE 2



10. Install gasket, strainer, and sediment bowl (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



11. Fill the sediment bowl before tightening the jam nut
12. Tighten bowl against gasket with jam nut

(CAUTION: Do not overtighten.)

JOB SHEET #7

13. Check for leaks before operating engine
14. Reconnect spark plug wire to spark plug
15. Operate engine for a few minutes and recheck for leaks

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|-----------------|
| _____a. | Correct proportion of fuel and air needed for good combustion | 1. Venturi |
| _____b. | Restriction in the carburetor which makes the air speed up, causing a high vacuum | 2. Airfoil |
| _____c. | Breaking of a liquid into tiny particles or globules to aid vapor formation | 3. Atomization |
| _____d. | Tube in a stream of air inside the venturi which creates an air pattern with low pressure on one side | 4. Vaporization |
| _____e. | Transferring a substance into a gaseous state | 5. Metering |

2. State the purpose of the fuel system.

3. List the three basic types of small engine fuel supply systems.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____

TEST

4. Match the components of the fuel system on the right with their correct functions.

_____a.	Acts as a reservoir to store fuel for engine use	1. Fuel line
_____b.	Prevents dirt or foreign matter from entering the carburetor	2. Fuel tank
_____c.	Mixes fuel and air in the proper proportion for a combustible mixture	3. Carburetor
_____d.	Pumps fuel from the fuel tank to the carburetor	4. Pump diaphragm
_____e.	Carries fuel from the fuel tank to the carburetor	5. Fuel filter
_____f.	Filters grit and dust from the air entering the carburetor	6. Air cleaner
_____g.	Sheet of metal or other material that is sufficiently flexible to permit vibration	7. Fuel pump

5. List the two types of carburetors.

a. _____

b. _____

6. Select types of fuel filters by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Gravity feed

_____b. Glass sediment bowl and screen

_____c. Screen in fuel tank

_____d. Filter attached to the end of flexible fuel hose

_____e. Oil bath

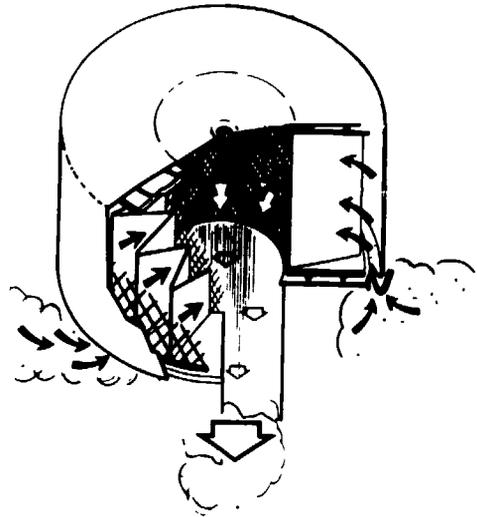
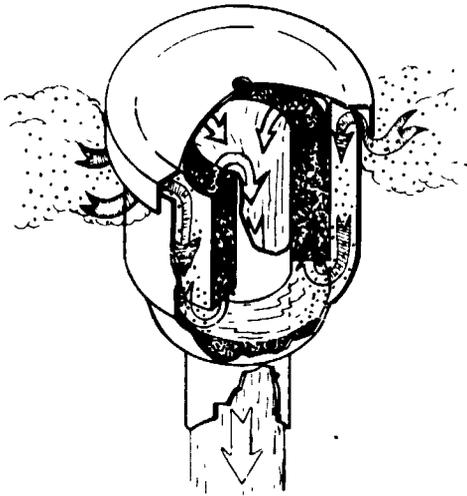
7. Distinguish between types of fuel pump action by placing an "X" next to the characteristics of inlet stroke action.

_____a. Diaphragm pushed upward by return spring; inlet valve forced shut; outlet valve forced open; fuel is forced out of pump

_____b. Diaphragm flexes downward, forming a vacuum; inlet check valve opens; fuel is drawn into pump

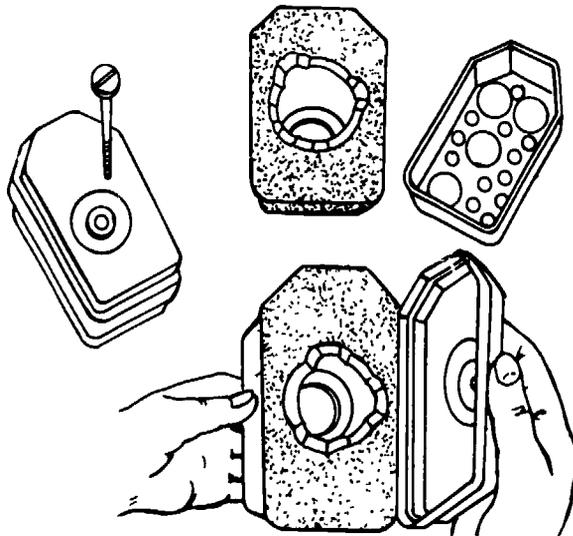
TEST

8. Identify three types of air cleaners.



a. _____

b. _____



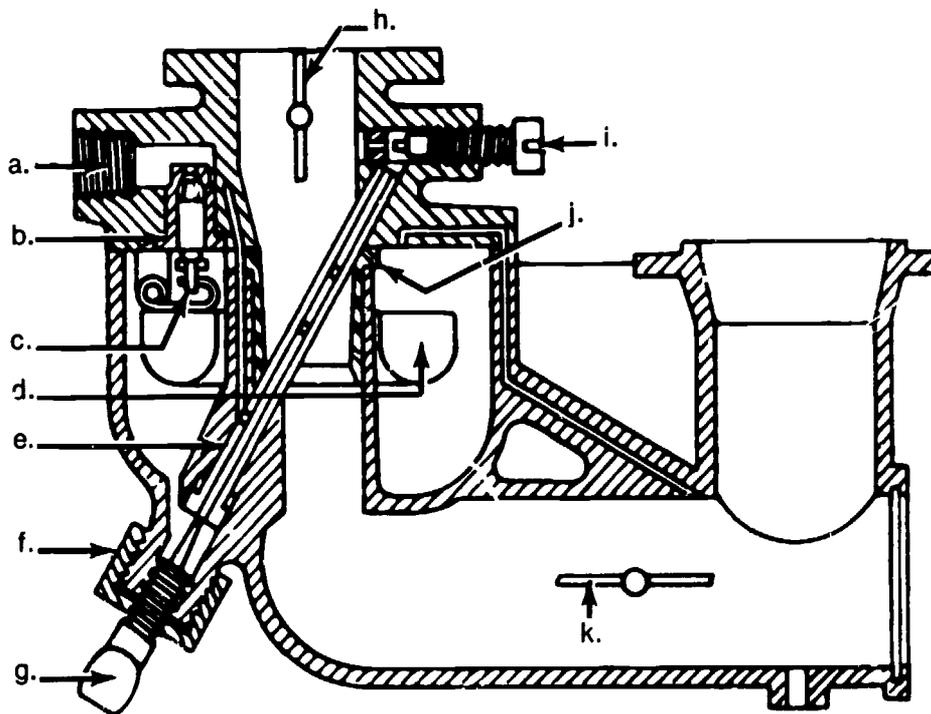
c. _____

TEST

9. Identify parts of the float-type carburetor.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____
- e. _____
- f. _____

- g. _____
- h. _____
- i. _____
- j. _____
- k. _____

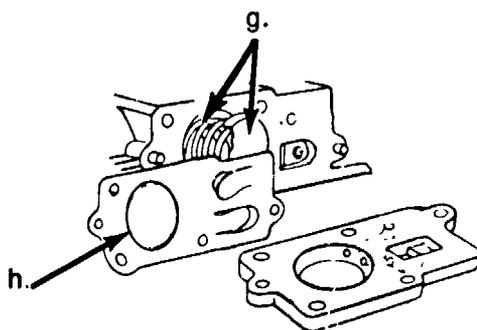
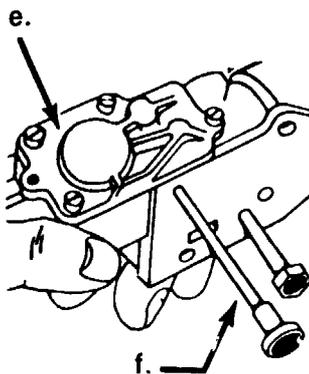
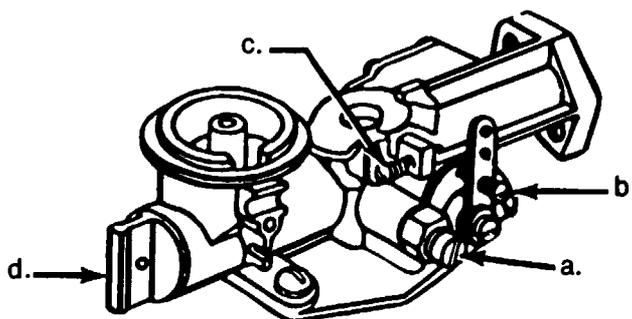


005

TEST

10. Identify parts of the diaphragm type carburetor.

- | | | | |
|----|-------|----|-------|
| a. | _____ | e. | _____ |
| b. | _____ | f. | _____ |
| c. | _____ | g. | _____ |
| d. | _____ | h. | _____ |



TEST

11. Match the carburetor systems on the right with their correct uses.

- | | | |
|---------|---|---------------|
| _____a. | Used when the engine is called upon to supply power for full, partial, or no-load at various operating speeds | 1. Float |
| _____b. | Used to control the speed or power of an engine according to the requirements of the job it is to perform | 2. Choke |
| _____c. | Maintains a given depth of fuel in the float chamber | 3. High speed |
| _____d. | Provides a richer mixture for cold engine starting and operation | 4. Idle speed |
| _____e. | Provides fuel delivery during closed or nearly closed throttle operation | 5. Throttle |

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

12. Demonstrate the ability to:

- a. Service an air cleaner (Job Sheet #1).
- b. Remove and replace a float-type carburetor (Job Sheet #2).
- c. Service a float-type carburetor (Job Sheet #3).
- d. Remove, service, and replace a diaphragm-type carburetor (Job Sheet #4).
- e. Remove and replace a fuel pump (Job Sheet #5).
- f. Test and service a fuel pump (Job Sheet #6).
- g. Service sediment bowl fuel strainer (Job Sheet #7).

FUEL SYSTEMS UNIT IV-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.
 - a. 5
 - b. 1
 - c. 3
 - d. 2
 - e. 4

2. The fuel system supplies a combustible mixture of air and fuel vapor to the engine cylinders

3.
 - a. Gravity feed
 - b. Suction feed
 - c. Pump feed

4.
 - a. 2
 - b. 5
 - c. 3
 - d. 7
 - e. 1
 - f. 6
 - g. 4

5.
 - a. Float
 - b. Diaphragm

6. b,c,d

7. b

8.
 - a. Oil bath
 - b. Paper element
 - c. Polyurethane

9.

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Fuel inlet b. Float needle seat c. Float needle d. Float e. Nozzle f. Packing nut 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> g. Needle valve h. Throttle valve i. Idle valve j. Venturi k. Choke valve
---	---

10.

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Needle valve b. Speed adjusting screw c. Idle adjusting screw d. Choke 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> e. Pump cover f. Fuel pipes g. Spring and cap h. Diaphragm
--	---

ANSWERS TO TEST

- 11. a. 3
- b. 5
- c. 1
- d. 2
- e. 4

12. Performance skills evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor

GOVERNOR SYSTEMS UNIT V-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Display examples of both types of governors.
2. If possible, collect several governors that show various types of problems.
3. Have students locate components of governor systems on live engines.
4. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
5. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas of improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES**CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT**

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Components of an Air Vane Governor System
 - 2. TM 2 — Components of a Mechanical Governor System
- E. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Inspect, Adjust, and Repair an Air Vane Governor
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Inspect and Adjust External Components of a Mechanical Governor with Internal Flyweights
 - 3. Job Sheet #3 — Repair Internal Components of a Mechanical Governor with Internal Flyweights
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Small Engines, Volume 2.* Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials.
- B. *Small Engines Service Manual.* Eleventh Edition. Kansas City, Missouri: Intertec Publishing Corp., 1976.
- C. Herd, Amon, *Governor Adjustment and Repair.* Columbia, Missouri: Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri-Columbia.
- D. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair.* Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

GOVERNOR SYSTEMS UNIT V-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Centrifugal force — A force which tends to move a body away from its center of rotation

Example: A whirling weight attached to a string
- B. Pneumatic — Moved or worked by air
- C. Throttle — Lever controlling the throttle valve by linkage and spring adjustment
- D. Vane — Thin flat object that pivots about an axis by a flow of air
- E. Linkage — Series of rods, yokes, and levers used to transmit motion from one unit to another

II. Purposes of the governor system

- A. Maintains selected speed
- B. Prevents overspeeding that may cause engine damage
- C. Limits both high and low speeds

III. Types of governor systems (Transparencies 1 and 2)

- A. Air vane

(NOTE: The air vane system operates by directing the air from the flywheel against the air vane.)

- B. Mechanical (centrifugal)

(NOTE: The mechanical system operates by the use of centrifugal weights working against a spring.)

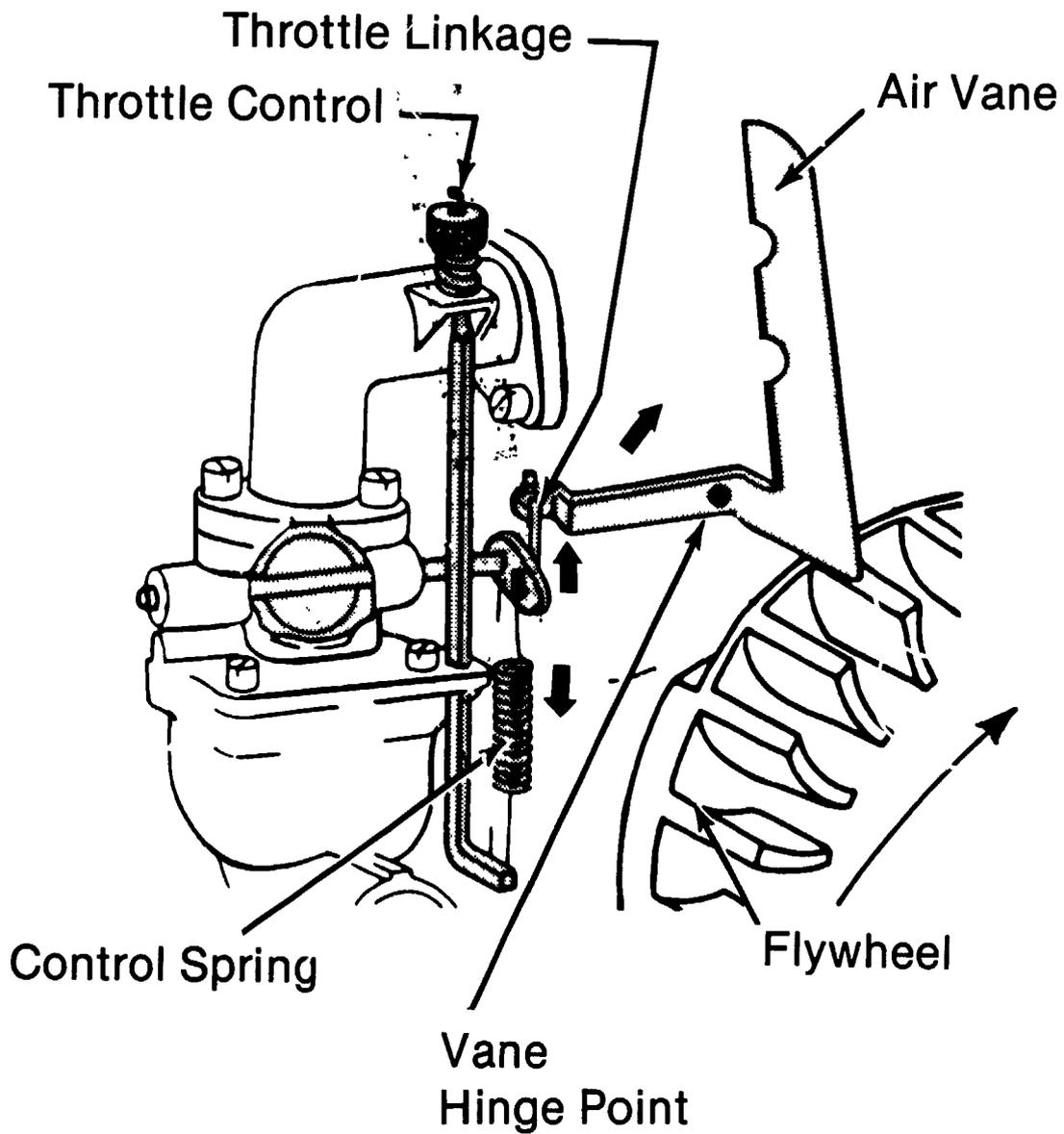
IV. Components of the governor system (Transparencies 1 and 2)

- A. Air vane governor
 - 1. Throttle control
 - 2. Control spring

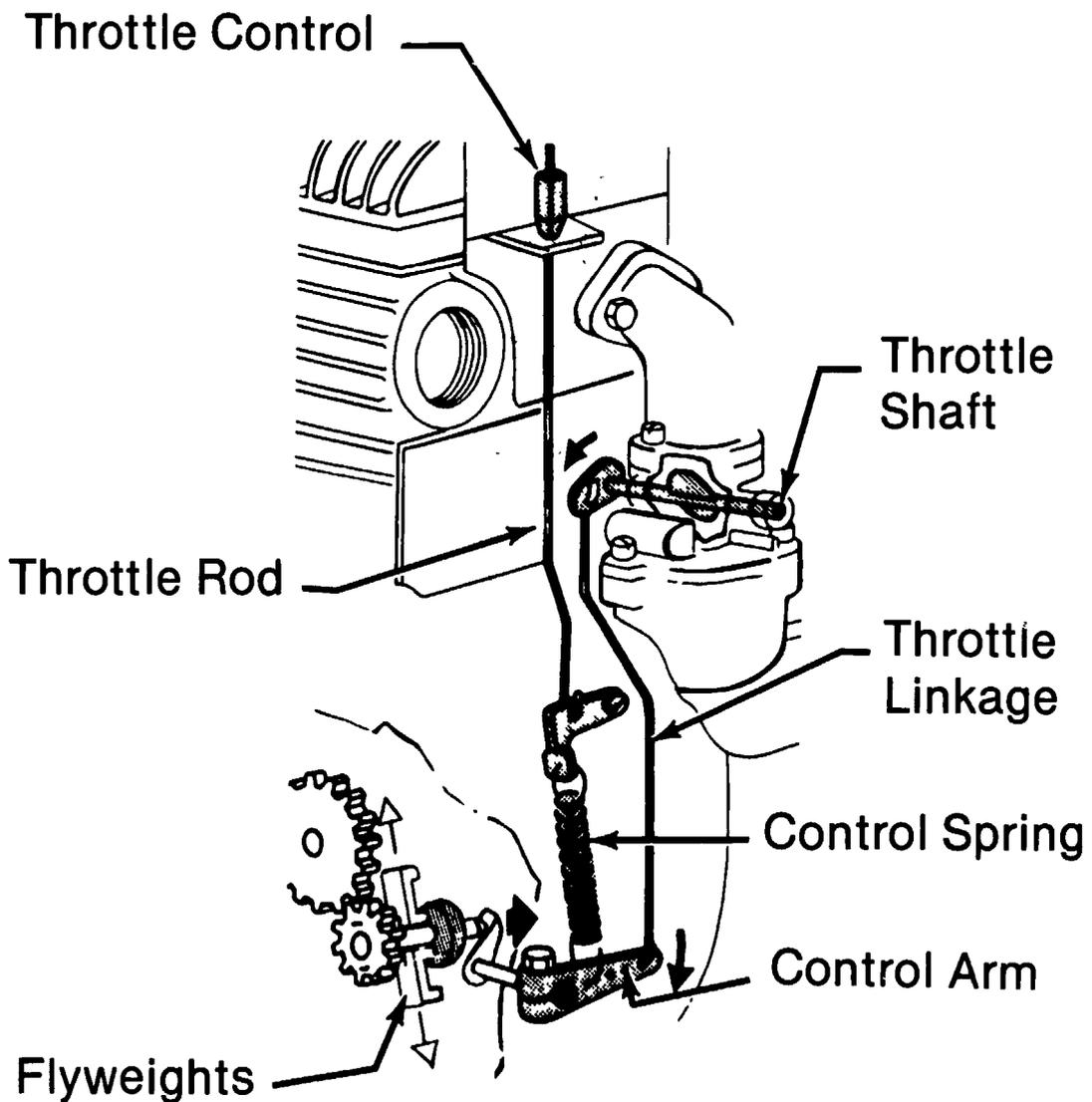
INFORMATION SHEET

3. Air vane
 4. Throttle linkage
 5. Flywheel
- B. Mechanical (centrifugal governor)
1. Throttle control
 2. Throttle rod
 3. Throttle linkage
 4. Control spring
 5. Control arm
 6. Flyweights
 7. Throttle shaft
- V. Purposes of each component of the governor systems
- A. Air vane governor
1. Throttle control — Regulates engine speed
 2. Control spring — Connection between throttle control and throttle valve shaft
 3. Air vane — Senses air movement and opens or closes throttle
 4. Linkage — Connects air vane to the throttle valve shaft
 5. Flywheel — Provides pneumatic pressure in relationship to engine rpm
- B. Mechanical governor
1. Throttle control — Regulates engine speed
 2. Throttle rod — Transfers control adjustments to control spring
 3. Throttle linkage — Connects control arm to throttle shaft
 4. Control spring — Provides tension to control arm
 5. Control arm — Transfers flyweight action to throttle link
 6. Flyweights -- Senses engine rpm and controls governor control arm

Components of an Air Vane Governor System



Components of a Mechanical Governor System



GOVERNOR SYSTEMS UNIT V-D

JOB SHEET #1 — INSPECT, ADJUST, AND REPAIR AN AIR VANE GOVERNOR

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Tachometer

(NOTE: A vibration tach or impulse tach may be used.)

3. Safety glasses
4. Appropriate service manual

B. Procedure

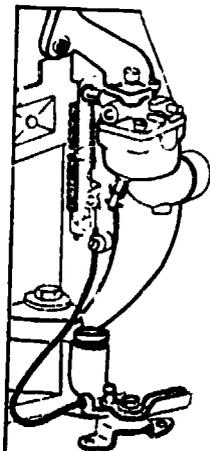
1. Remove breather or air cleaner

(NOTE: This may not be necessary in all cases, yet it usually will give a better view of linkage.)

2. Remove blower shroud
3. Check the condition of the linkage and controllers (Figure 1)

(NOTE: Look for bent control rods, stretched springs, and pivot points where binding may occur. Straighten, lubricate, and replace parts as necessary. Always replace stretched springs.)

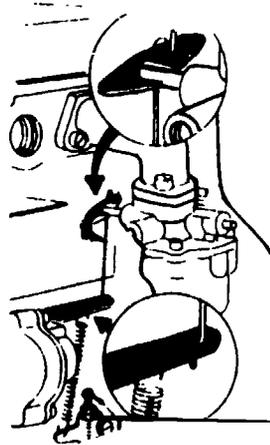
FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #1

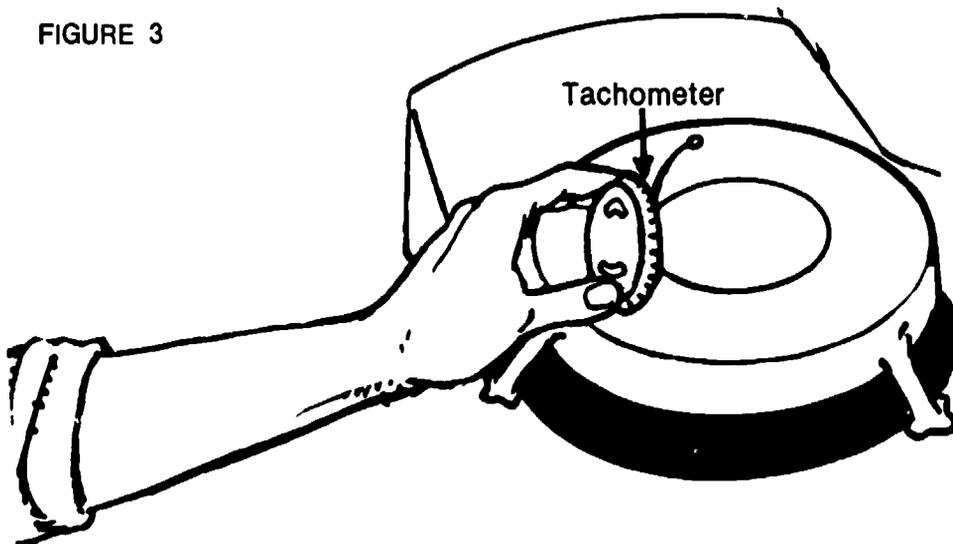
4. Check air vane for freedom of movement and positioning
(NOTE: Vane should be parallel to the crankshaft. Replace damaged parts as needed.)
5. Replace blower shroud
6. Check to see if throttle valve is open while engine is not running
(NOTE: If valve is not open, check for binding. If no binds exist adjust spring tension until valve is open. See Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



7. Replace breather
8. Find engine recommended speeds in manufacturer's service manual
9. Start engine
10. Check engine low idle speed with tachometer while throttle control is in closed position (Figure 3)

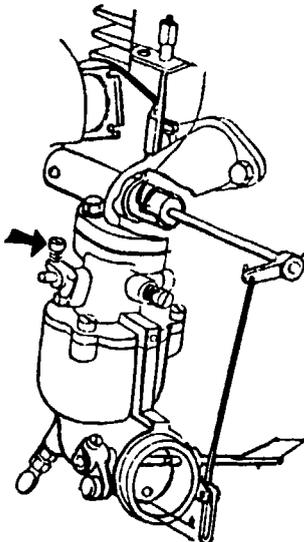
FIGURE 3



JOB SHEET #1

(NOTE: Check against manufacturer's specifications. Adjust idle stop screw at carburetor if your reading is not consistent with manufacturer's specifications. See Figure 4.)

FIGURE 4



11. Check engine high idle no-load speed with tachometer while throttle control is fully open

(NOTE: Check against manufacturer's specifications. If engine overspeeds or surges, the spring is too tight. If engine will not come up to speed, spring is too loose. Adjust to manufacturer's specifications.)

12. Shut off engine
13. Have instructor evaluate work

GOVERNOR SYSTEMS UNIT V-D

JOB SHEET #2 — INSPECT AND ADJUST EXTERNAL COMPONENTS OF A MECHANICAL GOVERNOR WITH INTERNAL FLYWEIGHTS

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Tachometer
3. Appropriate service manual
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

(NOTE: Before disassembling engines to repair internal flyweights be sure that the fuel system and external governor components have thoroughly been inspected.)

1. Remove breather

(NOTE: This may not be necessary in all cases, however it usually will give a better view of linkage.)

2. Check condition of linkage and controllers

(NOTE: Look for bent control rods, stretched springs, and pivot points where binding may occur. Straighten, lubricate, and replace parts as necessary. Always replace stretched springs.)

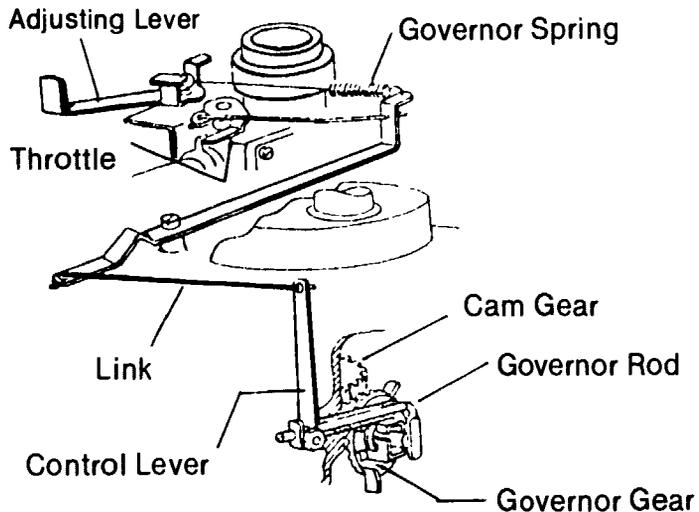
3. Check to see if throttle valve is open while engine is at rest
4. Adjust throttle to open position if necessary (Figure 1)

- a. Loosen screw clamping control arm to governor rod
- b. Turn control arm until carburetor throttle is in wide open position
(NOTE: Check appropriate service manual for direction of rotation.)
- c. Turn crank on governor rod counterclockwise as far as possible
- d. Tighten screw connecting control arm to governor rod

JOB SHEET #2

- e. Check linkage for freedom

FIGURE 1



5. Find recommended engine speeds in service manuals
6. Replace breather or air cleaner
7. Start engine
8. Check engine low idle speed with tachometer while engine throttle control is in closed position

(NOTE: Adjust idle stop screw at carburetor if idle speed does not correspond with manufacturer's specification.)
9. Check engine high idle no-load with tachometer while engine control level is in full throttle position

(NOTE: If engine overspeeds or surges, spring is too tight. If engine will not come up to speed, the spring is too loose. Adjust to manufacturer's specifications. Be sure carburetor is properly adjusted.)
10. Shut off engine
11. Have instructor evaluate work

GOVERNOR SYSTEMS UNIT V-D

JOB SHEET #3 — REPAIR INTERNAL COMPONENTS OF A MECHANICAL GOVERNOR WITH INTERNAL FLYWEIGHTS

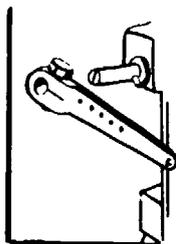
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Oil drain pan
3. Shop towels
4. Fresh oil
5. Solvent
6. Parts cleaning brush
7. Water supply and hose
8. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Remove engine from equipment
2. Place engine oil reservoir drain plug over drain pan
3. Remove plug and drain oil
(NOTE: Dispose of used oil properly.)
4. Replace plug
5. Clean engine exterior with solvent and brush
(NOTE: Allow solvent to penetrate hard deposits.)
6. Hose off solvent and dirt
7. Loosen securing bolt and disconnect control lever from governor rod (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #3

8. Remove side housing bolts
9. Remove governor unit

(NOTE: Internal governor units come in a variety of styles, however basic components are quite similar. See Figures 2 and 3.)

FIGURE 2

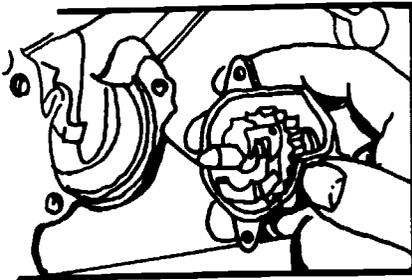
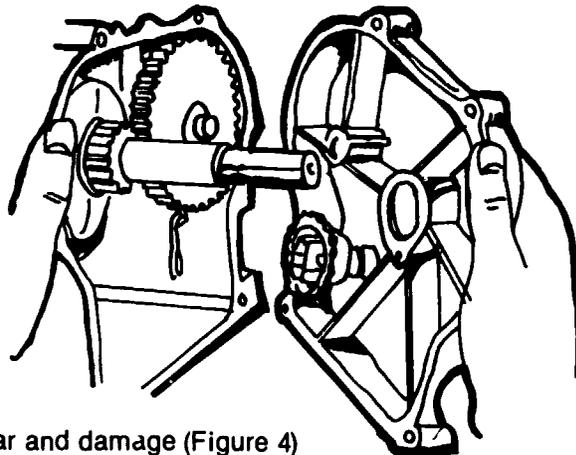
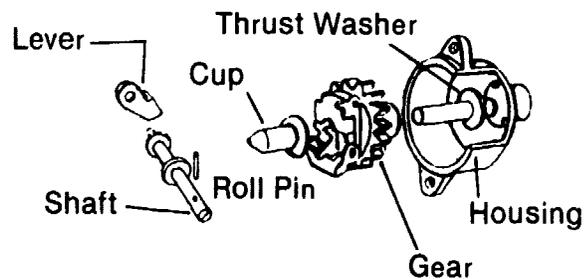


FIGURE 3



10. Check governor unit for wear and damage (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4



11. Replace damaged or worn parts
(NOTE: Check thrustwashers for wear or damage.)
12. Reinstall governor unit on the housing
13. Place housing back on the engine block
(NOTE: Replace gasket if torn or damaged, and refer to appropriate service manual for bolt torque specifications.)
14. Install the housing bolts
15. Put control lever on governor rod
16. Put oil in engine
17. Adjust external components

GOVERNOR SYSTEMS UNIT V-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | a. Moved or worked by air | 1. Linkage |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | b. Thin flat object that pivots about an axis by a flow of air | 2. Pneumatic |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | c. Series of rods, yokes, and levers used to transmit motion from one unit to another | 3. Vane |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | d. A force which tends to move a body away from its center of rotation | 4. Centrifugal force |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | e. Lever controlling the throttle valve by linkage and spring adjustment | 5. Throttle |

2. Select purposes of the governor system by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

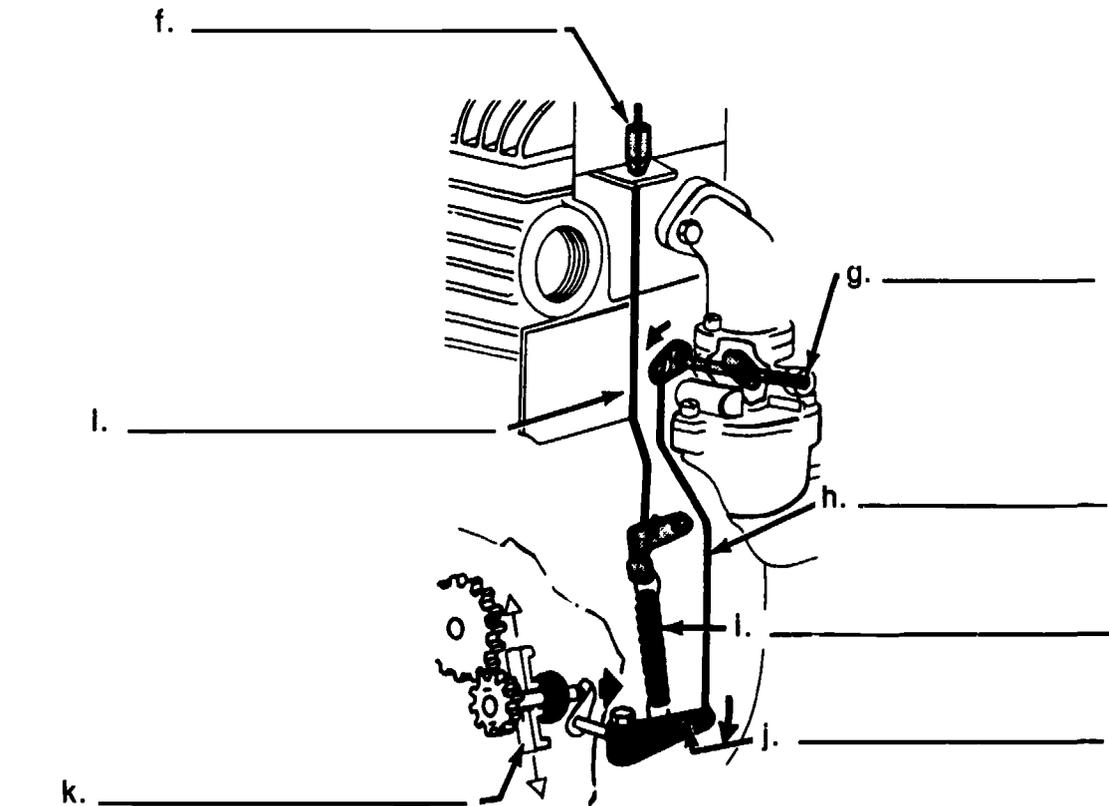
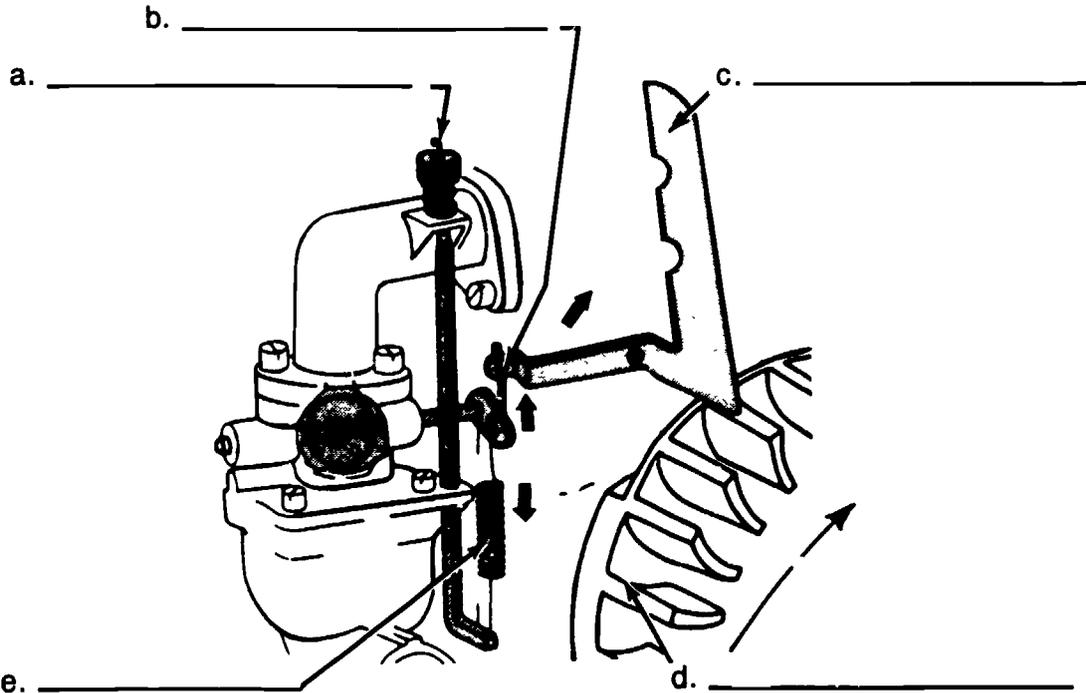
- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | a. Maintains selected speed |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | b. Prevents overspeeding that may cause engine damage |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | c. Limits both high and low speeds |

3. List two types of governor systems.

- a. _____
- b. _____

TEST

4. Identify the components of the governor systems.



TEST

5. Match the components of the governor systems on the right with their correct purposes.

a. Air vane

- | | | |
|---------|--|---------------------|
| _____1) | Connection between throttle control and throttle valve shaft | a) Control spring |
| _____2) | Connects air vane to the throttle valve shaft | b) Flywheel |
| _____3) | Provides pneumatic pressure in relationship to engine rpm | c) Linkage |
| _____4) | Senses air movement and opens or closes throttle | d) Air vane |
| _____5) | Regulates engine speed | e) Throttle control |

b. Mechanical

- | | | |
|---------|---|---------------------|
| _____1) | Transfers control adjustments to control spring | a) Flyweights |
| _____2) | Provides tension to control arm | b) Control arm |
| _____3) | Senses engine rpm and controls governor control arm | c) Control spring |
| _____4) | Regulates engine speed | d) Throttle linkage |
| _____5) | Connects control arm to throttle shaft | e) Throttle rod |
| _____6) | Transfers flyweight action to throttle link | f) Throttle control |

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

6. Demonstrate the ability to:

- a. Inspect, adjust, and repair an air vane governor (Job Sheet #1).
- b. Inspect and adjust external components of a mechanical governor with internal flyweights (Job Sheet #2).
- c. Repair internal components of a mechanical governor with internal flyweights (Job Sheet #3).

GOVERNOR SYSTEMS UNIT V-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.
 - a. 2
 - b. 3
 - c. 1
 - d. 4
 - e. 5

2. a,b,c

3.
 - a. Air vane
 - b. Mechanical (centrifugal)

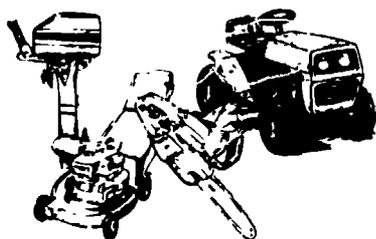
4.

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Throttle control b. Throttle linkage c. Air vane d. Flywheel e. Control spring f. Throttle control 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> g. Throttle shaft h. Throttle linkage i. Control spring j. Control arm k. Flyweights l. Throttle rod
--	---

5.

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) a 2) c 3) b 4) d 5) e 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> b. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) e 2) c 3) a 4) f 5) d 6) b
--	--

6. Performance skills evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor



Exhaust Systems Unit VI-D



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to select types of exhaust systems and remove, service, and replace two cycle exhaust system components. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the job sheet and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to the exhaust system with their correct definitions.
2. List two results that can occur from running a worn or damaged exhaust system
3. Select the types of exhaust systems.
4. State the danger of operating an engine in a closed shop.
5. Demonstrate the ability to remove, service, and replace two cycle exhaust system components (Job Sheet #1).

EXHAUST SYSTEMS UNIT VI-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to class to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Provide students with objective sheet.
- C. Discuss unit and specific objectives.
- D. Provide students with information sheet.
- E. Discuss the information sheet.
- F. Provide students with job sheet prior to the demonstration of the procedure.
- G. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:
1. Provide cutaway of an exhaust system and explain its operation.
 2. Discuss variations in exhaust systems with class.
 3. Compare good and bad exhaust systems.
 4. Show internal component damage due to a poor exhaust system.
 5. Demonstrate and discuss the procedure outlined in the job sheet.
 6. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.
- H. Give test.
- I. Evaluate test.
- J. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Job Sheet #1 — Remove, Service, and Replace Two Cycle Exhaust System Components

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- E. Test
- F. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Small Engines, Volume 1*. Athens, Georgia: American Association for Vocational Instructional Materials.
- B. Crouse, William H. and Donald L. Anglin. *Small Engine Mechanics*. Second Edition. New York: Gregg Division, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1980.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

EXHAUST SYSTEMS UNIT VI-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Exhaust valve — Valve which seals burning gases within cylinder until its energy has been expended, then opens so the cylinder can clear
- B. Exhaust manifold — Receives and carries away burned gases
- C. Exhaust pipe — Pipe connecting exhaust manifold to muffler
- D. Muffler — Carries away exhaust gases, muffles engine noise, and acts as a scavenger to recover unburned fuel
- E. Tail pipe — Pipe from muffler that carries exhaust fumes away from equipment
- F. Exhaust port — Hole in cylinder wall that allows exhaust gases to escape

II. Results that can occur from running a worn or damaged exhaust system

- A. Loss of power
- B. Ring and valve damage

III. Types of exhaust systems

- A. Straight through
- B. Reverse flow
- C. Expansion chamber

IV. The danger of operating an engine in a closed shop — Exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, a deadly poison

(NOTE: Engines should not be operated in a closed shop; proper ventilation should be used for running engines; and, ear protection should be worn at all times.)

EXHAUST SYSTEMS UNIT VI-D

JOB SHEET #1 — REMOVE, SERVICE, AND REPLACE TWO CYCLE EXHAUST SYSTEM COMPONENTS

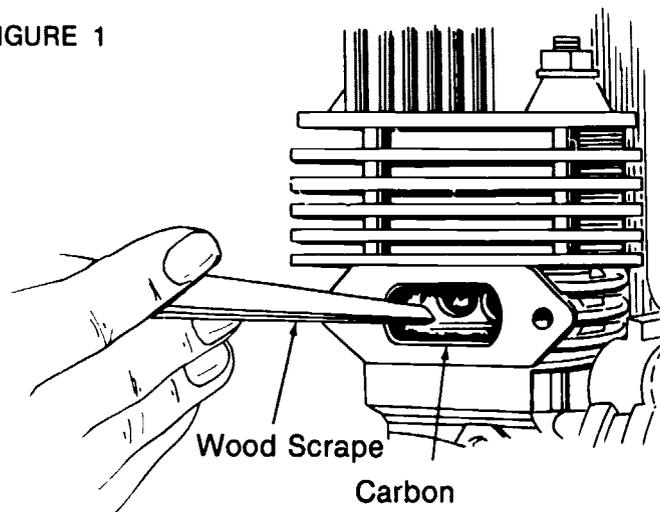
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Hardwood scraper
3. Carbon solvent
4. Compressed air
5. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Remove muffler and any mounting gaskets (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1

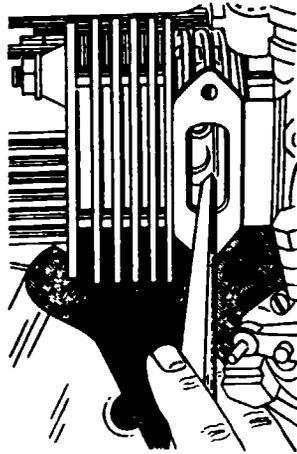


2. Rotate crankshaft until piston covers exhaust ports

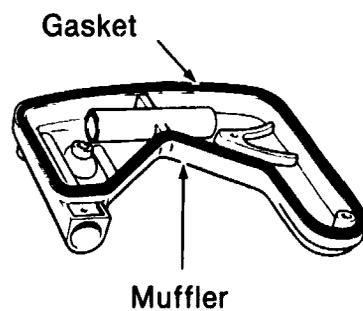
JOB SHEET #1

- Using the wood scraper remove carbon from ports (Figure 2)

(NOTE: Do not use a metal scraper as this will scratch the piston or damage the exhaust port edges.)

FIGURE 2

- Hold engine with port down so carbon will fall out
- Blow out the ports with compressed air
- Soak muffler in solvent to remove carbon deposits

FIGURE 3

(NOTE: The gasket should be replaced when servicing muffler.)

JOB SHEET #1

7. Wash muffler with warm water
8. Reinstall muffler using new gaskets where needed

(NOTE: When installing mufflers on four cycle engines, use a locknut to prevent seizing of the muffler in the block. Discard damaged or worn out system components. Use anti-seize compound on bolts.)

9. Have instructor evaluate work

EXHAUST SYSTEMS UNIT VI-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| <p>_____a. Valve which seals burning gases within cylinder until its energy has been expended, then opens so the cylinder can clear</p> | <p>1. Exhaust manifold</p> |
| <p>_____b. Receives and carries away burned gases</p> | <p>2. Muffler</p> |
| <p>_____c. Pipe connecting exhaust manifold to muffler</p> | <p>3. Tail pipe</p> |
| <p>_____d. Carries away exhaust gases and heat, muffles engine noise, and acts as a scavenger to recover unburned fuel</p> | <p>4. Exhaust pipe</p> |
| <p>_____e. Pipe from muffler that carries exhaust fumes away from equipment</p> | <p>5. Exhaust port</p> |
| <p>_____f. Hole in cylinder wall that allows exhaust gases to escape</p> | <p>6. Exhaust valve</p> |

2. List two results that can occur from running a worn or damaged exhaust system.

- a. _____
- b. _____

3. Select the types of exhaust systems by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- _____a. Diagonal flow
- _____b. Straight through
- _____c. Looped flow
- _____d. Expansion chamber
- _____e. Reverse flow

TEST

4. State the danger of operating an engine in a closed shop.

(NOTE: If the following activity has not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when it should be completed.)

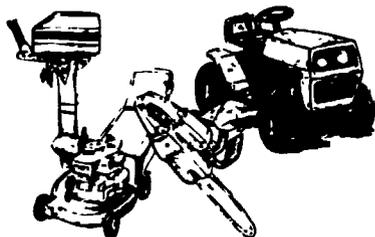
5. Demonstrate the ability to remove, service, and replace two cycle exhaust system components (Job Sheet #1).

658

EXHAUST SYSTEMS UNIT VI-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.
 - a. 6
 - b. 1
 - c. 4
 - d. 2
 - e. 3
 - f. 5
2.
 - a. Loss of power
 - b. Possible engine damage
3. b,d,e
4. Exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, a deadly poison
5. Performance skills evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor



Troubleshooting Unit VII-D

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to solve problems using the troubleshooting chart and troubleshoot engine problems. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment and job sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Define troubleshooting.
2. Select requirements for an engine to run.
3. Complete a list of basic troubleshooting procedures.
4. Select true statements concerning the importance of understanding troubleshooting procedures.
5. Solve problems using the small engine troubleshooting chart (Assignment Sheet #1).
6. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Troubleshoot the fuel system (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Troubleshoot the ignition system (Job Sheet #2).
 - c. Troubleshoot engine compression (Job Sheet #3).

TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparency.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.
D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.
E. Provide students with information sheet.
F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparency to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with assignment and job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.
- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:
1. Show students examples of troubleshooting charts from service manuals and discuss their use.
 2. Invite a potential employer to discuss the importance of sound troubleshooting techniques.
 3. Take students on a field trip to visit shop and observe troubleshooting techniques.
 4. Discuss procedure outlined in the assignment sheet.
 5. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
 6. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.
J. Evaluate test.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- K. Reteach if necessary.

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency Master 1 — Small Engine Troubleshooting Chart
- E. Assignment Sheet #1 — Solve Problems Using the Small Engine Troubleshooting Chart
- F. Answers to assignment sheet
- G. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Troubleshoot the Fuel System
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Troubleshoot the Ignition System
 - 3. Job Sheet #3 — Troubleshoot Compression
- H. Test
- I. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Hydraulics*. Moline, Illinois: Deere and Company, 1979.
- B. *Chilton's Motorcycle Troubleshooting Guide*. Radnor, Pennsylvania: Chilton Book Company, 1973.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.
- D. Herd, Amon. *Troubleshooting Small Engines*. Columbia, Missouri: Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri-Columbia.
- E. Herd, Amon. *Maintenance Procedures*. Columbia, Missouri: Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri-Columbia.

TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. **Troubleshooting** — The systematic diagnosis of engine malfunctions

II. **Requirements for an engine to run**

A. Compression

B. Ignition

C. Carburetion

(NOTE: Troubleshooting involves checking for sufficient compression, proper ignition, and adequate fuel to the combustion chamber. All engine troubles fall into these categories.)

III. **Basic troubleshooting procedures**

A. Know the engine

(NOTE: This may involve the study of an engine's service manual if you are not already familiar with its design features. A good service person keeps up with the latest service bulletins.)

B. Ask the operator

(NOTE: Important questions you should ask the customer or operator include:

1. When was the equipment last used?
2. Does the engine start?
3. Does it stall out?
4. Is the engine hard to start?
5. Is anything broken?
6. Does the engine lack power under load?
7. Does the engine overheat?
8. Is the engine noisy?
9. Does the engine vibrate?

INFORMATION SHEET

C. Inspect the engine

(NOTE: Check level and condition of oil, level and condition of fuel, and coolant level if equipped. Look for clogged breathers and fuel system vent caps, loose hoses, manifolds, and wire connections while inspecting.)

D. Operate the engine if possible

(NOTE: Listen to the sounds it makes while running as well as looking for erratic behavior, oil leaks, or unusual emissions.)

E. List possible causes

(NOTE: Put down all the symptoms and visible possibilities.)

F. Formulate a conclusion

(NOTE: Remember when looking at the list of possible causes that one failure often leads to or indicates another problem.)

G. Test condition

(NOTE: Before you start repairing the engine, analyze the information you have and test your conclusion if possible. Be a troubleshooter, not a hit and miss person.)

IV. Importance of understanding troubleshooting procedures

A. Saves customer's money

(NOTE: The alternative to troubleshooting is parts exchanging. If you don't solve the problem on first or second exchange it gets expensive.)

B. Insures a better repair job

1. Total system or engine is observed

(NOTE: This provides more opportunity to find weak or failing parts.)

2. Better operating dependability

(NOTE: Thorough troubleshooting provides for the identification of problems which may hinder proper engine operations in the future.)

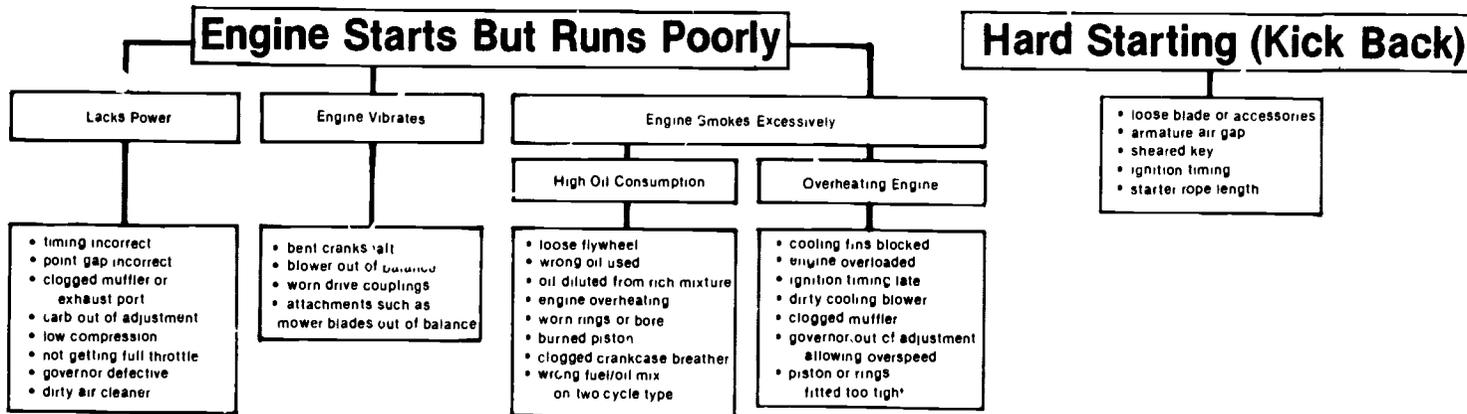
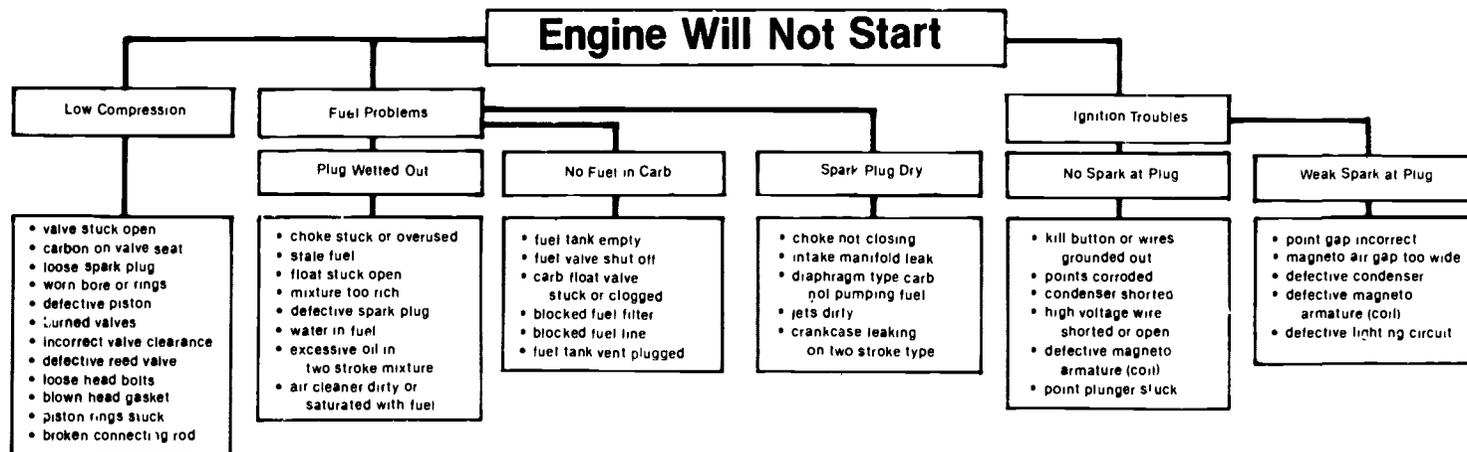
C. Makes employees more valuable

1. Good service means continued business with present customers plus the drawing of new customers

2. Less work is returned

V. Small engine troubleshooting chart (Transparency 1)

Small Engine Troubleshooting Chart



TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1 — SOLVE PROBLEMS USING THE TROUBLESHOOTING CHART

Directions: Solve the problems below using the troubleshooting chart (Transparency 1) in this unit. Place answers in the blanks provided after each problem.

1. The equipment has been in use for 30 minutes and the engine shuts down.

2. The engine begins to vibrate excessively.

3. Engine has just received an Ignition tuneup and was in top starting and running order when turned over to the customer. Two days later the customer could not start the engine.

4. Engine is hard to start and has a kick back.

5. No fuel in carburetor

6. Engine is beginning to lose power. (Two cycle)

TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

1. Fuel problem; fuel tank vent plugged
2. Loose or bent blade; bent crankshaft
3. The ignition switch was in kill position
4. Out of time; armature air gap
5. Fuel valve shut off
6. Exhaust ports clogged

TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

JOB SHEET #1 — TROUBLESHOOT THE FUEL SYSTEM

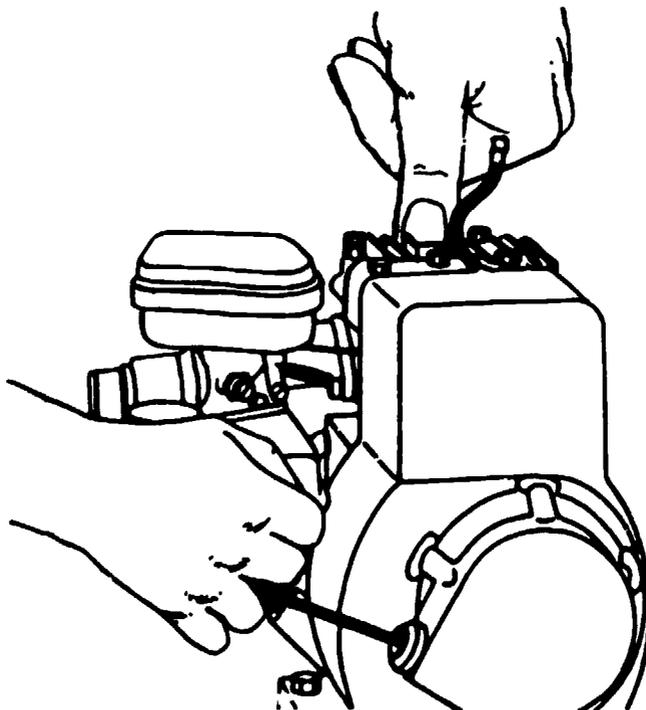
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Basic hand tool assortment
2. Appropriate service manual
3. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Wear proper safety equipment
2. Read operator's manual
3. Organize work station
4. Remove the spark plug and place your thumb or finger over spark plug hole (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



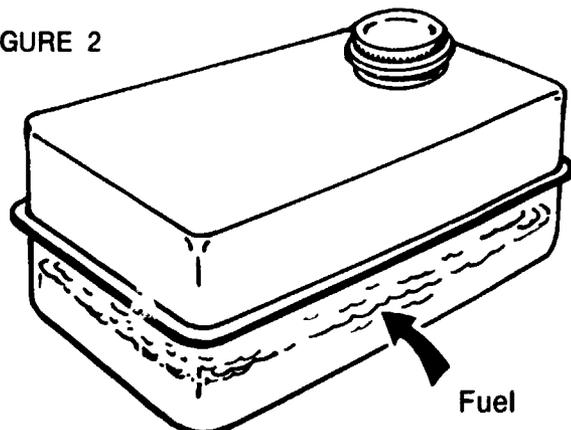
JOB SHEET #1

5. Pull the starter 2 to 3 times

(NOTE: Your finger should be wet if fuel is getting to the combustion chamber. When finger is dry you will need to check further for a fuel problem.)

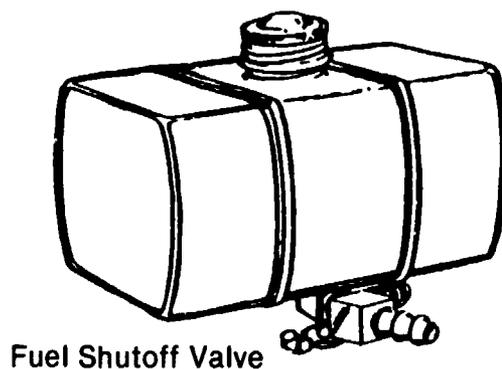
6. Check for fuel in the fuel tank (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



7. Check to see if fuel shutoff valve is open (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



Fuel Shutoff Valve

JOB SHEET #1

8. Check for plugged vents on fuel tank cap (Figure 4)

(NOTE: A plugged vent will cause excessive vapor pressure to build up in the tank and result in engine stoppage.)

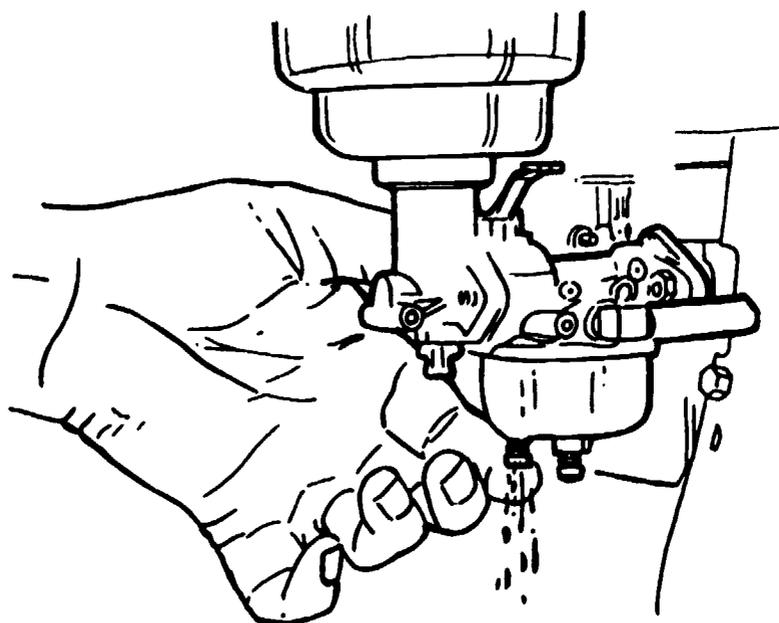
FIGURE 4
Holes
Plugged
With Dirt



9. If the carburetor is equipped with a bowl drain valve, press the valve and let a small amount of fuel drain out into a container (Figure 5)

(NOTE: When fuel drains from the valve, this indicates that fuel is getting from the tank to the carburetor.)

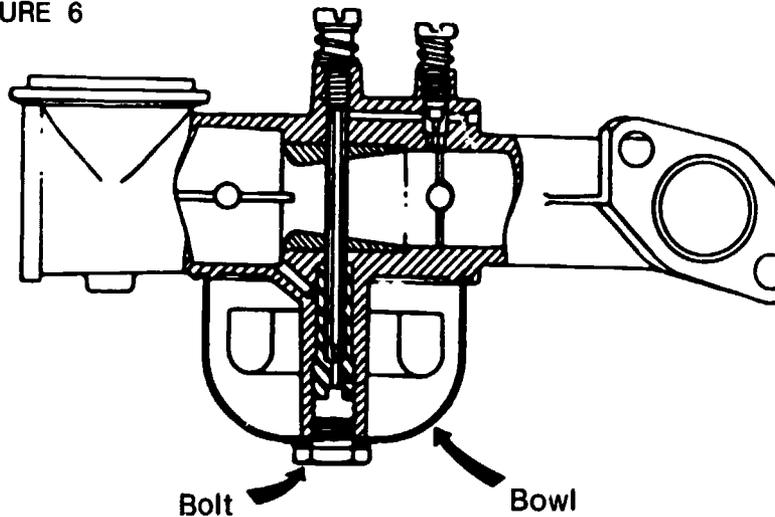
FIGURE 5



JOB SHEET #1

10. If carburetor is not equipped with a drain valve, remove the bowl from the carburetor; loosen bolt or nut from bowl drain and check for gas in bowl (Figure 6)

FIGURE 6



(NOTE: When checking the carburetor bowl for fuel, always look for water or foreign matter in the fuel. If water or foreign matter is present, the carburetor will need to be serviced.)

11. If fuel does not drain out of the valve or is not present in the bowl, check the fuel tank, line, and carburetor as this indicates an obstruction
12. Check fuel filter for dirt or clogged element; remove and replace with a new in-line filter in any flexible fuel line having $\frac{1}{4}$ " inside diameter
13. Formulate problem and corrective measures
 - a. Review list of probable causes
 - b. Correct fuel problem

TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

JOB SHEET #2 — TROUBLESHOOT THE IGNITION SYSTEM

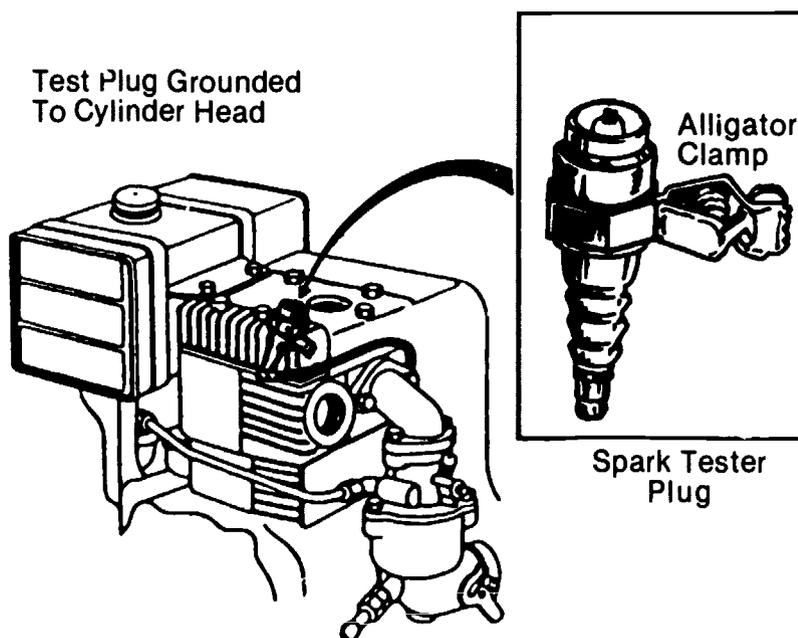
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Basic hand tool assortment
2. Test plug
3. Appropriate service manual
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Wear proper safety equipment
2. Read operator's manual
3. Organize your work station
4. Disconnect the high-tension lead (spark plug wire) and remove the spark plug
5. Using a test plug, connect the high tension lead to the test plug and ground test plug to the cylinder head bolt (Figure 1)

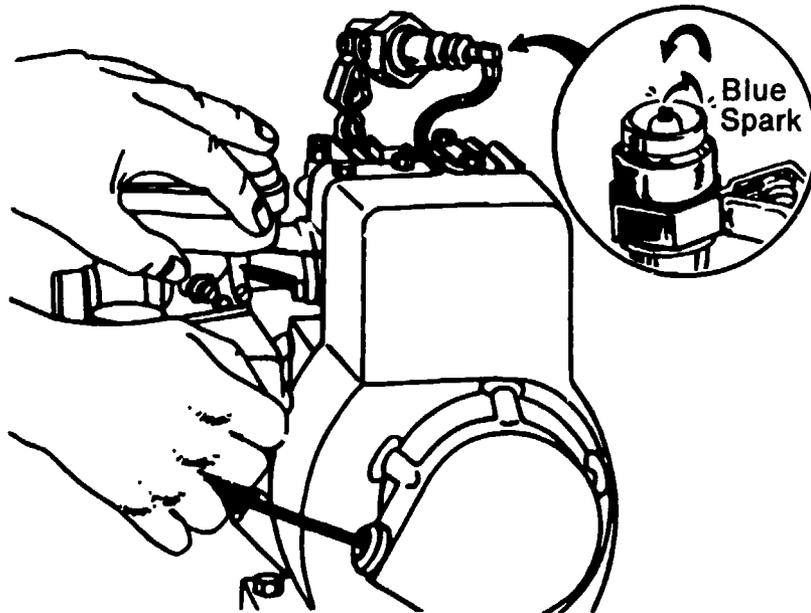
FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #2

6. Crank the engine 2 to 3 times and observe the spark at the test plug (Figure 2)
 - a. The spark should jump the gap and should be a bright blue color; this indicates the ignition system is functioning properly
 - b. A spark that does not jump the gap from the shell to the center electrode indicates ignition problems
 - c. A spark that jumps the gap but is yellow in color indicates poor ignition; the ignition system must be serviced

FIGURE 2



7. Formulate problems and corrective measures
 - a. Review list of probable causes
 - b. Correct ignition problem

TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

JOB SHEET #3 — TROUBLESHOOT ENGINE COMPRESSION

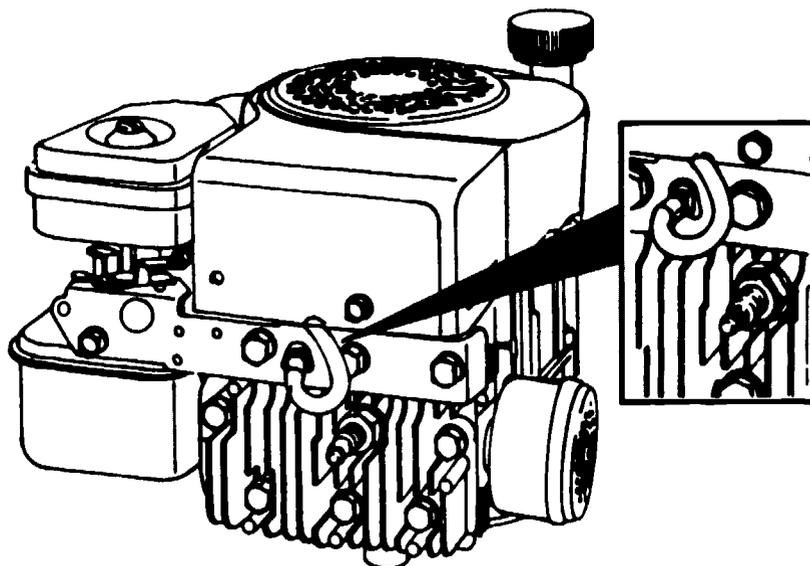
A. Tools and materials needed

1. Basic hand tool assortment
2. Compression gauge
3. Appropriate service manual
4. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Wear proper safety equipment
2. Read operators' manual
3. Organize your work station
4. Remove the high-tension lead from the spark plug and secure (Figure 1)

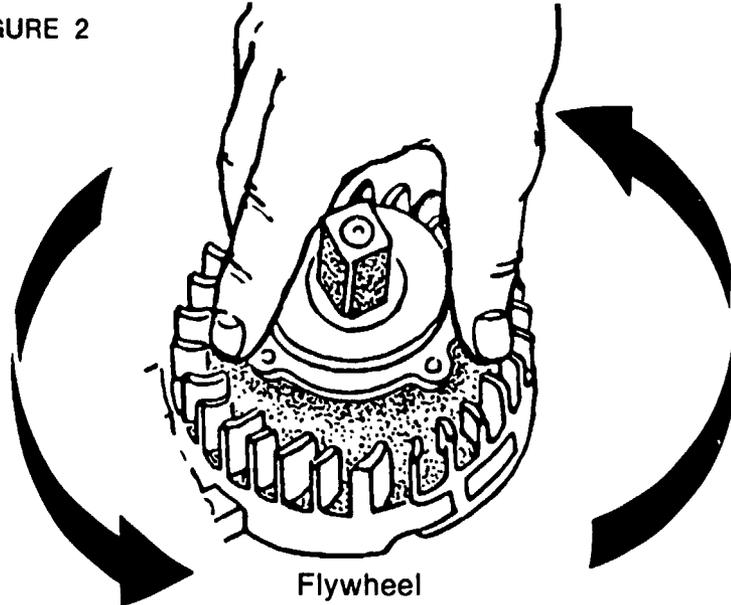
FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #3

5. Manually spin the flywheel counterclockwise against the compression stroke; a sharp rebound indicates satisfactory compression; slight or no rebound indicates poor compression (Figure 2)

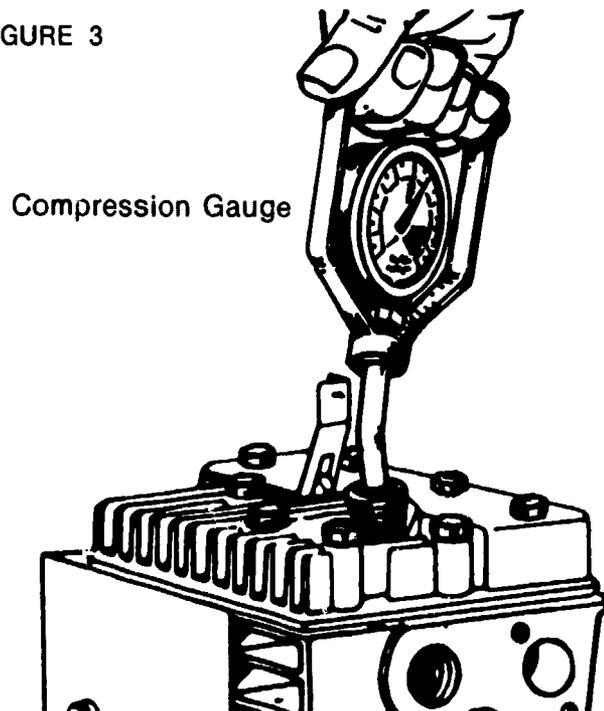
FIGURE 2



(NOTE: Briggs and Stratton engines are equipped with easy spin cam. Rotate the flywheel counterclockwise; a sharp rebound indicates good compression.)

6. Check the engine compression with a compression gauge (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



JOB SHEET #3

7. Crank the engine over at least six times and read the compression gauge
8. Formulate problems and corrective measures
 - a. Review list of probable causes
 - b. Correct compression problems

TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Define troubleshooting.

2. Select requirements for an engine to run by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ____a. Ignition
____b. Speed
____c. Compression
____d. Carburetion
____e. Centrifugal force
____f. Pulley

3. Complete the following list of troubleshooting procedures by correctly filling in the blanks.

- a. Know the engine
b. Ask the operator
c. _____
d. Operate the engine if possible
e. _____
f. Formulate a conclusion
g. _____

TEST

4. Select true statements concerning the importance of understanding troubleshooting procedures by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

- ____a. Saves customer's money
- ____b. Insures a better repair job as the total system or engine is observed
- ____c. Insures better operating dependability
- ____d. Fewer employees are needed to operate shop
- ____e. Good service means continued business with present customers plus the drawing of new customers
- ____f. Makes employees more valuable since less work is returned

5. Solve the problems below using the small engine troubleshooting chart on the following page.

(NOTE: There may be more than one possible cause of the problem. Choose one.)

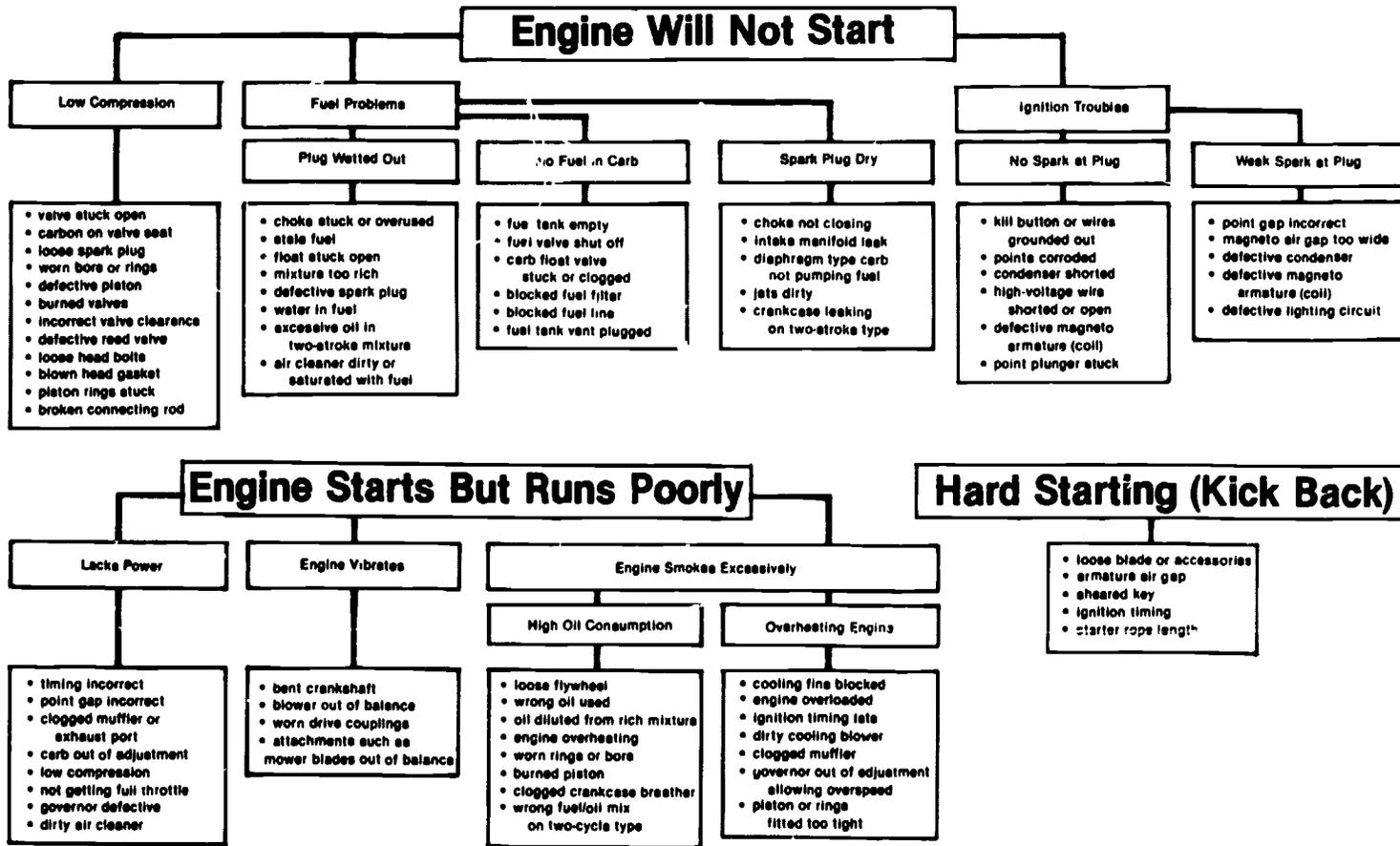
- a. Engine is smoking excessively and overheating

- b. Engine will not start due to low compression

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

6. Demonstrate the ability to:

- a. Troubleshoot the fuel system (Job Sheet #1).
- b. Troubleshoot the ignition system (Job Sheet #2).
- c. Troubleshoot engine compression (Job Sheet #3).



(NOTE: The small engine troubleshooting chart below should be used to solve problems in test question #5.)

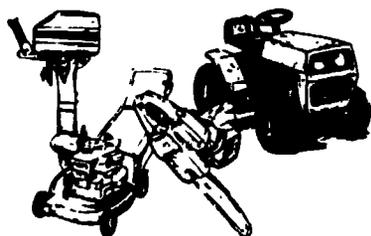
TEST

TROUBLESHOOTING UNIT VII-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. Troubleshooting is the systematic diagnosis of engine malfunctions
2. a,c,d
3. c. Inspect the engine
e. List possible causes
g. Test conclusion
4. a,b,c,e,f
5. Refer to small engine troubleshooting chart in unit
6. Performance skills evaluated according to standards identified by the instructor

060



Overhaul Four-Stroke Cycle Engine Unit VIII-D

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to disassemble and reassemble a four-stroke cycle engine and inspect and service the cylinder, piston rings, connecting rod, crankshaft assembly, and valve train. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the job sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to the overhaul of a four-stroke cycle engine with their correct definitions.
2. List five causes of engine problems.
3. Identify the parts of the piston and connecting rod assembly.
4. Identify the parts of the crankshaft assembly.
5. Identify the parts of a multi-piece crankshaft.
6. Identify the parts of the valve train.
7. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Disassemble a four-stroke cycle engine (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Inspect and service a cylinder (Job Sheet #2).
 - c. Inspect and service the piston, rings, and connecting rod (Job Sheet #3).

OBJECTIVE SHEET

- d. Inspect and service a crankshaft and crankcase assembly (Job Sheet #4).
- e. Inspect and service a valve assembly (Job Sheet #5).
- f. Reassemble a four-stroke cycle engine (Job Sheet #6).

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to supplement/reinforce information provided in this unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Provide examples of pistons and connecting rod assemblies, crankshaft assemblies, and valve trains.
2. Compare overhauls of four-stroke cycle and two-stroke cycle engines.
3. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
4. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Piston Assembly
 - 2. TM 2 — Connecting Rod Assembly
 - 3. TM 3 — Crankshaft Assembly
 - 4. TM 4 — Multi-Piece Crankshaft
 - 5. TM 5 — Valve Train
- E. Job sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Disassemble a Four-Stroke Cycle Engine
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Inspect and Service a Cylinder
 - 3. Job Sheet #3 — Inspect and Service the Piston, Rings, and Connecting Rod
 - 4. Job Sheet #4 — Inspect and Service a Crankshaft and Crankcase Assembly
 - 5. Job Sheet #5 — Inspect and Service a Valve Assembly
 - 6. Job Sheet #6 — Reassemble a Four-Stroke Cycle Engine
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. Herd, Amon. *Valves: Service and Repair*. Columbia, Missouri: Instructional Materials Laboratory, University of Missouri-Columbia.
- B. *Twin Cylinder Repair Instructions*. Milwaukee, Wisconsin: Briggs and Stratton Corporation, 1980.
- C. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- D. *Harley-Davidson Service Manual: Sportster XLXLH/XLCX, 1970-1973.* Harley Davidson Motor Co., Inc., 1972.
- E. *Small Engines, Volume 2.* Athens, Georgia: American Association of Vocational Instructional Materials, 1974.

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Overhaul — To restore to manufacturer's specifications
- B. Abrasion — Wearing or rubbing away
- C. Anti-friction bearing — Bearing constructed with balls or rollers between journal and bearing surface to provide rolling instead of sliding friction
- D. Babbitt — Alloy of tin, copper, lead, silver, and antimony having good anti-friction properties; used as a facing for bearings
- E. Backlash — Clearance or "play" between two parts

Example: Meshed gears
- F. Blow-by — Leakage or loss of pressure

(NOTE: This is often used with reference to leakage of compression past piston ring between piston and cylinder.)
- G. Break in — Process of wearing into a desirable fit new or reconditioned parts
- H. Bushing -- Removable sleeve used as a bearing
- I. Camshaft — Shaft containing lobes or cams which operate engine valves
- J. Carbon — Common nonmetallic element which forms in combustion chamber of an engine during burning of fuel and lubricating oil
- K. Clearance — Space allowed between two parts

Example: Space between a journal and a bearing
- L. Crankshaft counterbalance — Series of weights attached to or forged integrally with the crankshaft, placed so as to offset the reciprocating weight of each piston and rod assembly
- M. Floating piston pin — Piston pin which is not locked in the connecting rod or the piston, but is free to turn or oscillate in both the connecting rod and the piston
- N. Gasket — Substance placed between two metal surfaces to act as a seal

INFORMATION SHEET

- O. Hone** — Abrasive tool for deglazing and correcting irregularities or differences in diameter in the cylinder

Example: Engine cylinder

- P. Interference angle** — Difference in angle between mating surfaces of a valve and a valve seat

- Q. Journal** — Part of a shaft or crank which rotates inside a bearing

- R. Oil pumping** — Term used to describe an engine which is using an excessive amount of lubricating oil

- S. Piston slap** — Rocking of loose fitting piston in a cylinder, making a hollow bell-like sound

- T. Press fit** — Known as a force fit or drive fit

(NOTE: This fit is accomplished by forcing a shaft into a hole slightly smaller than the shaft.)

- U. Running fit** — Sufficient clearance has been allowed between the shaft and journal to allow free running without overheating

- V. Seize** — One surface adhering to another because of heat and pressure

Example: A piston will seize in a cylinder because of lack of lubrication or overexpansion due to excessive heat

- W. Shrink fit** — Exceptionally tight fit achieved by heating and/or cooling of parts

(NOTE: The outer part is heated above its normal operating temperature or the inner part chilled below its normal operating temperature and assembled in this condition.)

- X. Valve lapping** — Process of mating the valve seat and valve face

(NOTE: This is performed with the aid of an abrasive.)

- Y. Valve grinding** — Process of refacing the valve and seat to manufacturer's specifications

- Z. Valve face** — Angle surface of valve which mates with the seat to seal the chamber

- AA. Valve head** — Top of the large diametered valve end

- BB. Valve margin** — Space between valve face and head

INFORMATION SHEET

- CC. Valve stem — Long portion of valve which rests within the valve guide
- DD. Valve seat — Angle surface in engine block or head which provides mating surface for valve face
- EE. Valve clearance — Distance between valve stem and tappet at lowest tappet position

II. Causes of engine problems

- A. Allowing dirt to get into the engine
- B. Failure to check crankcase oil level often enough and letting engine run low on oil
- C. Overloading the engine so that it works too hard
- D. Running the engine too fast
- E. Failure to properly store the engine during the off season

III. Parts of piston and connecting rod assembly (Transparencies 1 and 2)

- A. Land
- B. Piston head
- C. Piston pin (wrist pin)
- D. Skirt
- E. Pin hole
- F. Oil ring groove
- G. Compression and scraper ring groove
- H. Ring side clearance
- I. Thrust face clearance
- J. Retaining ring
- K. Connecting rod
- L. Connecting rod bearing cap
- M. Connecting rod bolts, washers, and nuts

INFORMATION SHEET**IV. Parts of crankshaft assembly (Transparency 3)**

A. Main bearing journals

B. Crankpin

(NOTE: This is the connecting rod bearing journal.)

C. Counterweights

V. Parts of a multi-piece crankshaft (Transparency 4)

A. Threads and keyway

B. Mag journal

C. Crankpin

D. Gear teeth and keyway

E. P.T.O. journal

F. Keyway

VI. Parts of the valve train (Transparency 5)

A. Margin

B. Seat

C. Stem

D. Face

E. Retainer

F. Adjusting nut

G. Tappet guide

H. Cam

I. Head

J. Valve guide

K. Valve spring

L. Clearance

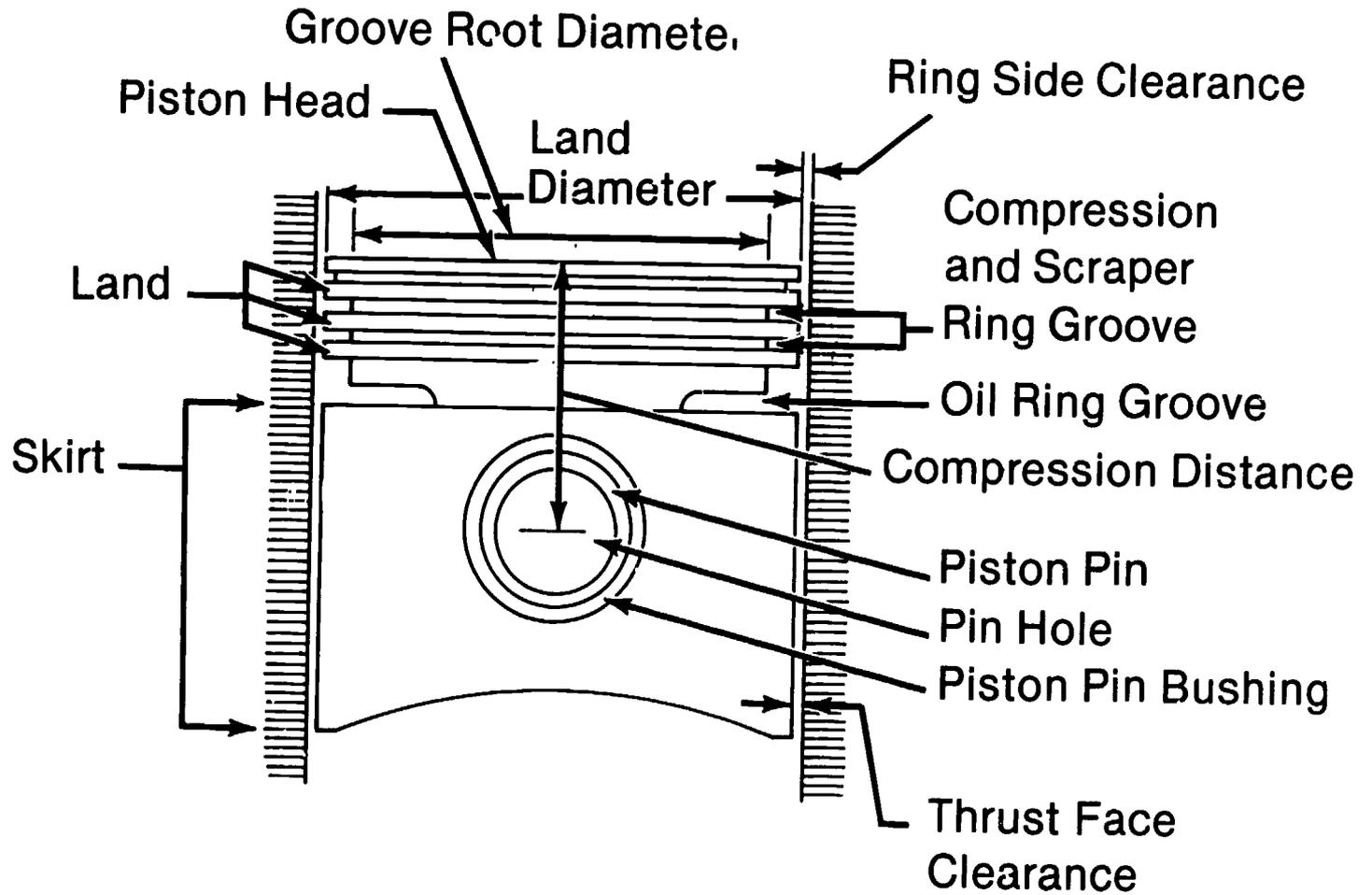
(66)

INFORMATION SHEET

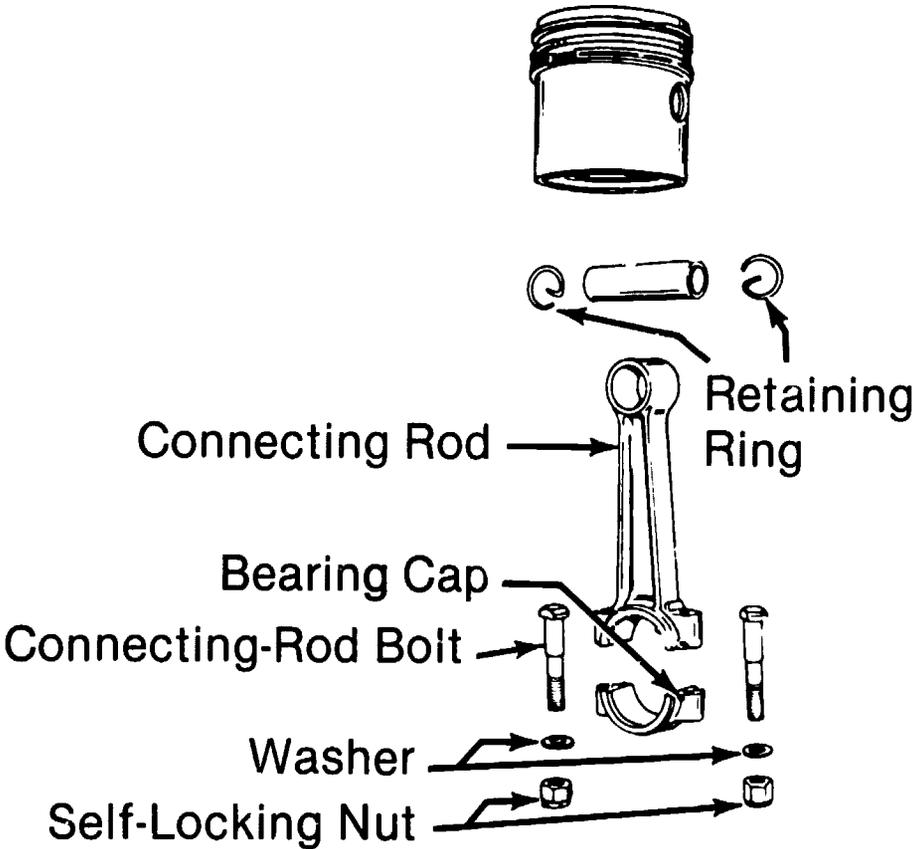
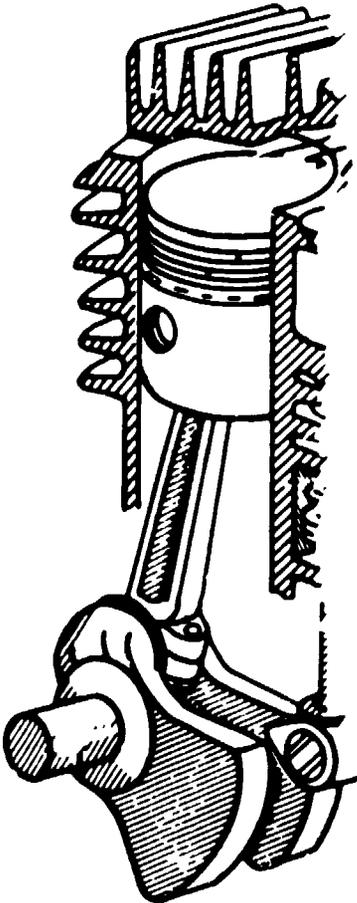
- M. Locknut
- N. Tappet
- O. Shaft

C70

Piston Assembly



Connecting Rod Assembly

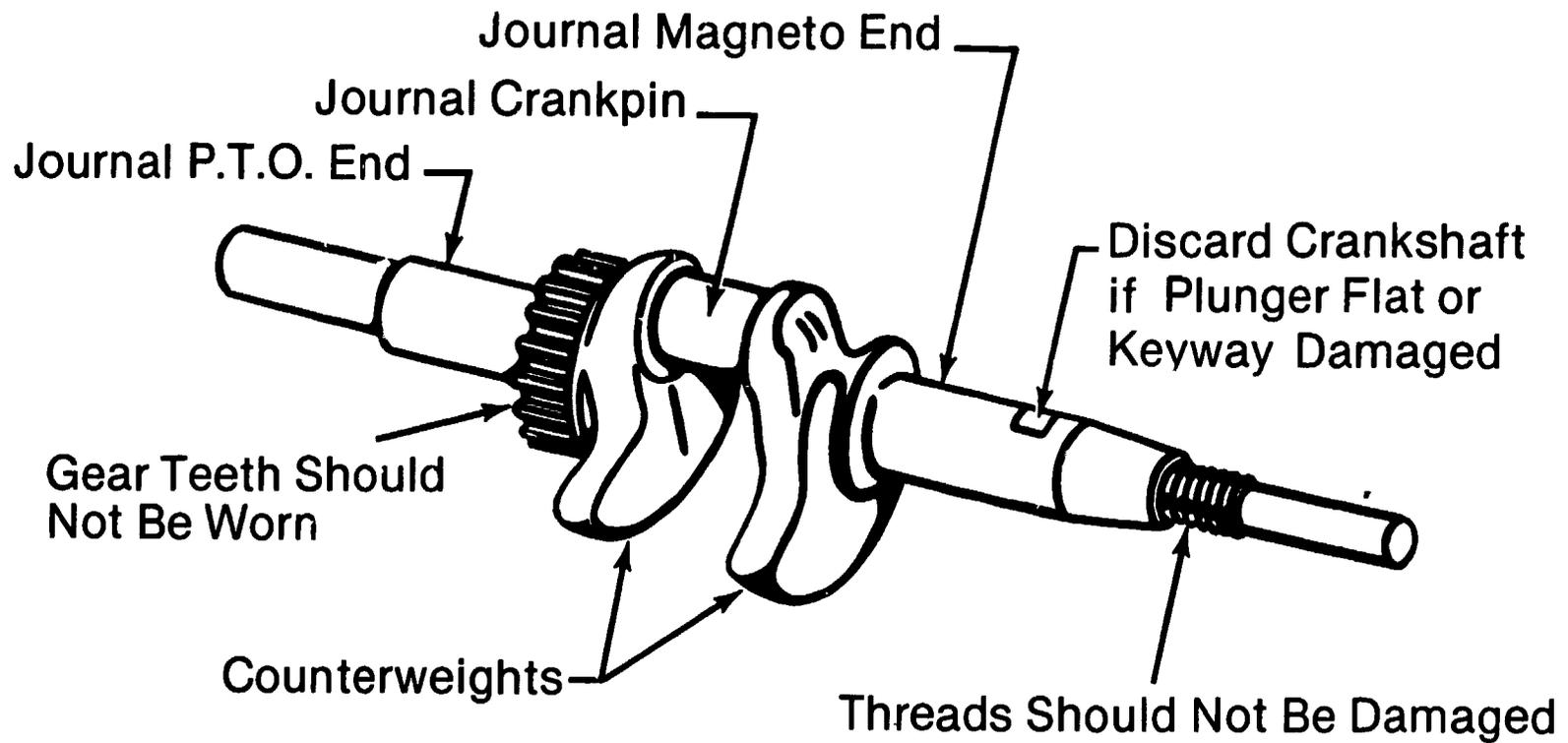


073

074

Crankshaft Assembly

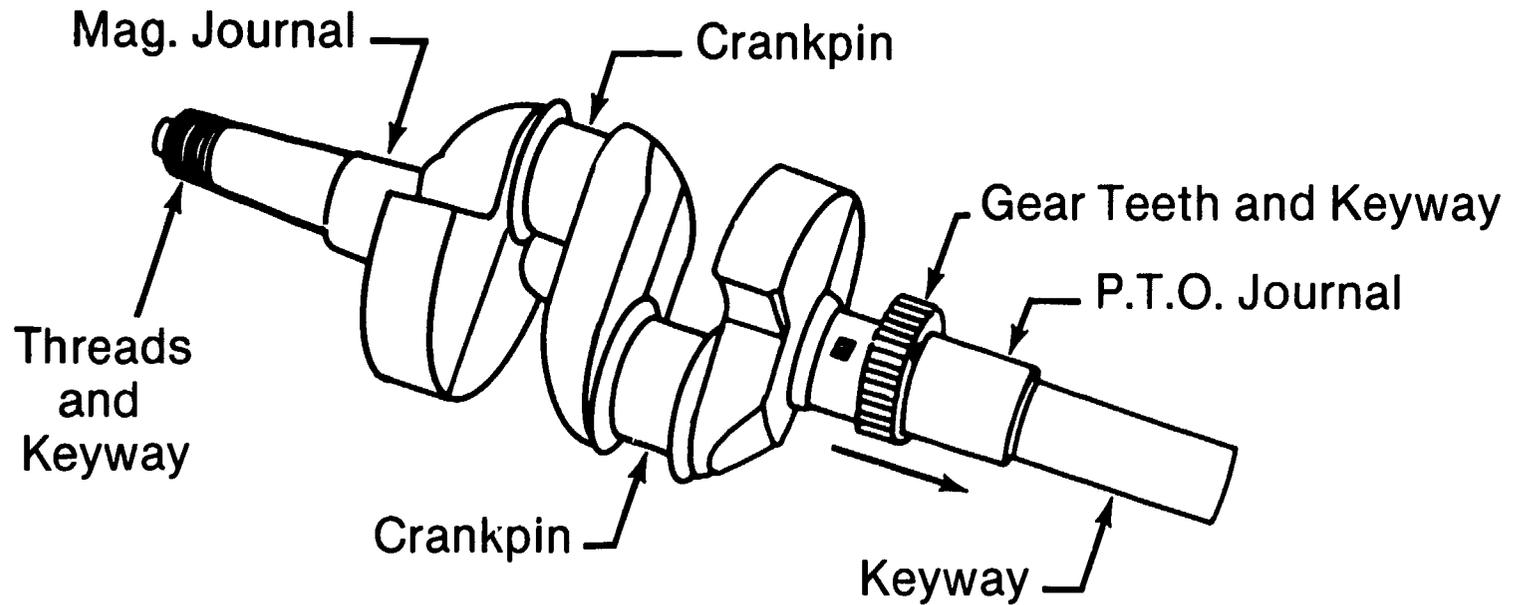
Discard Crankshaft if Small or Out of Round



C75

C76

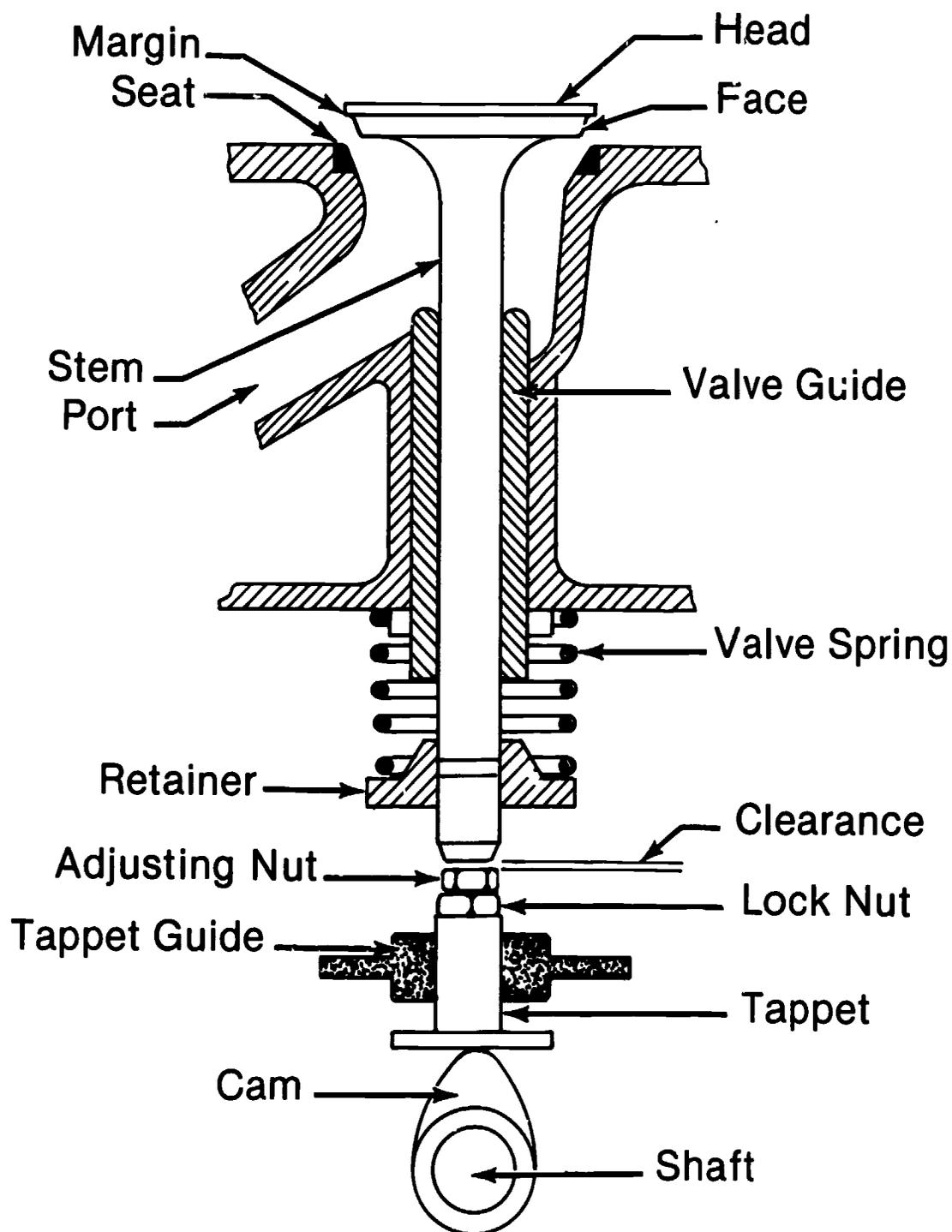
Multi-Piece Crankshaft



077

078

Valve Train



979

TM 5

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

JOB SHEET #1 — DISASSEMBLE A FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Flywheel wrench
3. Flywheel holder
4. Flywheel puller
5. Valve spring compressor
6. Engine stand
7. Shop towels
8. Cleaning solvent
9. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Disconnect spark plug cable, battery connections, and remove spark plug
2. Drain oil from crankcase
3. Disconnect all belts, chains, remote throttle control linkage, and exhaust system if attached to implement or vehicle
4. Remove engine from implement or vehicle
(NOTE: If remote fuel tank is used, disconnect fuel lines from engine.)
5. Mount engine on suitable stand
(NOTE: Some smaller engines are easier to disassemble on a work bench.)
6. Remove starter unit
7. Remove air cleaner and its mounting bracket
8. Remove exhaust pipe and muffler
9. Remove carburetor and intake manifold

(NOTE: Be sure to note throttle and choke connections; it might help to sketch the linkage.)

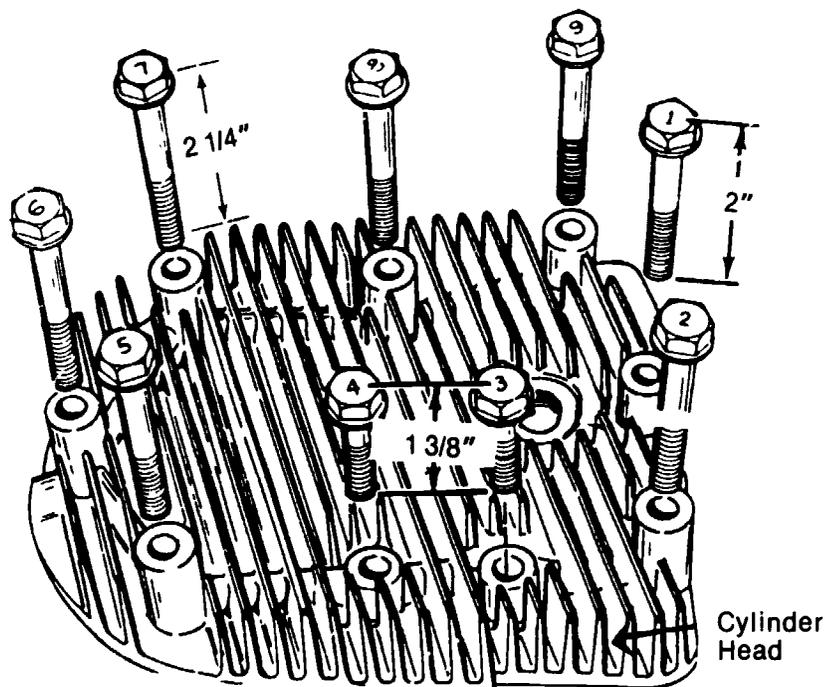
080

JOB SHEET #1

10. Remove air shroud, blower housing baffles, and fuel tank
(CAUTION: Position tank so fuel will not leak out.)
11. Remove the flywheel
(NOTE: Always use the right puller.)
12. Remove all magneto components
(NOTE: On Tecumseh engines, mark stator plate with chisel or punch before removing.)
13. Clean all outside surfaces of the engine using an approved solvent
(CAUTION: Never use gas or solvents that burn easily nor those which may be harmful to humans.)

(NOTE: As parts are cleaned and dried lay them out in an organized pattern on the clean workbench.)
14. Remove the cylinder head
(NOTE: On engines with overhead camshafts refer to appropriate service manual for exact procedures.)
15. Mark bolts so different length bolts will be returned to the proper location (Figure 1)

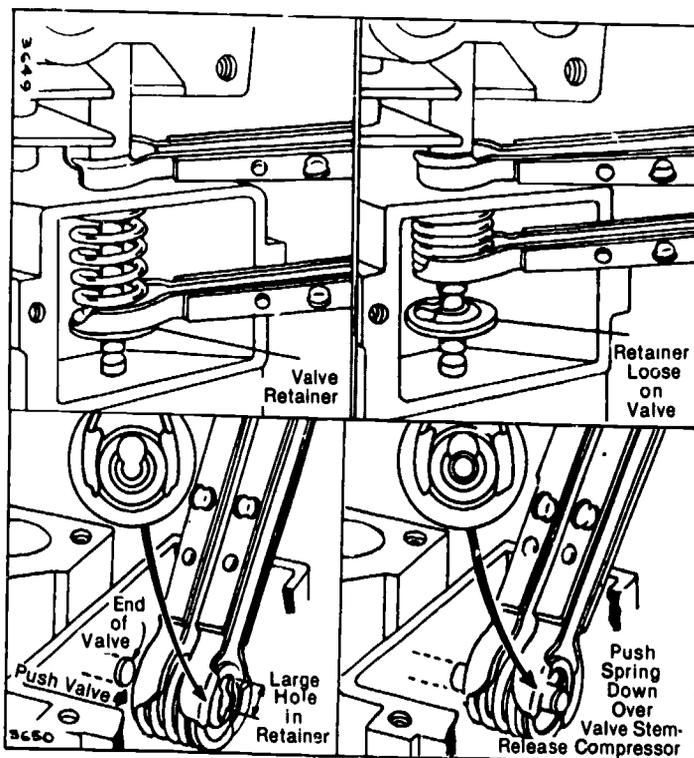
FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #1

16. Remove valve cover
17. Install valve spring compressor (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



18. Compress valve spring
19. Remove spring keepers and collars
20. Remove tension on valve spring
21. Remove spring compressor
22. Remove valve

(NOTE: Be sure and check for roughness at valve lock groove to prevent guide damage during removal.)

23. Remove spring

(NOTE: Mark springs as exhaust or intake for reassembly.)

24. Repeat steps "Q" through "W" for other valve(s)

JOB SHEET #1

5. Remove piston assembly

(NOTE: Refer to appropriate service manuals for exact procedures on engines with removable cylinders.)

- a. Rotate crankshaft until piston is at bottom of cylinder
- b. Remove oil sump

(CAUTION: Be sure crankshaft is clean before sump is removed.)

- c. Remove oil slinger or pump, camshaft, and tappets

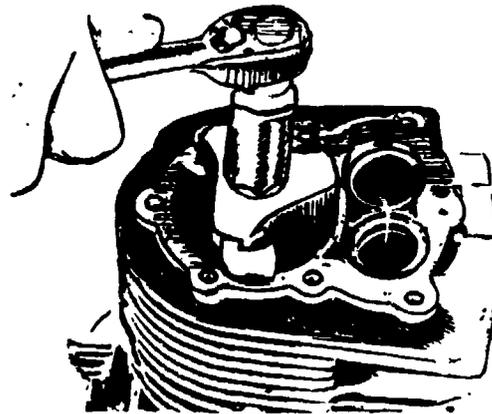
(NOTE: Mark tappets for replacement.)

- d. Feel upper cylinder with finger to check for a ridge

- e. Remove ridge with ridge cutter (Figure 3)

(NOTE: Refer to ridge cutter installation and cutting procedures.)

FIGURE 3

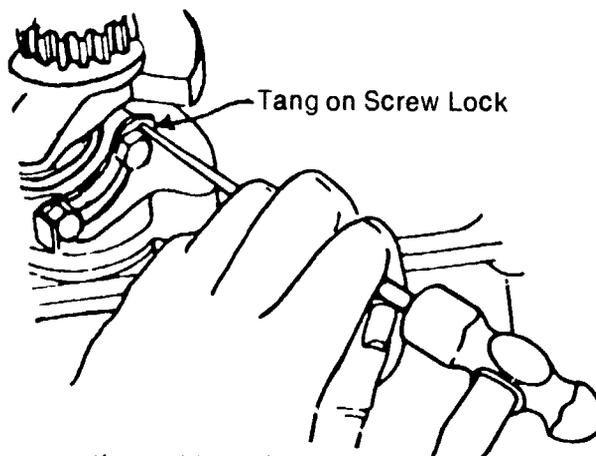


053

JOB SHEET #1

- f. Bend tang away from connecting rod bolts (Figure 4)

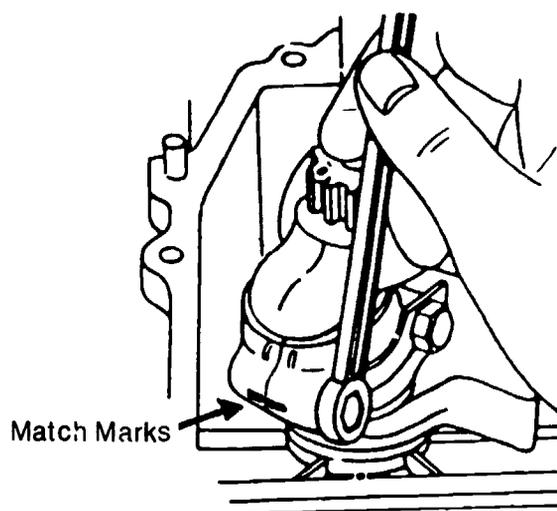
FIGURE 4



- g. Remove connecting rod bolts (Figure 5)

(NOTE: Notice location of marks on bearing cap and rod so they can be returned to correct location.)

FIGURE 5

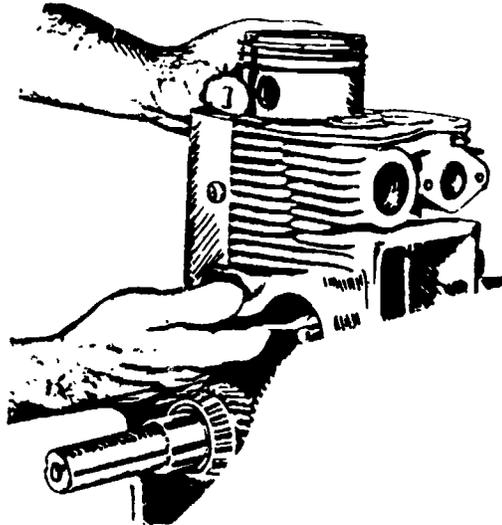


JOB SHEET #1

- h. Remove piston and rod (Figure 6)

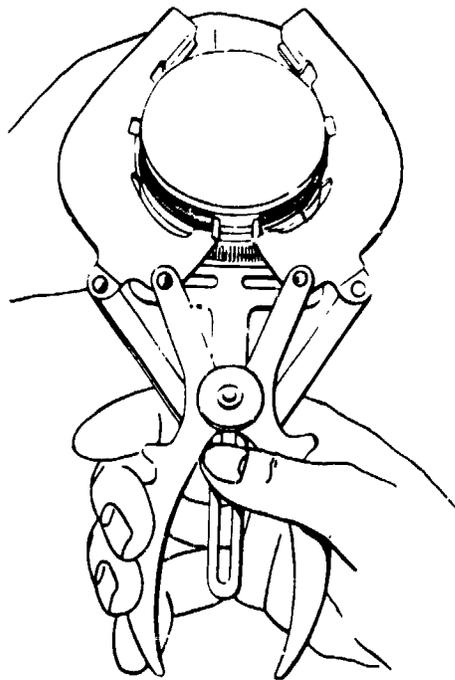
(NOTE: Scribe across piston and block so piston can be returned in its original direction.)

FIGURE 6



26. Remove rings from piston using the correct ring expander (Figure 7)

FIGURE 7



JOB SHEET #1

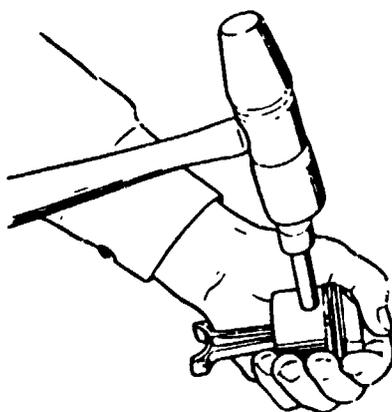
27. Remove piston pin locks (Figure 8)

FIGURE 8



28. Remove piston pin (Figure 9)

FIGURE 9



29. Remove crankshaft

- a. Remove crankshaft retainers if any are used

JOB SHEET #1

- b. Remove crankshaft from block and bearing plate (Figures 10 and 11)

FIGURE 10

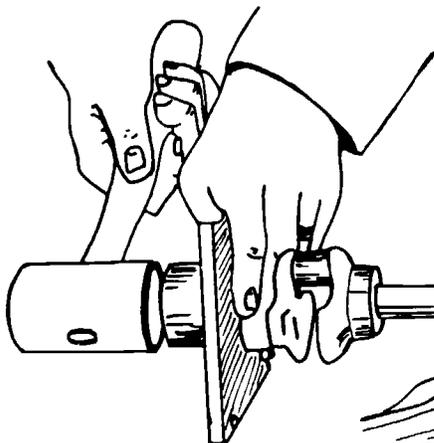
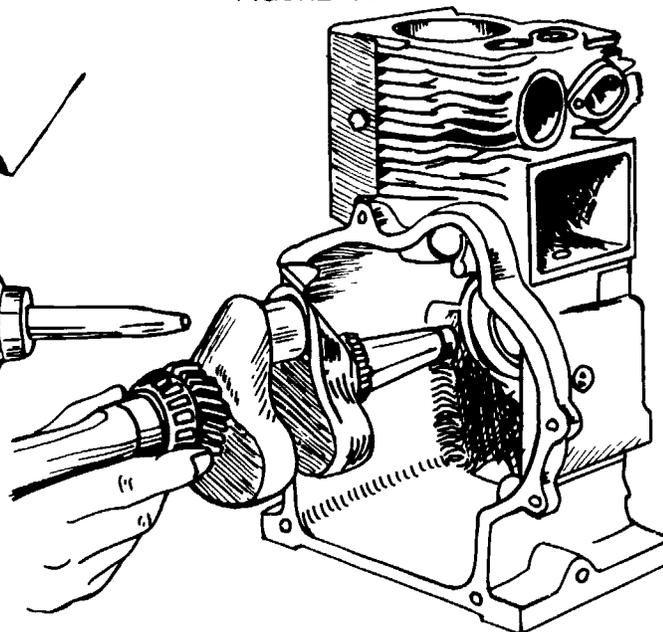


FIGURE 11



(NOTE: A gentle pull on engines with tapered roller bearings will usually work. On engines with sleeve inserts or cast in bearings, gentle taps with a soft mallet are often required.)

30. Clean all parts and dry for inspection and measurement

137

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

JOB SHEET #2 — INSPECT AND SERVICE A CYLINDER

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Measuring instruments
2. Deglazing tool
3. Portable drill
4. Cylinder vise support
5. Light oil 5-10 weight
6. Shop towels
7. Hand tool assortment
8. Hone
9. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

1. Inspect

- a. Examine for cracks, stripped threads, broken fins, and scored and damaged cylinder walls

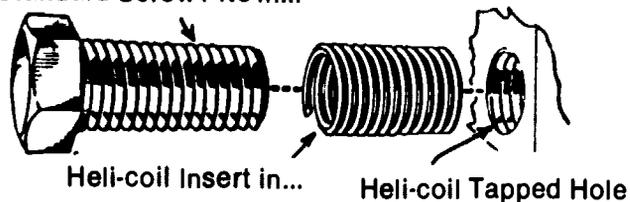
(NOTE: Any of these may require replacement of the cylinder.)

- b. Repair any stripped threads using a Heli-coil

- 1) Drill out worn thread
- 2) Tap hole with Heli-coil tap
- 3) Install Heli-coil insert to bring hole back to original thread (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1

Standard Screw Fits in...

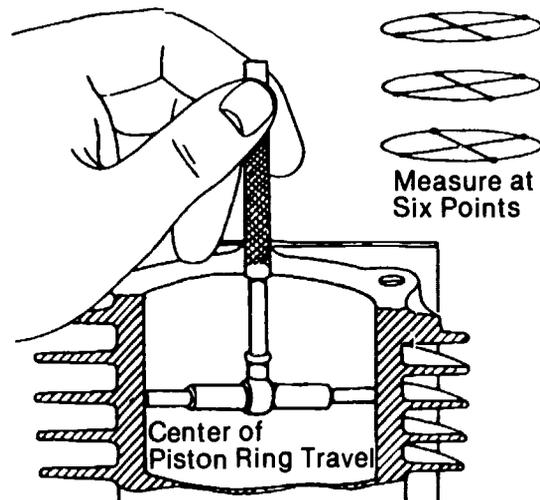


JOB SHEET #2

2. Measure ring travels

- a. Take measurements at top, center, and bottom of ring travels both parallel and at right angles to the crankshaft (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



- b. Check to see if measurements are within manufacturer's specifications
- ### 3. Deglaze cylinder if it falls within manufacturer's specified tolerances

(NOTE: Refer to appropriate service manual for exact deglazing procedures.)

- a. Clean cylinder with hot soapy water

(NOTE: Do not use gasoline, kerosene, or solvents for this cleaning job.)

- b. Dry cylinder

4. Bore cylinders

(NOTE: Check manufacturer's specifications for equipment needed. If engine does not meet manufacturer's specifications for standard ring replacement, it should be bored or honed.)

- a. Determine cylinder wall type

(NOTE: Some cylinders cannot be rebored. Chrome plated aluminum cylinders, for instance, must be discarded if worn or damaged.)

JOB SHEET #2**b. Hone boring to oversize**

(NOTE: Boring is done in .010 increments. If first .010 leaves nicks or scrapes unrepaired, go to .020 over standard.)

1) Install cylinder in vise or cylinder support

2) Insert hone into cylinder

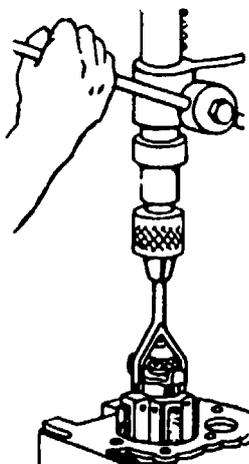
(NOTE: Be sure and use correct stone.)

3) Start drill or drill press

4) Raise and lower hone in cylinder while it rotates (Figure 3)

(NOTE: Do not go below cylinder $\frac{1}{4}$ " or above $\frac{1}{4}$ ".)

FIGURE 3



5) Stop periodically to measure progress

6) Stop boring when you are within .002 in. of desired diameter

7) Change to finishing stones and finish honing to crosshatch pattern

8) Clean cylinders

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

JOB SHEET #3 — INSPECT AND SERVICE THE PISTON, RINGS, AND CONNECTING ROD

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Outside micrometer
2. Telescoping gauge
3. Ring groove cleaner
4. Feeler gauges
5. Ring expander
6. Manufacturer's engine manual
7. Hand tool assortment
8. Safety glasses

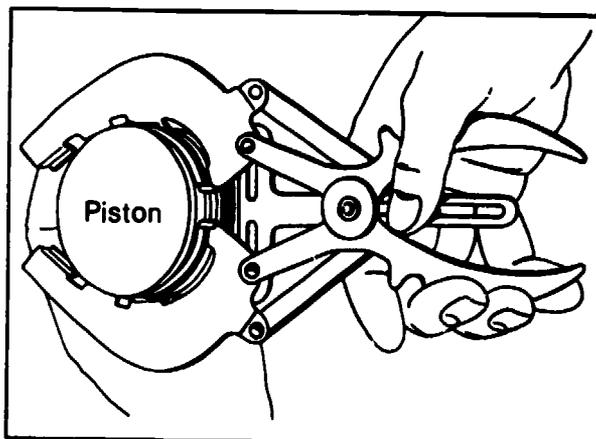
B. Procedure

1. Check piston visually for scoring wear spots and deformities

(NOTE: Discard the piston and replace with a new one if you feel it has damage that will affect engine performance.)

2. Secure piston in vise
3. Remove rings using ring expander (Figure 1)

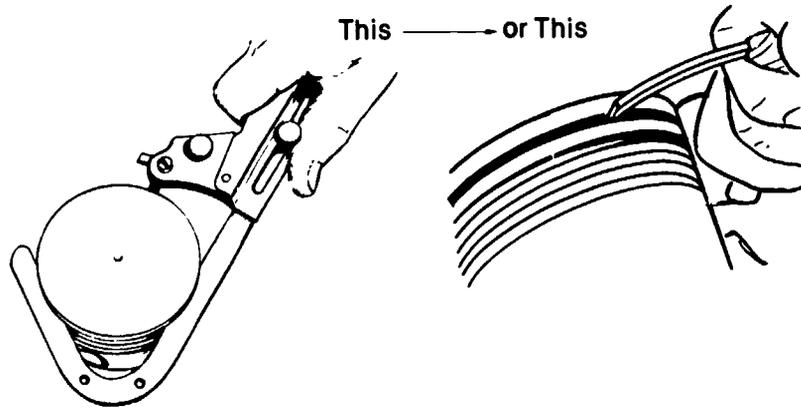
FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #3

4. Clean carbon from ring grooves with special cleaner (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2

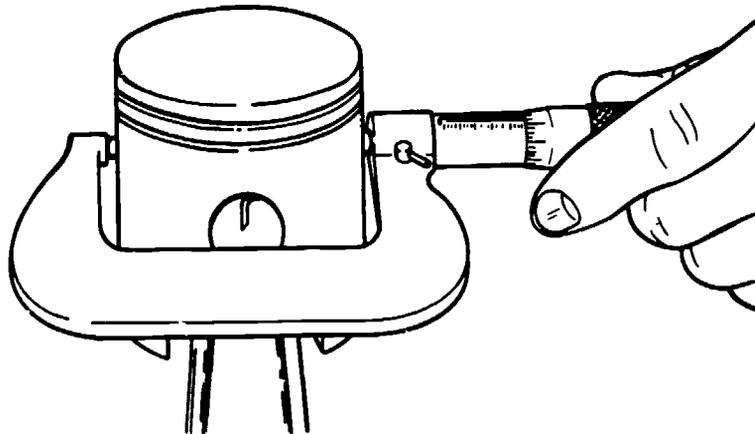


(NOTE: Do not alter the groove size. Do not remove metal from grooves. Do not use caustic solvent. Do not use a wire brush or buffer.)

5. Take piston measurement below ring grooves (Figure 3)

(NOTE: Take four measurements, two at right angle to pin opening and two parallel.)

FIGURE 3



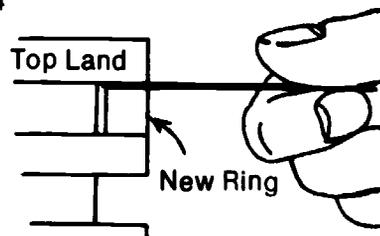
6. Compare measurements to manufacturer's specifications

(NOTE: Discard piston if it does not fall within manufacturer's specifications.)

JOB SHEET #3

7. Check for ring groove wear
 - a. Install new ring using ring expander
 - b. Insert feeler gauge between ring and groove (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4



- c. Compare with the manufacturer's specifications

(NOTE: Discard piston if measurements do not fall within manufacturer's tolerances.)

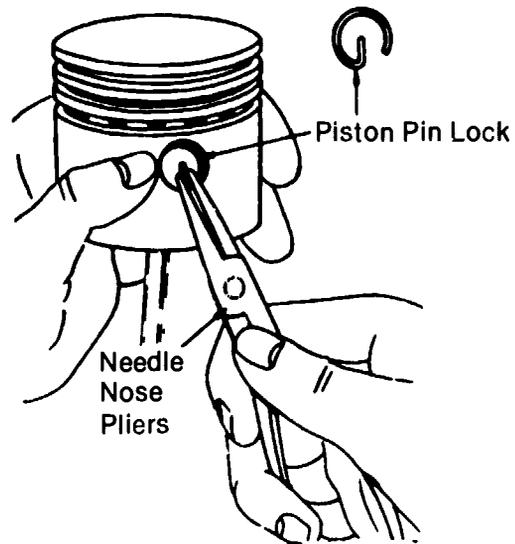
- d. Repeat for remaining ring grooves

(NOTE: On some multi-cylinder engines the manufacturers recommend piston balancing. Refer to appropriate service manual.)

JOB SHEET #3

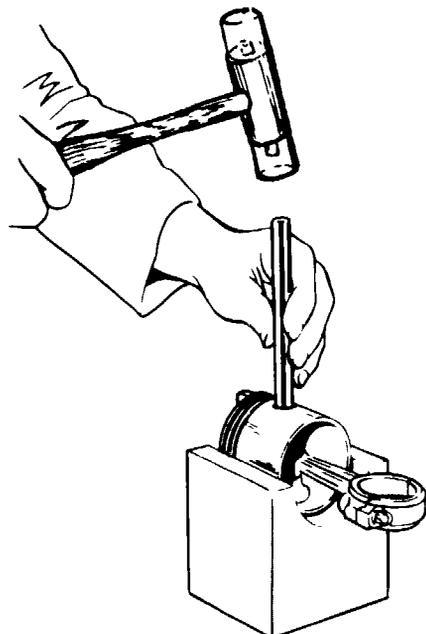
8. Service and inspect pin and connecting rod
 - a. Remove pin retainers (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5



- b. Drive out piston pin with soft hammer and dowel (Figure 6)

FIGURE 6



JOB SHEET #3

- c. Measure pin diameter using micrometer
- d. Measure piston boss with small hole gauge
- e. Measure hole gauge with micrometer
- f. Subtract pin measurement from boss measurement
- g. Compare to manufacturer's specifications

(NOTE: Some manufacturers recommend replacement if tolerances are not within specifications; others recommend boring piston bosses to over-size and using a larger pin. Some rods use replaceable bearings. Refer to appropriate service manual for exact procedures.)

- h. Check rod for straightness

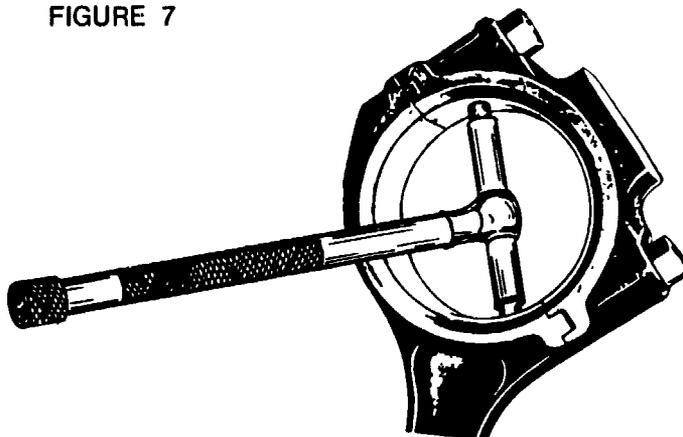
(NOTE: Big and small bearing holes must be parallel. Do not straighten; replace as necessary. Some multi-cylinder engines require rod balancing. Refer to appropriate service manual.)

- i. Connect rod cap to connecting rod

(NOTE: Be sure alignment marks on cap and rod are mated before tightening cap screws. Refer to appropriate service manual for torque.)

- j. Measure inside diameter of crankpin opening in two places 180° apart (Figure 7)

FIGURE 7



- k. Compare reading to manufacturer's specification

(NOTE: If out-of-roundness is found in your readings, discard rod and get a new one to replace it. On models with bearing inserts put in new bearings if manufacturer's specifications are not met or out-of-roundness is found.)

- l. Use of plastigauge is quicker and more accurate

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

JOB SHEET #4 — INSPECT AND SERVICE A CRANKSHAFT AND CRANKCASE ASSEMBLY

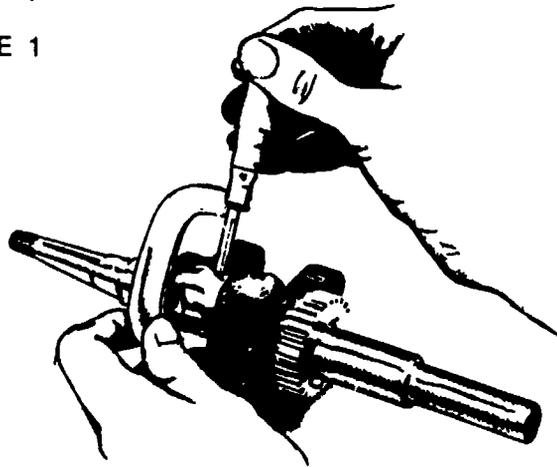
- A. Tools and materials needed
1. Telescoping gauge
 2. Outside micrometer
 3. Seal removal tools
 4. Seal installation tools
 5. Bearing pullers
 6. Bearing installation tools
 7. Hand tool assortment
 8. Safety glasses
 9. Reject gauges
- B. Procedure
1. Inspect crankshaft for scoring, straightness, damaged keyway, damaged breaker flat, battered threads or worn timing gear teeth
 2. Check crankshaft for run out

JOB SHEET #4

3. Using an outside micrometer check main bearing journals and crankpin journal for out-of-roundness and taper (Figure 1)

(NOTE: Check two or three places up and down the journal as well as two places around it.)

FIGURE 1



4. Compare measurements to manufacturer's specifications

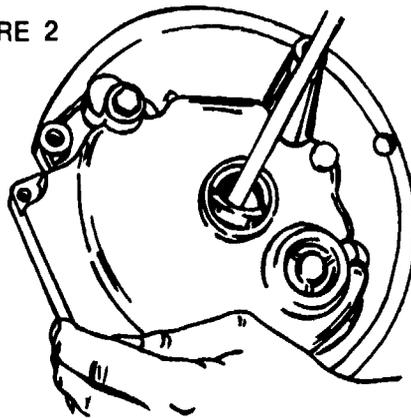
(NOTE: On some engines the crankshaft is separable and journals can be replaced. Some expensive crankshafts can be reground to a standard undersize. Most crankshafts should be replaced if they do not fall within specifications.)

5. Check and service main bearings and seals

- a. Check seals

- 1) Visually check for lip deterioration or wear
- 2) Remove damaged seals (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2

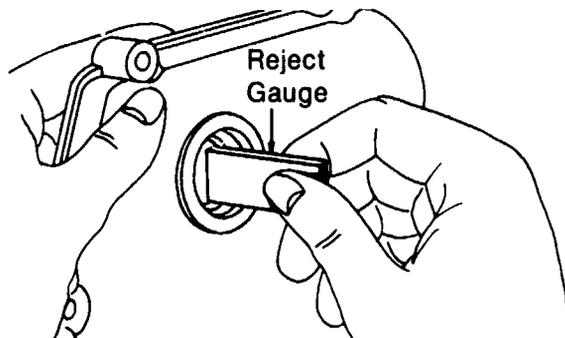


(NOTE: Special seal removal tools are available.)

JOB SHEET #4

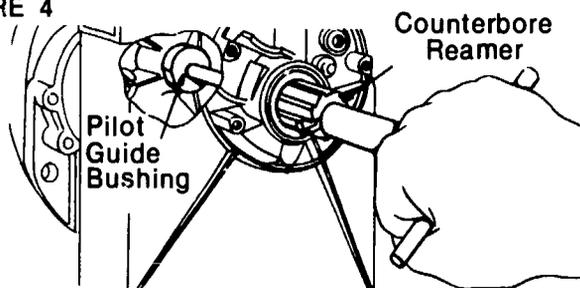
- b. Check bearing for wear using a no go gauge (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



- c. Place pilot guide bushing in the sump bearing with flange of pilot guide bushing toward inside of the sump (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4

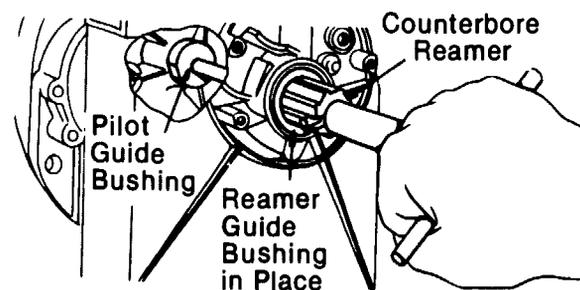


- d. Assemble sump on cylinder

(NOTE: Be careful that the pilot guide bushing does not fall out of place.)

- e. Place reamer guide bushing into the oil seal recess in the cylinder
- f. Place counterbore reamer in pilot and insert into cylinder until the tip of the pilot enters the pilot guide bushing in the sump (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5

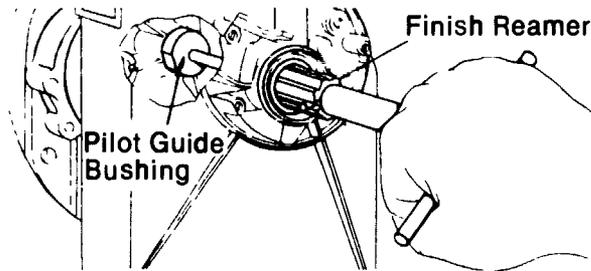


JOB SHEET #4

- g. Turn reamer clockwise with even steady pressure until it is completely through the bearing (Figure 6)

(NOTE: Lubricate reamer with kerosene or stoddard solvent.)

FIGURE 6



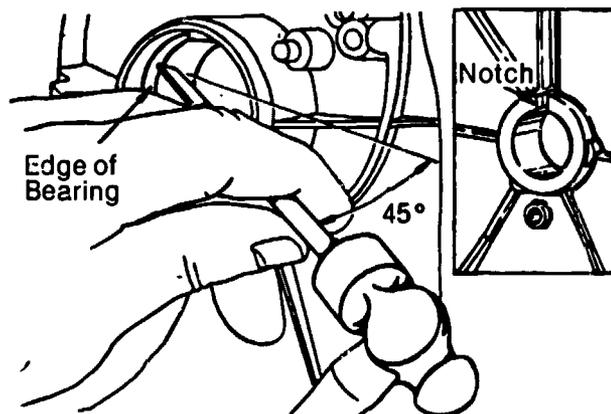
- h. Remove sump and pull reamer out without backing it through the bearing

(NOTE: Clean out reaming chips and remove reamer guide bushing.)

- i. Place new bushing, with notch toward cylinder and in line with notch on inside of cylinder against reamed out bearing (Figure 7)

(NOTE: At a point opposite to the split in the bushing, using a chisel and hammer, make a notch in the reamed out cylinder bearing at a 45° angle.)

FIGURE 7

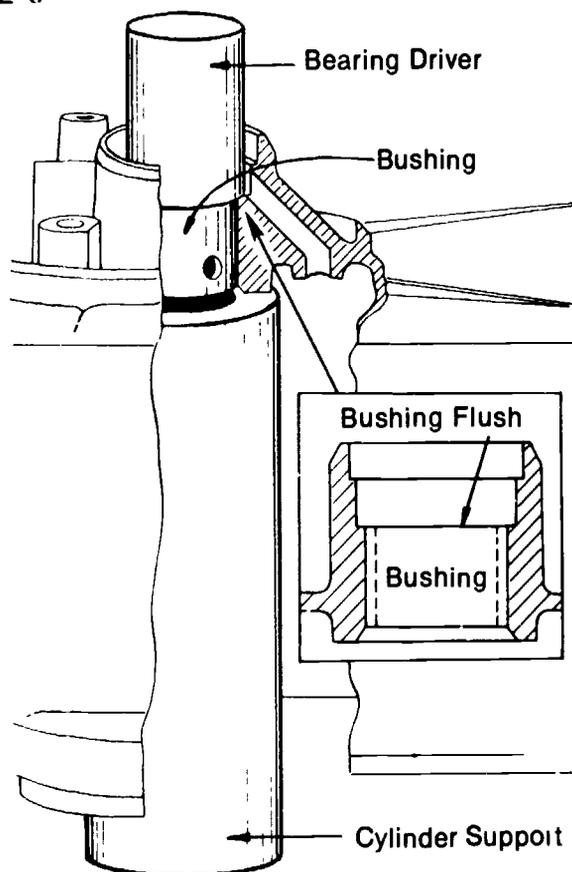


JOB SHEET #4

- j. Press in the new bushing, making sure to align the oil notches (Figure 8)

(NOTE: Using driver and support drive bushing, flush with the end of the reamed out cylinder hub.)

FIGURE 8



- k. Using a chisel, drive a portion of the bushing into the notch previously made in the cylinder

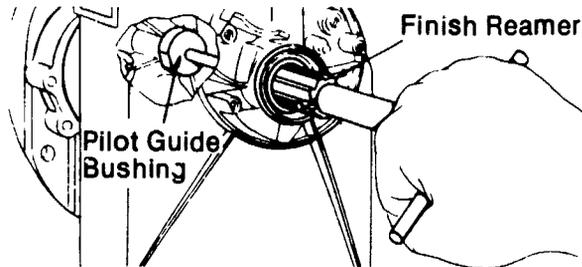
(NOTE: This is called staking and is done to prevent the bushing from turning.)

- l. Reassemble sump to cylinder with pilot guide bushing in the sump bearing.

JOB SHEET #4

- m. Place finish reamer on pilot and insert the pilot into the cylinder bearing until the tip of the pilot enters the pilot guide bushing in the sump bearing (Figure 9)

FIGURE 9



(NOTE: Lubricate the reamer with kerosene, fuel oil or stoddard solvent.)

- n. Remove sump and pull reamer out without backing it through the bearing; remove pilot guide bushing and clean out all remaining chips
- o. On most cylinders, the breaker point plunger hole enters the reamed out main bearing and a burr is formed by the countedbore reaming operation; the burr can be removed by using a special finish reamer

(NOTE: Make sure you have cleaned out all remaining chips.)

- p. Install new seal
- q. Return tools and equipment to their proper places and clean work area

(NOTE: Replacing P.T.O. bearing can be done in a similar manner.)

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

JOB SHEET #5 — INSPECT AND SERVICE A VALVE ASSEMBLY

- A. Tools and materials needed
1. Valve seat grinding equipment
 2. Valve face grinding equipment
 3. Outside micrometer
 4. Telescoping gauge
 5. Valve spring tension tester
 6. Combination square
 7. Valve seat removal tools
 8. Valve seat driver
 9. Valve guide removal tools
 10. Valve guide reamers
 11. Hand tool assortment
 12. Mallet
 13. Square or scale
 14. Surface plate
 15. Safety glasses
 16. Appropriate service manual

JOB SHEET #5

B. Procedure

1. Inspect valves

- a. Visually check valve for unusual or uneven wear, burned spots, pits, cracks, bent or burnt stems, and other damage (Figure 1)

(NOTE: Discard the valve if pits or cracks are too deep to dress off during regrinding or if stem is bent.)

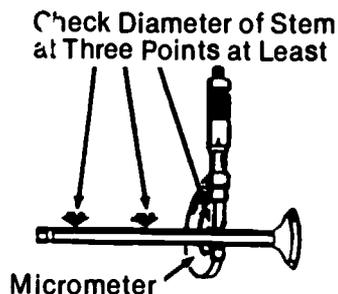
FIGURE 1



- b. Measure the valve stem with a micrometer (Figure 2)

(NOTE: Discard the valve if it does not fall within manufacturer's specifications.)

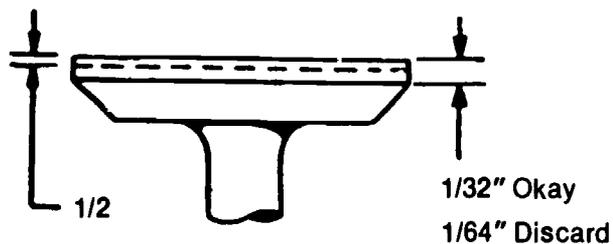
FIGURE 2



- c. Measure valve margin (Figure 3)

(NOTE: Generally if margin is less than $\frac{1}{64}$ " , valve is discarded; consult appropriate service manual for exact measurements.)

FIGURE 3



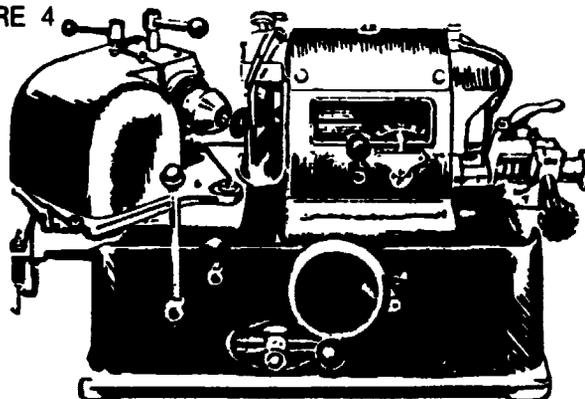
JOB SHEET #5**2 Repair valves**

- a. Determine correct angle and face width from appropriate service manual
- b. Chuck valve in grinder

(NOTE: Refer to grinder directions for proper procedure. Dress grinding wheel if necessary.)

- c. Set grinder angle (Figure 4)

(NOTE: Consult grinder set up manual.)

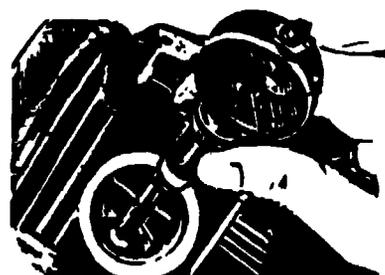
FIGURE 4

- d. Grind valve
- e. Measure margin and seating surface

(NOTE: Discard valve if suitable margin does not exist.)

3. Inspect valve guides

- a. Measure inside diameter with dial indicator or telescoping gauge and micrometer or valve guide reject gauge (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5

JOB SHEET #5

- b. Compare to manufacturer's specifications

(NOTE: If measurement does not fall within manufacturer's specifications, repair or replace.)

4. Repair valve guides

(NOTE: There are two basic types of guides, those bored directly into the block and those using inserts.)

- a. Replace insert type valve guides

- 1) Remove worn guide

(NOTE: This may require a special tool; consult appropriate service manual.)

- 2) Install new guide

- 3) Ream to fit valve stem

(NOTE: Be sure clearances between stem and guide fall within manufacturer's recommended tolerances.)

- b. Repair guide without bushing inserts

(NOTE: Many aluminum block engines have drilled guides with no inserts.)

- 1) Ream to standard oversize

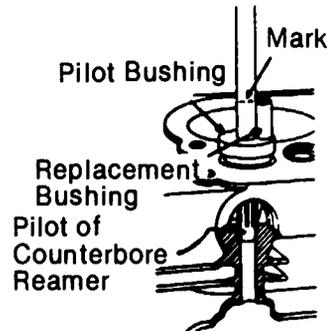
- a) Select appropriate reamer

(NOTE: Reamer should oversize guide to appropriate size for oversized stems with manufacturer's recommended clearances.)

JOB SHEET #5

- b) Install reamer (Figure 6)

FIGURE 6



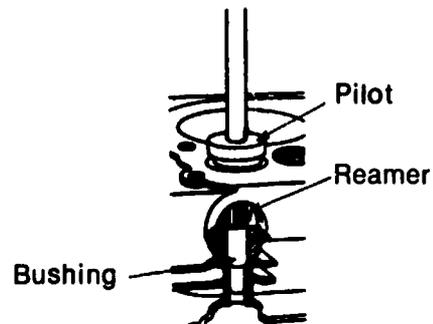
- c) Rotate reamer while applying light downward pressure
- d) Ream entire length of guide
- e) Measure reamed guide with telescoping gauge and micrometer or dial indicator
- 2) Ream for guide insert
- a) Select appropriate reamer
- (NOTE: Your reamer needs to be large enough to allow for an insert to be pressed into the bore. The bore should be approximately .001 in. smaller than the insert.)
- b) Ream guide
- c) Install guide insert

JOB SHEET #5

- d) Ream to standard size (Figure 7)

(NOTE: Reamer used here should put new insert to standard size with recommended clearances.)

FIGURE 7



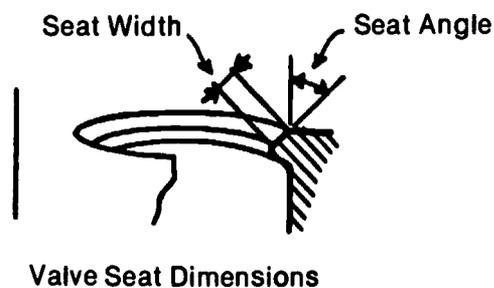
5. Inspect valve seats

(NOTE: Check to see if valve seat is machined into the head or if it is an insert.)

- a. Visually check valve seats for cracking and pitting
- b. Check seat width and angle (Figure 8)

(NOTE: Depth of valve seat and its width can tell you about the number of times it has been refaced.)

FIGURE 8



JOB SHEET #5

6. Repair or replace valve seats

a. Reface valve seats

- 1) Select appropriate refacing tools (Figures 9 and 10)

(NOTE: Drill motors and carborandum wheels or special cutters of the appropriate size will work.)

FIGURE 9

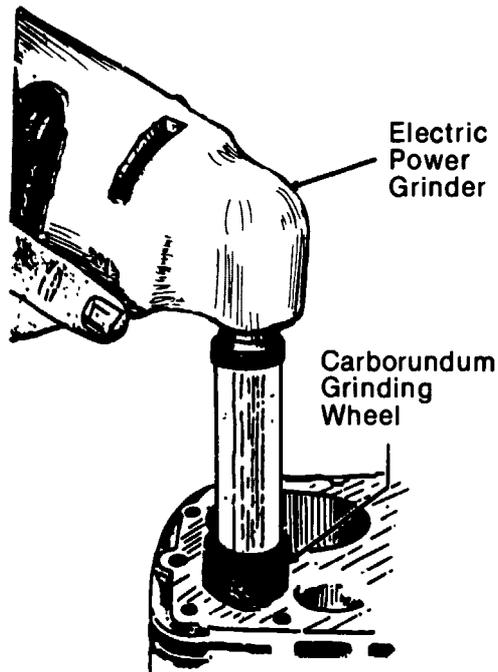
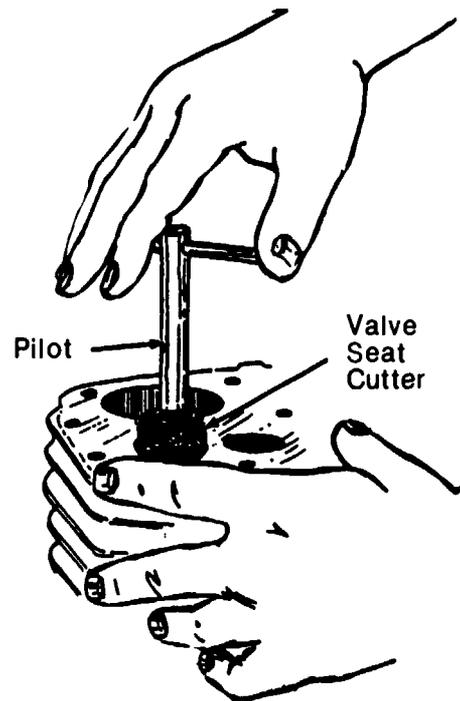


FIGURE 10



- 2) Install pilot in guide

(NOTE: Guides should have been inspected or reconditioned to guarantee straightness.)

- 3) Install refacing tool
- 4) Using light pressure, start tool rotating in clockwise direction only
- 5) Cut all oxidation away
- 6) Check seat width

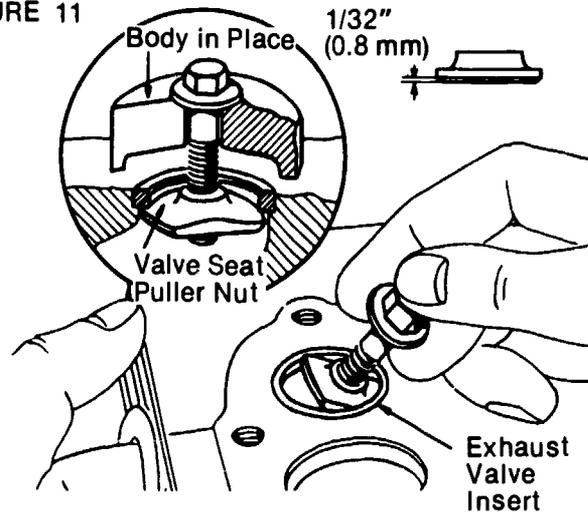
(NOTE: If width is over $\frac{1}{8}$ " , narrow it down with a 15° to 30° wheel at the top and a 60° to 75° wheel at the bottom.)

JOB SHEET #5

b. Replace valve seats

- 1) Remove worn seat (Figure 11)

FIGURE 11

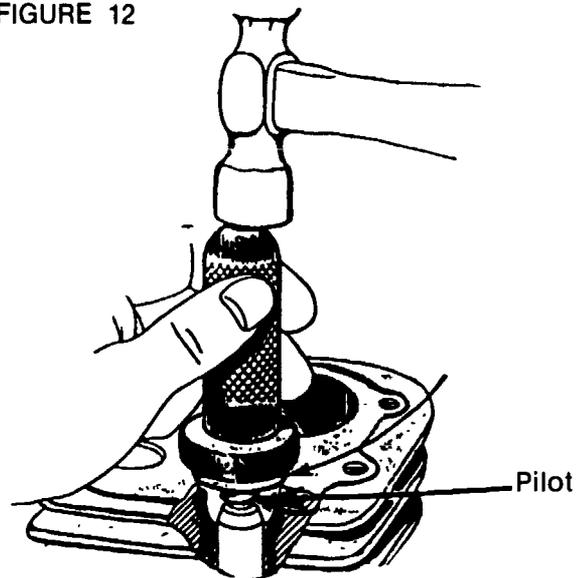


- 2) Place new seat in opening

(NOTE: It is often recommended that the new seat be chilled for at least one hour in a freezer.)

- 3) Install seat driving tool (Figure 12)

FIGURE 12

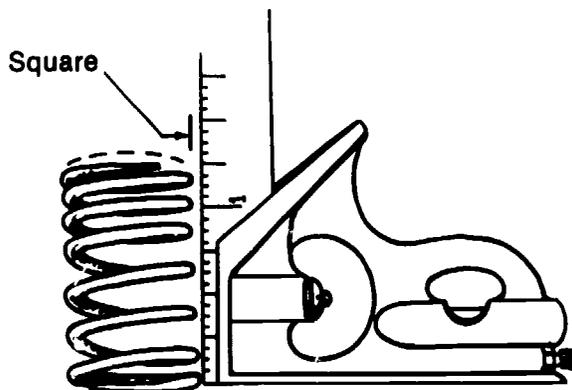


- 4) Tap tool to set new seat
- 5) Reface seat to recommended specifications

JOB SHEET #5

7. Inspect valve spring for squareness (Figure 13)

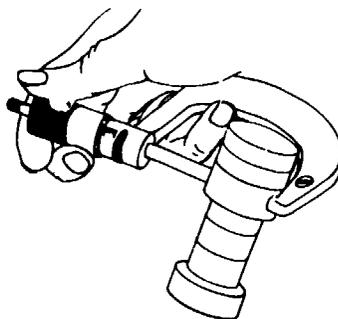
FIGURE 13



8. Check crankshaft

- a. Measure bearing journals (Figure 14)

FIGURE 14



- b. Measure inside bearing diameters
- c. Subtract bearing diameter from journals and compare to manufacturer's specifications
- d. Replace bearings if needed
- e. Measure cam lobes and compare to manufacturer's specifications

(NOTE: Discard if tappet or push rod adjustment will not compensate for deterioration.)

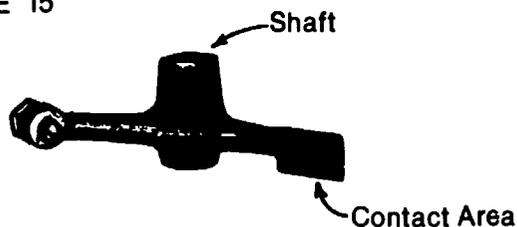
- f. Check gear teeth

(NOTE: Discard if teeth are damaged.)

JOB SHEET #5

9. Check push rods (if applicable)
 - a. Check for straightness
(NOTE: Rolling them on a surface plate is a fairly accurate method.)
 - b. Check for nicked or damaged ends
10. Check rocker arm assembly (if applicable)
 - a. Check cam contact area
 - b. Measure shaft bore with telescoping gauge and micrometer or dial indicator (Figure 15)

FIGURE 15



- c. Inspect rocker arm shaft (Figure 16)
(NOTE: Look for pitted or rough areas.)

FIGURE 16



- d. Measure rocker arm shaft with micrometer
 - e. Subtract rocker arm shaft reading from shaft bore reading
 - f. Compare to manufacturer's specifications
 - g. Repair if manufacturer's specifications are not met

(NOTE: Repair usually involves driving out worn bushing and installing new. Consult appropriate service manual for exact procedure.)

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

JOB SHEET #6 — REASSEMBLE A FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE

- A. Tools and materials needed
1. Hand tool assortment
 2. Gasket set for engines
 3. Valve spring compressor
 4. Ring compressor
 5. Engine oil
 6. Ring expander (feeler gauge)
 7. Shop towels
 8. Manual for engine
 9. Plastigauge
 10. Safety glasses
- B. Procedure
1. Coat all metal surfaces with oil liberally before assembly
 2. Install crankshaft in block

JOB SHEET #6

3. Assemble rod to piston with wrist pin (Figures 1 and 2)

(Caution: Be sure new lock rings are in their groove in an upward position.)

FIGURE 1

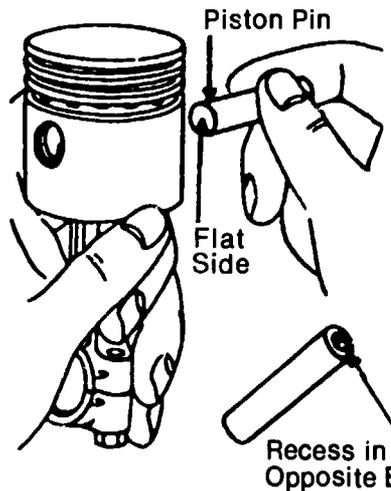
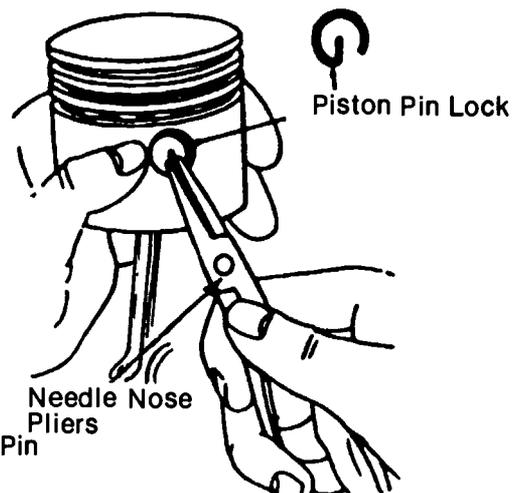
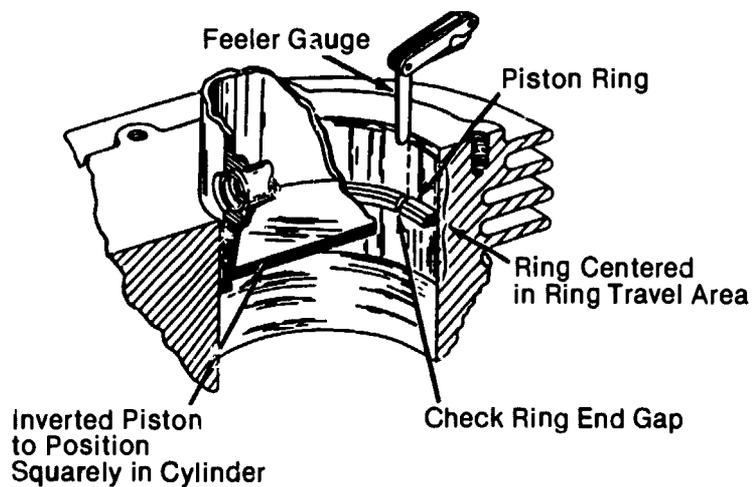


FIGURE 2



4. Check ring gap in cylinder
- Push ring into top of cylinder
 - Align ring in cylinder with piston (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



JOB SHEET #6

- c. Measure gap with feeler gauge
- d. Compare to manufacturer's specification

(NOTE: Gap should be correct if cylinder was reconditioned in Job Sheet #2 and the correct rings are being used.)

- 5. Install ring or piston in correct position, using correct size ring expander and rotate rings approximately 90°(Figures 4 and 5)

FIGURE 4

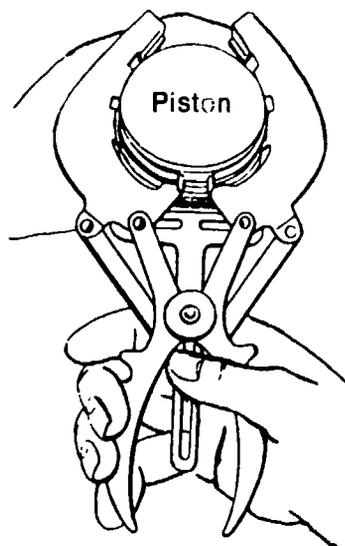
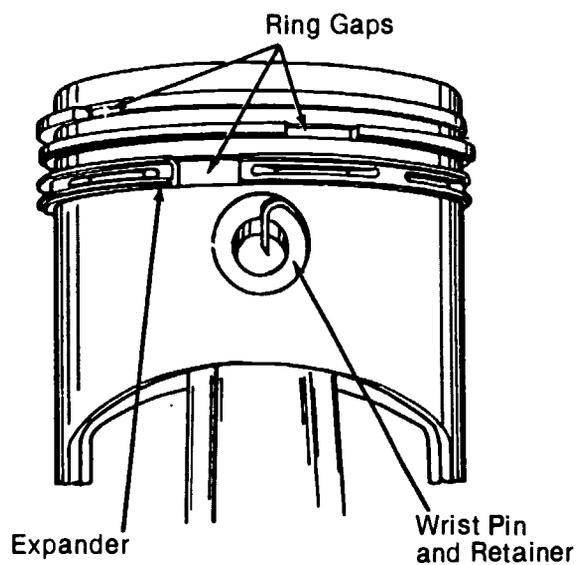


FIGURE 5

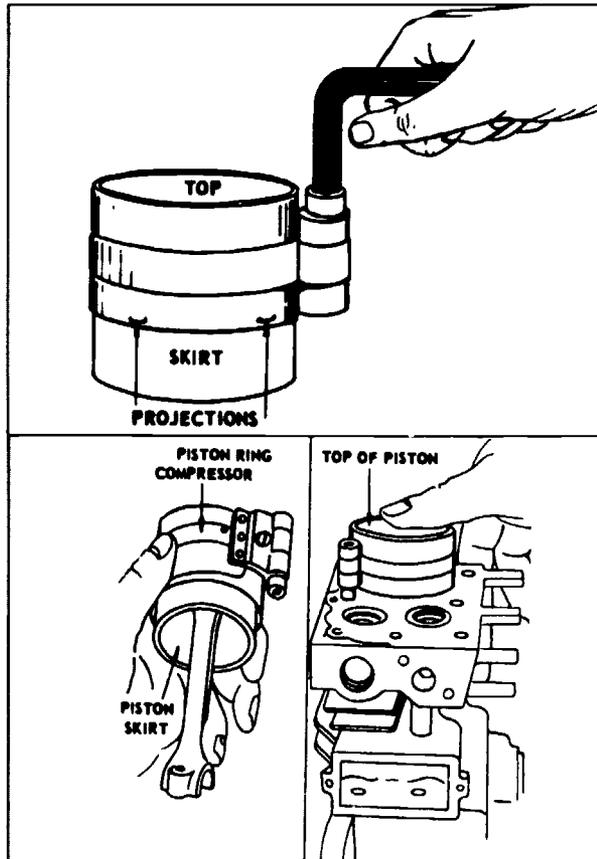


JOB SHEET #6

6. Install ring compressor on piston (Figure 6)

(NOTE: A light coat of oil on the ring compressor and on the cylinder walls will make it easier to push the piston into the cylinder.)

FIGURE 6



7. Push piston into cylinder using the handle of a hammer
(Caution: Do not pound piston; broken rings may result.)
8. Line rod up in correct position on crankshaft

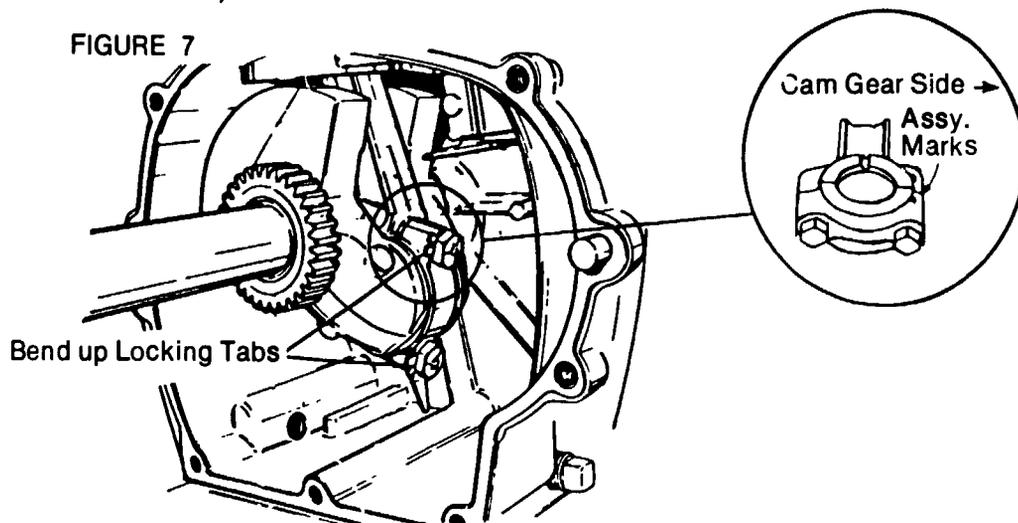
(NOTE: A plastigauge test is often used during reinstallation of caps as a last check.)

JOB SHEET #6

9. Install rod cap, oil slinger, and lock tabs (Figure 7)

(Caution: These must be in correct position or damage will result; check all alignment marks.)

FIGURE 7



10. Torque rod bolts to correct specifications

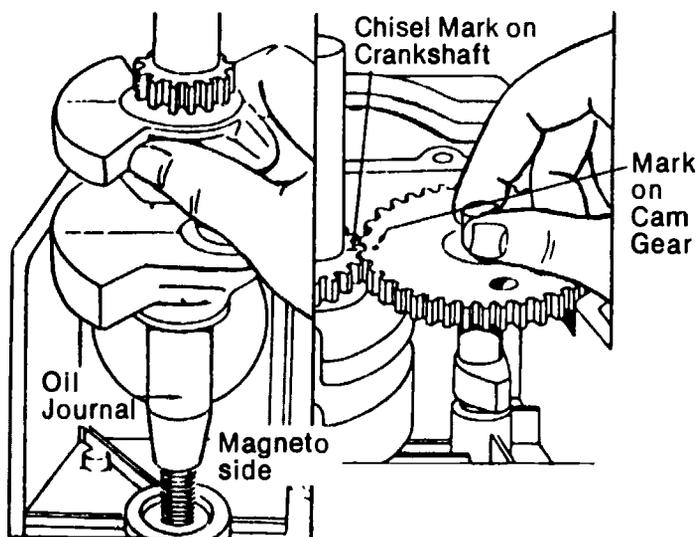
11. Install tappets

(NOTE: They should be returned to the same location as when removed.)

12. Install camshaft and cam gear (Figure 8)

(NOTE: Align cam gear and crankshaft timing gear marks.)

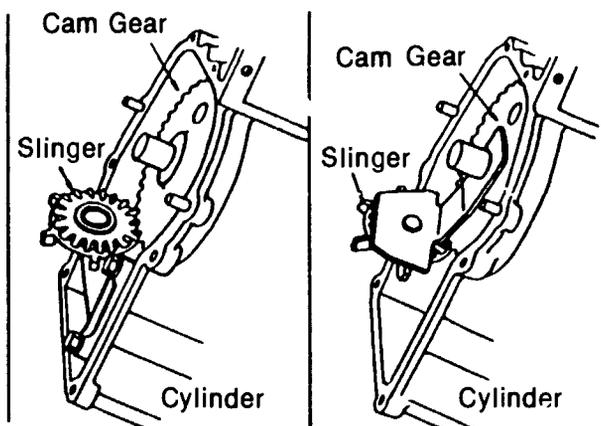
FIGURE 8



JOB SHEET #6

13. Install oil slinger or oil pump if engine is so equipped (Figure 9)

FIGURE 9



(NOTE: Some engines will have a spring washer on the end of the camshaft. Be sure this is in place.)

14. Install gasket on block assembly

(NOTE: Gaskets are different thicknesses to establish correct crankshaft end play on some engines.)

15. Install sump

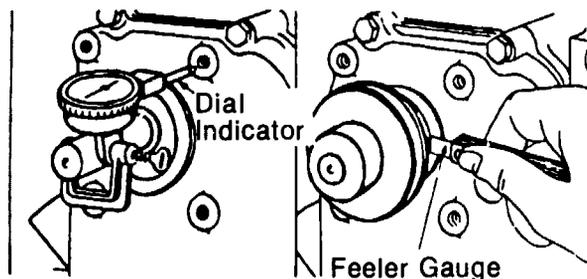
(Caution: Cover keyway with tape to prevent cutting oil seal.)

16. Torque sump bolts

17. Check end play of crankshaft (Figure 10)

(NOTE: It might be necessary to change gaskets or install shims to get correct end play. Consult appropriate service manual.)

FIGURE 10



JOB SHEET #6

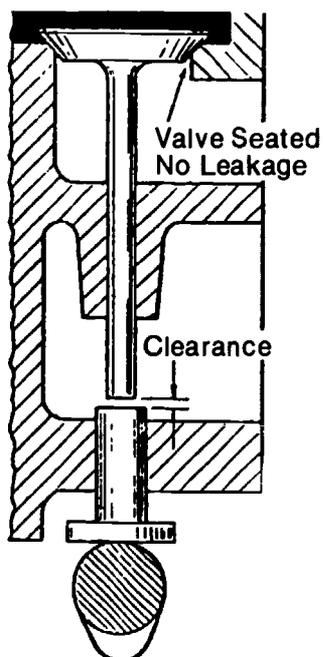
18. Install valves in correct position

(NOTE: Do not install springs or keepers.)

19. Check valves for correct clearance using a feeler gauge (Figure 11)

(NOTE: Grind the end of the valve stem off square for correct tappet to valve stem clearance, if there are no adjusting nuts.)

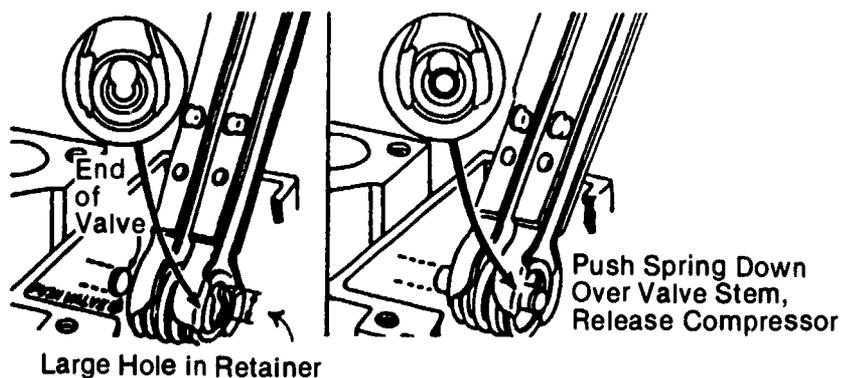
FIGURE 11



20. Install valve springs on correct valves (Figure 12)

(NOTE: Exhaust springs are usually stronger than intake springs. Be sure valve spring washer and keeper are positioned correctly.)

FIGURE 12



JOB SHEET #6

21. Install valve cover and valve cover gasket
22. Install air deflector shields
23. Install cam plunger, ignition points, and condenser
24. Gap points to correct setting when points are fully open
(NOTE: Coil and ignition switch wires should be correctly attached to condenser post.)
25. Install point dust cover
(NOTE: Sealer should be in place where ignition and coil wire enter.)
26. Install flywheel and flywheel key, washer and starter recoil mechanism
(NOTE: Torque flywheel nut to correct specifications.)
(Caution: Be sure to install washer correctly.)
27. Install coil assembly setting correct air gap to flywheel clearance
(NOTE: Time coil assembly to flywheel if it is adjustable.)
28. Install air vane governor assembly
(NOTE: This might have to be installed along with coil assembly.)
29. Check cylinder head for warpage
30. Install cylinder headgasket, cylinder head, and air deflector
(NOTE: Place bolts in correct position, tighten in correct sequence and to correct torque.)
31. Install shroud and flywheel cover and fuel tank
32. Install carburetor gasket, carburetor and governor linkage, and springs
33. Connect fuel lines and valve cover breather tube
34. Install muffler and locknut
35. Install engine on equipment or implement
36. Connect remote throttle, belts, and other equipment
37. Fill crankcase with new oil

JOB SHEET #6

38. Install serviced air filter on carburetor
39. Fill fuel tank with fresh fuel
40. Install spark plug
41. Turn on fuel to carburetor
42. Make final adjustments
43. Implement safety procedures
44. Have instructor evaluate work

(NOTE: Start engine only after getting instructor's permission.)

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with their correct definitions.

- | | | |
|---------|---|-------------------------------|
| _____a. | To restore to manufacturer's specifications | 1. Bushing |
| _____b. | Wearing or rubbing away | 2. Babbitt |
| _____c. | Bearing constructed with balls or rollers between journal and bearing surface to provide rolling instead of sliding friction | 3. Camshaft |
| _____d. | Alloy of tin, copper, lead, silver, and anti-mony having good anti-friction properties; used as a facing bearings | 4. Valve seat |
| _____e. | Clearance or "play" between two parts | 5. Valve grinding |
| _____f. | Leakage or loss of pressure | 6. Press fit |
| _____g. | Process of wearing into a desirable fit new or reconditioned parts | 7. Gasket |
| _____h. | Removable sleeve used as a bearing | 8. Valve stem |
| _____i. | Shaft containing lobes or cams which operate engine valves | 9. Journal |
| _____j. | Common nonmetallic element which forms in combustion chamber of an engine during burning of fuel and lubricating oil | 10. Abrasion |
| _____k. | Space allowed between two parts | 11. Valve lapping |
| _____l. | Series of weights attached to or forged integrally with the crankshaft, placed so as to offset the reciprocating weight of each piston and rod assembly | 12. Carbon |
| _____m. | Piston pin which is not locked in the connecting rod or the piston, but is free to turn or oscillate in both the connecting rod and the piston | 13. Crankshaft counterbalance |

TEST

- | | | |
|----------|---|---------------------------|
| _____n. | Substance placed between two metal surfaces to act as a seal | 14. Valve clearance |
| _____o. | Abrasive tool for deglazing and correcting irregularities or differences in diameter in cylinder | 15. Shrink fit |
| _____p. | Difference in angle between mating surfaces of a valve and a valve seat | 16. Valve margin |
| _____q. | Part of a shaft or crank which rotates inside a bearing | 17. Running fit |
| _____r. | Term used to describe an engine which is using an excessive amount of lubricating oil | 18. Hone |
| _____s. | Rocking of loose fitting piston in a cylinder, making a hollow bell-like sound | 19. Valve face |
| _____t. | Known as a force fit or drive fit | 20. Backlash |
| _____u. | Sufficient clearance has been allowed between the shaft and journal to allow free running without overheating | 21. Valve head |
| _____v. | One surface adhering to another because of heat and pressure | 22. Blow-by |
| _____w. | Exceptionally tight fit achieved by heating and/or cooling of parts | 23. Overhaul |
| _____x. | Process of mating the valve seat and valve face | 24. Seize |
| _____y. | Process of refacing the valve and seat to manufacturer's specifications | 25. Piston slap |
| _____z. | Angle surface of valve which mates with the seat to seal the chamber | 26. Oil pumping |
| _____aa. | Top of the large diametered valve end | 27. Interference angle |
| _____bb. | Space between valve face and head | 28. Anti-friction bearing |

TEST

- ____cc. Long portion of valve which rests within the valve guide
- ____dd. Angle surface in engine block or head which provides mating surface for valve face
- ____ee. Distance between valve stem and tappet at lowest tappet position
- 29. Break in
- 30. Floating piston pin
- 31. Clearance

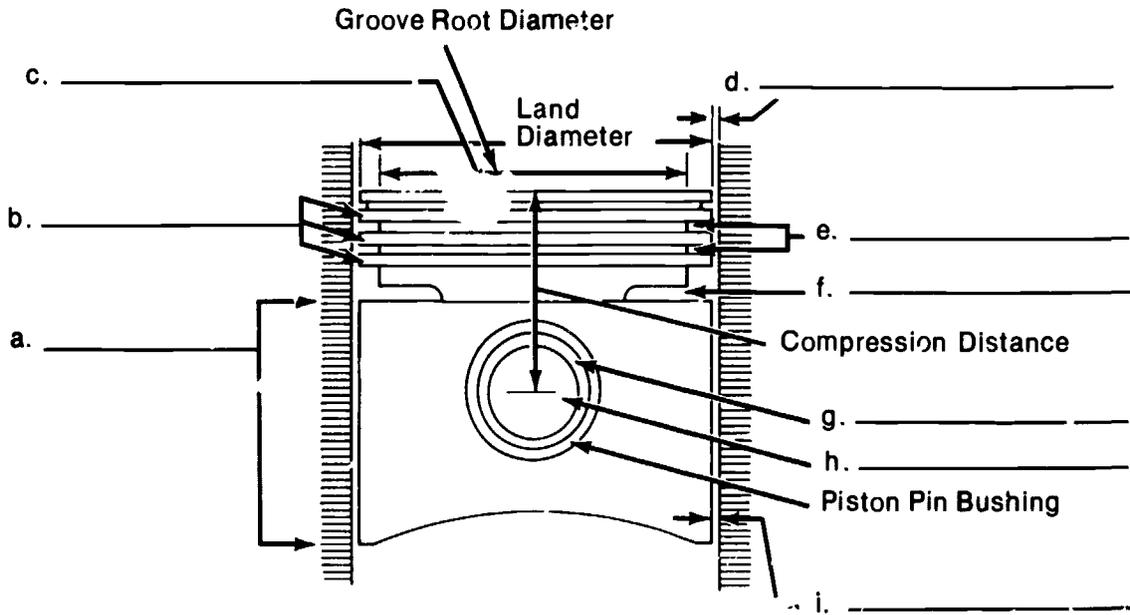
2. List five causes of engine problems.

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____
- e. _____

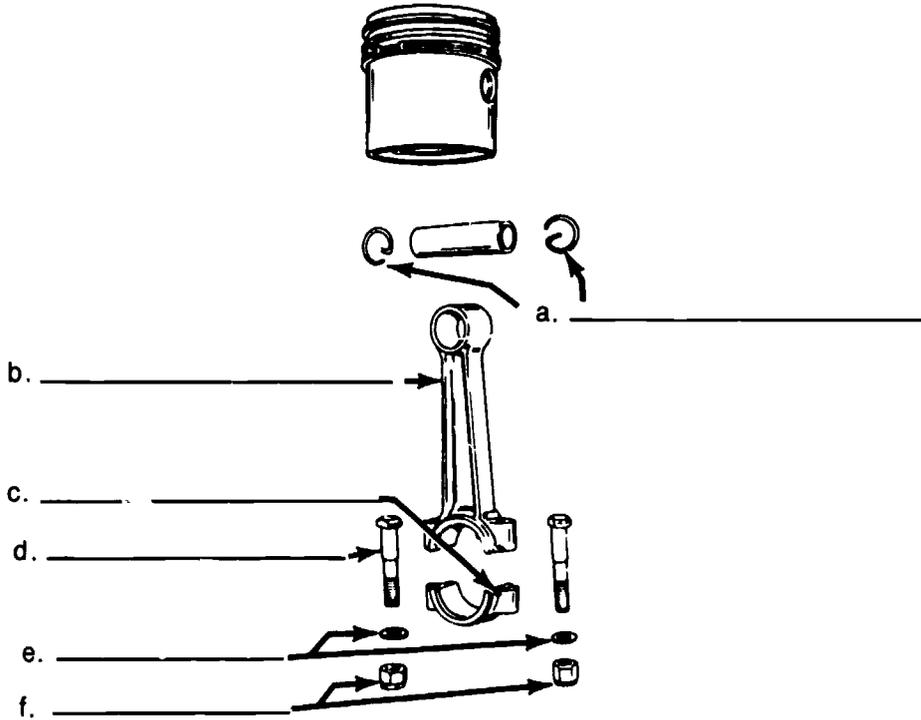
TEST

3. Identify the parts of the piston and connecting rod assembly.

Piston Assembly

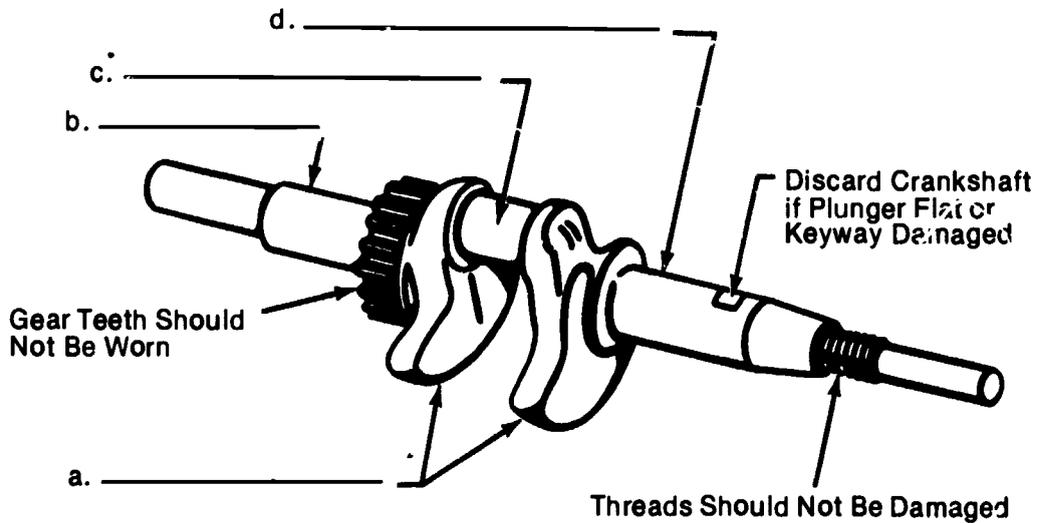


Connecting Rod Assembly

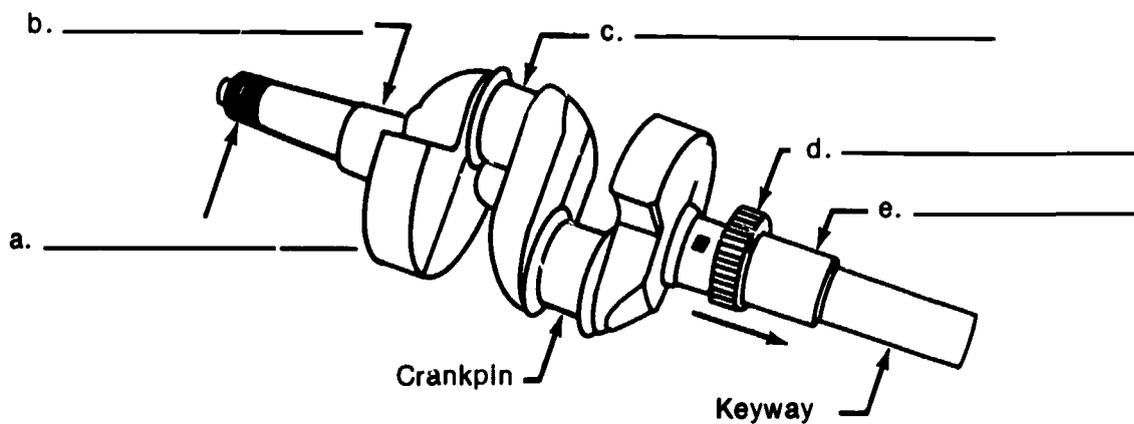


TEST

4. Identify the parts of the crankshaft assembly.

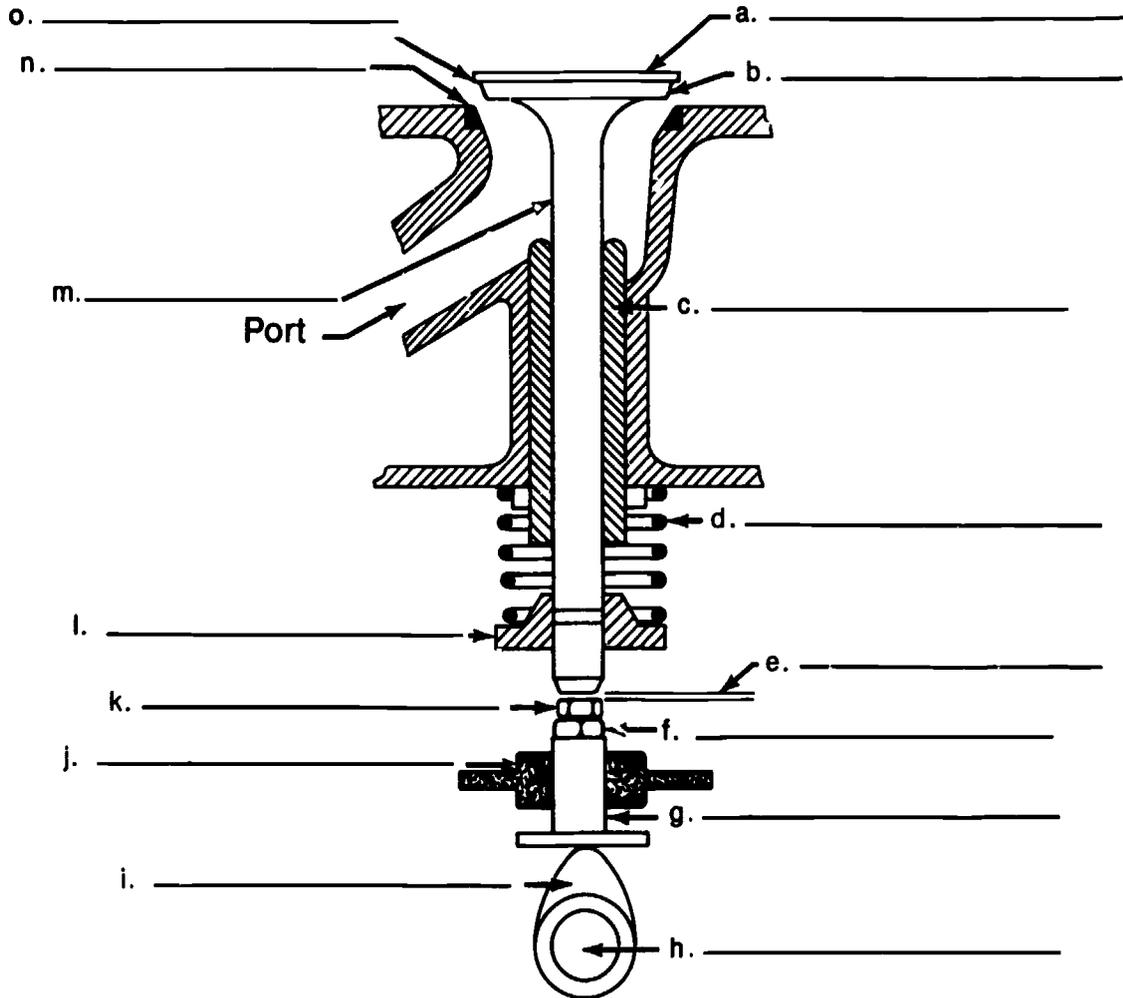


5. Identify the parts of the multi-piece crankshaft.



TEST

6. Identify the parts of the valve train.



(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

7. Demonstrate the ability to:

- a. Disassemble a four-stroke cycle engine (Job Sheet #1).
- b. Inspect and service a cylinder (Job Sheet #2).
- c. Inspect and service the piston, rings, and connecting rod (Job Sheet #3).

TEST

- d. **Inspect and service a crankshaft and crankcase assembly (Job Sheet #4).**
- e. **Inspect and service a valve assembly (Job Sheet #5).**
- f. **Reassemble a four-stroke cycle engine (Job Sheet #6).**

OVERHAUL FOUR-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT VIII-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.

a. 23	m. 30	y. 5
b. 10	n. 7	z. 19
c. 28	o. 18	aa. 21
d. 2	p. 27	bb. 16
e. 20	q. 9	cc. 8
f. 22	r. 26	dd. 4
g. 29	s. 25	ee. 14
h. 1	t. 6	
i. 3	u. 17	
j. 12	v. 24	
k. 31	w. 15	
l. 13	x. 11	

2.
 - a. Allowing dirt to get into the engine
 - b. Failure to check crankcase oil level often enough and letting engine run low on oil
 - c. Overloading the engine so that it works too hard
 - d. Running the engine too fast
 - e. Failure to properly store the engine during the off season

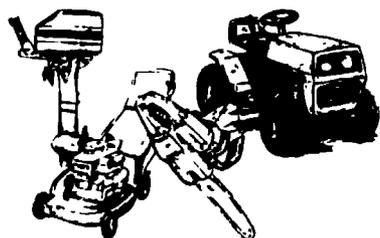
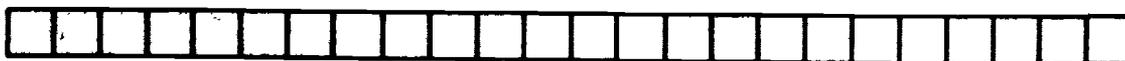
3. Piston and rod assembly
 - a. Skirt
 - b. Land
 - c. Piston head
 - d. Ring side clearance
 - e. Compression and scraper ring groove
 - f. Oil ring groove
 - g. Piston pin (wrist pin)
 - h. Pin hole
 - i. Thrust face clearance
 Connecting rod assembly
 - a. Retaining ring
 - b. Connecting rod
 - c. Bearing cap
 - d. Connecting rod bolts
 - e. Washer
 - f. Self-locking nut

4.
 - a. Counterweights
 - b. Journal P.T.O. end
 - c. Journal crankpin
 - d. Journal magneto end

5.
 - a. Threads and keyway
 - b. Mag journal
 - c. Crankpin

ANSWERS TO TEST

- d. **Gearteeth and keyway**
 - e. **P.T.O. journal**
- 6.
- a. **Head**
 - b. **Face**
 - c. **Valve guide**
 - d. **Valve spring**
 - e. **Clearance**
 - f. **Locknut**
 - g. **Tappet**
 - h. **Shaft**
 - i. **Cam**
 - j. **Tappet guide**
 - k. **Adjusting nut**
 - l. **Retainer**
 - m. **Stem**
 - n. **Seat**
 - o. **Margin**
7. **Performance skills evaluated according to the standards identified by the instructor**



Overhaul Two-Stroke Cycle Engine Unit IX-D



UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify parts of a two-stroke cycle engine and disassemble, inspect, service, and reassemble a two-stroke cycle engine. Competencies will be demonstrated by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the job sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to the overhaul of two-stroke cycle engines with their correct definitions.
2. List causes of two-stroke cycle engine problems.
3. Identify the parts of the two-stroke cycle piston and connecting rod assembly.
4. Identify the parts of a two-stroke cycle crankshaft assembly.
5. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Disassemble, inspect, and service a two-stroke cycle engine (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Reassemble a two-stroke cycle engine (Job Sheet #2).

OVERHAUL TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT IX-D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

- A. Obtain additional materials and/or invite resource people to supplement/reinforce information provided in unit of instruction.

(NOTE: This step should be completed prior to the teaching of this unit.)

- B. Make transparencies.

(NOTE: A set of acetate transparencies is available for this publication. For additional information, write to the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1500 West Seventh Avenue, Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074, or call (405) 377-2000, or toll-free 1-800-654-3988 [except in Oklahoma, Hawaii, or Alaska].)

- C. Provide students with objective sheet.

- D. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

- E. Provide students with information sheet.

- F. Discuss the information sheet.

(NOTE: Use the transparencies to enhance the information as needed.)

- G. Provide students with job sheets prior to the demonstration of the procedures.

- H. Integrate the following activities throughout the teaching of this unit:

1. Provide live examples of pistons, connecting rod assemblies, and crankshaft assemblies.
2. Compare overhaul of the two-stroke cycle engine with the overhaul of the four-stroke cycle engine.
3. Show difference between integral type and multi-piece type crankshaft.
4. Demonstrate and discuss the procedures outlined in the job sheets.
5. Assist students in evaluation of their completed units of instruction and indicate to them possible areas for improvement.

- I. Give test.

- J. Evaluate test.

- K. Reteach if necessary.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES**CONTENTS OF THIS UNIT**

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Suggested activities
- C. Information sheet
- D. Transparency masters
 - 1. TM 1 — Parts of Piston and Connecting Rod Assembly
 - 2. TM 2 — Parts of Crankshaft Assembly
- E. Job Sheets
 - 1. Job Sheet #1 — Disassemble, Inspect, and Service a Two-Stroke Cycle Engine
 - 2. Job Sheet #2 — Reassemble a Two-Stroke Cycle Engine
- F. Test
- G. Answers to test

REFERENCES USED IN DEVELOPING THIS UNIT

- A. *Comprehensive Small Engine Repair*. Stillwater, Oklahoma: Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1977.
- B. *Chilton's Motorcycle Repair Manual*. Radnor, Pennsylvania: Chilton's Motor Co., 1975.
- C. *Chilton's Yamaha Repair and Tune-Up Guide*. Radnor, Pennsylvania: Chilton's Motor Co., 1973.
- D. *Harley-Davidson Service Manual: Sportster XL/XLH/XLCH, 1970 to 1973*. Harley-Davidson Motor Co., Inc., 1972.

OVERHAUL TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT IX-D

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

- A. Abrasion — Wearing or rubbing away
- B. Anti-friction bearing — Bearing constructed with balls or roller between journal and bearing surface to provide rolling instead of sliding friction
- C. Blow-by — A leakage or loss of pressure, often used with reference to leakage of compression past piston ring between piston and cylinder
- D. Carbon — Common nonmetallic element which forms in combustion chambers of an engine during burning of fuel and oil mixture
- E. Two cycle oil — Oil specifically formulated to be added to gasoline and used in two-stroke cycle engines
- F. Crankcase leakage — Inadequate sealing between housing, crankcase, or reed plate

II. Causes of two-stroke cycle engine problems

- A. Incorrect ratio of two cycle oil mixed with fuel
- B. Incorrect type of oil mixed with fuel
(NOTE: Do not mix mineral base oils with synthetic oils.)
- C. Allowing dirt to get into engine
- D. Improper engine speed
- E. Failure to properly store the engine during the off season
- F. Overheating of engine
- G. Clogging of exhaust

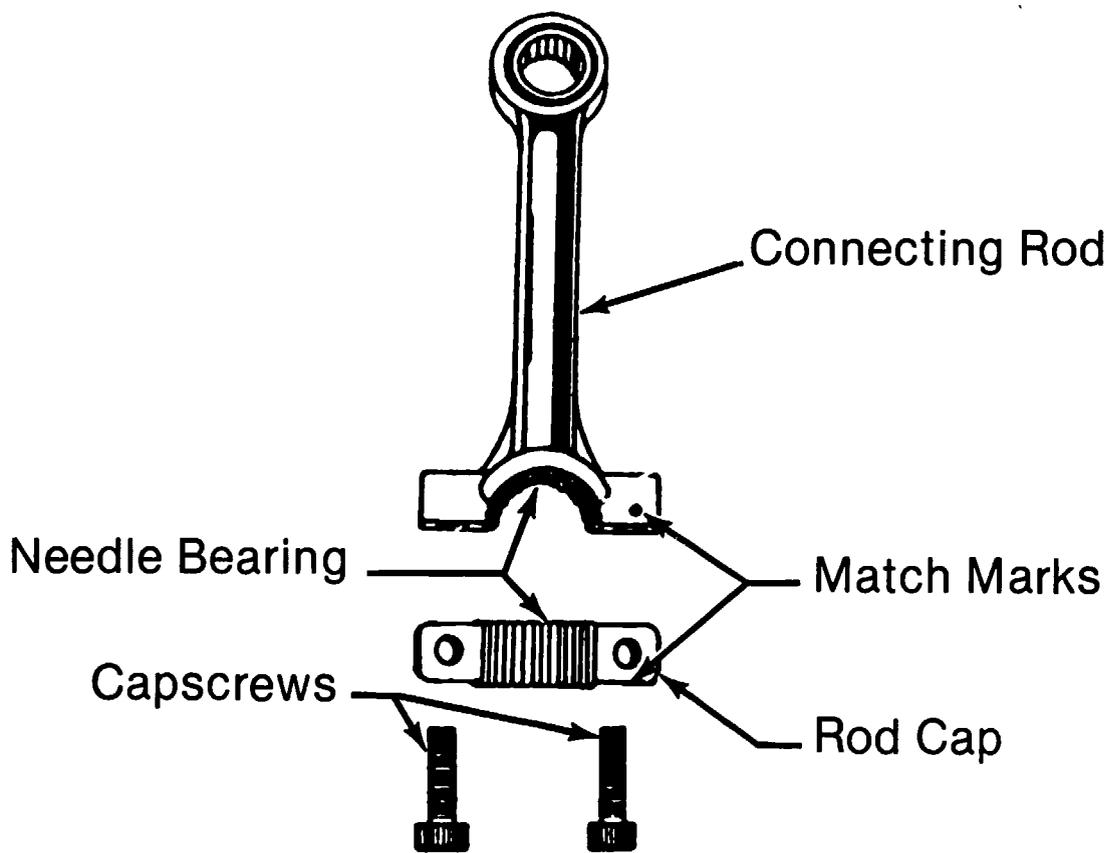
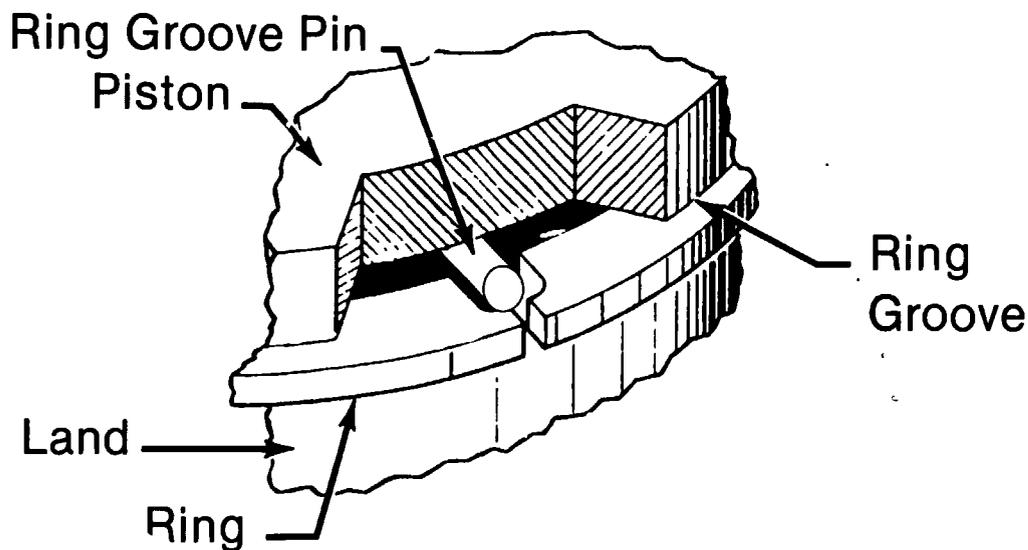
III. Parts of piston and connecting rod assembly (Transparency 1)

- A. Land
- B. Ring groove
- C. Ring groove pin

INFORMATION SHEET

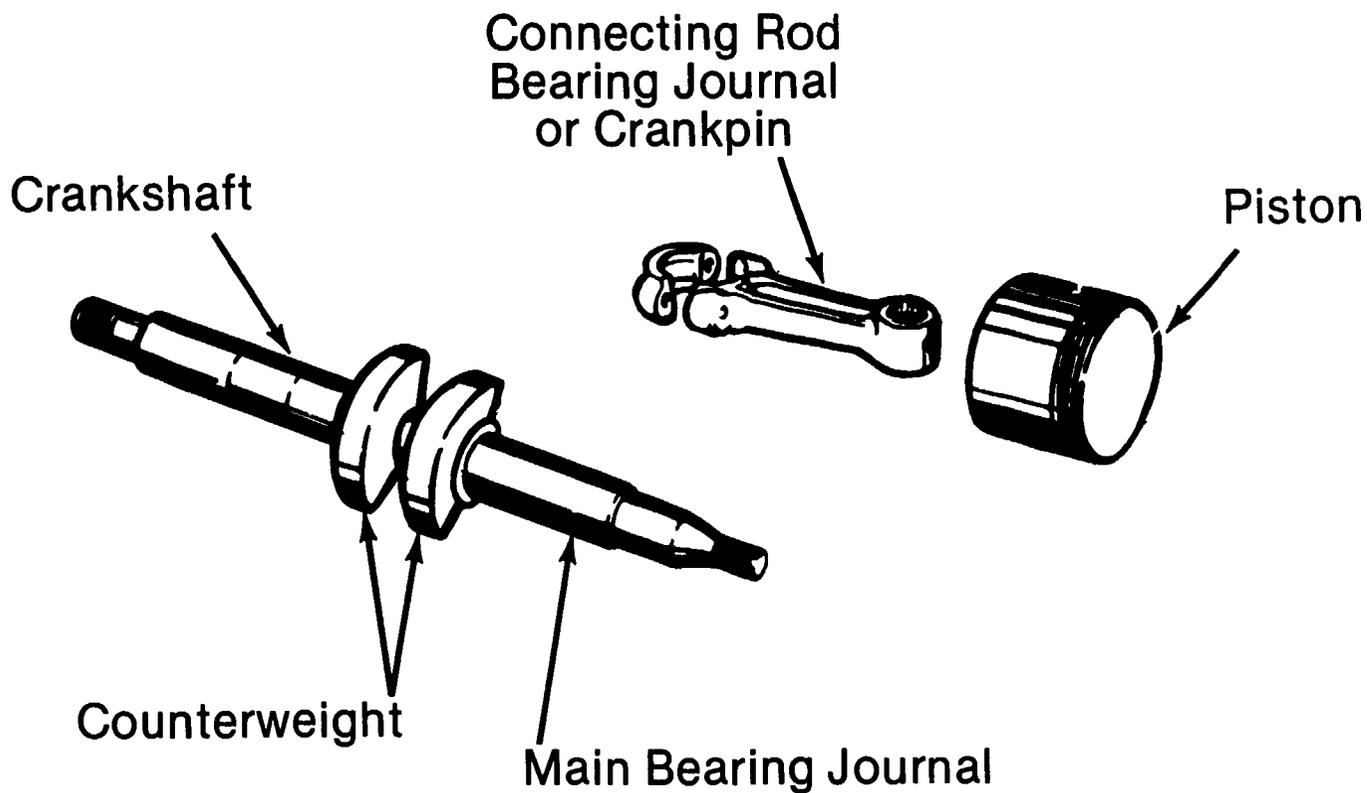
- D. Connecting rod
 - E. Needle bearings
 - F. Rod cap
 - G. Cap screws
 - H. Match marks
- IV. Parts of the two-cycle crankshaft assembly (Transparency 2)**
- A. Main bearing journals
 - B. Crankpin (connecting rod bearing journal)
 - C. Counterweights

Parts of Piston and Connecting Rod Assembly



Parts of Crankshaft Assembly

(2-Cycle)



736

737

OVERHAUL TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT IX-D

JOB SHEET #1 — DISASSEMBLE, INSPECT, AND SERVICE A TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Piston stop
3. Soft headed hammer
4. Special tools as needed for engine
5. Engine stand
6. Shop towels
7. Cleaning solvent
8. Engine manufacturer's shop manual
9. New oil seals
10. Deglazing tool
11. Safety glasses

B. Procedure

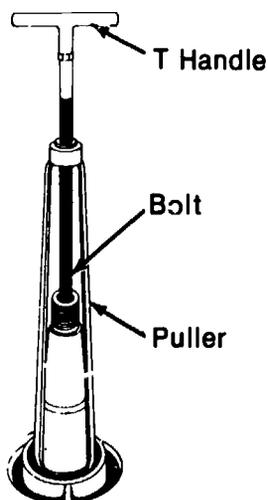
1. Disconnect high tension lead(s)
2. Remove engine shroud or cover
3. Disconnect battery leads to starter
4. Disconnect external fuel lines
5. Disconnect external throttle, shift, and clutch control cables attached to engine assembly
6. Remove engine from assembly

(NOTE: On large outboards the lower unit can remain attached to the boat; on smaller outboards it is often easiest to remove the outboard from the boat and remove the engine on a work bench.)

JOB SHEET #1

7. Mount engine on suitable stand
(NOTE: Some engines are quite heavy and should be lifted with a winch or with assistance of other mechanics.)
8. Remove spark plug(s)
9. Remove flywheel
(NOTE: Refer to appropriate service manual for specific pullers and procedures.)
10. Check flywheel for broken cooling fins, damaged gear teeth, magnet strength, and damaged keyways
(NOTE: As a general rule if you place a 1/2" socket on the magnet and can shake the flywheel without it falling off, the magnets have sufficient strength.)
11. Remove air baffles
12. Remove armature plate
13. Remove flywheel key
(NOTE: Roll the key out of the groove.)
14. Remove governor assembly from crankshaft
(NOTE: Sketch the linkage for reassembly.)
15. Remove dust cover
16. Remove spark advance mechanism
17. Remove magneto plate assembly
(NOTE: On some engines, crankshaft main needle bearings must be held in place to prevent them from falling out.)
18. Remove oil seal from armature plate (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



JOB SHEET #1

19. Remove armature plate bearing (Figures 2 and 3)
(NOTE: It often helps to heat casing before removing bearings.)

FIGURE 2

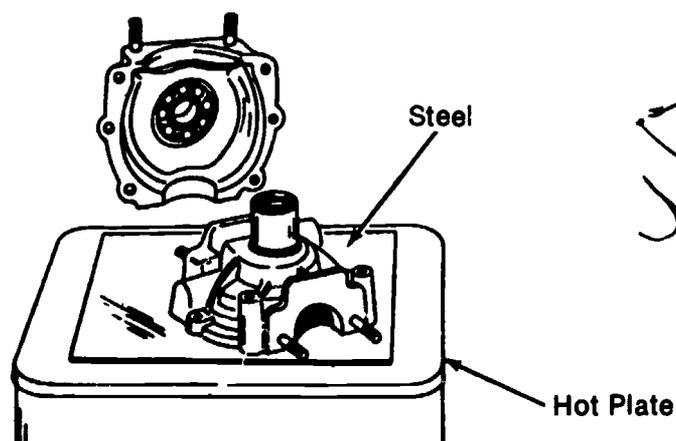
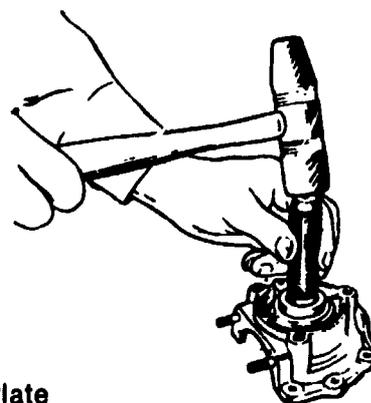
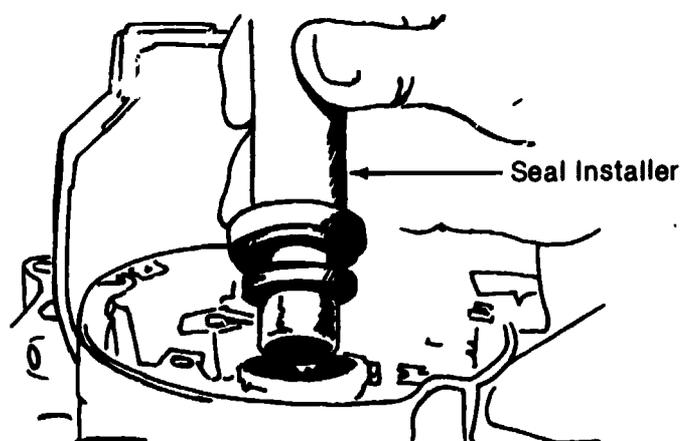


FIGURE 3



20. Install new oil seal (Figure 4)
(NOTE: Refer to appropriate service manual for specific tools and directions.)

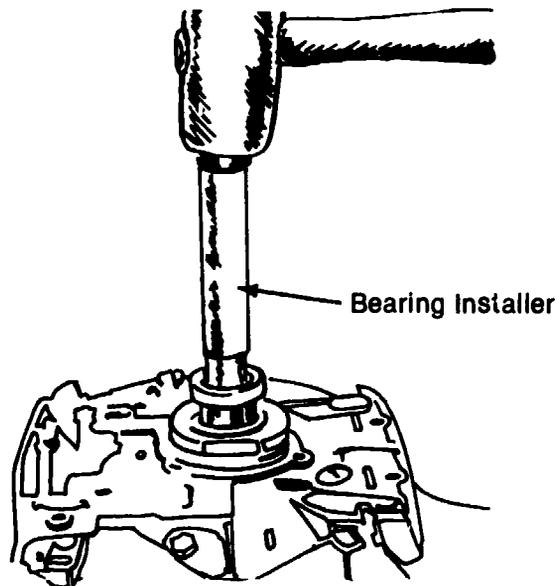
FIGURE 4



JOB SHEET #1

21. Replace worn bearings in armature plate (Figure 5)
(NOTE: Refer to appropriate service manual.)

FIGURE 5



22. Remove carburetor and reed plate assembly
23. Remove cylinder or cylinder head
24. Remove rod caps
25. Remove piston assembly

(NOTE: Use care when removing connecting rods using loose needle bearings. Don't lose them and be sure they are all in good condition. Replace as necessary.)

(CAUTION: Do not lift with magnets.)

26. Remove wrist pin retaining rings and drive out pin
(NOTE: Count needle bearings and be careful not to lose any of them.)
27. Remove crankshaft from crankcase oil seal (oil seal is not supporting crankshaft)
28. Remove crankcase oil seal
29. Remove, inspect, and replace crankcase bearings as needed
30. Measure crankshaft journals and pin

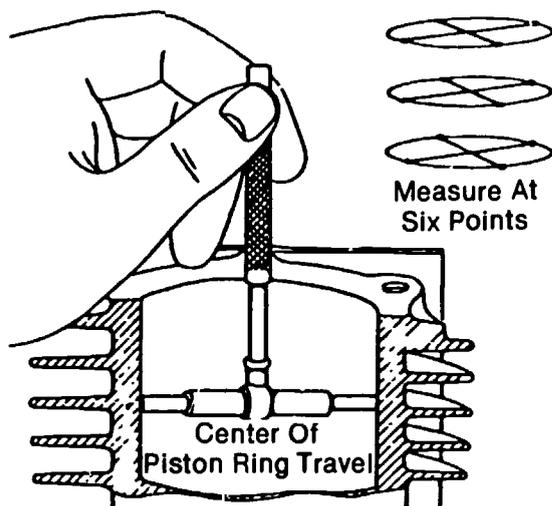
(NOTE: Compare to manufacturer's specifications; repair or replace as necessary.)

JOB SHEET #1

31. Measure cylinder at top, center, and bottom (Figure 6)

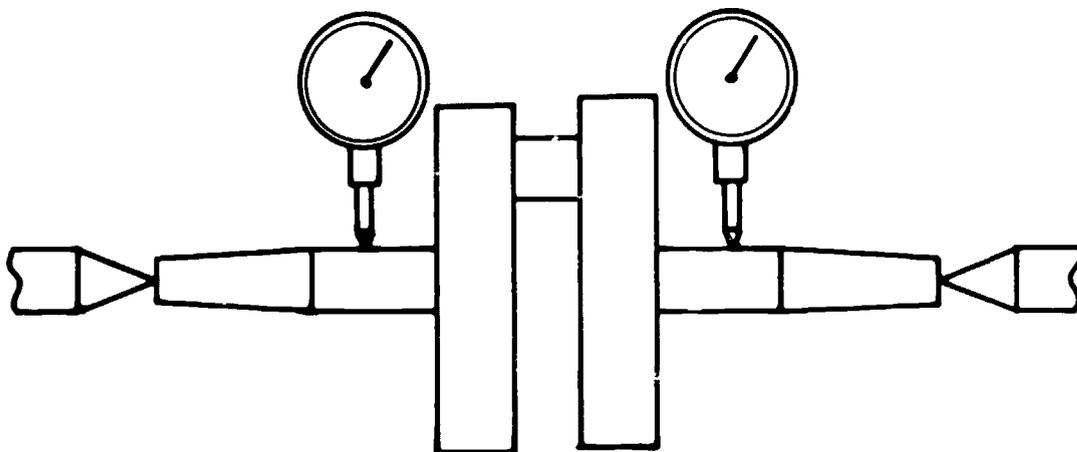
(NOTE: Compare to manufacturer's specifications; repair or replace as necessary.)

FIGURE 6



32. Measure crankshaft runout (Figure 7)

FIGURE 7



JOB SHEET #1

33. Inspect piston

- a. Measure pin bosses**
- b. Measure skirt**
- c. Check and scrape ring**

**(NOTE: Compare these readings to manufacturer's specifications.
Replace as required.)**

- d. Check ring end gap at bottom of ring travel**

743

OVERHAUL TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT IX-D

JOB SHEET #2 — REASSEMBLE TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE

A. Tools and materials needed

1. Hand tool assortment
2. Piston stop
3. Special tool for engine reassembly
4. Piston ring compressor
5. Engine oil.
6. New gasket set
7. Shop towels
8. Engine stand
9. Safety glasses

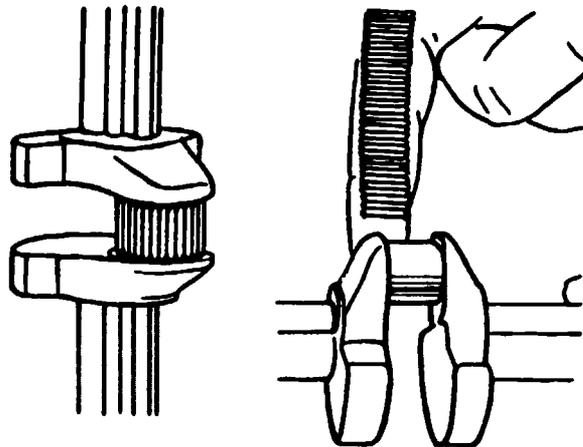
B. Procedure

1. Install crankshaft in crankcase
(NOTE: All metal to metal surfaces should be coated with 2 cycle oil.)
(CAUTION: Do not damage oil seal when installing crankshaft.)
2. Drive wrist pin through piston and connecting rod
(NOTE: Install connecting rod on piston so as not to damage needle bearing.)
3. Install wrist pin retainer rings
(NOTE: They must be installed facing upward or they will pop out during operation.)
4. Place strip of needle bearings on crankshaft (Figure 1)
(NOTE: If old needles are to be reinstalled coat them in petroleum jelly or a suitable lubricant so they will adhere to rod and cap.)

JOB SHEET #2

(CAUTION: Correct number of needle bearings must be installed on rod and cap; check this carefully.)

FIGURE 1



5. Install rod with aligned match marks on crankshaft journal and install rod cap

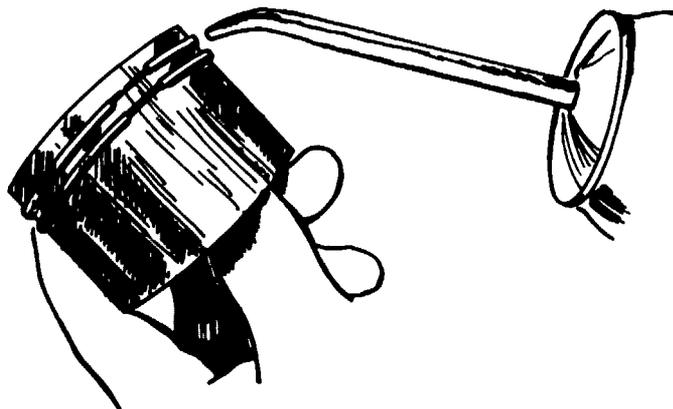
(NOTE: Tighten rod cap bolts finger tight, just enough to hold needle bearings in place.)

(CAUTION: Piston will have a mark to identify the top location; this must be installed up.)

6. Install cylinder to crankcase gasket in correct location
7. Install ring compressor over head of piston and compressor rings

(NOTE: Rings should be coated with oil. See Figure 2.)

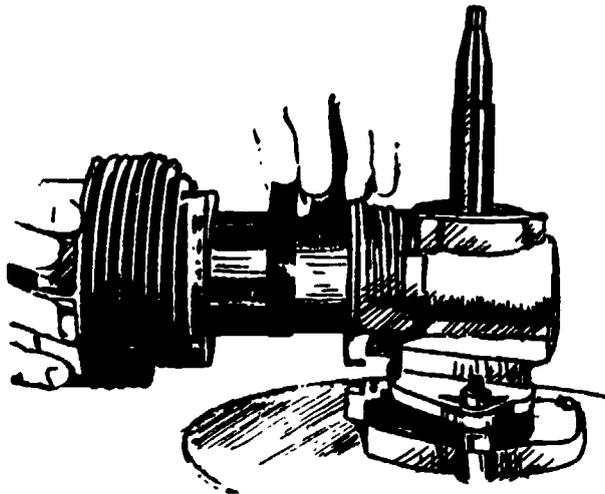
FIGURE 2



JOB SHEET #2

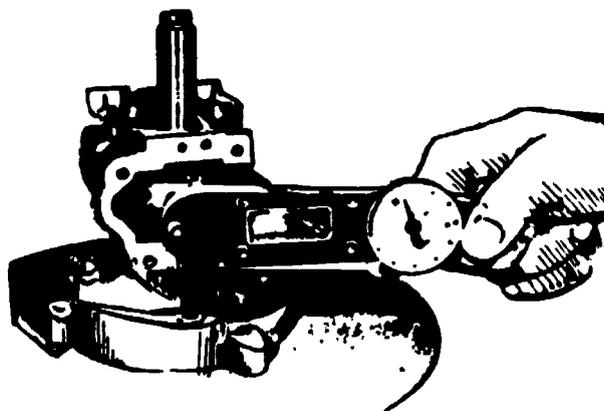
8. Maintain pressure on rings and slide rings into cylinder (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



9. Center rod on wrist pin
10. Torque rod capscrews to correct torque (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4

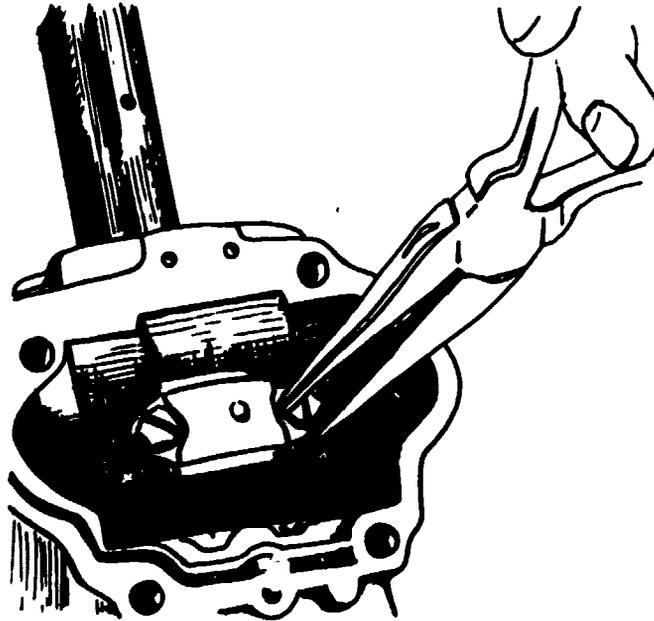


JOB SHEET #2

11. Bend lock tabs to retain rod capscrews (Figure 5)

(NOTE: Use new tabs as necessary.)

FIGURE 5



12. Torque cylinder to crankcase bolts

(NOTE: Check to be sure washers are located in correct position as some bolts do not have washers.)

13. Install reed plate and carburetor on engine

(NOTE: Locate gasket correctly on crankcase.)

14. Install armature plate on crankcase using correct gasket to have correct crankshaft end play

(NOTE: Properly protect seal and main bearings when installing armature plate.)

15. Tighten armature to crankcase screws

16. Check ignition point gap

17. Install flyweight on crankshaft

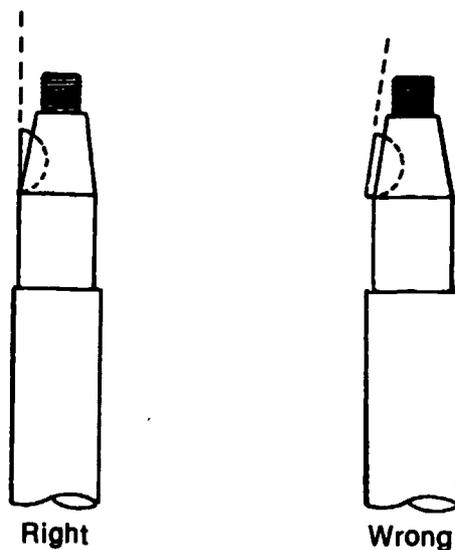
(NOTE: Install in correct location with crankshaft keyway.)

JOB SHEET #2

18. Install dust cover
19. Install governor assembly
20. Install flywheel and torque flywheel nut to correct torque

(NOTE: Flywheel key must be installed correctly. See Figure 6.)

FIGURE 6



Make Sure Key Is Installed Correctly

21. Install air baffles, governor linkage, starter connections, and shroud, and make fuel connections
22. Install spark plug
23. Install spark plug high tension wire
24. Place correct fuel and two cycle oil mixture in fuel tank
25. Mount engine to implement
26. Make final adjustments
27. Check with instructor and start engine

OVERHAUL TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT IX-D

NAME _____

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right to the correct definitions.

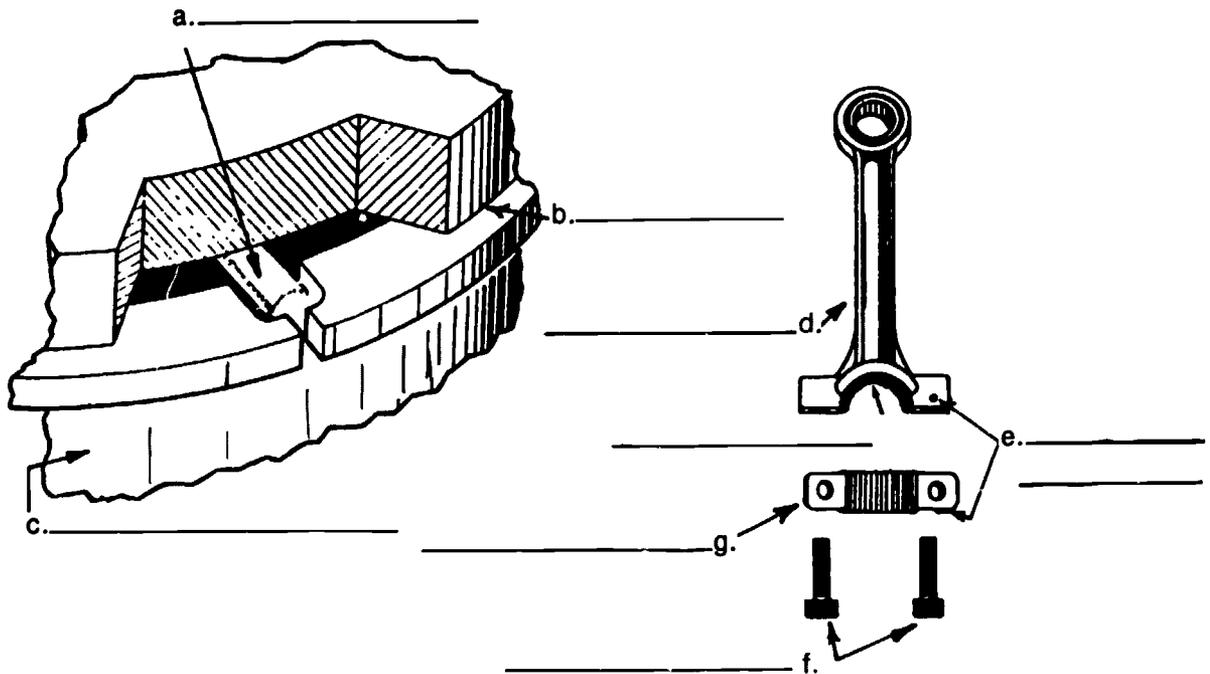
- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <p>_____a. Oil specifically formulated to be added to gasoline and used in two-stroke cycle engines</p> | <p>1. Blow-by</p> |
| <p>_____b. Wearing or rubbing away</p> | <p>2. Crankcase leakage</p> |
| <p>_____c. Inadequate sealing between housing, crankcase, or reed plate</p> | <p>3. Two cycle oil</p> |
| <p>_____d. Bearing constructed with balls or rollers between journal and bearing surface to provide rolling instead of sliding friction</p> | <p>4. Abrasion</p> |
| <p>_____e. A leakage or loss of pressure often used with reference to leakage of compression past piston ring between piston and cylinder</p> | <p>5. Anti-friction bearing</p> |
| <p>_____f. Common nonmetallic element which forms in combustion chambers of an engine during burning of fuel and oil mixture</p> | <p>6. Carbon</p> |

2. List five causes of two-stroke cycle engine problems.

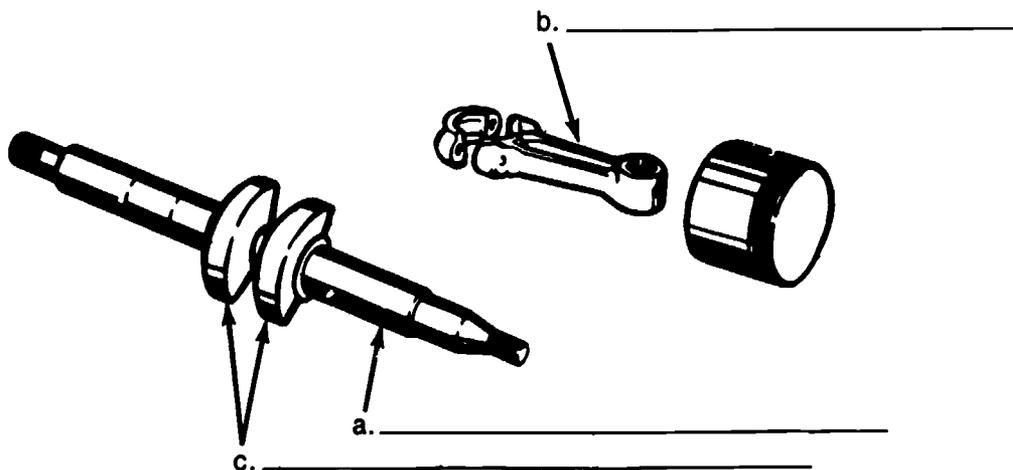
- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____
- e. _____

TEST

3. Identify the parts of the two-stroke cycle piston and connecting rod assembly.



4. Identify the parts of a two-stroke cycle crankshaft assembly.



TEST

(NOTE: If the following activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

5. Demonstrate the ability to:
 - a. Disassemble, inspect, and service a two-stroke cycle engine (Job Sheet #1).
 - b. Reassemble a two-stroke cycle engine (Job Sheet #2).

OVERHAUL TWO-STROKE CYCLE ENGINE UNIT IX-D

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.

a.	3	d.	5
b.	4	e.	1
c.	2	f.	6

2. Any five of the following:
 - a. Incorrect ratio of two cycle oil mixed with fuel
 - b. Incorrect type of oil mixed with fuel
 - c. Allowing dirt to get into engine
 - d. Improper engine speed
 - e. Failure to properly store the engine during the off season
 - f. Overheating of engine
 - g. Clogging of exhaust

3.

a.	Ring	f.	Connecting rod
b.	Land	g.	Match marks
c.	Piston	h.	Rod cap
d.	Ring groove pin	i.	Capscrews
e.	Ring groove	j.	Needle bearing

4.
 - a. Main bearing journal
 - b. Crankpin (connecting rod bearing journal)
 - c. Counterweights

5. Performance skills evaluated according to the standards identified by the instructor

NOTICE

STAFF MEMBERS AND TECHNICAL ADVISORS HAVE WORKED TO MAKE THESE INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS EASY TO USE AND EASY TO READ. WE WELCOME YOUR INPUT IN THE FORM OF SUGGESTIONS AND/OR CORRECTIONS BY RETURNING THE ATTACHED POSTCARD WHICH HAS BEEN PRE-PAID.

THANK YOU.

Name of Publication _____

My overall rating of this publication is:

Excellent Very Good Good Fair Poor

I would suggest that to improve the materials, MAVCC should

Other comments _____

(Optional)

Name _____

Address _____
